

# Xenogears

スクウェア公式 ゼノギアス設定資料集

# PERFECT WORKS

~the Real thing~



History  
Socialstructure  
Geography  
Monster  
Science  
Gear  
Character  
Drama  
Gallery

SQUARESOFT





Square Official

# Xenogears

PERFECT WORKS

~The Real Thing~



# EPISODE V The Truth

The created world of the game 'Xenogears' is a single part within an infinite flow of history. The time scale involved is more or less 15,000 years. The story is told through six large episodes and this book will closely examine 'Episode 5' in order to guess at its ending.

Due to the large amount of information about this world, it is possible to determine the cause and effect that take place from past to the present. In order to bring the whole matter to light, we shall consider 'Episode 5'. Having heard the voice of the Producer, the facts that were not revealed in the story will now be known, and "the world's entirety" will be understood. At the time, 'Xenogears' touched their hearts and its 'truth' is reflected as light from a mirror.

## EPISODE I

### Era of Interplanetary War

15,000 years before the story, humankind set out from earth and discovered a hospitable planet in the Archer constellation M24. It became known hereafter as 'Neo-Jerusalem' and once again, humans headed for the abyss of space. As a result, humanity enlarged the circle of living things to encompass almost the entire galaxy approximately 10,000 years ago... At the same time, the interplanetary war which had broken out intensified. The universe became the stage for the devastation caused by the winds of war.

The Deus System which appears in the story was developed in this era, but besides this phenomenon, this episode remains shrouded in mystery.

10000  
years

15000  
years

## EPISODE II

### Time of the Genesis

Sentient life forms began to increase at this time in the world of Fei and the others... Cain became the humans' progenitor and was revered as the divine emperor. Abel, a survivor of the Eldridge's fall to earth, opposed the religion of Cain. Both he and Elly began to grope for a new way of life. This is the background for Episode II as the story advances. At that time, it was thought that Cain's own mission was to bring about the resurrection of Deus, and that he did not seek "humanity's freedom", the main point of the story.



## EPISODE III

### Zeboim Culture

The stage for Episode III is close to that of the real world, it was the time of an advanced scientific culture. The level of human intelligence had attained its peak, but due to genetic damage, those unable to reproduce began to increase. Using nanotechnology, Kim (Abel's reincarnated form) worked towards finding a way to overcome this, but Miang's plot resulted in his complete failure . . . Emerald was born in this era and nanotechnology was revived by one of the three Sages of Shevat, Taura.

## EPISODE VI

While the time directly after Episode 5 is pivotal, at this point in time it remains an completely undeveloped Episode. It is only known to be the terminal point of Xenogears' world, and from now on the revealing of information is held back.

Present Era

500  
years ago

4000  
years ago

## EPISODE IV

### Solaris War

Approximately 500 years before Fei and the others were born, the continent of Ignas was the stage for Episode IV. At about that time Cain and the Ministry judged humanity to be at the last stage of evolution, and Solaris was founded. This was done to establish direct control of the surface. But the humans of this era had evolved the ability to use ether and the surface war against Solaris reached an extreme. Before long, this great war of 500 years ago came to an end in what came to be known as the Day of Collapse.

## EPISODE V

### Xenogears

The resurrection of Deus having been held back until the year 9999, the story's hero, Fei lives in the frontier village of Lahan. Little is known of Fei's origins or why he lived in the village, but 3 years ago he was carried to house of the Lahan village chief, Lee by a masked man. At the time, Fei's mind and body had both been greatly damaged and until now, he had lost nearly his entire memory. Then came the event of the attack on Lahan . . . This event becomes the trigger which will set Fei on the path of fate.

### Director Tetsuya Takahashi's comments

The world of Xenogears is divided into 3 large parts containing the episodes. The first part takes place about 5000 years after our time, with the vast universe as its stage. The second part is the game, the story of Fei and the others' world. The third part tells of what comes after.

Within that, the four episodes must once again be looked at in detail in order to understand. From the beginning the second part's secrets were contained in the various episodes for example, in simulation games as well as novelizations, virtually every medium was thought of in order to express it, and the result is that seen in the game. The meaning of the game 'Xenogears' must be understood from the whole, as Episodes IV and V are but parts of the whole while the stories of Episodes II and III must be pieced together from fragments.

Now, the still unveiled Episodes I and VI weigh on the mind, and it was thought that certainly, by all means it should appear in print. The transition from fragmentary stories to finished product shall come about gradually. One way to make this come about would be to ask Zohar "please" and see what happens.



# CONTENTS



The Truth of  
Episode V

.....2



History

.....6



Social  
Structure

.....18



Character

.....156



Drama

.....196



Character  
Gallery

.....206

Gear Official Materials Collection .....	92
Main Gear Official Art Gallery .....	106
Vessels Official Materials Collection .....	146
Short Story .....	204
Image Photograph ~if~ .....	234
Tolone and Seraphita's attempt to give up army terms .....	280
Main Staff of Xenogears .....	288
Discussion 'What did the users want from the work?' .....	290
Terminology Index .....	294
Afterword .....	302



Geography
.....38

Monster
.....54

Science
.....66

Gear
.....78



**Xenogears PERFECT WORKS ~the Real Thing~**



From the birth of Deus  
to the game's adventure . . .

Both the truth and history of  
'Xenogears' are explained

The work of 'Xenogears' has a long history of 10,000 years. For example, while the story of Fei and the others' actions tells only a small part of the story, it provides the "basis" for a history that is by no means insignificant.

Of course, the view of the world is constructed with only one history in mind, one that begins 15,000 years ago. In this case, the story's history will be explained in detail by beginning with the facts of the era in which Zohar is discovered.



# Before Humankind set out for the universe . . . an Object was discovered.

Before mankind set out for the universe...they accidentally found the origin of species.

The Third Millenium time Period The Beginning

Year 2001 A.D. . . . Humankind excavates an unknown object.

Panspermia

Cosmologist Fred Hoyle advanced the theory of panspermia, explaining that "the origin of the universe is in space". Since then it has been proven that there are a great number of comets containing organic matter, and one theory proposed that life actually came from space.

Study Life was born from Zohar!?

Approximately 4.5 billion years ago, the planet earth was born in the vastness of space. The earth was at a fairly high temperature at this time with carbon dioxide and vapor making up much of the atmosphere. After this, the earth's temperature slowly began to cool down, the atmosphere and the vapor became a downpour, becoming the 'sea' of life's origins. And so, approximately 500 million years later -- about 4 billion years before the present, earth's beginning life is born . . .

However, opinion held that in the case of the theory that "life originated from earth nearly 500 million years after its birth" was much too soon and "couldn't some form of drive have accelerated the birth of life?"

This sort of thinking and meteorite theory led to the birth of the panspermia hypothesis which might not be totally unfounded. Now, the basis of these theories was that the stratum in which Zohar had been discovered, believed to date from the time of the earth's formation and it became clear that the time when Zohar existed in the earth was nearly coincident. That Zohar might have directly 'made it' is a radical way of thought and it is more accurate to conjecture at this point in time to have 'accelerated' it . . .

Only, because so little about Zohar is referred to in the story, nothing clearly established has been said. However, it remains the 'core' of the world view of "Xenogears", as should be expected from the above stated comments.

Long ago, there was an era that came to be called historically "the Last coming of the Messiah". With the words left behind by notorious prophets to end their groundless fears, humankind faced the next 1000 years as the Third Millenium began.

It was the year 2001 A.D.

Because an eye shaped "Object" was discovered in a stratum dating to about 3.9 billion years ago, it was known as a distinctly "artificially created form".

One discovery shook the whole world.

Finally, due to the efforts of a research consortium, a partial hypothesis in the case of the "Object" was announced and released to the world.

"Buried beneath the accumulation of geological strata dating back to the era of life's origins, this very "Object" is the basis of all lifeforms, the 'artificial' panspermia" (pan-universe seed-child) " however . . .

In the beginning, the hypotheses took on a greatly romantic meaning, the "Object's interpretation a jumble of conflicting theories, all springing from disordered conjecture.

The center of the reasoning world was devastated. However, while their theory was vague, a theory based on reliable grounds did not exist.

With many theories all vying with one another, what is the "Object"? It is a question of long ago -- Was it an artificial construct, or a mere by-product of chance, a riddle which was never made entirely clear? The extent of the aimless confusion only grew deeper and theories, often without proof, again only produced hahazard results.

But those theories' increase resulted in a measurement that brought about a coming to an end of things.

According to that era's measurements, it became clear that the "Object" had existed a distant 15 billion years ago in immense antiquity, separated from the universe at the time of the world's creation.

With the announcement of these measurements, they wandered in bewilderment and became engrossed in the deep riddle. While the "Object" might not be an artificial creation, it was already the province of god. As a result, because of its fairly strong surrounding magnetic field, it became known for convenience sake as MAM (magnetic abnormal matter) and the international-scale analysis, with its applied research project and all attendant questions were for all purposes frozen.

One part ended up in automatic researchers' hands, but only a close analytical operation continued and so, among the researchers, it came to be known by another name. The name of Zohar.

西曆 A.D.

2510 The world-scale project for emigration to space is set in motion. The "Directorate" is established with the aim of completing the emigrant project 15 years later. From that point on the era name is reformed to T.C. (Transcend Christ), after this one year equals 365 days - providing the basis for the standard stellar year.

T. C. (Transcend Christ)

0016 16 years after the Directorate's founding the earnest wish of the people to spread out to the stars --which they had held for as long as 500 years at last was fulfilled-- and the earth became their mother as they were freed from gravity's rule. a fleet of emigrant ships was organized and set ut for the abyss of space. After that, the earth became an inviolable region a "forbidden place" and was called "Lost Jerusalem". (The reason for this is unknown, for it is thought that the planet's surroundings did not greatly change.)

0294 Approximately 250 years elapsed as the emigrant fleet wandered, at last reaching the M24 Archer Constellation where they deployed ships in order to discover possible planets to reside in. Landfall. The new planet becomes the promised land and is named "Neo Jerusalem" and it was there they began to dwell.

0295 The Star Cluster Federation is inaugurated. "Neo Jerusalem" becomes the Federation's first Prime Star. The Emigrant governing organization, the "Directorate" is unified then reorganized. The first President is elected. After, "Neo Jerusalem" is chosen as the chief cardinal point as, once again, humankind heads out to the abyss of space.

◆Blank space of 4500 Years.



From 10thousands of years ago...to 15thousands, it was the period of scientific technology.

Neo Jerusalem - the first world capable of supporting life that was acquired by humanity. Establishing a base on this planet, once again they pushed outwards. Even though they grew in knowledge, it was only scientific - their spiritual 'expansion' did not occur. And so, there was a sudden outbreak of a large scale war . . . , and the living creature Deus . . . .  
So even though freed from gravity's pull and expanding their frontier out into space, the same thing began to happen all over again.

4740 4744 4748 4752 4756 4760

T. C. (Transcend Christ)

Interstellar war intensifies/Deus out of control

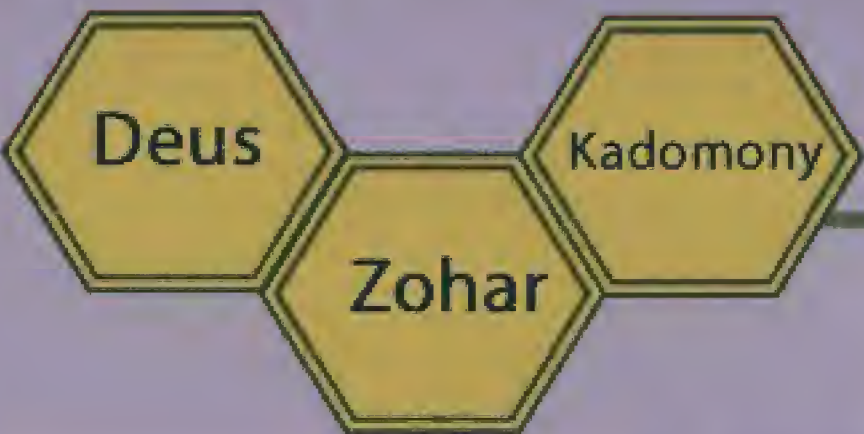
The 7th Millenium

4743	Due to the efforts of 'other' archaeologists, at last an artifact from the former -Lost Jerusalem's- time, -MAM- (abnormal magnetic matter-) and -Pilgrim Fleet- as they are called are found (it is thought) in the storeroom of a museum ship that is part of a wandering religious sect's fleet.	4766	With the controlling system -Kadomony-, the completion of Zohar seems almost completed. Now, at the center is -Kadomony- that has as its central core the protocol center, -Persona-, and like the inner workings of -MAM- its processes are unknown. That same year, interstellar war appears to be reaching its climax, and in the midst of all this system -Deus is completed.
4744	After approximately 5000 years, analysis of MAM begins once more.	4767	During a series of experiments on both systems in NGC 6744 (note 1) three months after Zohar is made Deus' main power source, construction of a space station in stationary orbit is begun at Miktam 048 colony planet which is undergoing colonization and terraforming. That year, during a series of experiments, an accident in which both systems run out of control for unknown reasons occurs. The rampaging Deus begins to invade the nearby colony at Miktam. Unnumbered casualties result. The military, fearing Deus' overwhelming fighting power, at last subdue it at the cost of many lost lives and place it in suspended animation. Afterwards, Deus is dismantled into its various cores and sealed. For the sake of the official investigation into the accident that caused it to go out of control and for further planning, the Super Space Cruiser, the Eldridge is requisitioned. Deus is loaded on board for transferral to another planet. Now, the Eldridge takes on the workers and survivors from the nearby planet (about 1.2 million people) as refugee passengers.
4750	As a result of -MAM- analysis, the theory of phenomenon phase shift is born.		
4751	All the research groups attempt to master this, using -MAM- as its core, so as to turn suppositional theory into proven fact. -Project Zohar- commences.		
4752	Strife in the region intensifies.		
4765	Due to an accident(the cause of which is unknown), -Project Zohar- causes the destruction of a planet. MAM is found floating in a the nearby region and recovered.		

Philadelphia Class Super Space Cruiser - The Second Ship  
ELDRIDGE

Various ships and vessels appear throughout the story, these were brought along with the Eldridge at the time of its fall to the planet. Here is introduced for the first time the vessels loaded onboard and the division of the ship into blocks.

Front Block Babel	For a ship on the scale of the Eldridge, every major block is made to be fully functional on its own. The one, fore block Babel, becomes Babel Tower in the story. Also in the case of the fore block, it contains a large scale plant for HLV use. When Shevat was built, this became its central block section.
Middle Block Mahanon	The block containing the computer -Raziel- that governs the entire Eldridge. Like the fore block Babel, it achieves a soft landing due to its indepenent navigational ability. In the case of Raziel, the first fusion of an alien civilization's weapon and biological information, it records material regarding Deus. It is for this reason, afraid that this information could leak to human beings that the Gazel Ministry use Gate technology to prevent anyone from going to Mahanon.



The strongly restrained Deus in suspended animation, with each core divided from the other is loaded onto the Eldridge. During the opening movie, when the operator calls out 'Alpha 1' it refers to the biological computer Kadomony's mainframe (primary protocol Persona). Omega 1 indicates Deus actual body.

Prayerstar - Fleet Cruiser Excalibur (NO.1)	After the Eldridge's crash, it was excavated by Shevat and restored. During the Great War of 500 years ago it was destroyed by Merkava's special attack with Sophia onboard. The second most powerful of the battleships.
Prayerstar - Reconnaissance Vessel Excalibur (NO.2)	Excavated at the same time by Shevat, it was also restored and during the story became the 'sword' for Yggdrasil. Incidentally, other battle class ships beside Excalibur are onboard.
Attack Land Cruiser Yggdrasil IV	The powerful Landing Cruiser, the Yggdrasil is able to respond to moving targets in space (like battle cruisers and colonies) and it has the ability to transform.
It's not overstaing to say that large scale ships with long range navigationsal abilities are on the scale of a small nation, equipped with military power. Of course, during the transport of Deus, the miliary power was upped considerably.	



## Deus' Revolt/Initiating the Self Resurrection Program

Foundation

4767 Even in suspended animation, Deus suddenly activates during the transfer. The sealed Zohar separates from Deus, hacks into the Eldridge's mainframe (artificial intelligence Raziell) and takes over. Activating space displacement mode, it plans to move the Eldridge and everyone onboard to the 'main star'. Temporarily given the position as the Eldridge's Captain by the Technology Research Headquarters as a special assignment (eradication) Special Corps Colonel Higeyoshi Inoue makes the decision to abandon the Eldridge, and devises a plan to use the central ship's bolt system to stop Deus. When it takes over the ship's explosive plug that task becomes impossible. There the central Spinal Shaft fusion bolt is exploded (note 2) This is the plan to sever the Spinal Shaft (note 3) so as to take the Eldridge out of space displacement mode, and in essence the loss of Spinal Shaft causes the Eldridge to lose the ability to maintain mass balance, and shortly thereafter, it is caught by the nearby planet's gravity, and plunges into the atmosphere. Due to the effects of gravity, the main body of the Eldridge begins to break up. Nearly all the blocks are destroyed by the friction of the atmosphere, and the sudden impact with the surface causes a great release of energy. Only the block with emergency navigational ability is able to soften the landing. It escapes complete destruction, but it is not known if there are any survivors. The central part of the ship's body where Deus is stored falls to the center of the ocean and sinks to the sea floor. Zohar's actual body falls at peak speeds of many kilometers per second. Immediately after, governing system Kadomony separates itself from Zohar's main body. It achieves a soft landing on the coast of a continent.

0000 -System HAWWA- activates and separates from the protocol -Persona's- base program -Elehayym-. The planet's first sentient beings are born. -System HAWWA- forms the founders of human beings, Cain and the 12 people of Gazel from -Animus-, parts of Kadmony. Elehayym and Miang split from the manager -System HAWWA-. The plan to reconstruct the enormous Deus System (in reality Zohar) is begun. The Eldridge's only survivor (it is thought), the boy Abel (at that time 7 years old), meets the newly separated Elehayym. Cain and the others, making use of Kadomony's functions, begin to produce the prototype of different species (human beings). Those life forms that are called humans rapidly increase at an exponential rate for a short period of time, however the pace of this slows down shortly thereafter.

0010 Cain begins to be worshiped as the advent of god among the people. Abel rebels against this worship. The thinking of Abel becomes a hindrance to Cain.

0011 Cain plans to eradicate the foreigner, Abel. Elehayym dies in Abels' place. Miang observes this in silence.

4764

4768

0000

0004

0008

0012

## - Eldridge -

The Eldridge as a colony ship is the second of the space cruisers in the Philadelphia Class. The colony resides in the hull of the ship. In the beginning scene, the streets are visible from an opening in the ship's gunwale. The Eldridge is requisitioned by the military on a temporary basis for the transferral of Deus. For this reason, the 8 members of the bridge's crew are military personnel.

## SPEC DATA

Normal Weight	27 Billion Tons
Widest measure	42 Kilometers
Long range effect	100 kilometers

## Chronology Supplement

Note 1) These digits indicate its place in the Hubble classification system. The next, Miktam, shows the name of the star system, the next two digits signify the fourth planet in the system. In the case of the satellite in upper orbit it is further denoted by 800. The last,  $\beta$  indicates that the planet is classified as one whose environment is capable of being reconstructed, some amount of atmosphere and a sea as well - a planet needing reconstruction. Also this class isn't permanently fixed, it corresponds to the reconstruction level of the environment, so that  $\alpha$  indicates its current level of progress. (The result is that the class  $\alpha$  is not to be shown,) because the active state of reconstruction is class  $\gamma$ . The difficulties on the planet below for making a profit are many. In the end, in the case of the star Miktam's fourth planet, it rates as a reconstruction class  $\beta$  planet - that is the meaning of this designation.

Note 2) The original use of the Spinal Shaft's separation function, large scale module collection facilities are placed in various points throughout the Eldridge's hull for convenient separation, in the case of continual use, module exchange facilities are present.

Note 3) One reason the bolt was exploded was because it was judged that Deus would seize the approximately 9 portions of the ship's hull and control it. Normally, it is unusable during flight navigation, thus the reason for the joined bolt, showing that it is already under Deus' control.

## The Universe 10,000 years ago

Approximately 5000 years after humanity leaves the nest of the mother planet, (earth) the complex array of small nations band together forming the Galactic Federation. Held together by the central governing body, the -Directorate-, the outer frontier nations begin small skirmishes. Rivalries, space pirates and the like become the accepted norm, finally causing the outbreak of interstellar war.

Also, at around this time, the previously unknown whereabouts of -MAM- changes when it is discovered on the ship of an ancient religious sect. And what is the meaning of all this...? That will need to be determined by succeeding generations, but after a period of almost 5000 years, the analysis of -MAM- is begun once more. And in the process of analyzing -MAM-, there is Zohar phase shift theory and Kadomony... After that Deus is born. However, at that time, scientists did not have full control.

## The Main Star Deus was heading for...

During the opening movie, Deus takes over Raziell and engages space displacement mode planning to take the Eldridge to the -Main Star-. The -Main Star- is not this era's prime star, Neo Jerusalem, but Lost Jerusalem... in other words it is heading for earth.

In regards to the measures taken by Deus to plot a course for earth, this is never explained fully in the story. However, the people of this time certainly revere it as the 'holy star' Lost Jerusalem. The year T.C. 16 from the time that humanity set out for the stars marked the time when earth became "the forbidden place" and it is said that about this time it became impossible to enter its zone. Why earth becomes inaccessible no one knows, at least it is thought that no sudden change took place in the region. In the case of earth, it is wondered, "what kind of secret" could be hidden there?



## The Influence of the Wave Existence The Self-revival Program of Deus

Deus is wounded by the self-destruction and fall of the Eldridge, in order to restore its own body, "people as parts" are mass produced. As for what it wants . . . It looks towards coming fights to achieve complete revival. But the bottom of this revival is tied in with the "Wave Existence's will" which fell into the third dimension.

### ■ The Purpose of differentiating into Miang Hawwa

Why differentiate into Miang Hawwa? While it is difficult now to understand the reason, it is probably tied in with the Wave Existence's "Will". Original Elehaym resulted from its contact with Abel, and was formed by biological computer Kadomony, her body evolved by protocol -Persona-. This is Elehaym, the existence brought into being due to Abel and the Wave Existence. Also, the construction of her living essence, is due to the management of Deus. Original Elehaym is part of both Deus and the Wave Existence. As supporting evidence, in the opening movie, the words 'exon replacement' appear. Here, the primary goal for changing Original Elehaym into Miang Hawwa is the activation of Deus. To put it simply, the "ON" state of Deus is called Miang, and the "OFF" state is called Elehaym. So, after Miang creates humanity's founders, Cain and the others, Elehaym and Miang are differentiated. Here, responding to Abel's recurring wish, the Wave Existence supplies the "Mother's will". And so, Elehaym's differentiation from Miang is done so that she may provide the role of "mother" to the Contact, Abel. Without the Wave Existence's Advent, would it have been necessary to have Elehaym divided from Miang?

### ■ The Important Factor for Revival

In order for the living weapon Deus to revive itself, it needed to use the existing humans as live parts. However, just growing human beings would not achieve complete revival. It also needed the very "nature" of the human body. Also, the parts produced by Kadomony, -Anima- and -Animus- . . . The protocol -Persona- is also an indispensable factor. Here all the necessary factors for Deus' resurrection are explained one by one.

factor  
1

### Human beings as parts

For the various kinds called humans, the change in exterior form due to the environment results in a "unique shape and function" becoming attracted to the body. As for the meaning of "humans" the living body is reformed with an inborn fate. For the sake of spurring on the advancement of these reforms, the Gazel push forward the 'M Project' resorting to artificial measures. It involves the construction of Merkava's materials with the eventual goal of turning humans into angels. Also, a measure for inducing reform, "Reset" is used to go about doing this. (Like using nuclear power during the Zeboim era when reform was desired). However, doubts have surfaced. As living parts for Deus, the question arises, "What are humans needed for?" In this instance, the reason exists in history. As "experimental bodies for the coming war", the human form is grown and formed into a living body. And so, after the complete resurrection they are used to simulate the battle against the hostile power of the enemy. To prove the truth of this; the Miang of 500 years ago incited the contact between Lacan and Zohar, thus resurrecting the Diabolos Corps. The Diabolos Corps are a first stage of Deus' form as mobile terminals. Miang tests the abilities of humans and the differences between them and the Diabolos Corps in battle.

### During a series of experiments

During a series of tests on Deus and Zohar, the Wave Existence fell from the higher dimension where it had dwelled. Also at that time, one small boy happened by chance to come into contact with it. This contact had a great effect on "Deus' Self-resurrection Program" afterwards.

Wave Existence  
Upper dimension

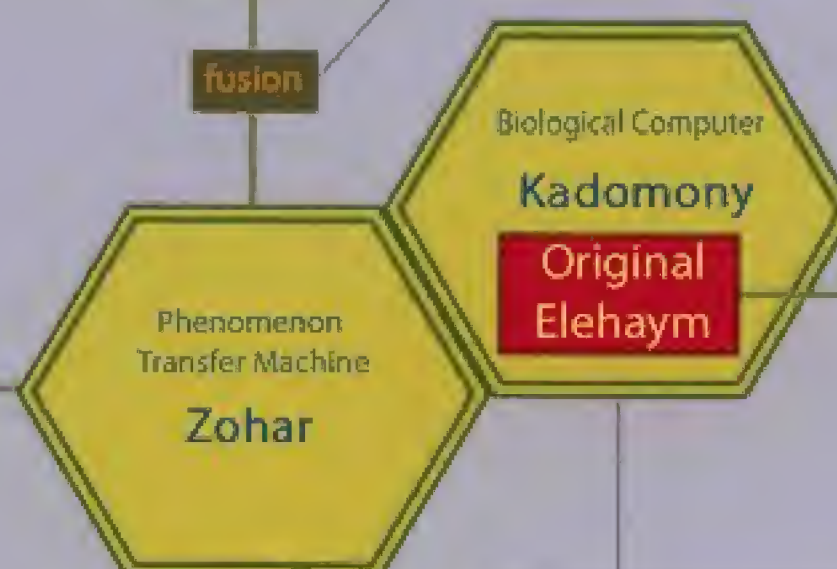
Path of Sephirot

Wave Existence Side

Deus side



Due to Zohar acting as a phenomenon transfer machine, an experiment is held to determine whether it will activate Deus. Due to Zohar's phase shift, in the process creating infinite energy, it is also called a machine of infinite renewable resource.

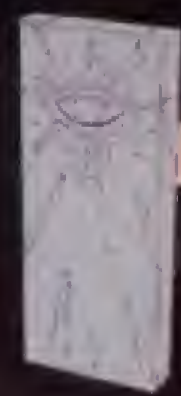


A woman born when the Wave Existence made contact with Abel during a series of experiments on Deus and Zohar. During the story the Wave Existence, "responding to Abel's earnest wish", formed Elehaym and gave her a mother's will. . . However, the truth appears to be much deeper than that.

An existence from a higher dimension without any material body. An unfathomable "Wave" like object. Before the birth of the universe, there was one being where all was "wave existence within a wave-like dimension". Due to Zohar's phenomenon transfer, to avoid crisis it fell to the third dimension.

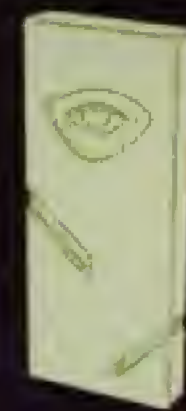
During a series of experiments that were top-secret even within the military, a mysterious boy stood there by "chance". He gained mysterious powers due to his contact with the Wave Existence.





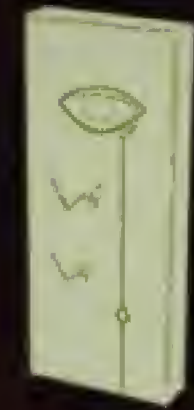
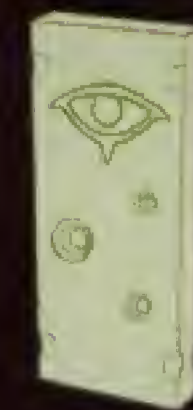
### Zohar

Approximately 5000 years ago an unknown "Object" was discovered. Its main body being the eye shaped portion, it was said to be the product of an "uber-technology".



### Anima Relic

One of the parts of Kadomony. When fused with non living matter, it plays the central role as one of Deus' terminal interfaces.



factor  
2

### Anima and Animus

Anima is the name given to those of the living parts forming the biological computer Kadomony. It is one of the indispensable factors in the resurrection of Deus. However, the Anima were scattered to every corner of the earth at the time of the Eldridge's fall to the surface when it self-destructed and all knowledge of them was lost. Roused to action, the Gazel Ministry began to look for their locations, but because they could not determine where they fell, the search continues into the present day.

Due to the actions of Miang Hawwa, the forms of the -Animus- were changed into humanity's founders, (Cain and the others). -Animus- in the form of living humans are needed as working corps for the revival of Deus. Having become the original form of Animus, Cain and the others as the 13 members of the Gazel search for the next ten thousand years for the Anima Relics that make up the parts of Deus. The humans forming parts for Deus are developed and managed thereafter.

Study

### Deus' desired resurrection

Created as a mobile interstellar weapon, Deus is programmed with hostile destructive power. However, due to its having run out of control in a series of experiments, it began to destroy an Allied Fortress. Upon receiving this information, the military overwhelmed Deus at the cost of a great many casualties and placed it in suspended animation. Afterwards, in order to aid in the investigation into the cause for its running out of control, Deus is transferred to another star system, but on the way, it falls to the planet that appears in the story. At last, 10,000 years having elapsed since its fall to the planet, Deus puts into motion its completed plan for resurrection. Even though the passage of those 10,000 years are almost an eternity for the humans, it may be just an instant for the weapon Deus. However, doubt remains. And that is, after the resurrection is it possible that the hostile power that it relied on will continue to exist? That is the question. In any case, its thoughts turn to the possibility that a hostile culture could in fact destroy it. The resurrection plan is simply the will of it as a weapon – if it is merely about destroying a hostile enemy, clearly the extraordinary cost of the plan is not in equal measure. From this it can be seen that Deus does not just want to destroy an enemy force, but it can be inferred that possibly, another goal exists. The crux of the matter is that while Deus was in transit amid all the other star systems of the Interstellar Federation, it made plans to go to the mother planet. In terms of the complete revival of Deus, in this case, is this the entirety of all that it absolutely "must do no matter what"?

factor  
3

### Elehaym and Miang

The protocol of biological computer Kadomony -Persona-, is an integral part in controlling Zohar. However, in order to effect the revival of Deus, Original Elehaym in the form of Miang Hawwa is needed to create the Gazel. Afterwards, Miang Hawwa divides from Elehaym and returns to the molecular reconstruction plant. With Elehaym as mother and Miang as weapon, she continues to work behind the scenes of history. Fundamentally, Cain becomes the manager for those 13 people whose forms contain Animus, Elehaym is programmed to awaken as the "Last Miang" on the Day of Resurrection and merge with Deus.

### Activation of the repair program

Determining that it will not escape the destructive impact with the surface at the time of the Eldridge's fall, Deus separates from Kadomony. After Kadomony achieves a soft landing, Miang Hawwa awakens and forms the founders of humanity, Cain and the others. So, preparing for the day when it might be revived, Deus begins its long slumber on the ocean floor.

### Abel

The only survivor at the time of Eldridge's crash. According to the Wave Existence's will, he is fated to be the destruction of Deus.

### Anima Relics

The living elements that make up biological computer Kadomony. After the crash of the Eldridge, their whereabouts become unknown.

Awakes

Miang Hawwa

Forming

Animus Original Form

Forming

Animus

Differentiates

Main Body

Supplemental Body

Elehaym (Elly)

Miang (MOOOO)

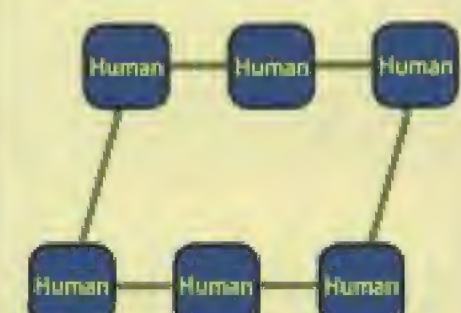
Miang Hawwa having created Cain and the others, returns inside the molecular reconstruction plant, after forming Elehaym and Miang from herself.

The ancestors of humanity formed from living elements -Animus- of Kadomony. Afterwards they began to mass produce those humans who would be parts for Deus.

Emperor Cain

Gazel Ministry (12)

Those humans made by Cain and the others become diversified into their various kinds. Formed using Kadomony, their evolution is advanced.





# The destruction of the modern culture by nuclear war

A highly-advanced civilization have already existed four-thousands of years ago, but it.....

The humans created by Cain and the others attain their intellectual peak, heading towards a glorious time. However due to inborn genetic flaws, the people of this time are beset with worry over the fact that their average life span is shortening. This era's Miang, as administrator of humanity judges that the humans of this era are flawed and can not be used as parts for Deus. Expecting that due to the widespread radioactivity, humans will suddenly mutate she beigns to lay the groundwork for the full scale outbreak of nuclear war.



Est. Calendar

## Nanotechnology's potential / Miang's plot

## Zeboim Culture

- 6053
- Twin sisters awake as Miang (M0611 and M0612)
- 6055
- Kim is born. Elehaym is born.
- 6071
- Kim enters Federal University, enters medical school.
- 6074
- Taking college entrance exams, he enters the Faculty of the Biological Sciences Department. Here he begins research on molecular machines. That same year, Elehaym begins working at the Federal Hospital as a nurse.
- 6075
- Kim continues his studies at the insitution. That year he takes his Graduate degree.
- 6077
- For Kim, this is a period of transition from student to researcher, and he publishes a thesis in the academic world seeking -a way to reconstruct genes with molecular machines-. Specifically, the plan involves the proposal that nanomachine colonies be used to create artificial life. However, this proposal is seen as basphemy against god, and to avoid heresy, Kim is banished from the academic world. That year, having been driven out of the academic community Kim abandons moleculalr machine reasearch and re enters the medical department. His aim is to once again to tread the path towards becoming a doctor.

- 6078
- Miang judges that this era's humans are defective for becoming parts for Deus. The result of the meeting between Miang and the Ministry decides the outcome. As one of the close associates of Zeboim's Head of State, she begins to make preliminary arrangements for all-out nuclear war.
- 6079
- Kim becomes a Federal Government Doctor. He and Elehaym meet at the same hospital.
- 6081
- The anti-government group Ravine is involved in the exploding of the central electrical facility. Due to this terrorist act, the Capital city experiences a 50% blackout. The Federal Hospital also experiences an outage, and as a result of this, an unfortunate tragedy occurs when Kim loses the life of a young girl under his care. That year, Miang takes notice of Kim's thesis and conceals it, seeing its possibilities. Having simutated the measures for evolving humans , Miang contacts the Department's doctor, Kim and offers the use of a research facility as his sponsor. Accepting her offer, alongside his work as a Federal Doctor, he once again undertakes the research into molecular machines. That year, anti-government group Ravine also acquires Kim's thesis. Seeing the potential in the thesis for the creation of dangerous weapons, they also contact Kim.

### The Dying species

For those humans of this era who have become the third Annonelbe their time as this kind is coming to an end. Due to widespread inborn genetic damage, those incapable of leaving behind descendants began to increase. Originally the people of this era were a short-lived species (average life span around 30 years) and this truth leads them to despair, as their life cannot be extended . . . They feel outrage that only destruction lies in wait at the end of life. As the shaping administrator, Miang marks the situation judging that this era's humans are defective parts. As a result of the consultation between her and the Gazel Ministry, it is decided that humans will be "reset" using full scale nuclear war. The reason this era's people are called the third Annonelbe, is because humans had been 'reset' two other times in the past. Totally unaware of Miang's planning, Kim continues his reasearch, entrusting humanity's future to nanotechnology.

### Nanotechnology in use

Kim's proposed nanotechnology would replace the defective DNA with the correct genetic code supplied by machines. While a radical theory, the ultimate technolgy was in the manipulaton of human DNA . . . But that era's scientists judged that Kim's proposed research thesis was -blasphemy unto god, a great heresy completely out of the norm-. Kim was banished forcefully from the academic community, and afterwards he re entered medical school. The nanotechnology itself was thought to have been shelved . . . In Est. calendar year 6081, Miang got a hold of Kim's research thesis by chance, and with the expectation of reforming a new humanity she offered Kim a research facility. However, the future reform of humanity she desired was entirely different from the future that Kim desired. When Kim realized this later on, he contacted the anti-governemnt group Ravine.

### Zeboim's destruction and aftermath

At that time, Miang as a close advisor to the Head of State is manipulating the world behind the scenes. Relations with other countries are slowly worsened, and the outbreak of large scale war is only a matter of time. In order to deter this, the anti-government organization Ravine resists the government's military. At last, Kim having realized Miang's true nature, chooses diffent methods than Ravine and he determines to begin his own "independent war". As a result his research facility is invaded by the military and Elly is lost. Afterwards, Kim disappears having sealed himself up with Emeraldal. And so that same year, suddenly all-scale nuclear war breaks out over the entire surface of the earth. Other than the small part of humanity that seeks shelter and escapes, all are destroyed. In addition to this, after the nuclear holocaust large scale plate movements occur everywhere on earth. Beacue of this the Zeboim civilization sinks to the ocean floor, and for approximately 4000 years dissapears from human knowledge.



Est. Calendar

## Creation of Emeralda

Zeboim Civilization

- 6082 Ravine desires to recruit Kim into their organization but he rejects this. Discussions on both sides come to a mutual end. Afterwards, Ravine continues to persist in contacting Kim. At the end of that year on the day of the Thanksgiving Festival, Emeraldal is created.
- 6083 Having realized the true nature of his sponsor Miang, Kim transfers Emeraldal to a research facility prepared by Ravine. In an attempt to seize Kim's research, Miang moves the military in and special forces are sent into the facility. Elly is killed while the facility is under heavy attack and the invading forces are destroyed. Kim seals himself up with Emeraldal for eternity in the facility and disappears from history. Then full scale nuclear war breaks out. Due to heavy direct hits and the resulting radioactivity, as well as BC weapons, within little more than a year, more than 90% of the entire population is lost.
- 6084 The upper atmosphere is clogged with fine radioactive particles and nuclear winter sets in. Genetic laboratories on the ruined surface pour out various surviving animal test subjects. Around this time, Chu-chu gives rise to a new representative class of demi-humans.

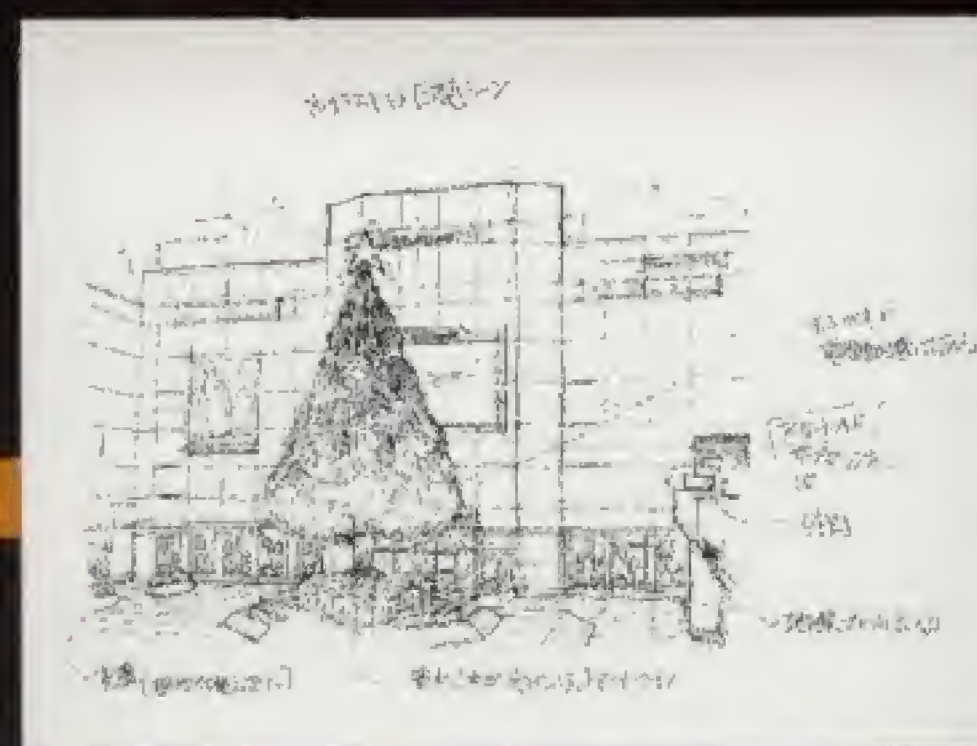
6074

6077

6080

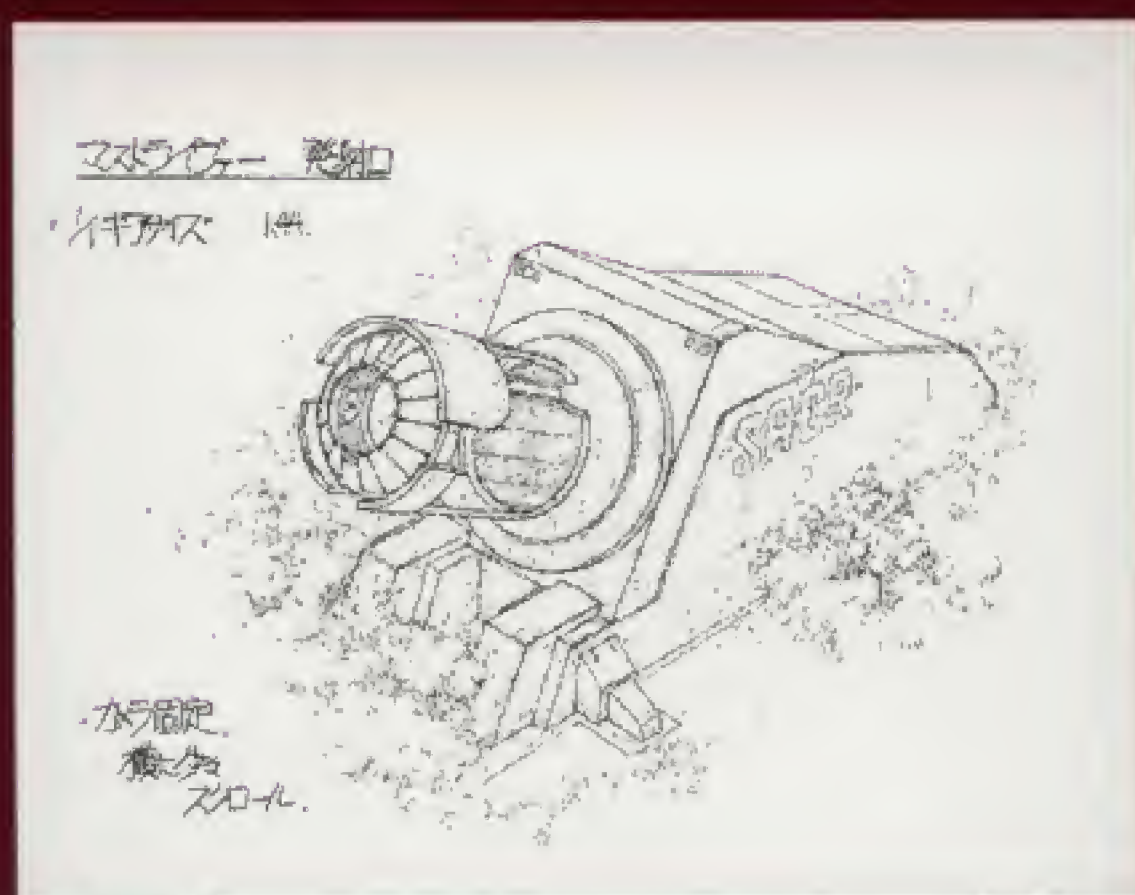
6083

6086



## The Mass-Driver left behind by Zeboim's civilization

The Mass-Driver makes use of magnetic energy to both repel and attract - with a corresponding object propulsion facility. Linear motor Car is one type of this. This was built in the Zeboim era for the launching of missiles. Originally the technology was designed to launch objects out into space, but the military made use of it as a tool of war. In the story, the facility is used for shooting out Taura's nanoassemblers.





# The first revolt by the created humans against the founders

The artifical human beings started to revolt against the gods, it happens about 500 years ago.

## An encounter

"You've come to kill me?"  
She spoke, standing before the man as though not afraid of her own death.  
A fleeting expression. A face that showed him as separated from all others,  
alone in the world.  
-colorless <monochrome> girl-  
And against that, he is stained in red.  
Those he had slaughtered, their blood stains his hands even now.  
and the man bathed in red, instead of answering her question, stands silent,  
and all the while his hands on the sword are shaking.  
"...I see, thank you"  
When did his will become a thing that could change? And all for a girl's gentle smile.  
And only for an instant, she appears in color.  
In a dark world bathed in hypocrisy and falsity, the shining purity of that smile -  
-these are his thoughts.  
This was the meeting of Elehaym and Krelan.  
(Extract from unrecorded script)

About 800 years ago, Cain and the others having judged humanity to have reached the final stage, found the elite nation, Solaris. Having managed the surface while remaining hidden until now, they decide for more direct governing. The surface, rebelling against this, forms the Anti-Solaris Alliance. In order to protect the dignity of huamn beings, they determine on all out war. However, within this group, there are those that seek to gain their own power. And so, humanity is left with unforgettable scars . . .

9080

9110

9140

9170

9200

9230

9260

## The founding of Solaris / the birth of Elehaym

Est. Calendar

Birth of the Nisan Sect

9088	Founder Adorielle begins the Nisan Sect's teachings.	9469	Roni Fatima, Rene Fatima are born.
9164	Cain and the others determine that humanity has reached the final level. Solaris is founded.	9475	Lacan is born at the eastern edge of Ignas (near present day Lahan). That year Elehaym is born to the bishop at the Ashura Monastery as the second daughter of three sisters.
9226	With Babel Tower as its base, Shevat is founded.	9481	Lacan is separated from both parents by death.
9301	Near the present day Aveh - Kislev border, Nimrod is founded.	9482	Elehaym is adopted by Cardinal Penuel. That year she enters Penuel's convent.
9440	Kusel Laodicia accedes as Nimrod's fifth King. The high point for the Laodicia Dynasty.	9483	In order to recover from illness, she is transferred to the eastern edge of Ignas where she returns to Ashura Monastery. That year, Lacan and Elehaym meet. Elehaym again returns to Penuel convent. At their parting, Lacan hands Elehaym a sketch of herself. She is renamed Sophia.
9453	The Nisan teaching is recognized by Kusel Laodicia as Nimrod's church.	9486	Zephyr is born as Shevat's third Queen.
9457	Bishop Penuel recieves the Nisan Bishoporic's investiture.		
9458	Penuel establishes the convent.		
9465	Krelan recieves life as an illegitimate child. That year his mother Elazaru dies.		

### The rise of the Nisan Sect

A time when very few people are able to use Ether, the Nisan Sect's founder Adorielle was one gifted with an unusual amount of Ether ability. Those people fascinated by this mysterious power revered Adorielle as "A messenger of god", and day by day the numbers of the faithful began to increase. Originally the Nisan Sect was a traditional "teaching" in the region Adorielle was from. It was hardly the stuff of which typical religions are made. However, Adorielle's ether ability developed this "teaching" into a regular religion. After Adorielle's death, her successors were chosen as "Women with high Ether ability", and Adorielle herself was the first Abbess of high Ether ability. In the time of Fei and the others, the Nisan Sect's teachings had been reformed by Mother Sophia, so that the current sect's beliefs were diffent compared to before.

### Nimrod and the Nisan Sect

Approximately 600 years ago, during a time of conflict between a number of small countries, the country of Nimrod was founded. At first it was recognized as a small country in comparison to others, but it slowly expanded its influence. At the time of the accession of the fifth King of Nimrod, Kusel Laodicia, it had grown to the second largest country next to Shevat. However at this time, governments were still in a state of turmoil, and Emperor Kusel, desiring an unshakeable authority, focused on the Nisan Sect which at that time had prospered. Their intimidation by surrounding countries was also part of the Emperor's plan even as he acknowledged the Nisan Church officially. From their first recognition as a Church, the Nisan sect accepted Emperor Kusel's assistance, and from there expanded swiftly. However, Emperor Kusel's goal was "The Nisan Sect's political uses" and knowing this, the order members rebelled against him. In the end, Penuel's convent came under attack.

### Sophia and Penuel Convent

Born as the second daughter of the Ashura Monastery's Bishop, Elly went to be the adopted daughter of Penuel Convent's mother as soon as she reached 7 years old. Having reached the height of her Ether ability from the time she was very young, Elly was qualified to be accepted into Penuel convent as a candidate for Mother. However, being born with congenital illness, before long Elly's condition grew worse. In order to try a cure, she was transferred back home to the Ashura Monastery at the eastern edge of Ignas. It was there that Elly met Lacan, and before a few months had passed, she returned to Penuel convent. And so, 5 years later Emperor Kusel enacted a plan to assassinate Sophia in the Penuel convent (The Incident of the attack on Penuel convent). The one chosen to attack Penuel and carry out the criminal act, Krelan, was unable to assassinate Sophia and for the next 7 years or so his whereabouts were unknown.



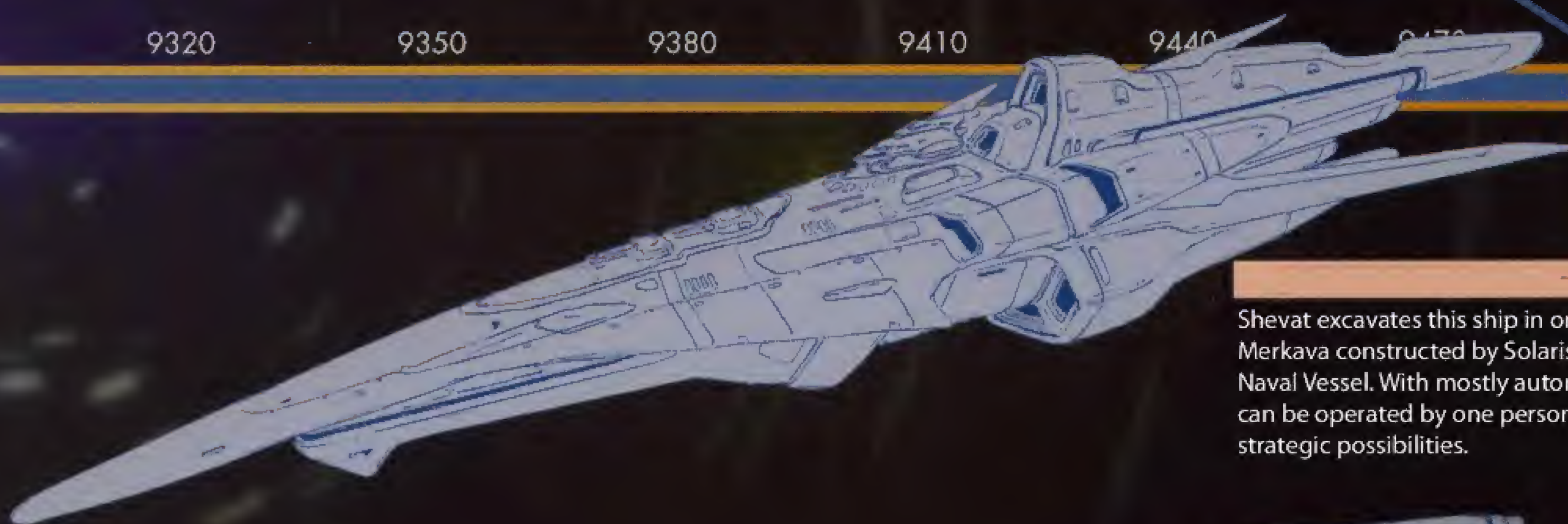
Est. Calendar

## Solaris War breaks out / Sophia's death

The Great War 500 years ago

9488	The attack on Penuel convent. Sophia and Krelan meet. Sophia is 13 years old. That year, the Nisan Sect undergoes a schism.	9496	Lacan and Sophia reunite at Ashura Monastery. That year the anti-Solaris Alliance is formed, with Shevat as its center. The Solaris War breaks out.
9490	Downfall of the Laodicia Dynasty. Kusel Laodicia is murdered. Nisan Church on the decline.	9497	Due to the effects of war, many refugees appear around the world. They head for Nisan. Lacan meets the leaders of a caravan group Roni and Rene, and form a partnership for the Alliance.
9493	On a trip visiting away from home, Lacan gets pulled into the conflict over rule with Solaris and there he meets Krelan. At this time, he thinks that Sophia and Krelan are together, and while he and Sophia see each other again, there is no reunion.	9499	An unforeseen result of the refugees coming to Nisan is that it's influence is increased. The Elder Council of Shevat send the third Queen, Zephyr as emissary. Nisan is drawn into the maelstrom of war along with the anti-Solaris Alliance. That year Solaris builds Soylen facilities all over the world. The discord between Miang and the Gazel Ministry comes out in the open. At the end of that year, at the urging of Krelan, Lacan begins painting Sophia's portrait.
9495	Having been seclusion for a period of seven years, the candidate for Mother, Sophia appears before the Nisan members. Because of the former Penuel's sponsorship, Sophia becomes the Mother. Sophia is 20 years old. She changes the Nisan name to the Nisan Orthodox. In the process, she changes many of the teachings as well. Jaqueline becomes the Mother's assistant adviser. That year, the convent's military Corps is formed. Krelan becomes their leader.	9500	Lacan and the others set out in search of the Anima Relics. In the process, Lacan learns of the existence of Zohar. For the four members of the Gazel Ministry who have gained Anima Relics, causing havoc among the nations of the world, are defeated by Lacan. The Gazel Ministers work out a secret trade with the Council of Elders in Shevat; the death of Sophia for the end of battle in Ignas. She perishes at the age of 25 years. Miang a captive in Shevat.

930 9320 9350 9380 9410 9440 9470 9500



— Merkava —

Determining 500 years ago that it was time to resurrect Deus, the Gazel Ministry constructed Merkava as Deus' mother ship. (Miang was against this, feeling the time was too early.) Constructed about midway through the Great War, it dealt a fairly heavy attack on Shevat and Nisan.



— Excalibur —

Shevat excavates this ship in order to combat the Merkava constructed by Solaris. It is a refurbished Naval Vessel. With mostly automatic functions, it can be operated by one person, and it has great strategic possibilities.

### The remaining scars from the Solaris War

In Est. calendar year 6496, the people rebelling against the management of the surface by Solaris are formed into the anti-Solaris Alliance with Shevat as its core. Several days afterward, the Solaris War breaks out. And so, the war continues without hope of victory for either side, and many people despair... it was a war that left a bad aftertaste.

In this case, Shevat who held together the Alliance army, was in accordance with Solaris behind the scenes. At that time, Shevat was ruled by several with authority called Elders. Their goal was merely to rule over the surface, and hindering that was the existence of Solaris. They saw their best opportunity when the people allied against Solaris. Going along with this, they formed the anti-Solaris Alliance in order to eradicate the troublesome Solaris. But, for the Elders who finally realized its awesome military might, secretly they began to try to negotiate a deal and in so doing betrayed the army of the Alliance.

However, the surface army felt no such unease in their hearts. And on the Solaris side, strife arose due to the actions of those in authority. At that time the people of the Gazel Ministry, Deus' parts... To put it succinctly, their aligning with Anima Relics in order to become terminal interface weapons for Deus. However, the Miang at that time expected that possibly there were humans with Ether ability. Those with Ether ability who aligned with an Anima Relic would have much more power than the Gazel Ministers who had no Ether ability and would be very desirable as weapons. Because of this, the Gazel Ministry found Miang's existence a nuisance, and they contacted the Elders of Shevat. They would give to Shevat half the land's surface for the freezing of Miang in carbonite. And added to this, a clause for the trade of Sophia.





# The humans’ third rise to power comes to a sudden end

The artifical human beings started to revolt against the gods, it happens about 500 years ago

At the end of the Ignas War -- the first type mobile terminal weapons of Deus, Diabolos are activated . . .96% of the human population is killed. This tragedy comes to be called “The Day of Collapse” and Roni and the others determine to see if by their actions anything can be done. However, Miang’s plan to newly reform humans is underway. And so, is there any way in which humanity’s fate can be altered. . .? At this time, no one has the answer.

9500                      9530                      9560                      9590                      9620                      9650                      9680                      9710

Appearance of the Diabolos Corps / Krelian's secret maneuvering		Est. Calendar
		Day of Collapse
9501	Roni discovers a vessel (present day Yggdrasil 4) loaded onto the Eldridge in an Ignas battlefield. In order to leave it to posterity, he orders his companions in the caravan to begin repairing it. Lacan sets free the imprisoned Miang from Shevat. Desiring Zohar he goes to the area of Bethlehem. That year Lacan and Zohar make contact. The incomplete contact gives rise to Grahf. Having become Grahf, Lacan awakens the Diabolos (Deus' first stage mobile terminals), and they proceed to annihilate the surface. Due to this destruction, 96% of the population is lost. Roni and the others as well as the survivors band together with all their power to resist the Diabolos. Having become the core, Original Weltall is placed in suspended animation, barely escaping destruction. Rene Fatima dies shielding his brother in the battle. Afterward, Lacan having become Grahf disappears to parts unknown.	9506 Krelian makes contact with Emperor Cain. He recompiles the Gazel Ministry's data, and moves it into the SOL - 9000.
		9510 Roni Fatima founds Aveh. That year, without anyone knowing, Lacan dies. Leaving only his will behind, it moves into those people who become Grahf.
		9511 Krelian visits Shevat. Life extension treatments are given to Zephyr on down to various leaders. Planning to rule behind the scenes, Solaris establishes the -Church- organization.
9502	Nisan is re-founded by those who escape the Day of Collapse. That year, the assistant advisor to the Mother Jacqueline gives birth to Rene Fatima's keepsake, Isolde. Later, Isolde becomes the Nisan Sect's Second Mother.	9513 Kislev is founded.
9505	Zephyr, along with the Three Sages, restores Shevat.	9698 Solaris begins the first invasion of Shevat. Due to Krelian of the Special Corps, Limiters are placed in the surface dwellers (Lambs)
		9701 The second invasion of Shevat by Solaris.

## The reason for Diabolos’ revival

For Miang, the resurrection of Deus is all there is, not what is in store in the coming battle after the resurrection . . . In other words, it is the destruction of the hostile power in space that is the “true goal” of all this. The Gazel Ministry understand this “true goal”, and while wishing for Deus (god) and full embodiment, their thoughts run more deeply than Miang’s. And so, Miang wishing the “complete resurrection of Deus” revives the Diabolos Corps. That era’s Miang has a strong interest in those possessing Ether ability, such as Lacan and Sophia, Roni and the others. And so, the fact that the first stage mobile terminals Diabolos don’t have Ether ability becomes the biggest factor. If mobile interfaces such as Diabolos had Ether ability . . . and from there could achieve a perfect revival . . . This was Miang’s thought, once more desiring to

reform humans, and using the Diabolos to carry out the ‘reset’. As a result, only those humans with high Ether ability would survive, and those humans, becoming parts for Deus, would finally evolve to the last stage. Also, there is another reason for having revived Diabolos. That is to simulate the coming battle using the Diabolos. In the case of Diabolos, a distant 10, 000 years before, they had activated as Deus’ first stage mobile terminals. These weapons were also being tested to see if they might be used in the coming battle after the resurrection. And so around this time, desiring embodiment and the merging with Deus, the Gazel Ministers set about activating the Gaetia Key. The Diabolos attack was not only on the surface, but extended to Solaris as well. The inherent meaning of the activation of the Key is what put a stop to it.

## Glossary

-Gaetia Key- From the very beginning, humans were changed to be born as parts for Deus, due to gene manipulation (M Plan). Those people with altered genes, constructed human kind, were called -Sufaladie-, and fated to become parts of Merkava and terminal battle weapons. The Gaetia Key was meant to activate those people that had been created as building parts for Deus and cause them to revert to their original form (parts). It was decided to use it on the day of Deus’ resurrection.





Est. Calendar

## Ignas War breaks out / relationship of various people

The Time of the Gospel

9715	War breaks out in Ignas. Kiselv issues Aveh a declaration of battle lines.		enter Jugend with Ramsus' recommendation.
9959	Krelian initiates the fifth stage of the Malakh Plan. He comes into contact with Miang (996).	9986	Maria is born to father, Nikolai Balthasar and mother, Claudia. That year the Elements are started. Jessie, Ramsus, Citan and Sigurd take positions.
9965	Jesiah is born as the child of father, Abram Blanche and mother, Mariah.	9987	Minister Shakhan causes a coup d'etat. Bart and Margie are locked away. After a month, Sigurd escapes out of Solaris. After coordinating with Maison, he rescues Bart and Margie.
9969	Due to a secret plot influenced by the church, Rico is born as a demi-human. Meant to succeed Sigmund as the ruler of Kislev, he was banished along with his mother, Anna in order to hide the truth of his demi-human birth.	9990	Before accepting a position as a Gebler commander, Jessie flees with his family from Solaris. At the end of that year, Maria's mother Claudia dies. Due to her grandfather Balthasar, Maria escapes Solaris riding on Seibzehn.
9970	Hyuga (Citan) is born as the 9th child of father, Shouki Ricdeau and mother, Luli. Sigurd is born to father, Edbart IV the King of Aveh, and mother, Shalimar Harcourt.	9991	Rico becomes Battling King.
9975	Due to Krelian, Ramsus is born as a copy (0808191 Rameses) of the Emperor. After about 10 years, he is left in the waste collection facility.	9992	Citan takes the post as director of strategy for the third invasion of Shevat. At that time, Jessie enters the surface gorilla Corps led by Gaspar. That year, Billy's younger sister Primera is born.
9978	Jesiah enters the school at Jugend.	9993	Jessie runs away and disappears from his family's place. That year, Elru is totally subdued by Solaris. At the end of that year, Margie becomes the Nisan Mother.
9979	Because of the Church's doctors, Rico's mother Anna is overwhelmed and dies from a wasting illness.	9994	Elly enters the school at Jugend. That year, Citan marries Yui. Midori is born. At year's end, Jessie meets Shevat's Engineer Josiah Black. After his death, Jessie has plastic surgery.
9981	Fei is born as the child of Khan Wong and mother, Karen. Elly is born as a girl to Erich Van Houten and mother, Medina. Edbart IV and Empress Mariel's heir Bart is born. That year, Sigurd's mother Shalimar dies. At the funeral, Sigurd sees his father Edbart IV for the first time. Afterwards, he enters the Aveh palace as the Heir's appointed Guardian.	9995	Bart's Gear Brigandier is completed. Decorated in first battle. That year due to attack by Wels, Billy's mother dies. At Stone's urging, he enters the -Church- Monastery.
9982	Due to a germ experiment at a Soylent facility, a plague breaks out in Solaris' Third class citizen level. Even though still young, the genius Hyuga relieves the effects of poison in an experiment.	9996	Fei's father fights Grahf again. He bears the wounded Fei to Lahan. That year, according to a secret directive from Emperor Cain, Citan goes to the surface. He takes the name, "Citan Uzuki". After that, joining his family in Shevat, he moves with them to Lahan village. That year, Maria goes with Balthasar to Shevat.
9983	Margie is born as daughter to Nisan Mother Elvira Fatima and father, Francis Revane. Billy is born as boy to Jesiah Blanche and Racquel. That year, Sigurd is kidnapped as a Solaris test subject.	9997	Due to a slave generator accident, Bart and Sigurd lose their left eyes, and wear an eyepatch. At the end of that year, Billy's father Jessie returns to him.
9985	Karen awakens as Miang. She starts conducting spiritual fusion experiments on Fei. Coming in contact with Krelian, Karen tells him to abandon Ramsus. Ramsus kills Second level citizen Kahran Bekker and merges with him. After taking on Bekker's ID, he enters Jugend. There he meets a girl whose name he doesn't know (later, the present Miang). 10 months after Karen awakens as Miang, she dies due to Fei going berserk (the present Miang awakens). Halfway through that year, Hyuga and Sigurd	9998	Due to an overdose of Drive, Elly heavily wounds her fellow class mates. Her father Erich accepts the post of SS Director. That year, Billy becomes an official Etone. Afterwards, he opens the orphanage.
		9999	The game starts here.



## *Social structure*

A complex structure of influence and power  
What is it these powers have done at times  
and what is the desired result . . . ?



Created by biological computer Kadomony, humans evolved over the succeeding generations, and in the process formed various societies and civilizations. If the fate of all of this is decided by "Deus' resurrection Program" . . . Desiring the revival of Deus, Cain and the 12 people of Gazel observed behind the scenes. Their aim to construct Solaris 800 years ago, and the path from the Great War 500 years ago to the forming of present day nations . . . Here the movements of those said powers' influence and structure provide a glimpse of historic truth, and the change of societal structure and influence is explained.





#### Nisan Cathedral / The Angel Statues

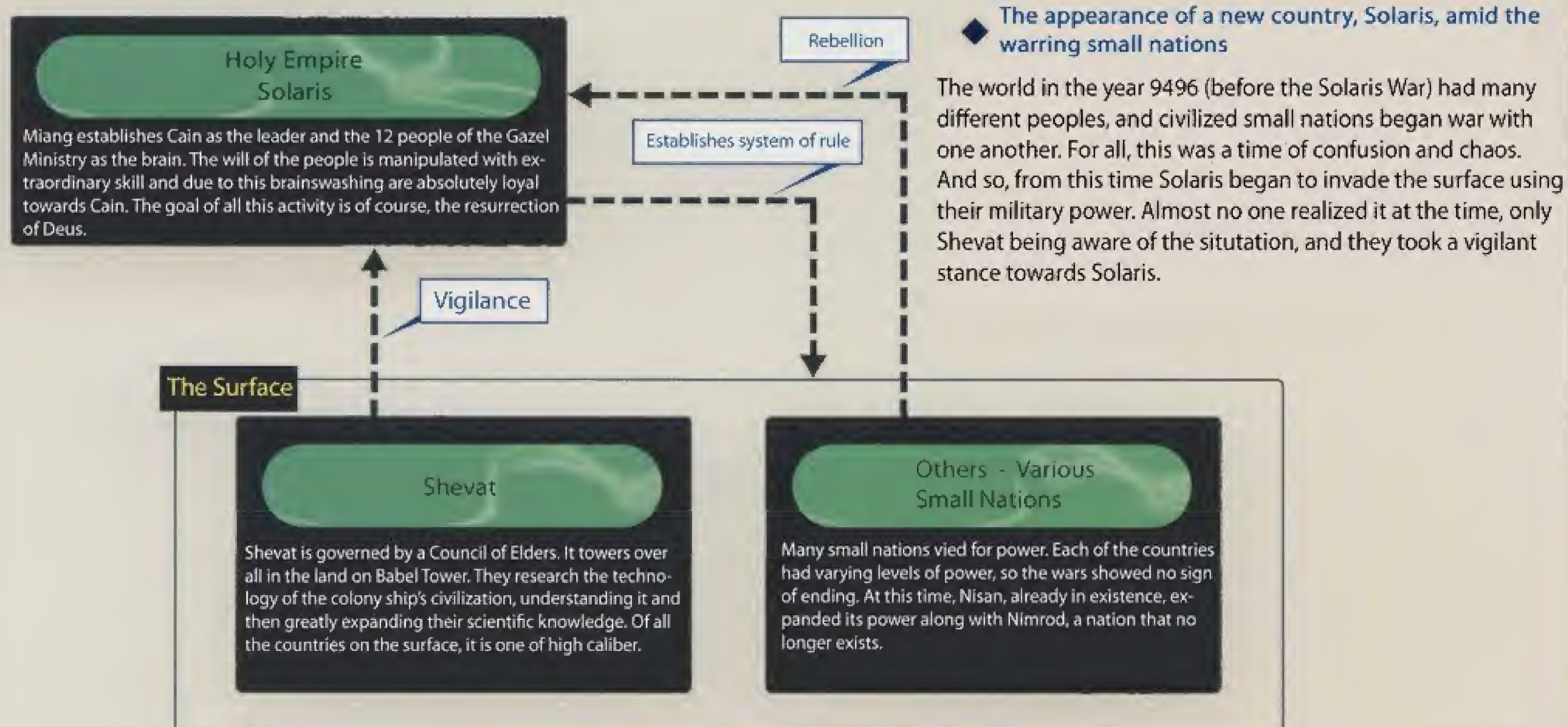
Starting about 500 years ago, The Nisan Creed has suddenly grown. Today's Nisan religion has come to be almost exactly like Sophia's ideal according to her words and actions. In the The Nisan Cathedral are two one-winged angels. If each person one by one helps and aids another . . . They evoke this wish by Sophia.



## The plan for surface rule and the appearance of Solaris on the chart of history

Many hundreds of years before, when small nations are fighting with one another across the entire surface of the earth, once again there is a small impact. And so time flows, and Established Calendar year 9164 (835 years ago), planning to govern the world behind the scenes, the Emperor and the Gazel Ministry are engaged in secret plots, and so Miang establishes -The Solaris Empire- . Solaris is the country constructed in the stratosphere that looks down upon the land. And so, one after another making their landing, the army comes boasting great power. Those nations in rebellion on the surface, are overpowered one by one, and placed under government control . . . And so, considering the changes in all those countries' power along with the advent of Solaris, the world's path to the Solaris War is a matter of resesarch and conjecture.

### Nations in power 835 years ago

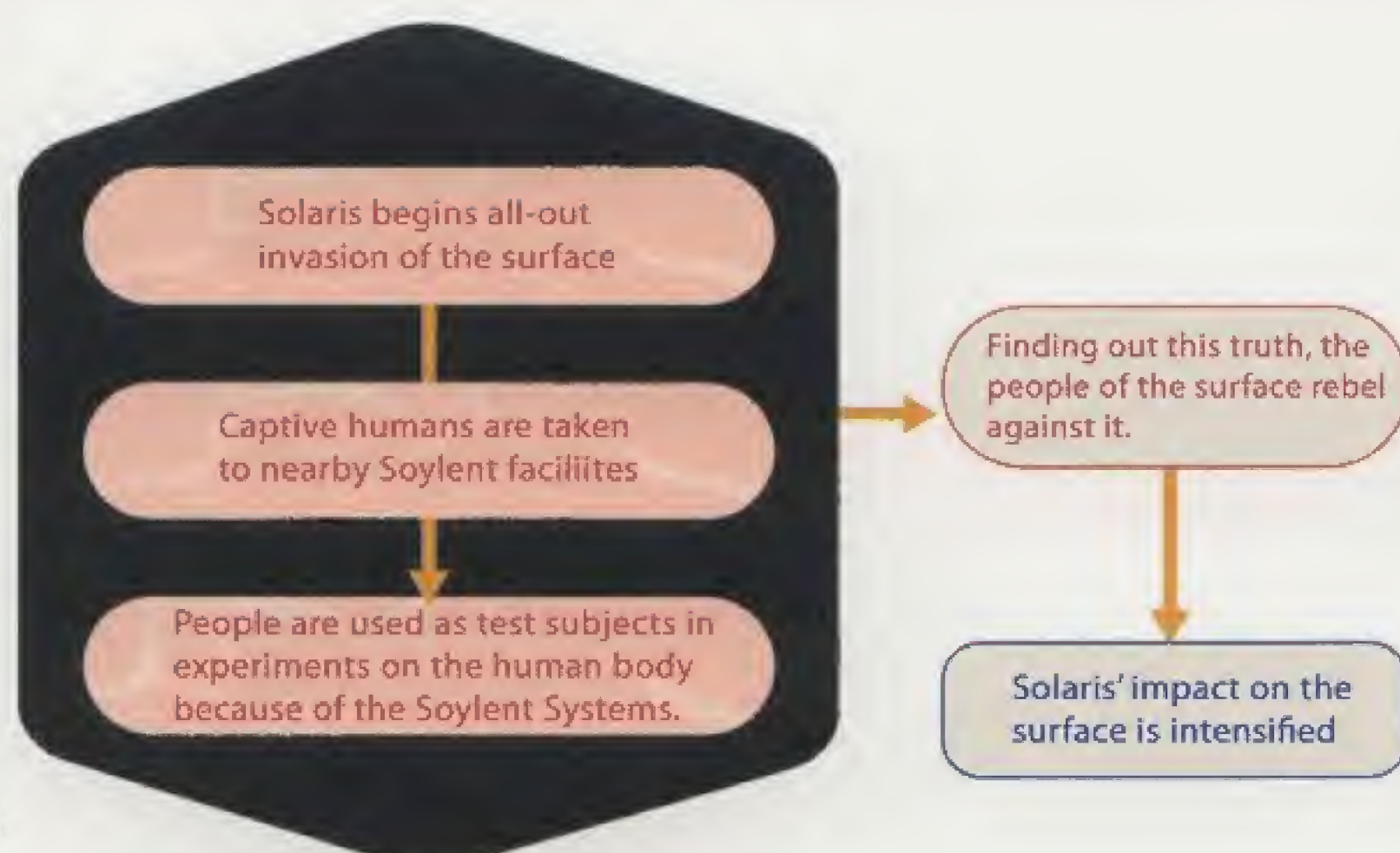


### The threat of Solaris' expansion to the rest of the world

At this time, backed by their control of a powerful military and with advanced scientific technology, Solaris overwhelms all the nations one by one, all the while expanding their own power. However, their goal in expansion was different from what the surface dwellers thought. And so, using their military might, they invaded other countries in order to bring the M (Malakh) Plan to fruition. Using gene manipulation, the M Plan re-created humans into the most powerful biological weapons - Malakh (Angels) and also as created materials (parts) for the building of Super Mobile Fortress Merkava. Also, these parts were also integral for the resurrection of Deus. The people kidnapped by Solaris were remade into these living parts.

At last, having accelerated the M Plan, Solaris started to invade the other powers with their military. Also, they began to establish facilities, the Soylen Systems, all over the world for the re-forming of humans. In consequence of this, many surface dwellers were kidnapped and sacrificed.

And so, the truth about Solaris' goal became known. The countries of the world rebelled strongly against this, and slowly by degrees, the small warring countries began to band together and their goal became to "topple Solaris".





## The important people of Solaris and their thoughts

Those rulers of Solaris, Emperor Cain and the 12 members of the Gazel Ministry, as well as Miang, while holding the same goal of resurrecting Deus, each side also has different thoughts.

Cain does not desire the re-forming of humans as parts for Deus, but rather that they be reformed so as to be free from that fate. And so for that reason he awaits the appearance of the Contact, and secretly wishes the destruction of Deus.

On the other hand, Miang as a part of Deus, seeks to realize the full "resurrection of Deus". Those humans she deems unworthy she immediately sets about 'Resetting', in order to spur on reform, and as a result, causing the resurrection of an enormous perfect weapon. Having been born for this reason, Miang has no other goals.

After an incredibly long time, the Gazel are reborn as "information" and once again take up their desire for rule. Of course, this means not only rule of the surface, but the invasion of other star systems using Deus as the ultimate weapon.

While they cooperate with one another for the goal of resurrecting Deus, they also manage to use each other in the process.

### The roles and positions of Solaris' Leaders



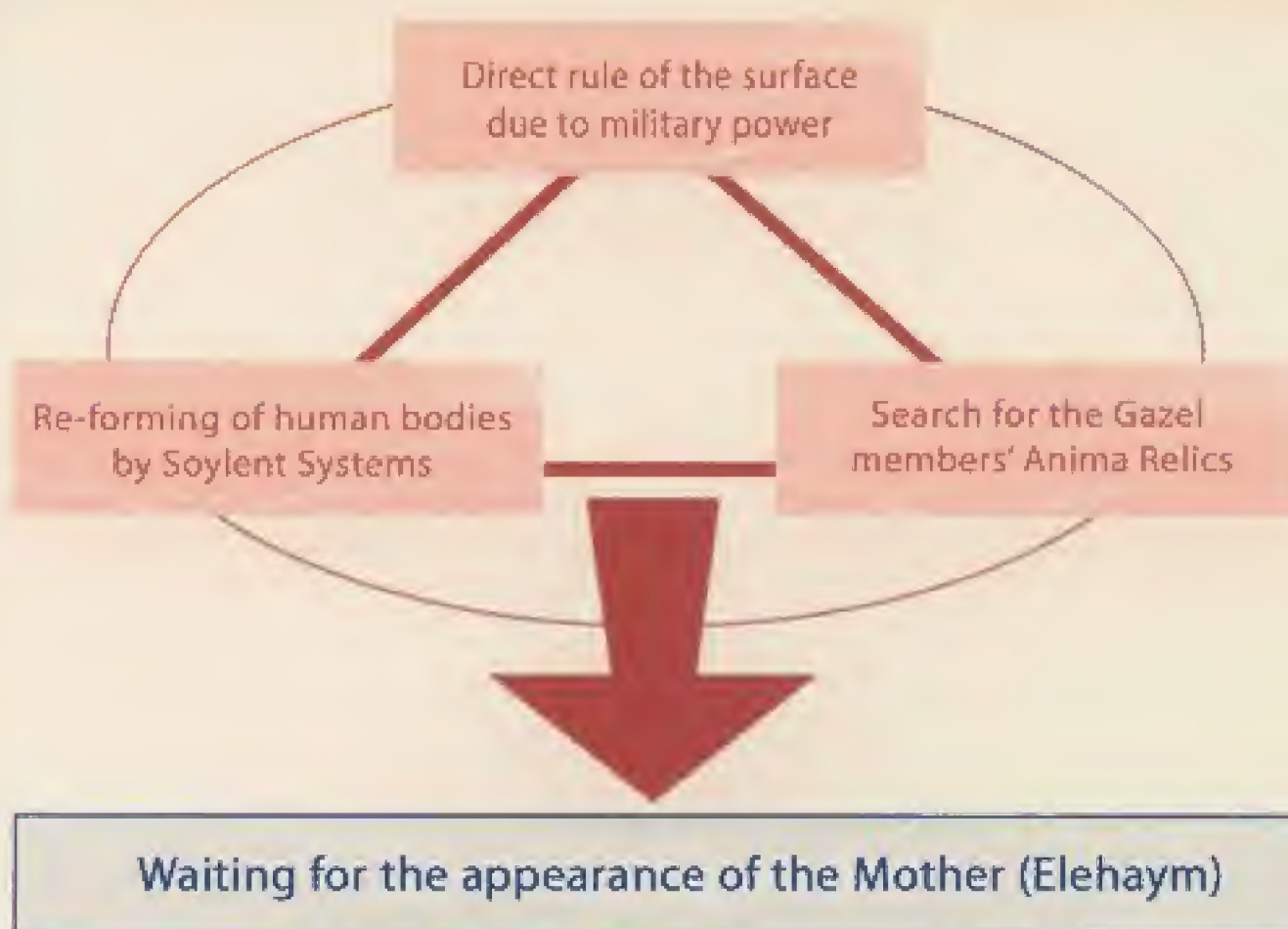
### The path to Solaris' founding

To trace the original form of Solaris, one must go back far in the past to the very beginning.

At that time, people worshipped Cain as the advent of god, -Cain Worship- began to be practiced. Offering themselves as -the Chosen People-, Cain and the Gazel deftly manipulated the people's will. Slowly, they expanded their great influence. At that time, Cain and the others, using the remnants of the colony ship, created the first form of the present country of Solaris, using it as their base of operations. At this base, conducting human research, and re-forming them, steadily they began to advance the preparations for the revival of Deus.

And so, 835 years ago, having determined that human beings were at the last stage as parts for Deus, Cain and the others established Holy Empire Solaris. At this point, they began their basic interference with the surface dwellers.

### The hidden movements of Solaris at that time

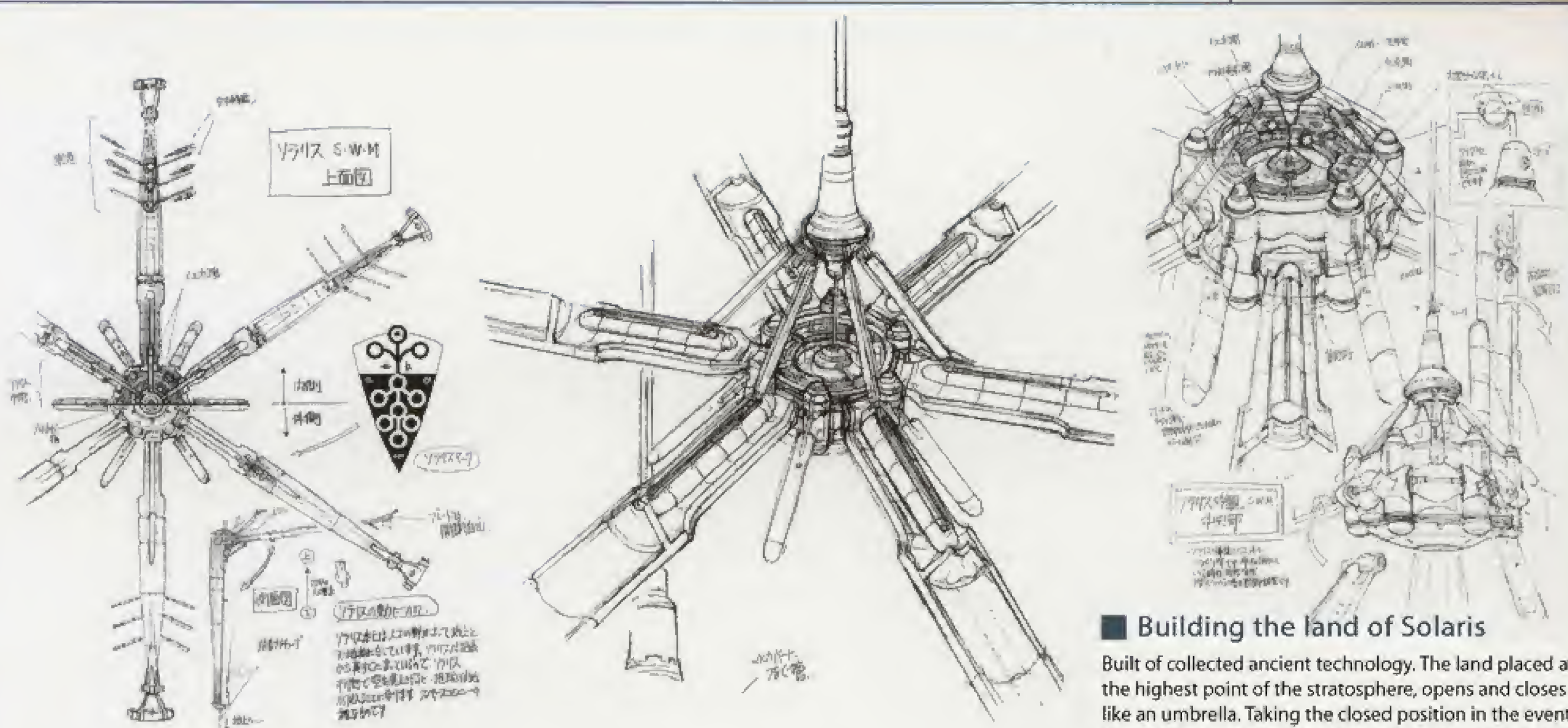


### ◆ Steady preparations for the resurrection of "Deus"

At that time, Solaris' military rule of the surface along with the establishing of the Soylent systems, all worked towards advancing the Gazel's plan to search for Anima Relics. However, the Soylent System and the Anima Relics alone would not resurrect Deus. The central existence, the Mother (Elehaym) was needed. Concentrating their power through Soylent facilities and the search for the Anima Relics, when all was prepared, Cain and Gazel thought to wait for the appearance of the Mother.

### Territory in the stratosphere

It is thought that the reason for having constructed its territory in the stratosphere, was for tactical purposes. Protected by a Gate (barrier) from this time, Solaris did not appear to the naked eye or radar. And so, it was impossible for Shevat to invade Solaris in the stratosphere with the technology that defended them from the surface.



### ■ Building the land of Solaris

Built of collected ancient technology. The land placed at the highest point of the stratosphere, opens and closes like an umbrella. Taking the closed position in the event of invasion by an outside enemy, it boasts a steel wall of protection. Also, due to the activation of the Gate (barrier), the land's location cannot be determined.



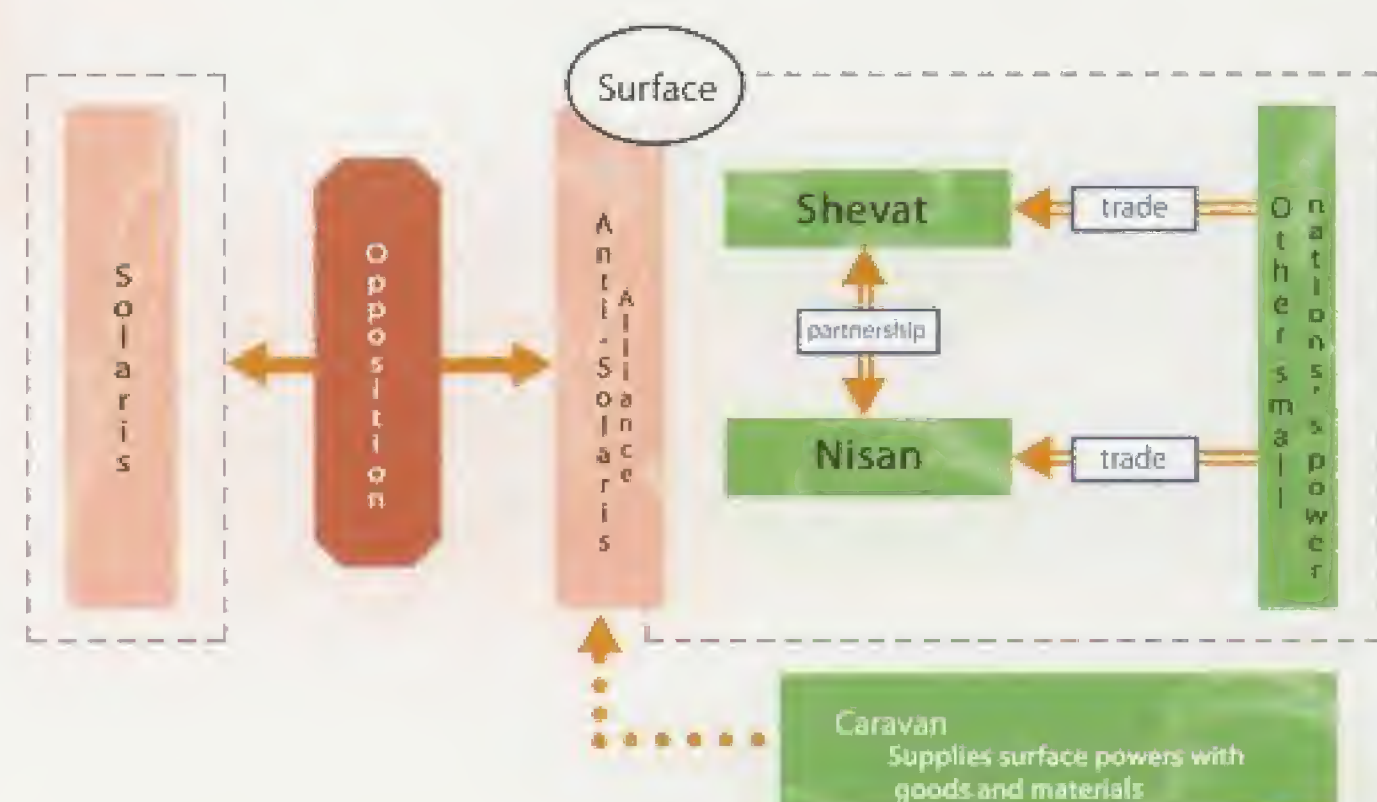
# The uprising of the surface against powerful rule, to the Great War ...

332 years after the founding of Solaris. The use of their military might on the surface having waxed supreme, they proceed realize its invasion. And in response to this, more and more of the surface powers rebel. Called -Anti-Solaris-, their goal also being to slowly concentrate their power, until at last, led by Shevat, they form the -Anti-Solaris Alliance.- And so, those two mighty powers impact against one another on the battlefield with enough military power to split the heavens and the earth. This is the -Solaris War- of 500 years ago. Here is the state of the organizations and their movements charting the flow of the Great war.

## Beginning of the Great War

### The background of the rebellion against Solaris that caused the Great War

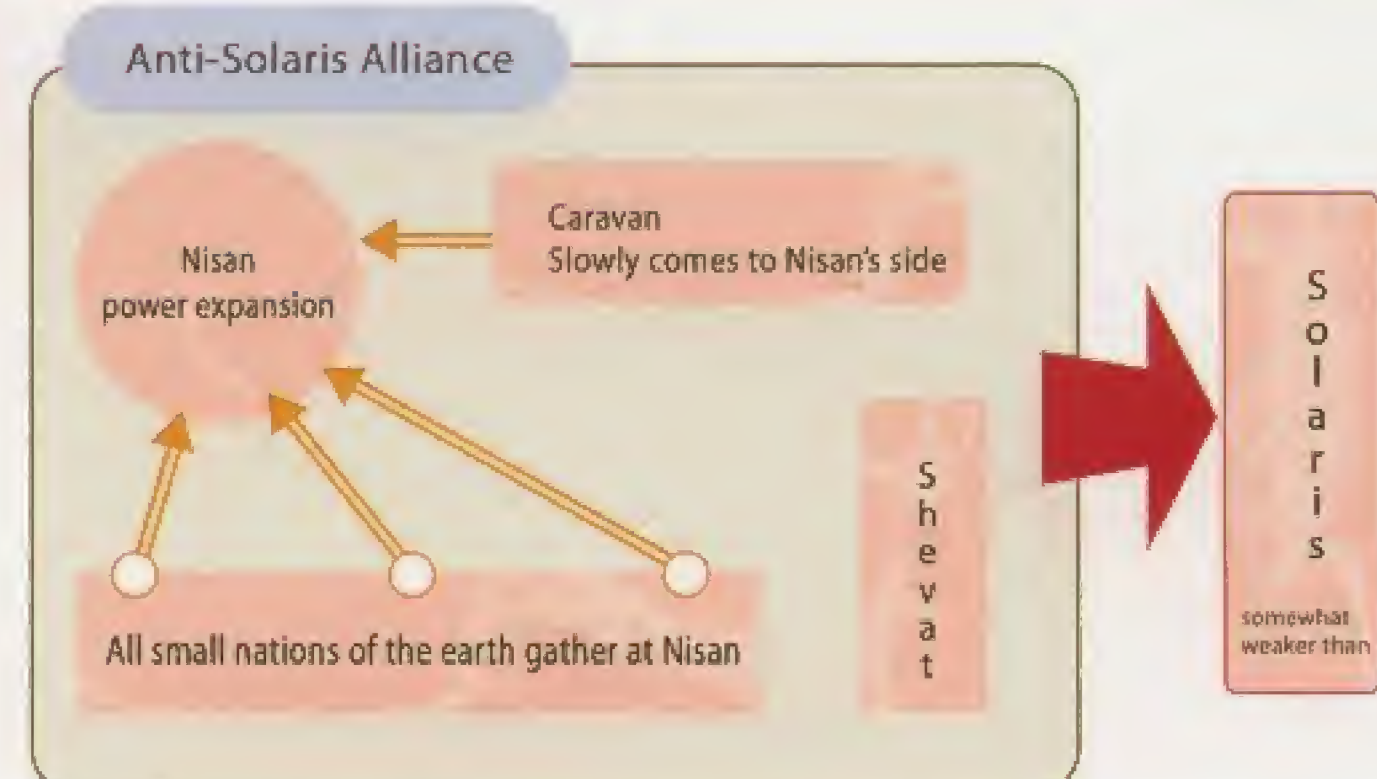
As the most powerful of the allies, Shevat leads the rising of the anti-Solaris sentiment among the people. So, as the head of the organization at that time, Shevat declares revolt militarily. As a result, all the small nations that had warred with one another come into agreement, and after that, ally themselves with Shevat. So this is how the Anti-Solaris Alliance was formed. At that time, Nisan who until then had been neutral, got caught up in the conflict, and they became staunch allies in cooperation with the surface army. Also, the caravan that up until now had been in trade with the surface powers (on a somewhat small scale with Bart's ancestor, Roni, and his younger brother Rene, as Chiefs,) offers weapons and materials to the Anti-Solaris Alliance.



## The Great War's Mid-point

### Nisan's influence expands as warfare causes the Anti-Solaris Alliance's power to increase

During the war, Nisan took in many wounded soldiers, and they were nursed by the Kahal (disciples). Mother Sophia's devoted rescue and gathering together of these people, causes Nisan's influence to grow to a scale comparable to Shevat's. Riding the opportunity, the surface troops slowly begin to wear down the power of Solaris. Fearing their invasion of the surface is becoming endangered, Solaris introduces the Super Mobile Base Merkava into the mix, returning things to the way they were. Because of this, the war progress returns to a virtual standstill.

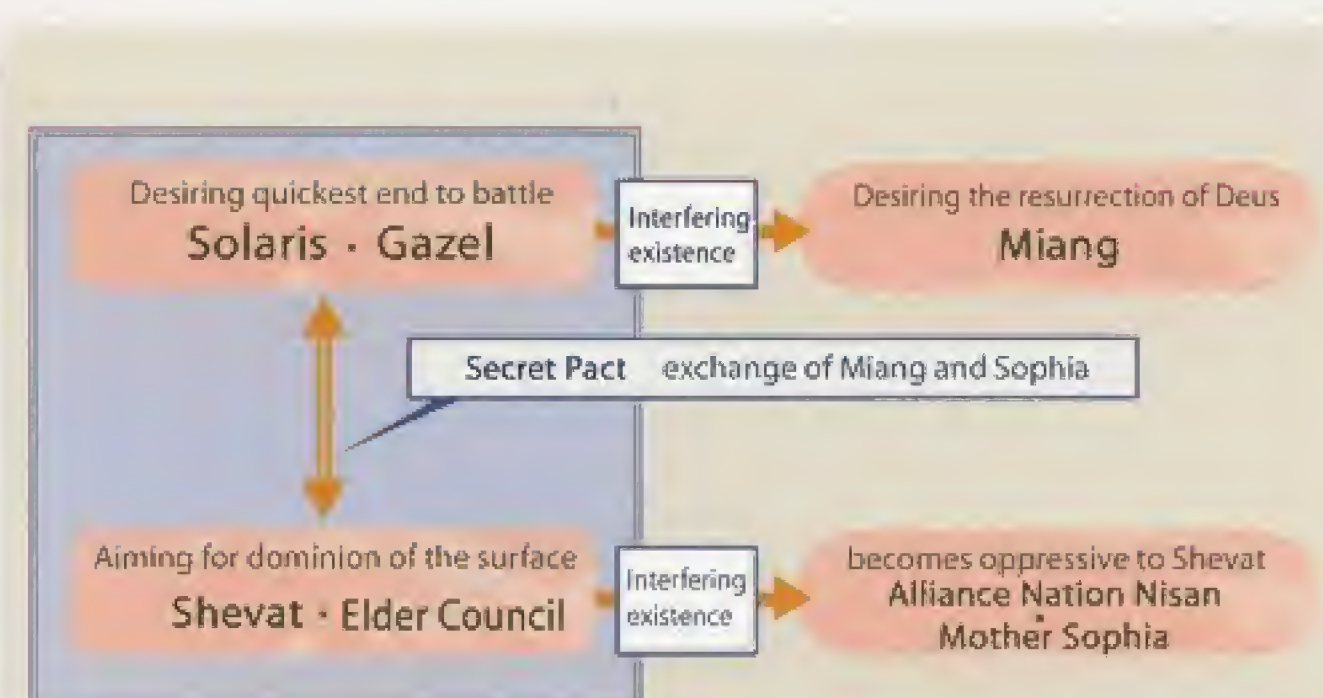


## After the Great War

### Solaris' internal discord and Shevat's betrayal

During the most heated part of the war, in Solaris the Gazel and Miang were in opposition. Also, planning the rule of the surface after the end of the war, Shevat grows distant from the newly empowered Nisan. And so, the two sides' leaders, the Gazel and the Elders of Shevat secretly devise an exchange of Sophia and Miang.

With Miang handed over to Shevat, Sophia is subject to a special attack by Merkava at Ignas' defensive line and loses her life. This unexpected outcome results in the removal of both bothersome entities.





## The actions of the countries during the Great War, their organization and role

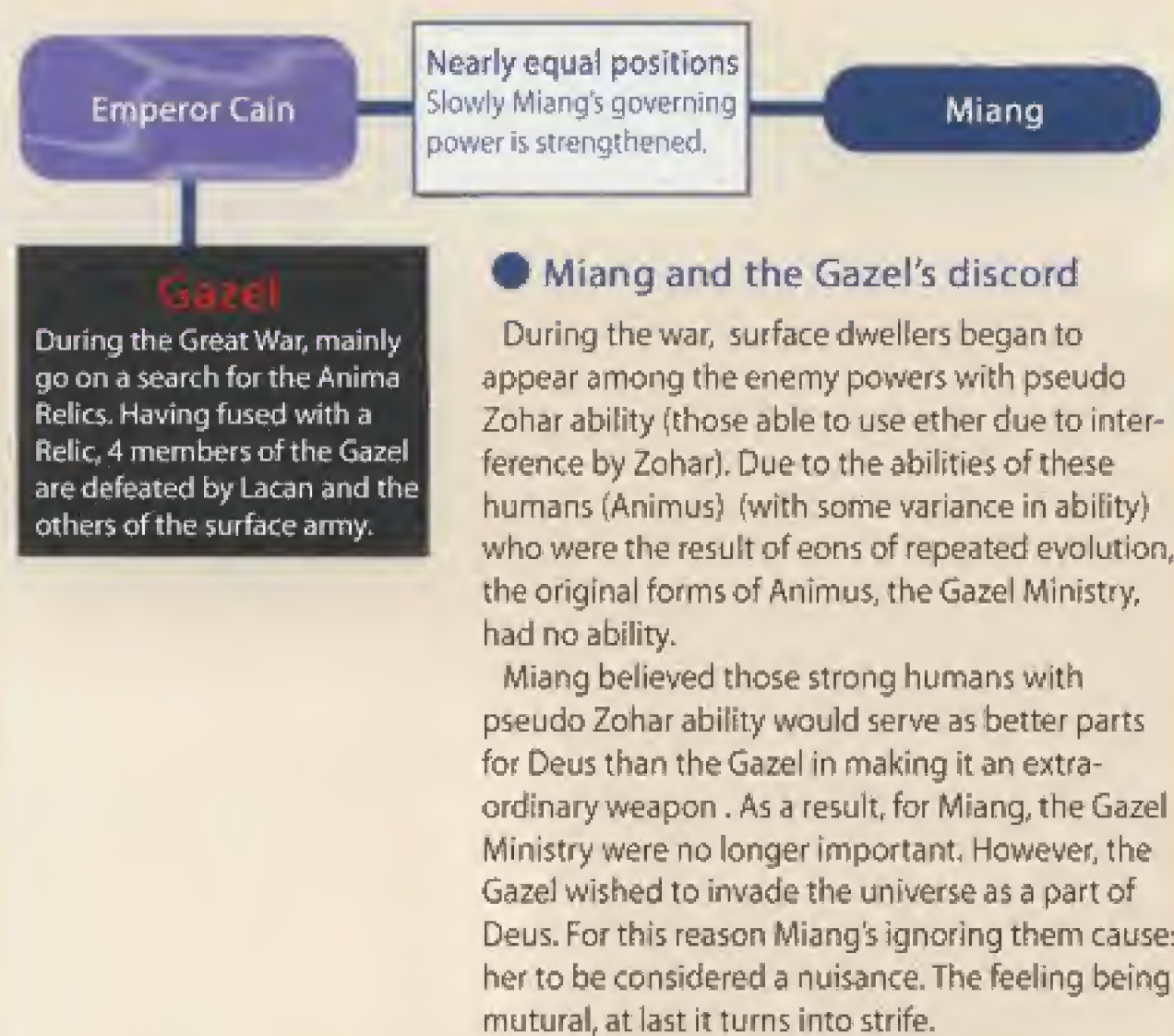
The appearance of Solaris as a threat. Unable to expel that threat, the un-numbered various warring powers of the surface began to band together, becoming a large power. During the fighting, that enormous power became divided between the two nations of Nisan and Shevat.

And as background are many governing strategies and tactical decisions that lie hidden in the formation of this structure. Here is the investigation into the three main countries during the Great War, Solaris, Nisan and Shevat and the trends in the forming of their organizations.

### Solaris

**[trend]** Having begun the invasion of the surface with overwhelming military power, the unexpected resistance of the surface powers enables the Alliance to penetrate all the way to the center of Solaris' land. At the end of the Great War, Solaris sends out their trump card Merkava, and this also is destroyed; thereafter it turns into a defensive war.

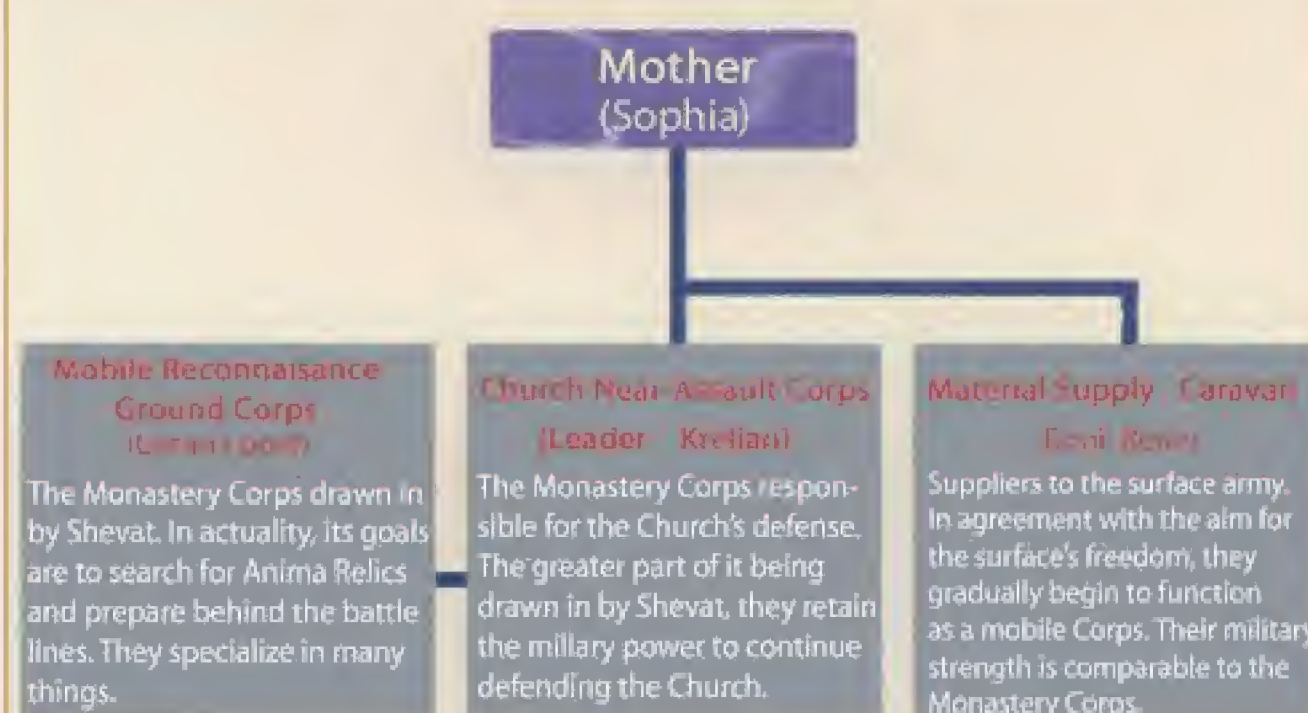
**[structure]** At this time, Cain was already thinking that the future of "human beings" should be entrusted to them, and so removes himself from the forefront. For this reason, Miang and the Gazel Ministry manage the governing of the country themselves.



### Nisan

**[trend]** Being caught up in the outbreak of the Great War, they fight to protect the Church. Gradually, those in agreement with Sophia begin to gather and join Shevat at the battle line for the freeing of the surface.

**[structure]** Nisan's Monastery Corps become drawn into the surface army with Shevat as the center. While Sophia is against this, the entire will of Nisan overrides her decision. Roni and the others in the caravan also join at this time.



#### ● Formation of the Special Corps for seizing the -Anima Relics-

Shevat having received information concerning Solaris' search for Anima Relics, a special task force is formed with Krellian and Lacan from Nisan's Monastery Corps and the caravan's leader Roni as its center. Sophia also accompanies them.

#### ● The role of Roni and Rene as leaders of the caravan

At first, Roni and Rene have a sales partnership with the surface military and from this light footwork the nature of the relationship strengthens to Supply Corps to the surface army. As a result, their defense during transport is amplified with military strength.

#### ■ O.R. Weltall

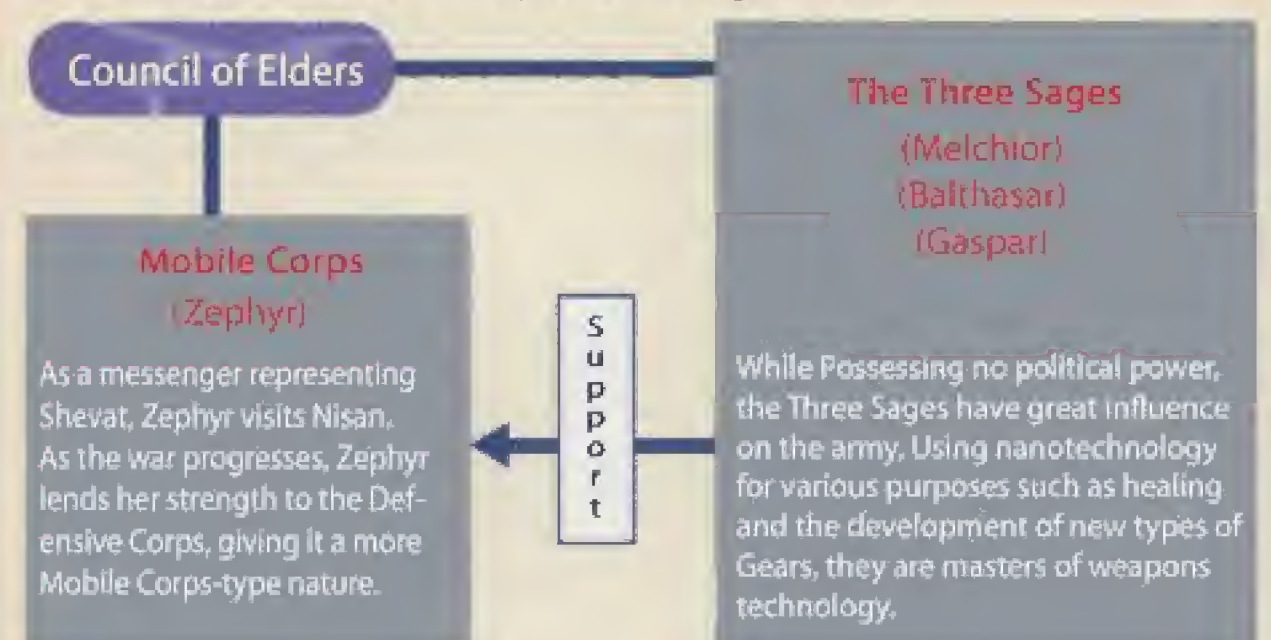
The machine in which Grahf rampaged in a fit of frenzy, causing destruction throughout the earth on the -Day of Collapse-. Having the nature of Deus makes him that much more a -demon-.



### Shevat

**[trend]** Shevat possesses enough political power to lead the surface army. At first it only wished to achieve freedom for the surface, but becoming predominant in wartime began to desire rulership over the surface, thus forming a plan to trade with the Gazel.

**[structure]** The Government and military are managed entirely by the Council of Elders. At that time, the present Queen Zephyr also went to the front lines to do battle. And the Three Sages, while possessing no governing power, collaborated with the military as technological advisors.





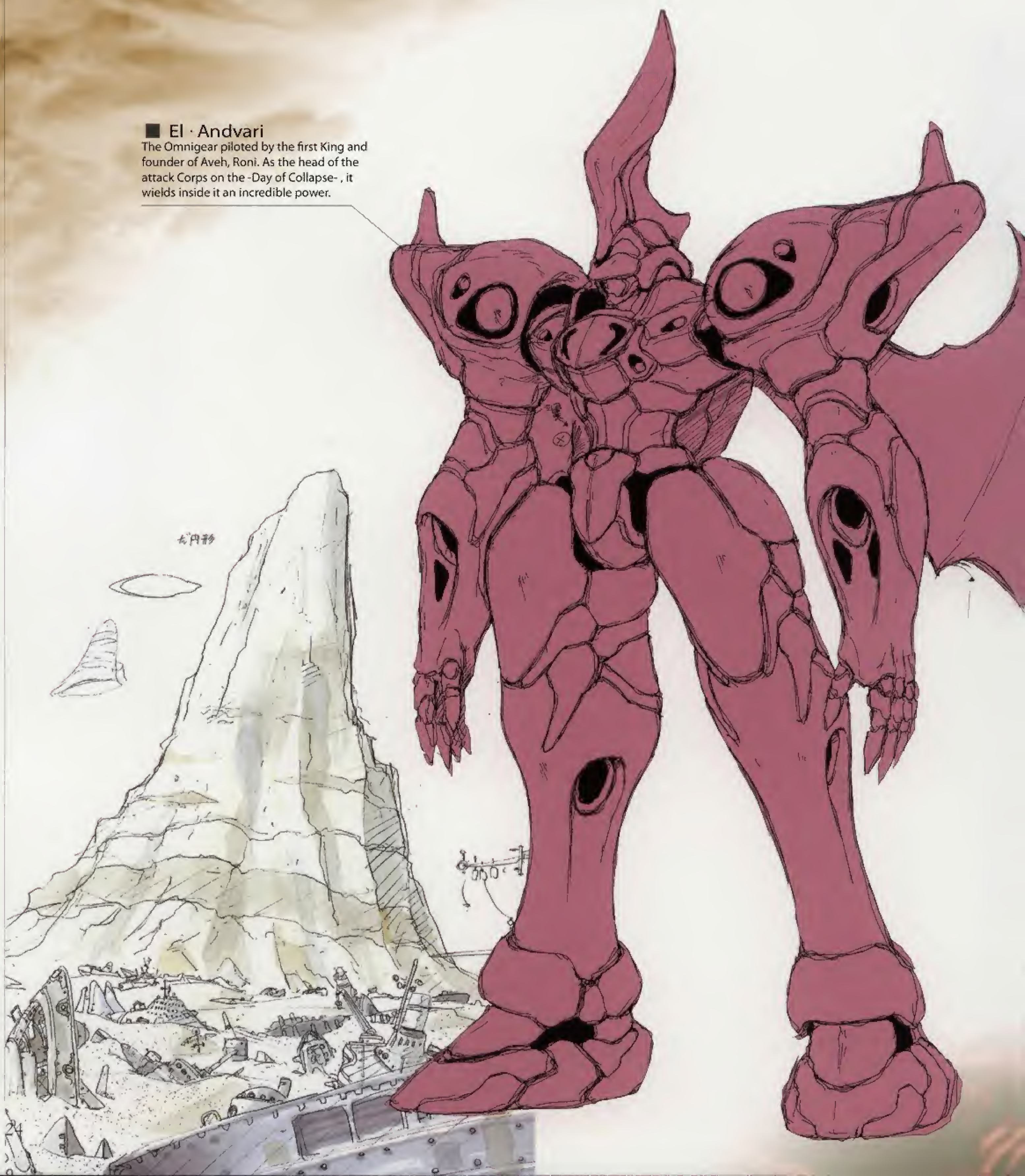
**-The Day of Collpase- and the conclusion of the Great War**

Due to the secret exchange between the Gazel Ministry and the Elders of Shevat, Miang was handed over to Shevat. However, Miang could not have been handed over unless she willed it, she was captured purposely to meet with Lacan, the Contact on the surface. So, desiring information on Zohar, Miang meets with Lacan and at the place called Bethlehem he makes contact with Zohar. However, this contact was incomplete, so Lacan's form is changed into that of Grahf, and afterwards he causes what came to be known as the -Day of Collapse-.

Regardless of the fact of that Grahf ruins the surface, Solaris also contends with Deus' first type mobile interfaces, the Diabolos Corps. All humanity combines their full power to resist them, as well as put a stop to Grahf's rampage. However, the remaining powers have incurred much damage from warfare (Solaris as well as the surface nations) to the point that they can no longer continue it. So in this way, the conclusion of the Solaris War comes to an end without any tangible sign.

**■ El · Andvari**

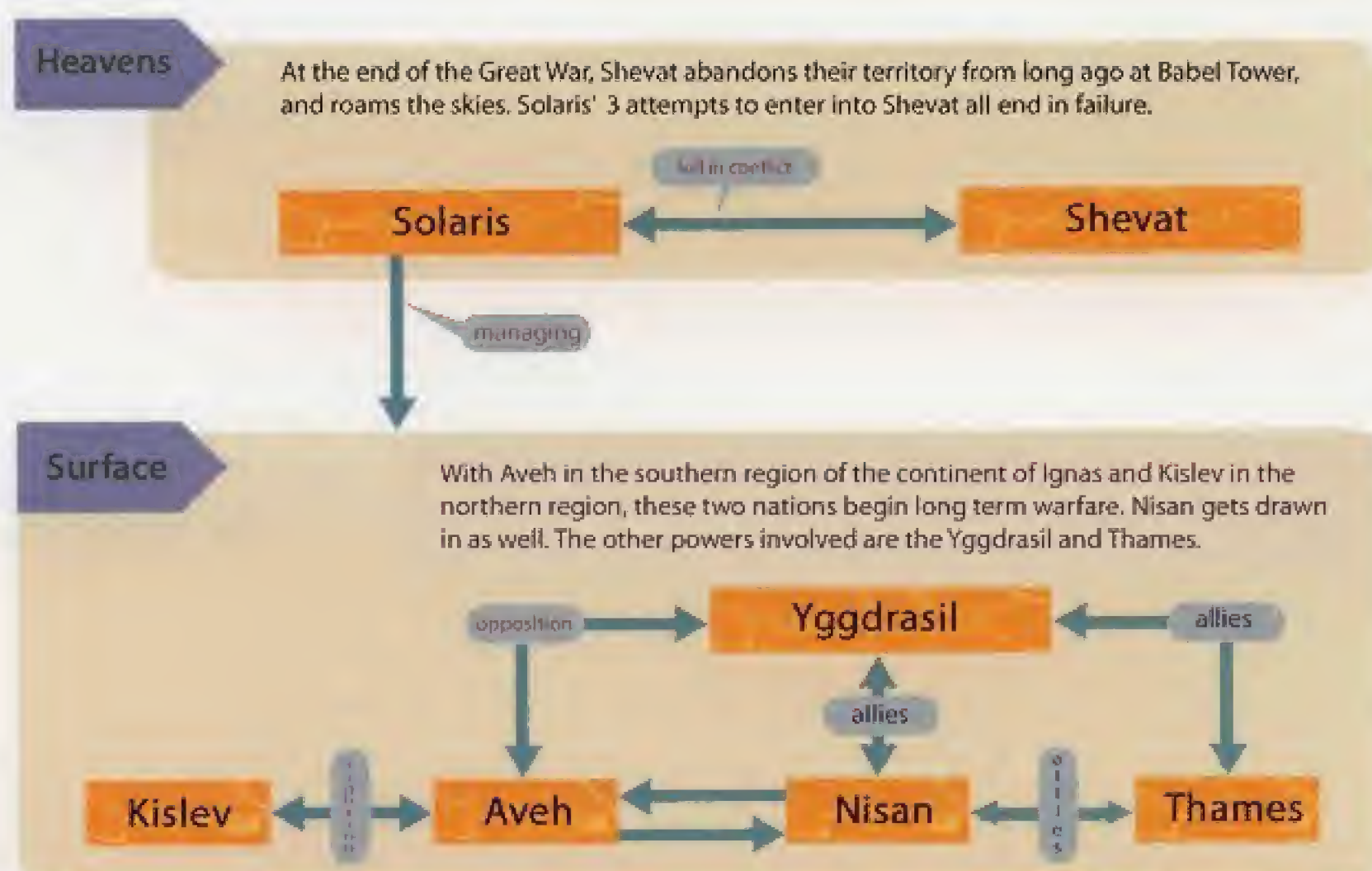
The Omnigear piloted by the first King and founder of Aveh, Roni. As the head of the attack Corps on the -Day of Collapse-, it wields inside it an incredible power.





## The formation and structuring of the present nations

In truth, the Great War is ended by the Diabolos Corps led by Grahf having brought about great destruction on the -Day of Collapse-. For the next several hundred years, the world was involved in re-building, leading up to the present day with the birth of new nations and powers. From the nations of the Great War to the refurbished nations' process of restructuring, as well as the relations between those nations, here the current state of events are explained.



### World-scale restoration after -The Day of Collapse-

-The -Day of Collapse- caused incredible damage to the world. The entire population being reduced to less than 1%, the nations and cultures also collapsed. For those few surviving humans, restoring the world from the wasteland over a very long time, gradually rebuild civilization.

At last, the world having returned to some stability, two countries are born on the continent called Ignas. Nisan also slowly begins to function as a nation again. However, a little while after the founding of both those countries, Solaris once again moves behind the scenes.

Having lost the Great War previously, Solaris determines that direct rule through the military is impossible, and a program for indirect governing is put into place. Only Shevat out of all the nations that had resisted in the Great War is aware of these maneuverings, and none of humans on the surface have any knowledge of it. Because Shevat suffers several attempts by Solaris to invade after the Great War, they only have the power to stop them from ruling the surface.

And so, while Solaris advances its preparations for rule of the surface, war breaks out between Aveh and Kislev. Once again, the surface becomes the cause of war.

#### ■ Grahf

After -The Day of Collapse-, Grahf dies without anyone knowing. However, his body having rotted, in order for his gathered will to live on, he possesses other humans and thus continues until the present day. Usually liking to act alone, he makes contact with Miang once more.





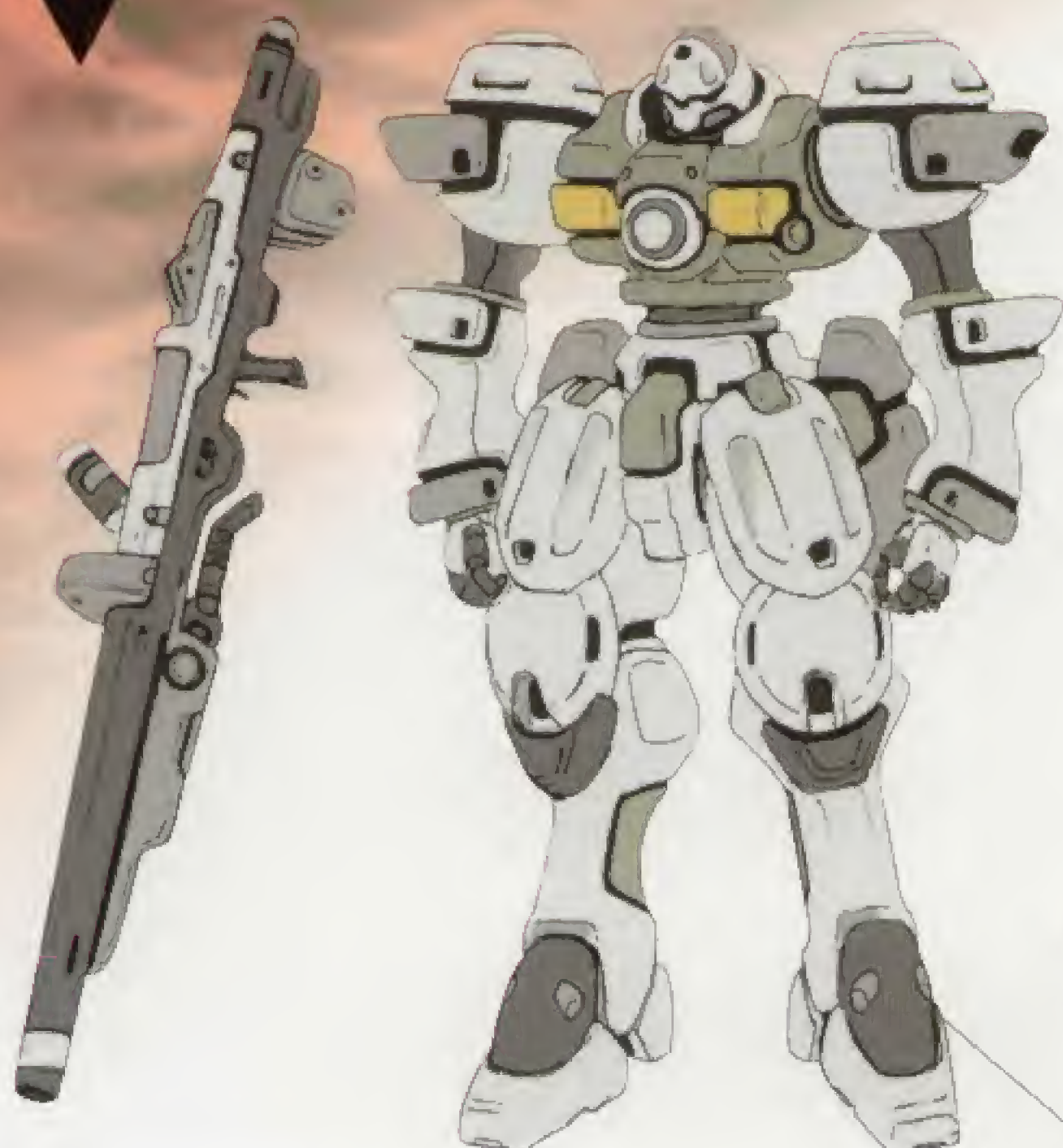
Holy Nation

## Solaris Empire

1 Internal Affairs ~ Each District ~

### ■ Solaris Crest

A symbol which evokes -The Tree of Sephirot-. This crest also appeared on part of Merkava's invincible main cannon.



### ■ Solaris Army Gear

Outfitted with various option parts, suitable for many environments, a highly compatible all-purpose Gear. The greater part of their military power is held by Gebler.

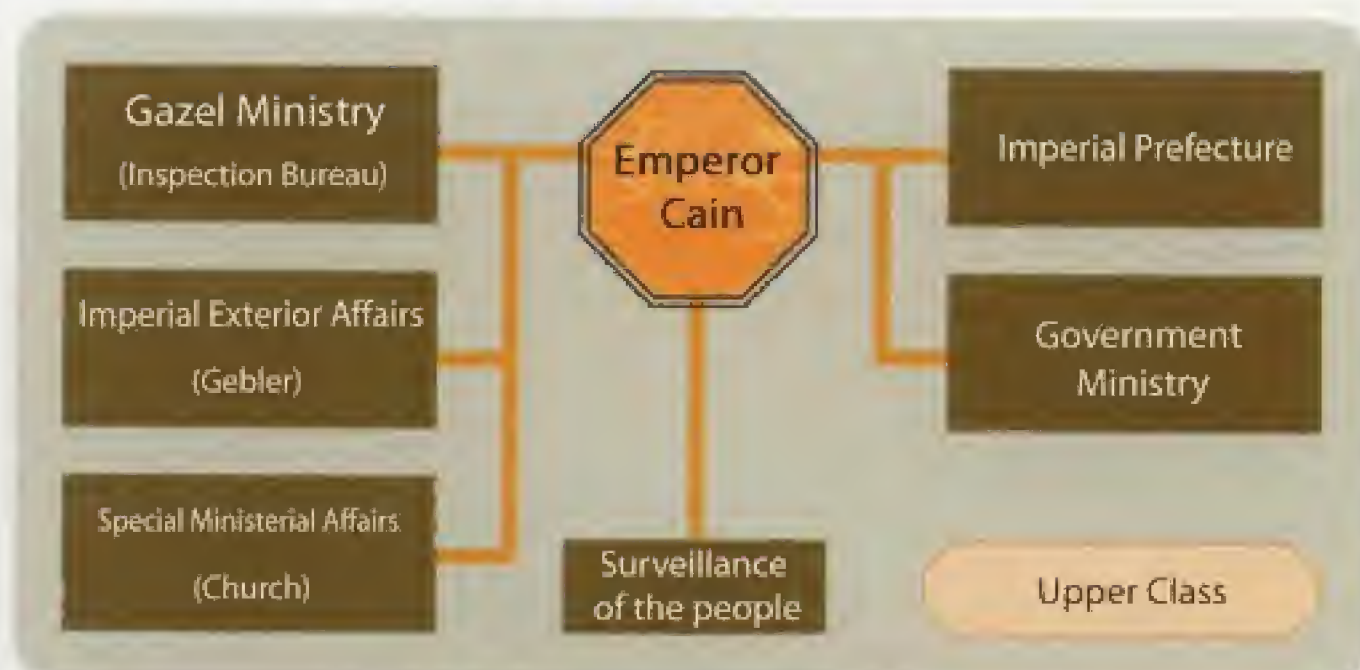
## The introduction of nanotechnology makes the nation's revival more efficient

The destruction of the land of Solaris, and the incredible reduction of its population due to its war with the Diabolos, result in their plans for surface rule being held off and the rebuilding of their nation's structure to be pushed to the forefront. And the process of restoration is of immediate concern to Solaris. They are chronically short of resources and labor power.

Of course, the labor and materials can come from the surface, but there are still those among the surface dwellers who remember the Great War, and the danger is that reinvading might cause another outbreak of war. So it was determined by the upper classes of Solaris, and a central Project of Krelan, who had become an exile during the last War is put into effect. That is the practical application of molecular machines using nanotechnology, -To reduce the memory of the Great War-, -Solaris = Absolute submission to the Emperor-, -Control of inherent abilities-, and such are all parts that comprise the Program and it is disseminated. Because of the device to control all those abilities (=Limiter) the collective lives on Solaris' surface become more efficient.

So, after clearing various issues, when Solaris has achieved almost complete revival, they begin to put into effect their plan to rule the surface.

## Present Day Solaris' organization



## Solaris' Upper Class • their main role

### ■ Emperor Cain

Solaris' highest authority. Due to Miang and the appearance of Krelan, he removes himself from the forefront. In the present, the rank of Emperor is in the process of ruin.

### ■ Gazel Ministry

The 8 members of the Gazel stored as a program in the SOL9000, confer with the Emperor and also direct the Defense Ministry, (Krelan) and oversee its function as a governing entity.

### ■ Defense Ministry

Run by Krelan, having the power to override the decisions of the government ministries, it is not itself a Ministry, only officially does the authority to rule in Solaris belong to the Emperor, in truth Krelan has the highest authority.

### ■ Guardian Angels

Headed by Gebler and the Church, it is labeled the special Beaureau that handles commands from the Emperor. Overseeing the operating of other managing Ministries, it is entrusted with maintaining Solaris' governing power.

### ■ Heaven Prefecture

The Emperor's job is facilitated by these mechanisms, (command, design, widespread communication). Formation of a new Defensive Corps for the enforcing of the Emperor's will (Jugend), it manages the religious centers in the nation.

### ■ Church - Gebler

The pivotal organization in the Program for indirect rule of the surface. The Church manages a communication network for information on the surface. The Church primarily uses Gebler when military force is needed.

## The role of every District

Military Ministry of Finance Government Ministry of Education of Culture	Successively manages the nation's military defense, however this was almost entirely worn down during the Great War. Currently, it has only enough power to defend the capital, Etenank.	Oversees the production of the nation's resources and the management of the nation's economy	Handles inoculations and medicines. In truth the organization that provides the only means of the production of births in Solaris. In the present, also serves to manage defense and governing of the people.
	Responsible for manufacturing money, taxation, and banking in Solaris. Also manages trading transactions.		The goal being exterior communications, an Imperial ministry for the oversight of the world below (Gebler), along with the Church, their sole function that of interfering with the surface, very little else.
	Manages the people's education. And for experimental purposes, weather forecasting, development of naval vessels. Also, one section oversees production.		Housing and water treatment facilities, communications devices, manages Solaris' societal resources.
	Founded for the management of general communications in the country of Solaris, it actually receives its authority from the Imperial Prefecture.		Manages the 2nd and 3rd level birth production, and governs its operation. It's former duty after the Great War was to revive the populace, even now it holds great authority.
			Governs the facility where 1st and 2nd Class citizens go to have a high quality first recycling and rebirth. Also continuously manages the 3rd Class with military power.

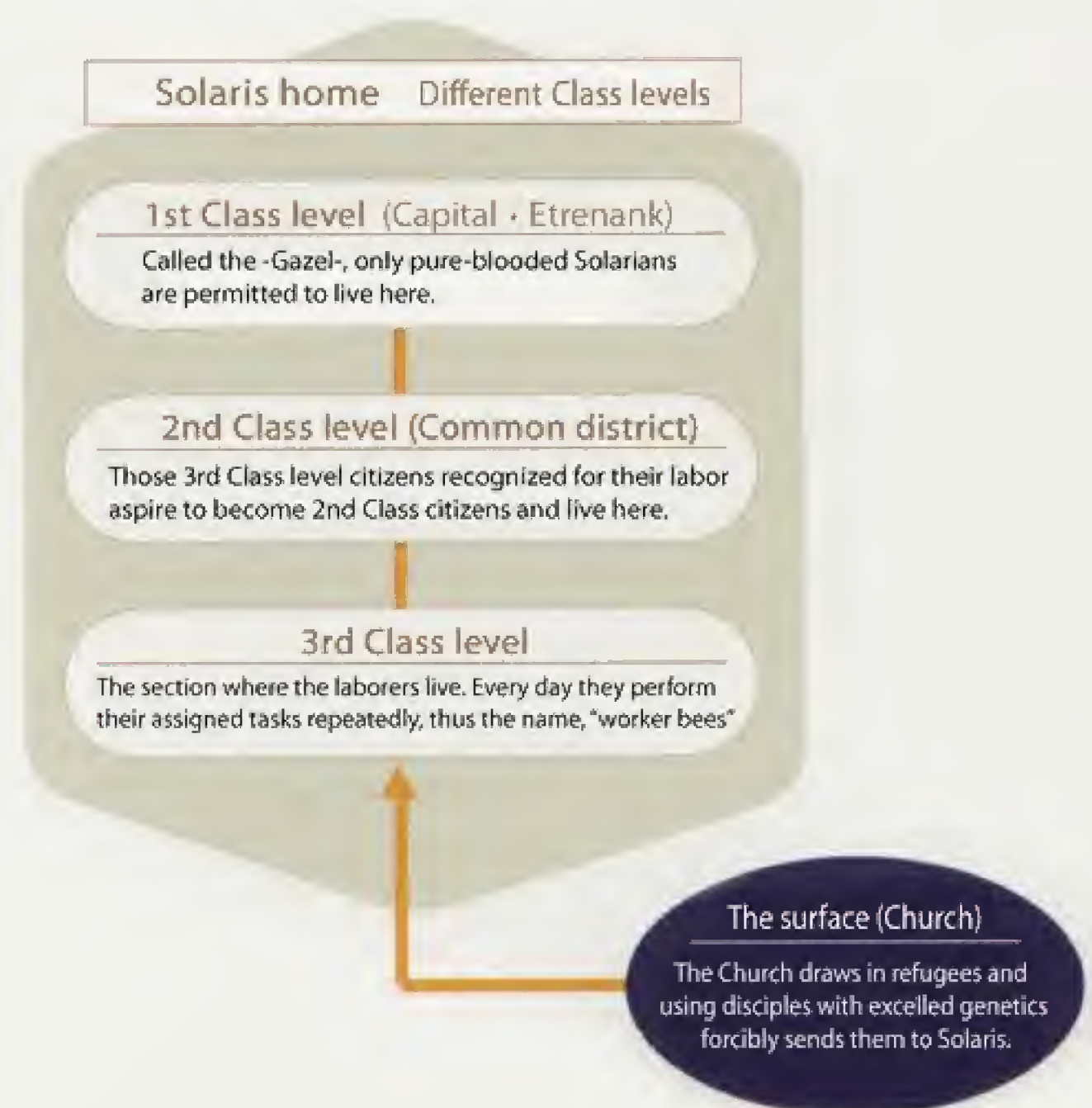
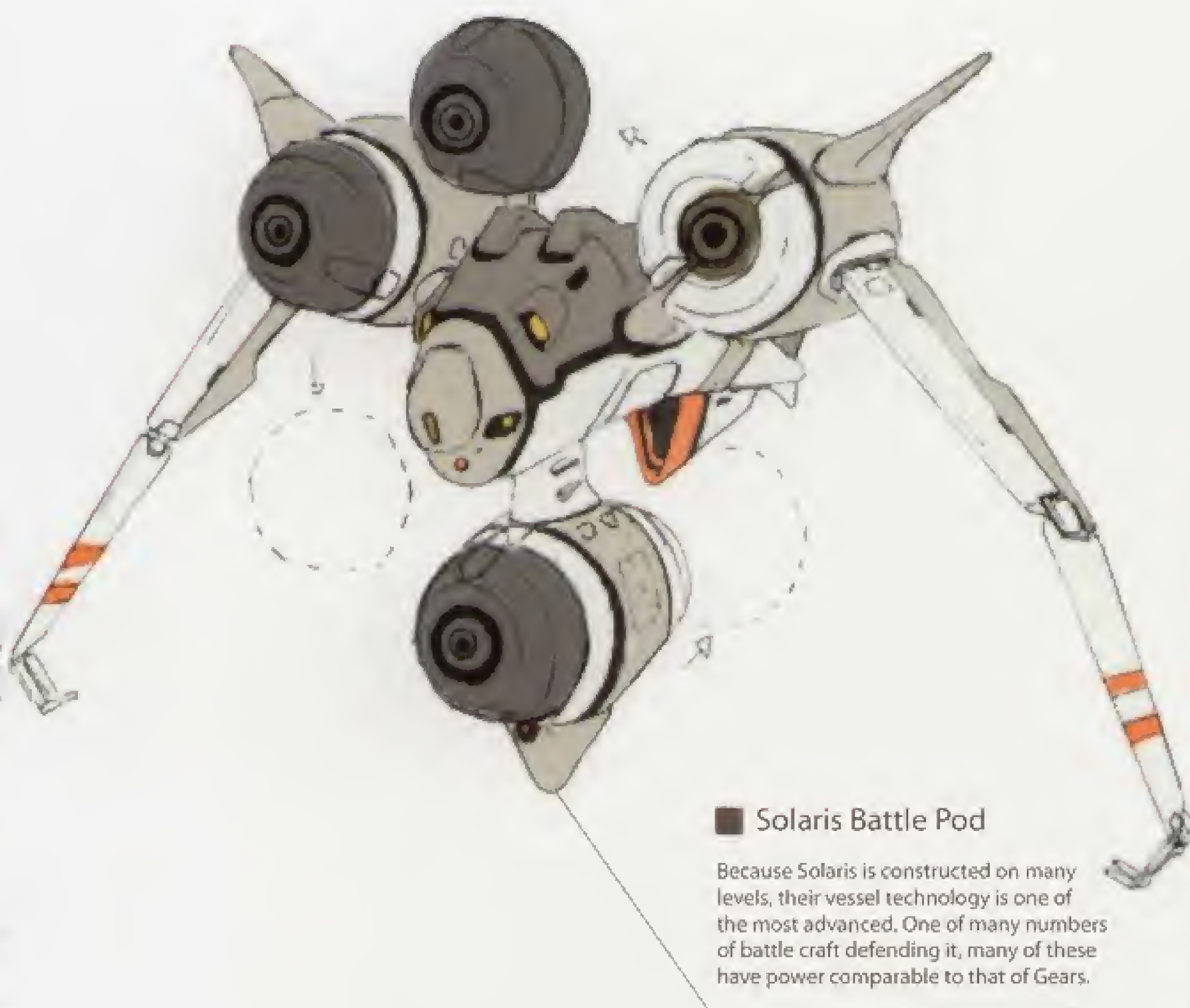


## Administration of the system governing the people, the formation of government

In the process of implementing a plan to rule the surface, Solaris gathers a great number of people from the surface for hard labor. In order to keep strict control on the ever-growing population, Solaris keeps them sectioned off in the Third Class level.

The 1st Class level is constructed for pure-bred Solarians, the 2nd Class level for a mix of classes, the general citizen level, the 3rd Class level is for laborers, also known as "worker bees" and they live their lives in this level. The goal of creating the 2nd class level is to set a contrast with the 3rd Class level and provide a "hope of rising to the 2nd Class level", in order to inflame the 3rd Class level workers to even greater efforts in labor. Now, very few uprisings have occurred because of dissatisfaction in the 3rd Class level. At the time they are gathered from the surface, they are completely brainwashed. (although there are rare instances where it is partially undone).

And so, Solaris manages its burgeoning population, governing them and reaching the height of its power once more.

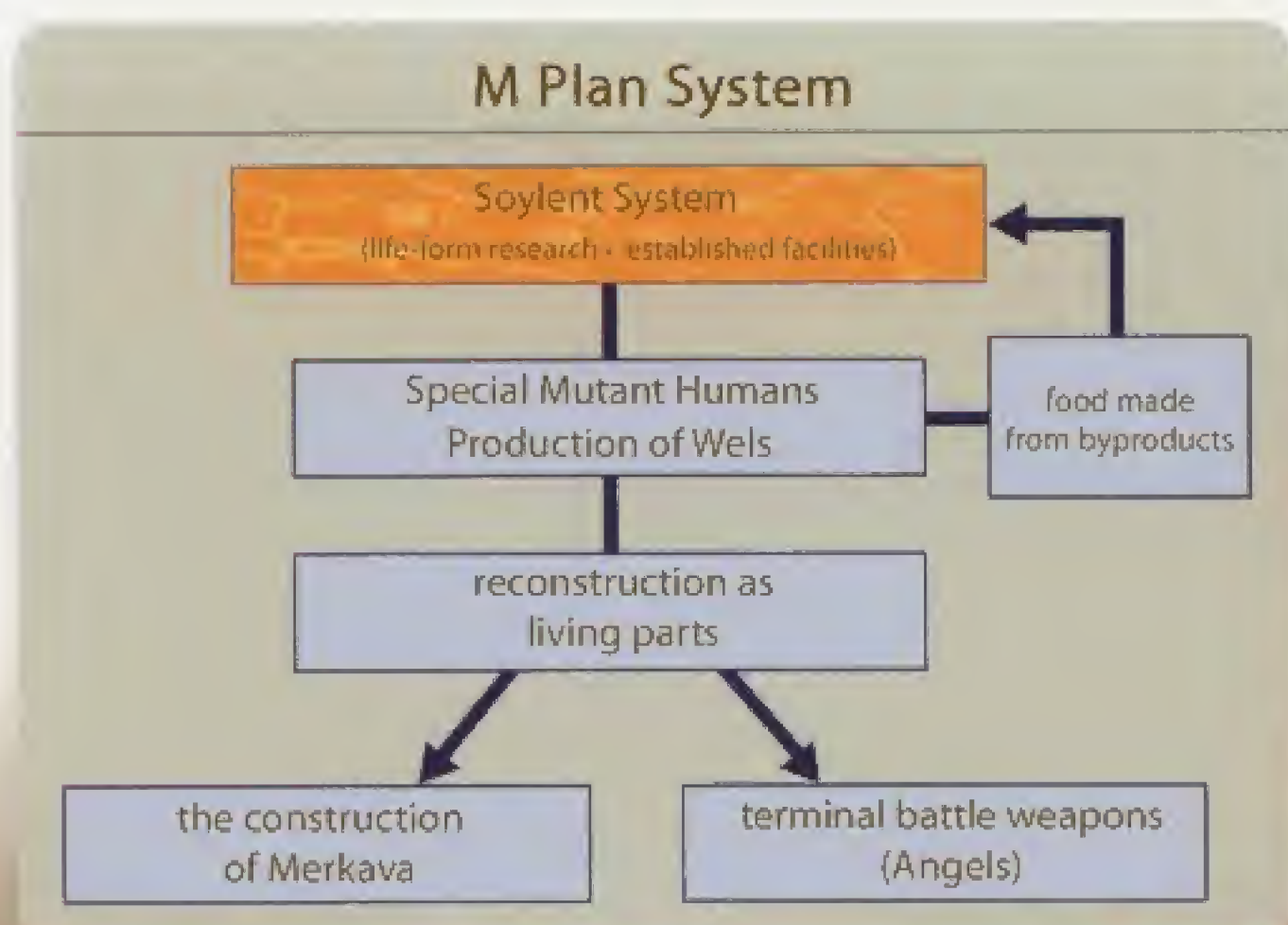


## Due to the practical application of nanotechnology, the M (Malakh) Plan is activated

Since ancient times, Solaris has repeatedly driven forward the M Plan. The current version, to be precise, is "the Fifth M Plan".

The M Plan enacted during the time of the Great War resulted in the establishing of the Soylent facilities all over the earth for human experiments, this time the facilities on the surface are avoided and all is conducted in Solaris. And so, unknown to the surface dwellers, they move forward with the original plan. And, with the practical application of the nanotechnology brought by Krelan in his time of exile, gene manipulation and crossbreeding experiments are actively pursued.

The original purpose of the Soylent facilities extended to such things as, "Deus' mothership" and "the production of mobile interfaces for Deus". Now they are used to support the base the plan for Solaris' system of rule. That plan being the production of food from the byproducts of those victims born as a result of experiments, and in the process causing human beings to consume this, maintaining the programming level of the Limiters that are in their genes. At the same time, they are used not only as food, but as medicine, and so this manufactured food and medicine is not confined only to Solaris but is widely distributed by the Church throughout the surface.





## The Organization created for surface rule after the war

The mechanism of the Emperor's direct control are the Imperial Special Foreign Bureau (Gebler) and the Imperial Special Indoctrination Bureau (Church). Having determined that direct rule of the surface would prove difficult, Cain and the others set these organizations in place with the goal of indirect rule. These organizations deeply intervene in economics, communications, information and military affairs, with the plan being to manipulate the powers of the surface.

In the present, Gebler and the Church have become separate organizations, and at first, only the Imperial Special Foreign Bureau was established for implementing the plan for indirect rule of the surface, now that role falls to both Gebler and the Church. Spying on the surface, excavation and other activities of this kind being handled by the Church, the direct use of military power falls to Gebler, but fundamentally, the two organizations work for the same goal while wearing different masks.

However, while the information coming in from all over the surface in the Church's network concerning economics and daily living begin to increase, until now the foreign office on the surface base which is supplemented by the Governing Directive Headquarters. The demand on every collaborative Station (Church facilities, studio and those places designated as Central Church

Government's) from the Advising department grows. And so these divisions, newly coming under Imperial Special Indoctrination Bureau supervision become independent as the Church. The present day Church handles the surface's economics, religion and the information network on its own, every government division is in actuality used by the Central Church for the purpose of governing the surface.

On the other hand, Gebler comes to be used in military situations, and becomes stronger with these experiences than when they could be sent out at the Church's demand. Also, the Elements having been under the command of each Director of government Divisions, by order of the Church, stop receiving orders from the Church and the Church and Gebler organizations undergo a split, with the Elements entering Gebler. Since then, they function only for Gebler Command as Near reconnaissance Corps.

### ■ Gebler Crest

The various designations of the military- water, fire, and earth, these three labels are linked together in a row. Incidentally, it represents to Gebler the will of a stern god's power.



Imperial Special Foreign Affairs

## Gebler

### Four Governing Division

Head Commander • Ramsus

On the surface, Ramsus' division appears to have followed the directives of the military from the beginning. Ramsus' Near-reconnaissance Corps is the Elements, (Kelvena, Dominia, Tolone, Seraphita), but Miang also belongs as supplemental Director.

### Advisement Board

Director • Miang

The central organization that issues commands. As holder of this post, Miang is involved in making military plans and submitting them to Headquarters.

### Interior Department

Planning attacks, this functions to provide strategy and also the implementation of excavated lost technology, known also as the Relic Bureau.

### Each Military Department

Water Fire Earth

Each division originally served as an organization for maintaining government. At the time of the split from the Church, they are used for guarding the interests on the surface in order to add them into the Four Governing Division, even more than the group established by Solaris, Litra. In regards to the Wind Division, it was destroyed with the quelling of Elru. Today, it only exists in printed form.

### The 3 inserted Chapters

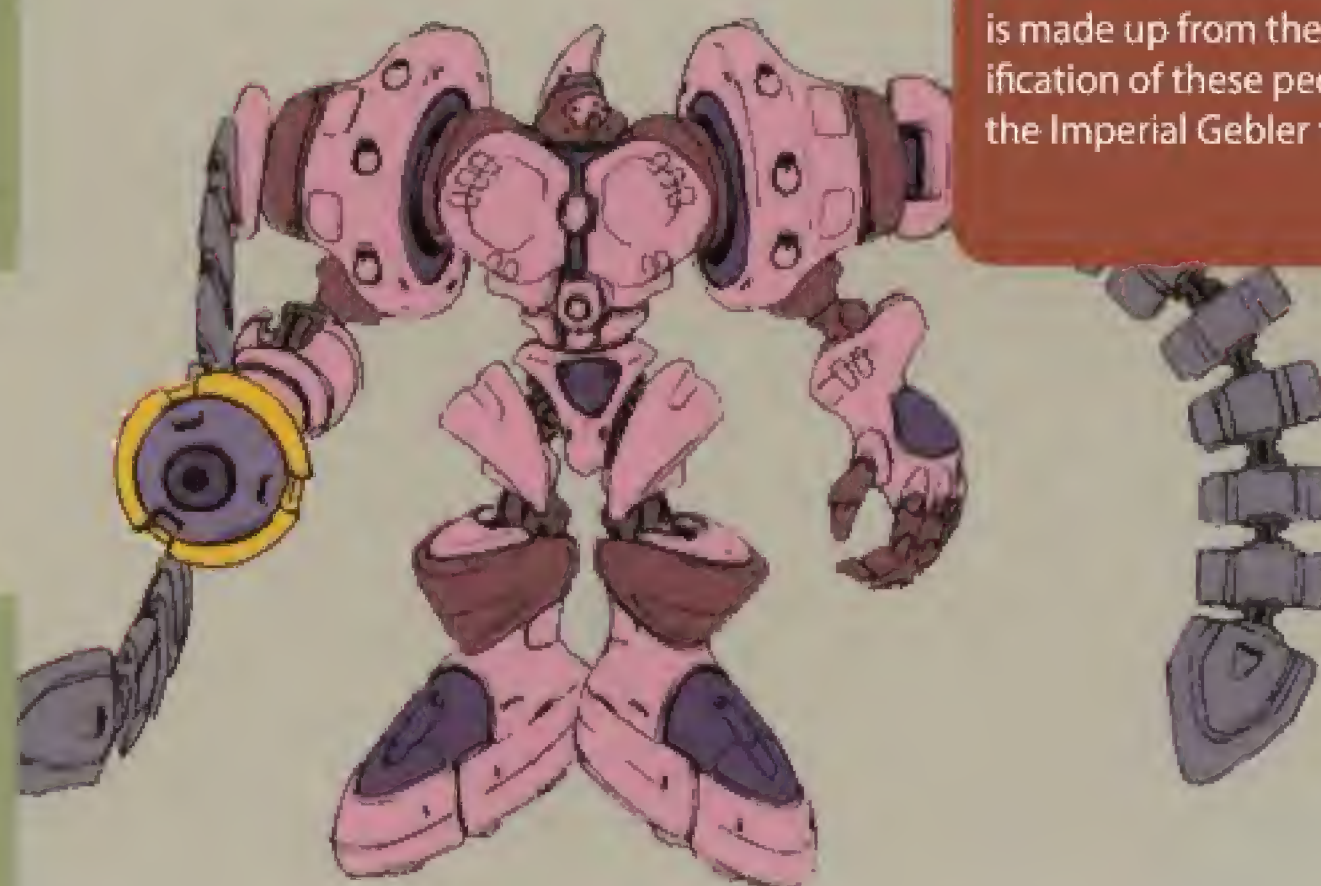
The Corps that carries out Solaris' military endeavors it is complete in itself. Each military's (water, fire, earth) headquarters is in Solaris. They receive their orders directly from the Ministry, these actions of course being inquired into by the Emperor.

Division Commander Ramsus (also serving as a Guardian Angel) presides over the highest of the military organizations. His primary role is to supervise and quell the surface. However, in the course of this duty he is temporarily allowed to govern over the powers of the surface, and is able to directly interfere.

Also, because Gebler functions as the Emperor's right hand, they are also endowed with the power to enforce Solarian law. This is the fundamental difference between them and the military of Solaris.

While the Gebler oversees military operations, it supervises the excavation of lost technology from ruins, the strategic Chapters 1 ~ 3 (Ruins Bureau). Because Gebler scorns such activities as these as not being up to its military qualifications, so the Church and Gebler function as one organization in name only.

Those members making up the organization are the Director's associates, the 4 members of the Elements and the Advisement council headed by Miang, thus it is made up from the first by only the elite. The qualification of these people, is their having gone through the Imperial Gebler training school, Jugend.





## Church Crest

A symbol representing sheep. Showing the surface dwellers (Lambs) as sheep, the Church (=Solaris) are the sheperds (Abel), whose goal is to manage and rule the surface dwellers behind the scenes.



Imperial Special  
Indoctrination Division

## The Church

Formerly the Church was set in motion as one part of Gebler in charge of attack, from government Bureaus to each division's advisory board, (in the case of Four Division, they are governed by various divisions within their own Headquarters.

At the time of Gebler's activation, the military's directives had as the main goal the indirect rule of the surface, and each division given the appropriate function, created a vast support network.

However, because of Solaris' power, their control and plan for surveillance had to be given up. Even in relation to the revival of Solaris, it had advantages beyond expectations.

And so, Solaris' having decided to put into effect the plan for economic rule, in the case that suitable technology for revival was on the surface, from a materialistic standpoint, they have reversed their situation in the present time so that they have economic supremacy and to defend this the program to use religion (Culture) is put in its place.

As a result, the -Church- system was designed to serve from the beginning as a replacement, working as a hidden organization behind the newly born Imperial Special Division, and in the course of events, internally each division was named thus and the locations on the surface of their Headquarters being exactly the same, were used and that was the start of it in this form.

Following this, the Chapter of the planned production was activated on the surface (births Division), and the plan for communication between Solaris and the lower world (communications Division) - the first inserted Chapter was the one for collecting goods and information. The lower world would receive technology from Solaris in a systematic fashion, thus the 2nd inserted Chapter (along with each Division). The Church was transferred to oversee the entirety of organized economic relations.

The present day governor is also a Guardian Angel, the Executioner (=Miang), inside the water Division, which acting as central Church interior, oversees every division through this.

The cause of this activity, a cultural control through the manipulation of the people's will using religion, has the long term effect of economic control.

And also, in addition to the reason for the Church having used religion to manipulate the will of the people, there is an additional effect, that is the surface dwellers of high ability return to the Church, and there recognize their exclusive right.

### Four Governing Division

#### Manager • Executioner

In the present, comes to independently hold the Commanding post, Executioner (Miang)

### Interior Bureau

### Every Governing Division

Wind Order  
Governing  
Division

Fire Order  
Governing  
Division

Water Order  
Governing  
Division

Earth Order  
Governing  
Division

### The rebellion of the Order of Water Governing Division

The Order of Water being different from the other Governing Divisions, as an inserted chapter of a special division in charge of deep ocean operations, they are established to manage the special water Trade Chapter. The Bishop of the Central Church, successively manages the Water Trade Chapter independently. And thus prepares to rebel against Solaris. The Advisory Board sent from there, and the people sent to operate the planned Production Chapter, report this rebellion to Solaris. It is subsequently quelled by Gebler and stopped in its tracks.

### Organization of each Division's interior

#### Advisory Division

Originally acting in an advisory capacity to the military for attack strategy, at the time of the Church's Independence, separated from the military. Manages surface economics and information.

#### Interior Bureau

The Bureau watching the trend in economics on the surface, the plan for general production as well as managing, it also governs general communications from the surface to Solaris.

#### Production Plan Chapter

Current production plans 2 ~ 5. Managing the visiting headquarters Production Bureau, it goes ahead with the plan of production on the surface.

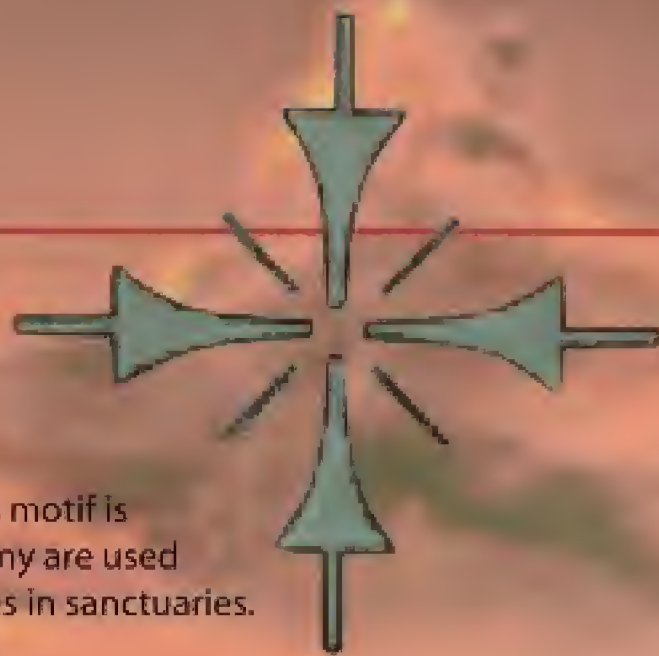
#### Inserted Chapter 1 (established Church)

Church facilities are established all over. For the recycling of byproducts on the surface and the collection of information.

#### Inserted Chapter 2 (Church offices)

One part of the technology for managing sent from Solaris, it is onerous to the surface dwellers.





### Nisan Crest

A religious symbol, its motif is that of -Light- and many are used to decorate holy places in sanctuaries.

### Because of those adherents to the teaching, glory shines on -Orthodox Nisan's- Holy Cathedral

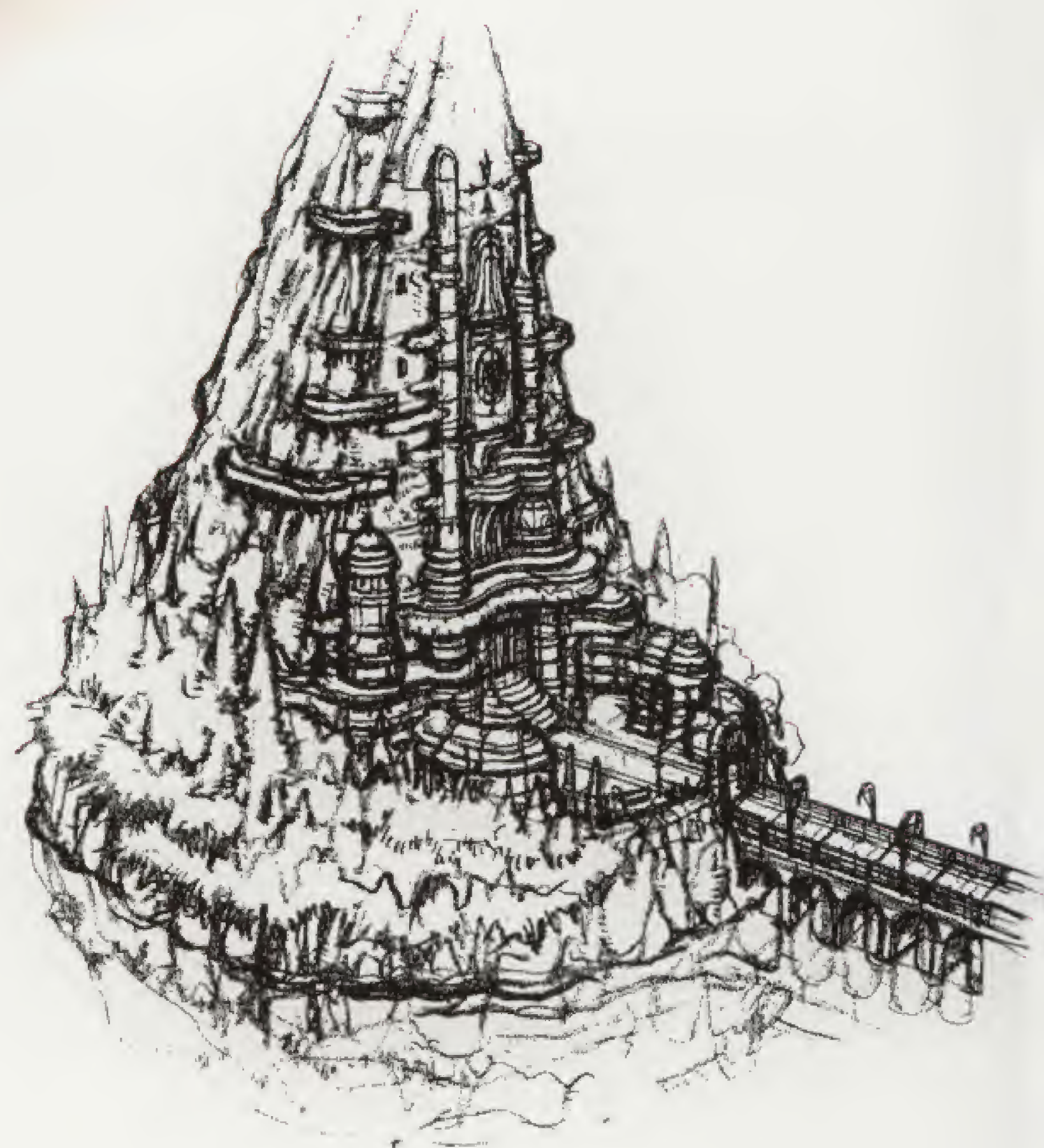
In Nisan, the Mother is both leader as well as the embodiment of the religious organization -Nisan Orthodox-. Until several hundred years ago, the -Nisan Orthodox- was just a frontier religion, its rituals and customs were vastly different from those of today. However, the year before the outbreak of war with Solaris was one of great reform in tenets and ritual, and at that time, its name was changed to -Nisan Orthodox-. It was the mother Church of the current Nisan.

In Nisan, in the heart of the mountain was a convent which is the birthplace of -Nisan Orthodox-, and there the Cathedral was raised, which resides at the center where it was constructed.

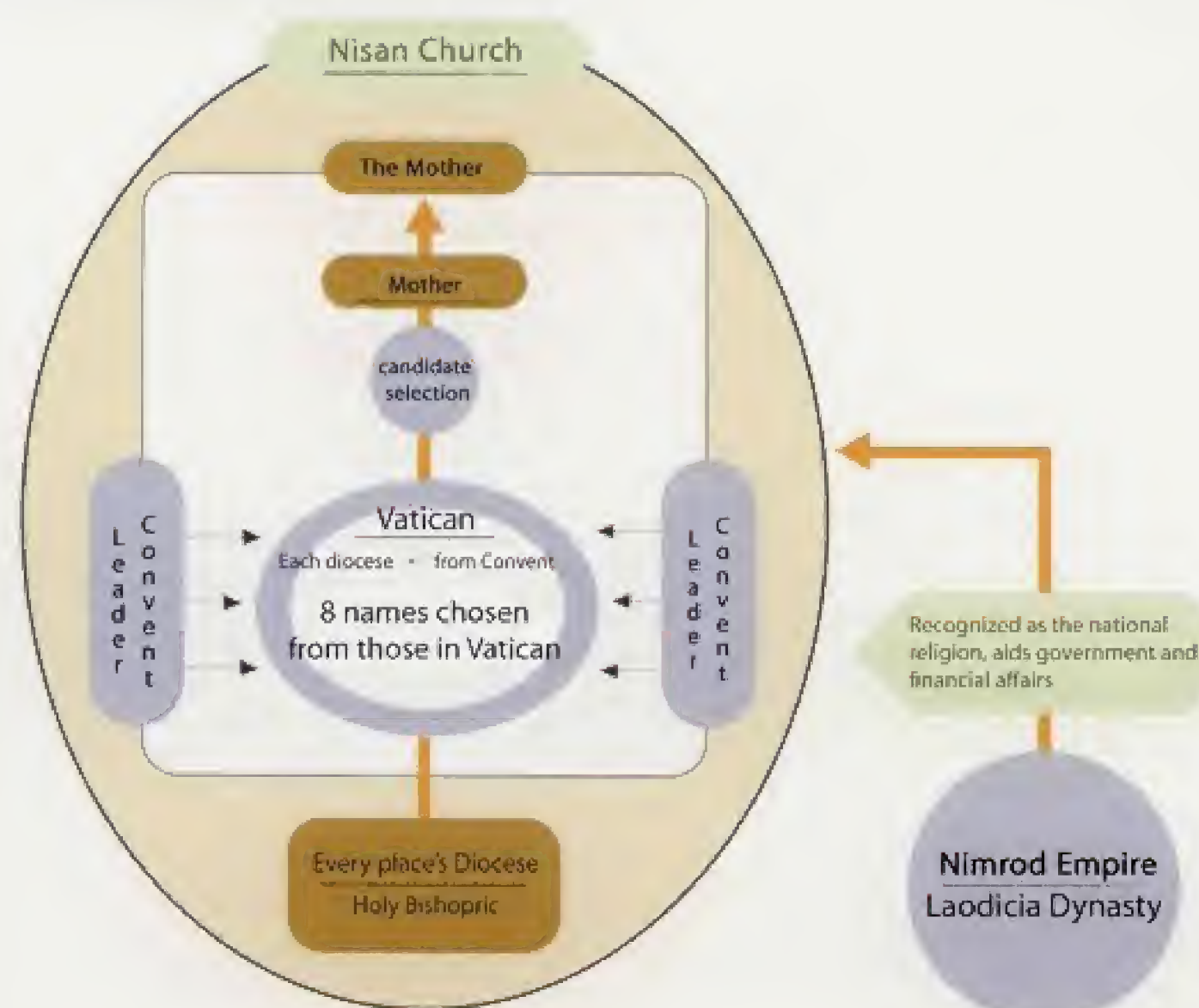
The teaching of the -Nisan Orthodox- spread at first from the area between Aveh and Kislev, from there it grew to spread throughout the world, and like the Cathedral, people gather at these churches, living there as well. Everywhere throughout the world, the -Nisan Orthodox- is also called the -Diocese- as well.

And so, Nisan having gathered people to their monasteries through missionaries, does not have a national organization with the machinery of government. This is the fundamental difference between them and Solaris' Church.

Incidentally, the Jasper Fortress that Shakhan was searching for (the hangar holding the Omnigear) in actuality was below the Nisan Cathedral, sleeping at the mausoleum.



### Nisan Teaching (Approx. 500 years ago)



### The Investiture of the Mother

While today, the position of Nisan's Mother has become hereditary, at that time a different method was used. Every Diocese sent in a representative to the Vatican where the Mother was chosen from a number of candidates by the Bishopric.

This selection of the Mother was a power game among the various Missionaries in the Diocese, and beneath the surface it became a bone of contention. This struggle caused those candidates who had nothing to do with the wishes or desires of those in the struggle to be drawn in against their will. About 500 years ago, Elehaym who was in power at the Penuel Convent was also one who resisted and was caught up in the struggle.

### Battle for Authority in the Vatican

In Est. Calendar year 9453

Due to Nimrod's intervention, Nisan reaches its zenith

The birth of the -Nisan Sect- can be traced from almost 900 years ago to the present. The -Nisan Sect- founded by Adorielle was a stronger first rate religion throughout the world than in the present day.

At that time in Nisan, the Vatican administered all as the highest governing body. At the heart of this was the Convent. With the Mother as head, the Diocese was formed by the Convent to offer administrative support, and it functioned with the goal being to unite the Church under the -Nisan Sect-.

And so, from its founding to about 370 years ago, the neighboring Empire, Nimrod was established there, and the -Nisan Sect- was on its way to becoming a nation. With this as one part of the Empire's plan, their ultimate goal was to expand their domain. And so with Nimrod adopting a shepherding government policy, engaging in economic aid, the religion of Nisan reaches its zenith.



Est. Calendar Year 9487

#### The Conflict between Laodicia Dynasty and the Nisan Sect

The government's goal being to have the -Nisan teaching- as the official religion, Nisan is helped out in various ways by the Nimrod Empire. The ruler at that time, Emperor Kusel Laodicia, sought to draw Nisan further in with their aid, and thus gain authority in the placement of missionaries in every Diocese.

And so, in an attempt to determine how effective the -Nisan teaching- would be in uniting the people, they began to think of placing their own dynasty's Priest (Supporter) in the position of Mother. And so Kusel desired the authority to select the Church's Mother.

However, there was great rebellion within the Church. And until then, the Mother chosen from the Vatican wielded extraordinary power.

On Nimrod's side, wishing to enter their own representative into the Diocese for choosing the Mother, they begin to oppress all of the Dioceses. And the Nisan Vatican, even reaching into the Head Bishopric, undergoes an interior reformation.

In the selection of the Head Bishopric, at that time, the one with the most ability was Cardinal Penuel, and the authority to choose the Mother descended to him.

From then on, Nimrod sought to conciliate Penuel, and due to the support from other Cardinals, Nimrod's interference was brought to a halt.

However, inside the Church there were none too few against Penuel's selecting the Mother.

#### The decline of former Nisan in the year 9490 and its revival 5 years later as the -Nisan Orthodox-

After the attack on Penuel Convent the Church having lost the Head Bishopric, the unknown workings inside the Church were exposed. And the occurrence of the Church's reformation caused a split between the former Penuel faction and the Diocese.

And so, due to the long reaching effect of the Laodicia dynasty's machinations, the Church ceased to function as a religious organization, and began its decline. On the other hand, during the attack at the Convent, the former Penuel faction escaped from the reformation, moving to the current location of Nisan and beginning the process of rebuilding which lead to the -Nisan Sect-.

Having lost the Mother, the Penuel faction began a daily process of repair. And at last, accompanied by Jacqueline, the former candidate for Mother, Sophia reappeared before the Church body. Suddenly the Church Advisory was re-assembled, and the declined Church realigned with what had been the Penuel faction.

And so, Jacqueline having sponsored Sophia as Mother before the former Penuel Bishops once again, the Church renamed itself the -Nisan Orthodox-. Also changing teachings and structure, they began to build the the Bishop's Cathedral (Today the Nisan Cathedral). This was the first step for the group.

However, the next year, war erupted with Solaris. Due to the influx of refugees from every nation, slowly their influence was increased. And so, from the war's outbreak to a number of years afterward, they became a great power comparable to Shevat.

#### After the War ~ The present Slowly a system is established

Due to the -Day of Collapse- at the end of the war with Solaris, almost all the country of Nisan was laid waste.

It was during this situation that Jacqueline began with all her efforts the process of rebuilding Nisan.

At this time, its Bishopric was formed; in the present day the center of Nisan, and from then on the office of Mother was hereditary. This action also spurred education at the Convent, and learning to survive without shepherding, they continued until the present day.

At that point, the era of the -Nisan teaching- became very different from then on.

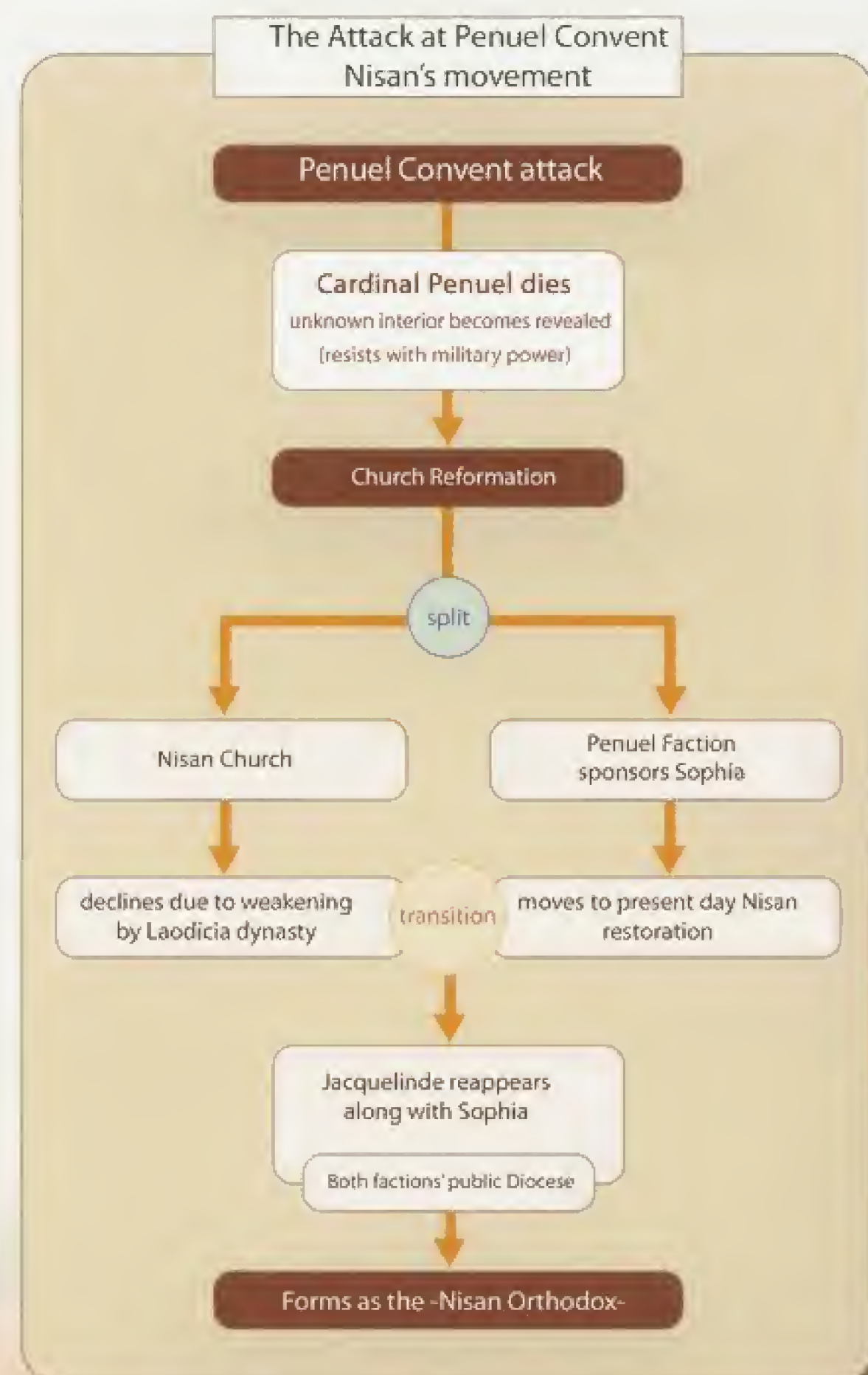
#### The result of Kusel's plot

#### The Attack at Penuel Convent

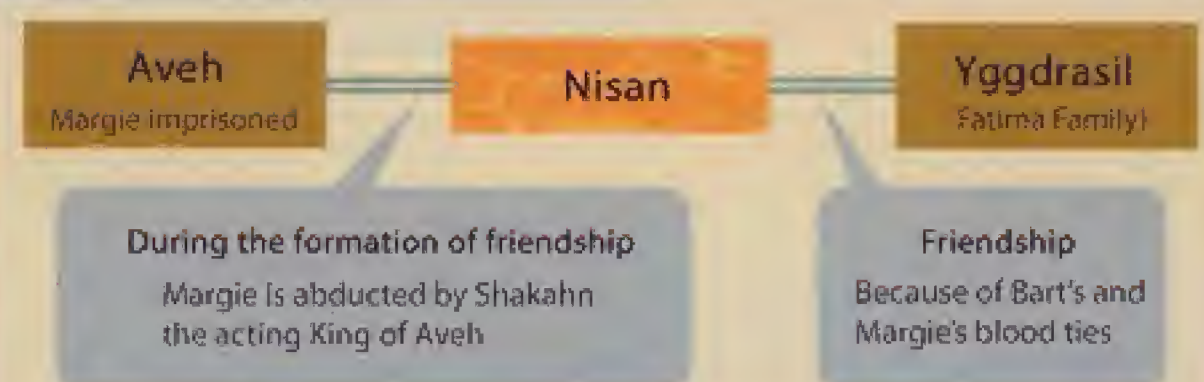
Kusel, the instigator of the rebellion within the Vatican, reaches even to the Vatican's Cardinal Penuel, and the plan is made to assassinate the Bishopric's candidate, Sophia.

In order to carry out this plan, Kusel forms an assassination Corps of Monastery Soldiers. The leader of the Corps, out of all those in the Monastery Corps is especially cruel, Krelan. Having put their plans for the assassination together, they wait for the opportunity when Penuel Convent is under attack. At that time, having invaded into the Convent, they are resisted by Penuel and others.

Due to this attack, Penuel at first almost the only supporter of Sophia, dies. However, at that time, Sophia and his niece Jacqueline both disappear into parts unknown.



#### Present day Nisan's influence on its surroundings







#### ■ Aveh Crest

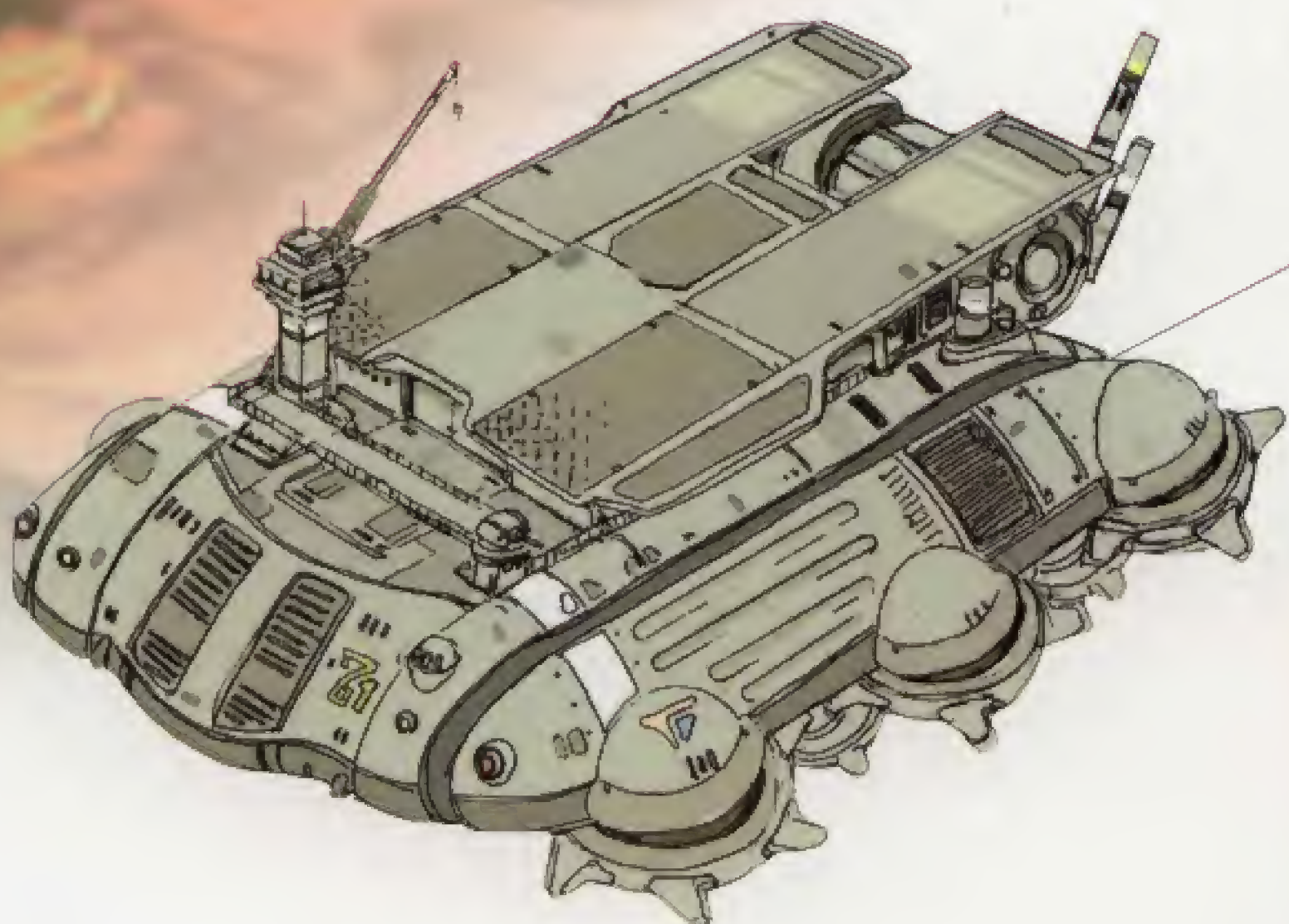
It is said to symbolize Aveh's image of the Fatima Jasper raised up by both hands.

Desert Country

## Kingdom of Aveh

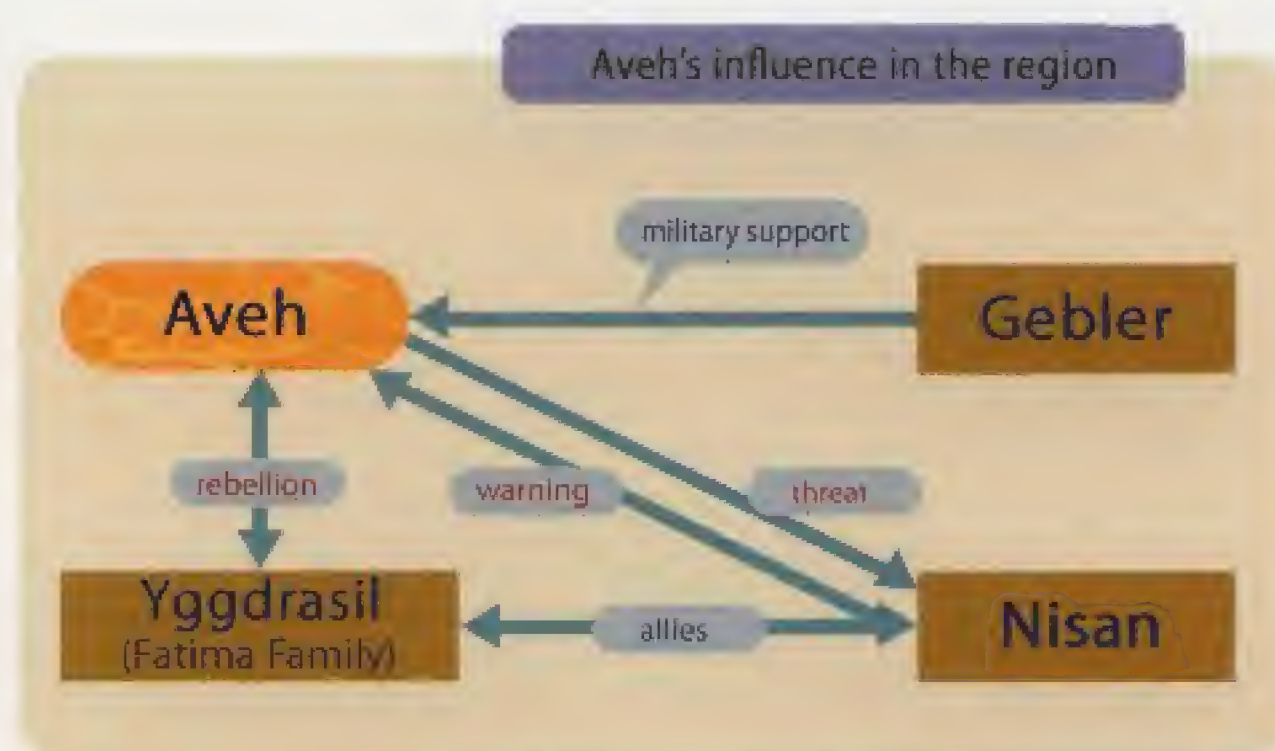
### The Nation built by the hero of the Great War, Roni Fatima

The leading power of the surface during the -Day of Collapse- and the battle for the destiny of the human race, the Main Corp's leader Roni Fatmia, in order to prepare for conflict with Solaris in the future, creates this nation. Aveh is ruled by the Fatima dynasty, each generation related by blood succeeding the last. However, 12 years ago, the King at that time, Edbart IV and the Empress Mariel were killed for resisting cooperation with Gebler by Shakhan (in reality an Ignas Sector Bishop for the Church). Taking control by force, as King Shakhan begins negotiations with Gebler. Using extraordinary military power, it was subdued by force into all regions. Even now, gradually that territory is widened, and the power hidden within excavation sites is obtained.



#### ■ Aveh Sand Cruiser

Because more than half of Aveh is desert, the large scale battle vessels, or rather 'cruisers' are almost all equipped with hovering capability.



### The Fatima Jasper

~ the legend of the hidden giant~

The first King, Roni, looking towards the coming Great War, hides the Giant holding the power of god, the Omnigear in the Jasper Fortress made from the remains of the Transport ship's culture. And the true nature of Aveh's treasure is known only to those succeeding generations of the King's family.

Aiming for the treasure, Shakhn lures and then kidnaps the Nisan Mother, Margie who is also a bloodline relative of the Fatima dynasty. And Nisan, which had been allies with Aveh before Shakhn's takeover, are rendered powerless with the Mother being held hostage.

Forgotten keepsake of the Fatima Family

#### Batholomew Fatima

#### Path to regain the Throne

12 years ago, Shakhn had the entire Fatima family from Edbart IV on down tortured in order to find out the nature of the Fatima Jasper. Before the application of truth serum, Edbart and the Nisan Mother at that time, Elvira committed suicide. Nearly all the remaining members of the family died as well. Some that survived were Edbart IV's son Bart and Elvira's daughter Margie, who were allowed to live but were placed under surveillance for the purposes of the inquiry into the nature of the Jasper. Later both were rescued by the efforts of the

former King's retainer, Maison, along with the young knight Sigurd, and that leads to the present.

Currently, Bart lives in the desert preying on the Aveh military's sand cruisers, and is leader of the desert pirates. All of this naturally is aimed at taking back Aveh from Shakhn, and fulfilling his father's last wish, "to make Aveh a Republic". And so, the actions of the pirates result in the raising of their military power, with the goal being the aim of taking back Aveh.







#### ■ Crest of Shevat

The territory separated from Babel Tower, that continues to wander among the skies. This symbol evokes that image.

#### The once great and powerful country is now only a shadow of its former self

Having great influence during the last Great War with Solaris, Shevat located on Babel Tower was the most powerful of the surface nations. However, in order to avoid invasion by the Diabolos, the populace was sheltered in a block of the topmost section of Babel Tower. Using the tower as a means to escape the war zone, they also escaped the -Day of Collapse-. And so, 488 years ago, Krelan making use of his knowledge of the placement of Shevats' mobile Corps during the Great War (secretly those soldiers from Nisan's monastery who had been drawn in), he comes to pay a visit to Shevat. Already having made contact with the Emperor, Krelan who had reached all the way to the top level of Solaris, deserts and bestows life extension treatments on Zephyr and those of the Elder Council.

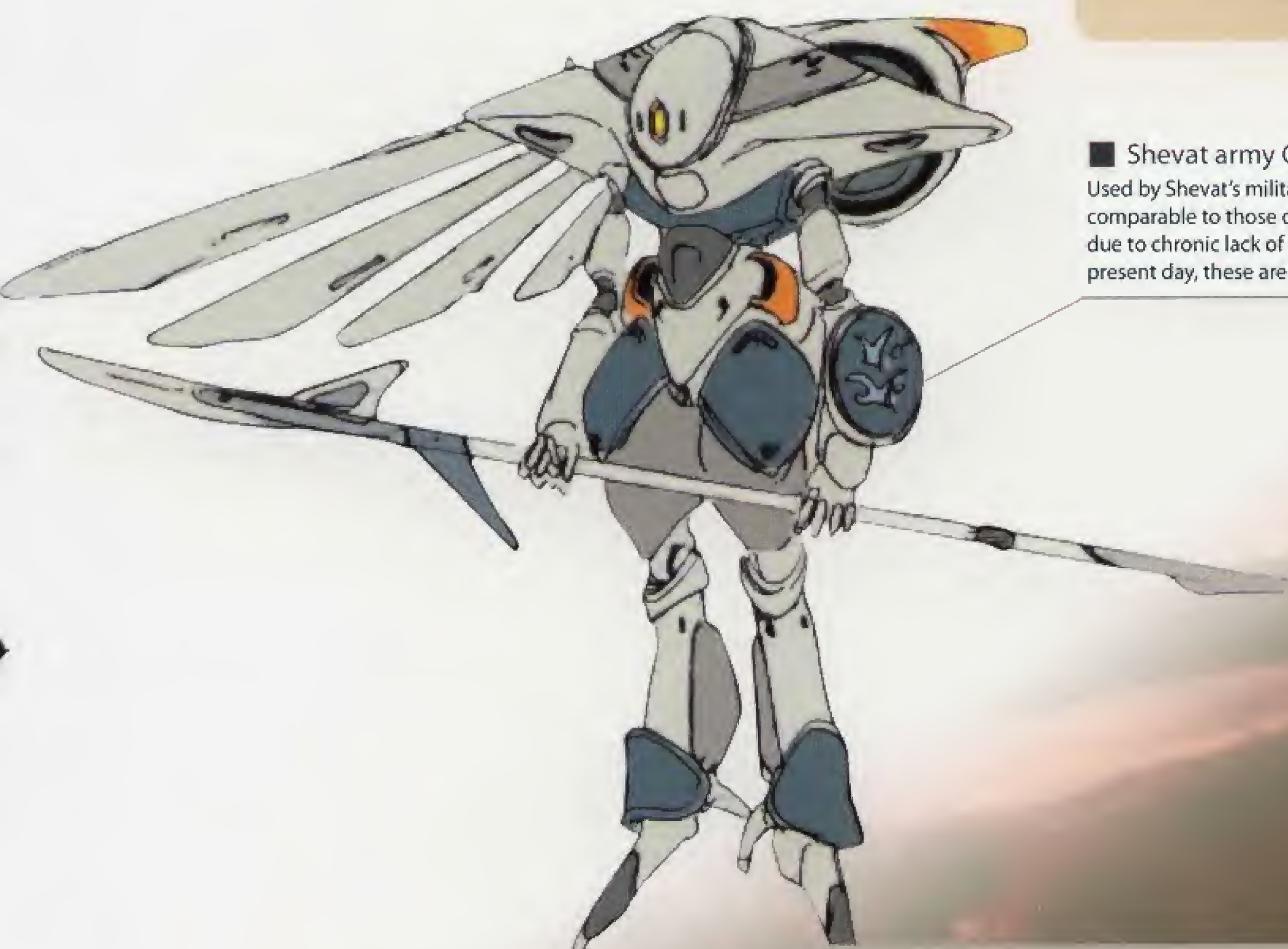
That year, Zephyr accedes as Queen, and from then until the present day, governs Shevat.

Today Shevat wanders the area above the Aquvy islands region, frequently sending Constructors to the surface. These Constructors were people that for one reason or another were driven from Solaris (Exiles) and making their way to Shevat, they add their strength to the Anti Solaris army's military power. The Elder Council has never ceased to wish to rule the surface.



#### ■ Shevat army Gear

Used by Shevat's military, has abilities comparable to those of Solaris. However, due to chronic lack of materials in the present day, these are hardly ever produced.



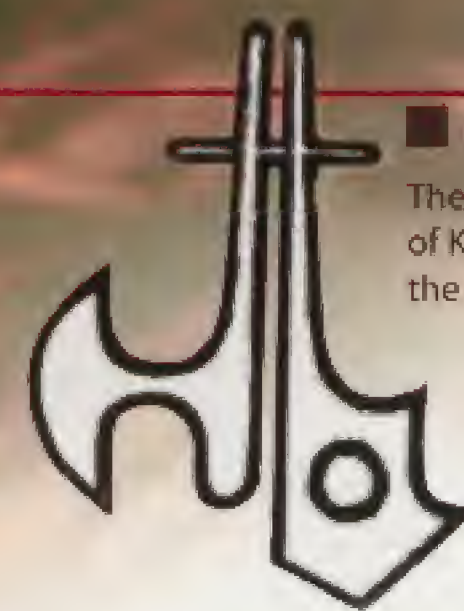
#### Solaris reaches out to invade 3 times

The current state of affairs is that while Shevat continues to harry Solaris, it no longer has the military power to resist full scale. This is the cause of the 3 invasions conducted by Solaris. The goal of invasion primarily being to take hold of the Omnigear in its possession as well as Excalibur, remnant weaponry from the transport ship's culture. Due to the actions of the Three Sages and the protection of the

#### Declining military power

Gate all three invasions end in failure, but the result is that Shevat's military power is whittled down. And because it wanders the skies alone, it suffers a shortage of materials and supplies. This is ultimately the cause of Shevat's erosion. Even today, Solaris aims at Shevat, the Gate causing all tactics for an attack to be more complex.





### ■ Kislev's Crest

The accomplished industry and military of Kislev. The symbol is said to represent the governing of that nation.

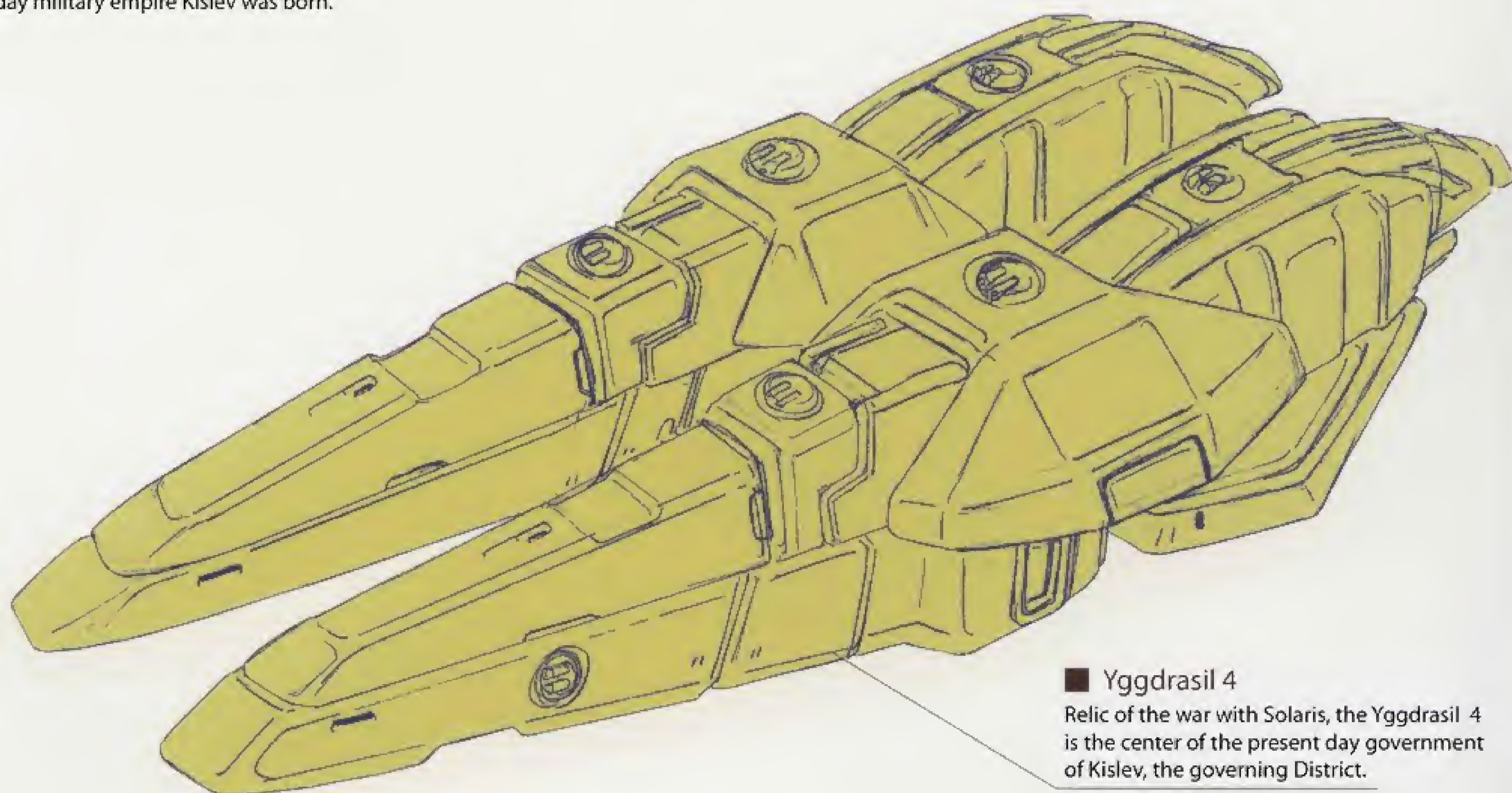
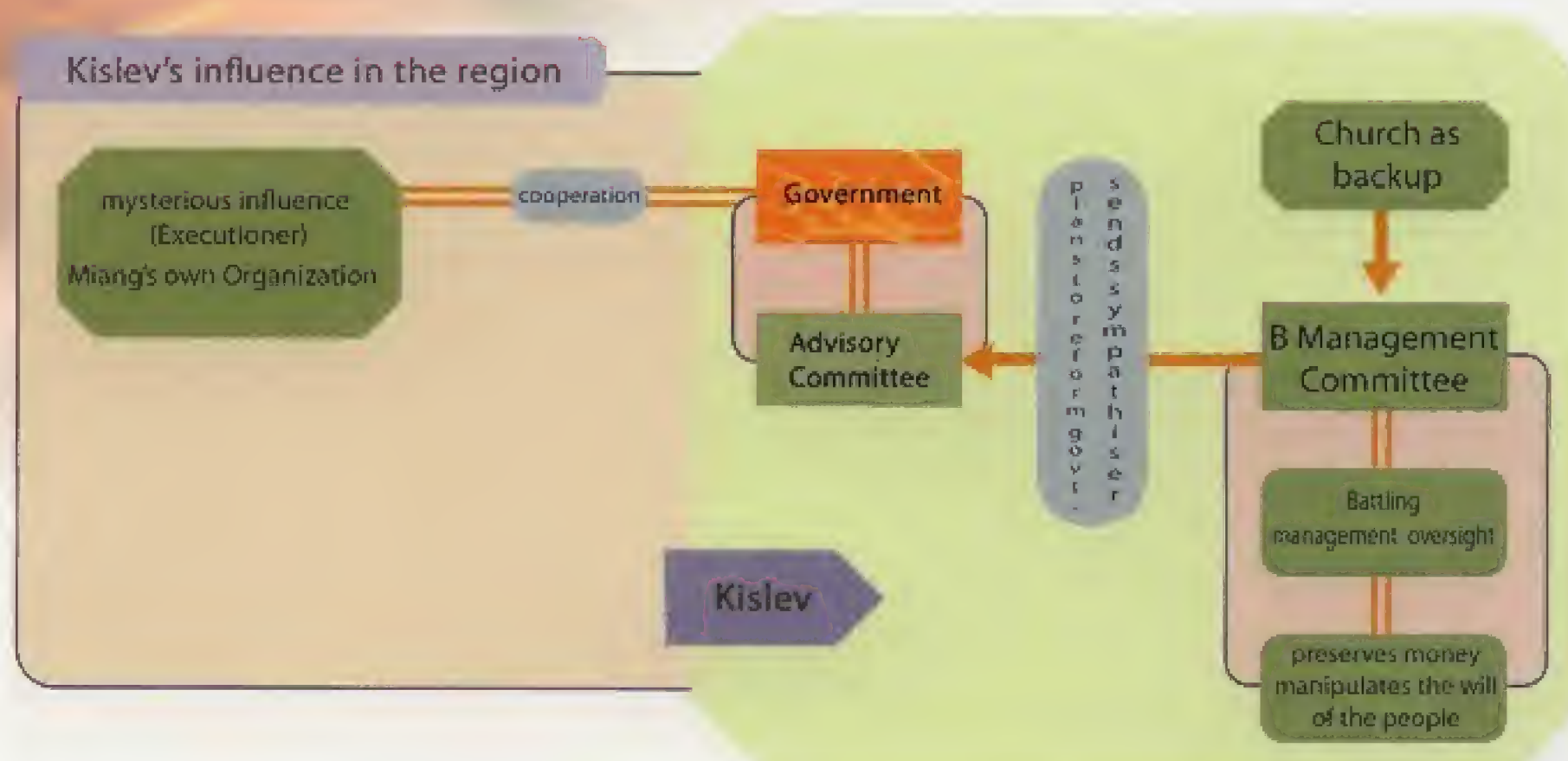
## The nation built on a battle site from 500 years ago The Capital with immense scientific knowledge

After the Great War, Roni excavated an ancient vessel and had it brought to Nortune, commanding his subordinates to repair it. The goal of this was to prepare for the coming decisive battle with Solaris.

During the repair process, because the vessel was found to be largely automatic, it had a great effect on the engineers who were working on it. And so, with the gradual gathering of humans beings to this place, it became a center for materials and communications, and a small town developed around this. Afterwards, an old reactor from ancient days was excavated, made use of, and over time the capital expanded.

Almost unseen, Solaris placed the Limiters in the surface dwellers. Also, having taken notice of the sudden rise in this capital, they established a lower level organization of the Church there, the Committee. The Committee's function was to work in the governing of the capital, at last the Kislev Federated Nation was born.

With the passage of time, war erupted between Aveh and Kislev. Here a mere soldier, Sigmund stood out among the rest, and achieved spectacular standing in the world. And so, Sigmund went on to rise all the way to the governing position, gathering all the surrounding areas into a cohesive whole, reforming the nation's system. And so the present day military empire Kislev was born.



### ■ Yggdrasil 4

Relic of the war with Solaris, the Yggdrasil 4 is the center of the present day government of Kislev, the governing District.

### Every so often comes to cooperate with Kislev

Due to Gebler's intervention, Aveh's military weaponry is strengthened, while on the surface, Kislev's technological expansion appears to be slowing. In order to rectify this imbalance in technology, by order of Sigmund a plan is executed to develop a Gear for single use. Aiding in this new technology, is the Executioner (=Miang). Once before the Executioner loaned Weltall temporarily in the past, and Kislev achieved a great leap forward in technology in the process of researching its construction. And so, Kislev produced a single use Gear. And after, the Executioner

### The mysterious "Executioner's" goal

gives Kislev the Gatekeeper. And so, aided once again, Kislev constructs the Gatekeeper Loading Vessel, Goliath. At that time, the question of the difference in their's and Aveh's technology is resolved.

The goal of the Executioner is to maintain the balance of each sides' military power and in so doing, collect data on the abilities of humans. And so, the fighting between both countries once again spurs on the re-formation of humans as parts for Deus.



## The Committee's role and plot And their relation to the Church?

Since long before, Kislev was governed by the Committee. Being a lower level organization of the Church, they exist even in today's reign of Sigmund, and more Committee members are added for the purpose of eventually re-taking the government.

Then why at the time of Sigmund's accession, did he not find their presence to be a nuisance and have the Committee driven out? That is so they could manage the Battling. Having been in existence since before the present regime, and managed by the Committee, it is a central pillar of the nation's economy. In the present, his government in place, Sigmund allows it for the effect on the economy and the collection of data, the appearance of the Battler Corps in the military being a strong component. It is for this reason that the Committee has not been driven out. Much data on fighting has been collected in the Battling, and not only to the government, but the Committee sends this on to the Church.

In recent years, having gained much influence in the Governing Council, the Committee puts into place one part of the plan to overthrow the government with the resulting rejection of the demi-humans. Kislev being a melting pot of different kinds, none too few have demi-human blood. The Committee stirring up anti-demi human sentiment unleashes the whirlwind, for the purposes of the failure of Sigmund's government. However, this plan did not go as expected, and today, it is mostly at a standstill.

■ Kislev army Gear  
For use in Kislev's military, it was devised using Weltall brought in by the Executioner as well as data collected in Battling.



Sea City

## Thames

### Large area in the sea - The free trading City in the center of Aquvy

The Thames is a large ship that sails among the many islands of the sea. At such a large scale it is fair to call it a city. The people are governed by the ship's Captain, and engage in salvage operations removing materials and artifacts from the ocean floor. In this area of the seas are many with mixed races and bloodlines, so the ship has a good sampling of almost every kind. However, the Thames does not like conflict, and even though they are equipped with a large cannon, they have not used it for quite a long time. They also have many Gears, but these are used in deep sea operations and not for fighting. A man of the sea similar to Bart, the Captain has an understanding with him and they have a friendly relationship on both sides thereafter.

#### Thames' influence in the region

Yggdrasil

Thames

Church

friendly relationship

trading partners on the surface

#### The hidden plan behind the large scale salvaging

The plan of the large scale salvage project entrusted to the Church is for the recovery of the advanced science of the Zeboim Culture. The background of this, is the plan put

#### Church's goal

in place by Solaris and central to the core of the Church's plan for rebellion. In this way, Solaris extracts Zeboim's technology and gains understanding of it.



# Aveh • Kislev's War ~ balance in the midst of battle ~

Nuclear War, The Great War, the -Day of Collapse- . . . Human beings as a species have approached annihilation many times without number throughout history. With the passage of years, human attributes and abilities are raised so that they grow ever closer to being completed as parts for the construction of Deus. And those times of the re-formation of human beings are necessarily enacted by Cain and the Gazel Ministry as well as Miang. And so, in the present day, the large scale nations of Aveh and Kislev on the Ignas continent have continual strife along the frontier zone. When did this warfare begin, and what is the original cause? Even now no one knows. However, beneath the surface, it is certain that Solaris must have set things in motion . . .

## The conflict's cause, the goal forgotten Day by day they collide again and again . . .

Because there are no certain records concerning the outbreak of the war between Aveh and Kislev, it is said that it began about 300 years ago. If the cause for the warfare is the struggle for dominance on the continent of Ignas, or the struggle between peoples of different kinds, today is not known. Large scale war having broken out in every part of Ignas long ago, currently skirmishes take place near the ruins on the frontier, occurring with frequency all over. It is a case of equal measure in fighting, for fighting's sake.

### About 300 years ago (the time of the War's start) ~ 13 years ago

~ excavated materials as the source of gaining ascendancy over Kislev

#### [the time of the War's outbreak]

#### one step forward - one step back

When the war started, Aveh and Kislev had roughly equal military power. Because of this, the situation of war changed very little, and it became a repeated case of one step forward, then one step back. Both countries desired a breakthrough with the power to be gained by excavating ruins. In the course of excavating ruins everywhere in Ignas, and gaining understanding of the ruins' culture, both countries expanded their technology by leaps and bounds. It even extended into effecting industry and economics.

#### [14 years ago]

#### In Aveh's weakness, peace draws closer

Amid the growing competition between both countries to excavate ruins, Kislev is built on a battlefield from the Great War with Solaris, and researching relics from the Great War and reconstructing them, they advance their technology greatly. As a result, in terms of the war, Aveh began to be the weaker party. However, that was not the desired goal, and the King at that time, Edbart IV despairing of there ever being an end to the continuing warfare, proposed peace between them and Kislev. Peace was just about to be established at that point.

### 12 years ago ~ the present

the reversal of war, to an active era ~

#### [12 years ago]

#### Aveh's King dies Peace is destroyed

Just before the establishment of peace between Aveh and Kislev, Minister Shakhan causes a coup d'etat. Starting with Edbart IV and working on down, he kills almost the entire royal family, and peace negotiations come to a halt.

#### [11 years ago]

#### Gebler constructs a base in Aveh

Having taken over Aveh's government, Shakhan makes a military alliance with Gebler. Gebler constructs a base in the royal capital, Bledavik, and begins offering Aveh strong military support. Preparations for the invasion of Kislev are begun.

#### [Present]

#### Aveh goes from weak to equal power in the war

Up until now, Aveh had tried to catch up to Kislev with the excavation of materials and relics, but this is overcome by Gebler's overwhelming military strength. Riding this shift in fortunes, Aveh aims to invade step by step into Kislev's territory, and thus expand their own.

## The workings of other powers besides Aveh and Kislev

### Yggdrasil

In the western tip of Ignas at their hideout, the sand submarine Yggdrasil is the pirate ship that operates within Aveh's borders. Bart, the inheritor of the Aveh royal legacy, works towards the goal of taking back the kingdom of Aveh. Currently he and the crew roam around attacking Aveh sand cruisers, and taking in weapons and materials. They wait for the opportunity to take back Aveh.

### Shevat

Shevat does not interfere in any way on the surface. And so, today Solaris has almost complete control on the surface. In any event, contact whatsoever would provide an opportunity for Solaris to attack in some form. In order to escape the worst outcome, Shevat maintains a watchful stance.

### Nisan

Having blood ties with Aveh's royal family, Nisan is an ally. However, in the present there is no interaction between the two. This is because Minister Shakhan, aiming for the Aveh treasure, takes the Nisan Mother Margie prisoner. Also, Margie's blood relation to the leader of the pirates, Bart ties their two groups as allies.

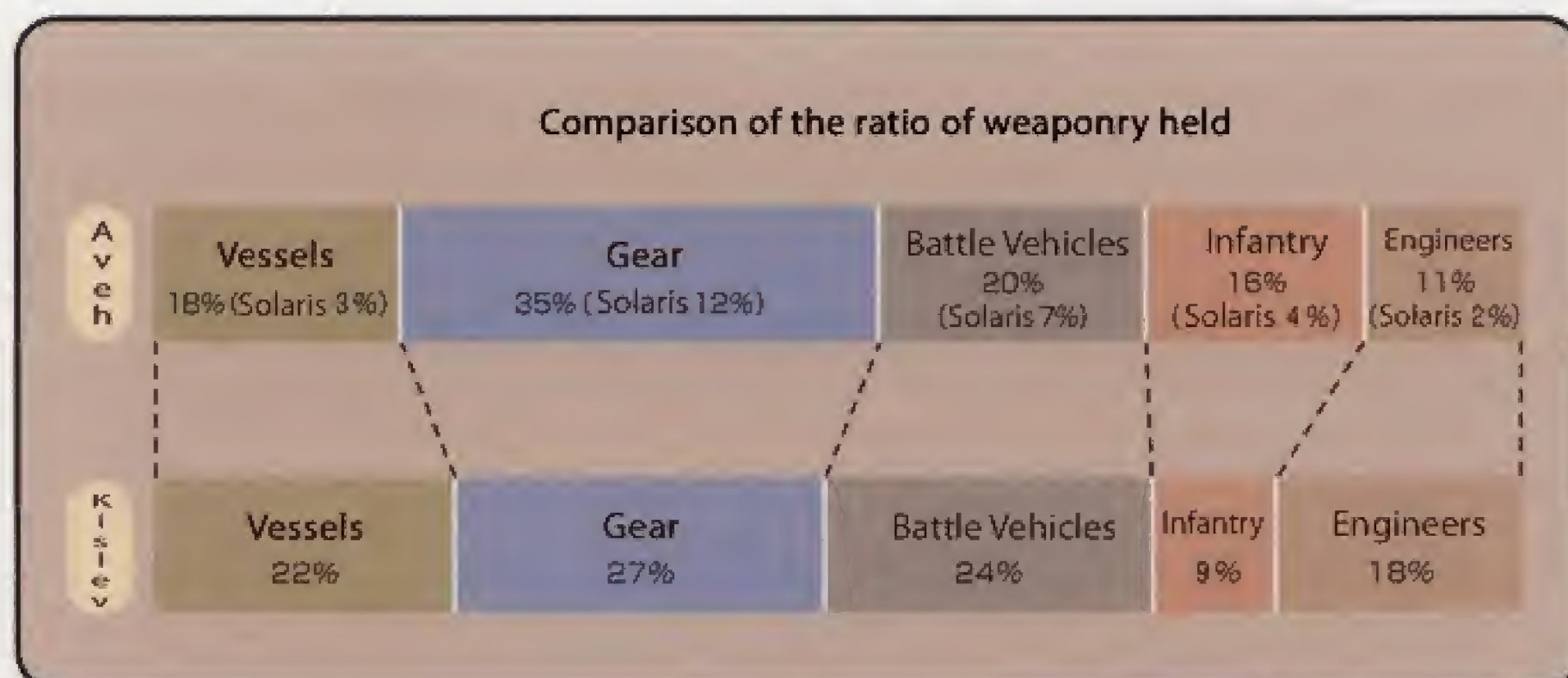
### Solaris

Using Gebler to raise up Aveh, and the Church to infiltrate into the government of Kislev, Solaris rules both. From the time of the war's outbreak, in order to prolong the conflict, they have maintained a careful balance between the two countries, using various methods. Aveh and Kislev continue to fight totally unaware of this.



## The revolution in war technology due to the advent of [large vessels with giant cannons] and Gear use

At the time the war started, those weapons called Gears were unknown on the surface. Due to the Limiter placed in people by Solaris after the -Day of Collapse-, the existence and use of Gears in general disappeared almost entirely from the surface. And so, in the course of excavating the ruins at the start of the war, they advanced their technology with the things unearthed. However, only Gear technology could not be understood by the science of that time. So on the surface, the widespread use of super sized vessels [gigantic cannon -ism] was the norm for the era. This continued for the last several hundred years into the present day until approximately twenty years ago, when Gears gradually began to appear on the surface. Gears started to replace the trend in large vessels as the main power, and in a blink of an eye, both sides had them. This was a dramatic revolution in war technology. And so, the war for rights to the ruins became even more fierce.



### Aveh's possession of weapons

### The transporting of Solaris' most powerful Gear

Up until now, Aveh had lagged behind Kislev in extracting relics because of the bad conditions in the desert. This was due to the lack of engineers in the ruins excavation Corps. However, after the interference by Gebler, before long on the surface, they began to exceed Kislev's military in the production of large scale vessels and power output, along with the introduction of their most powerful weapon at the center - a high ability Gear. Due to this, the difference in power between theirs and Kislev's army was whittled down, and it is the abilities of Solaris-made weapons that makes it possible for them to catch up.



#### ■ Solaris Base Fortress

Being constructed on the surface by Solaris in the capital, the Gebler Base is on the largest scale.

### Kislev's possession of weapons

### On the good side of the balance of wealth of materials

Having achieved retrieval of technology from the excavation of ruins, Kislev specializes in many industrial activities. Also, in order to enhance their military strength from the ruins, they create an assembly line, and vessels, Gears and military vehicles are produced gaining them the advantage in the balance. Now, because the presence of Gebler Headquartered in Aveh has reduced the differences in technology, Kislev begins to produce weapons with their own technology. In particular, they resolve to develop the central power of Gears and vessels able to resist the flight vessels of Gebler,



#### ■ Kislev army tank

Specializing in the technology of war vessels. These are pivotal as weapons capable of meeting Aveh's Gears in desert battles.

## Solaris' interference in both countries What in the world is their goal . . . ?

Solaris establishes Gebler in Aveh, and places the Church in Kislev, respectively. And 20 years ago, the two countries have grown tired of the long term war, so due to the Church's actions Gears are supplied by Solaris and introduced everywhere on the surface by the Church. And so the balance of power between the two nations is maintained, and the war prolonged. In actuality, this is one stage of the M Plan initiated by Solaris. In the earlier Great War, Solaris determined to -reform humans who were at the ultimate stage (=warfare)-, and desiring a new war, thus could continually reform humans in the process. Also, having the powers of the surface in a state of unrest as well as their being unaware of the existence of Solaris would keep their actions from becoming known.

The current war in Ignas as well as the Battling both become laboratories for the production of living weapons.

Those living forms on the field or in Battling are used to collect data, and with gene manipulation experiments different human species occur. Due to these experiments, mutant humans called Wels are formed. Wels are tested on the surface, only those passing the test are released and reproduced as a living maze, so as a result, humans are fused with Gears and re created to form parts of Deus as terminal interface weapons.


And also, the goal is for those born with the special ability to fuse with an Anima Relic (the Gazel Ministry's flesh).

Is the surface where Solaris conducts its experiments?

### Example: Kislev's Battling








## *Geography*

From this reconstructed World Map,  
the world in the story can be grasped.  
“Xenogears WORLD ATLAS”  
this is the “quick reference chart”

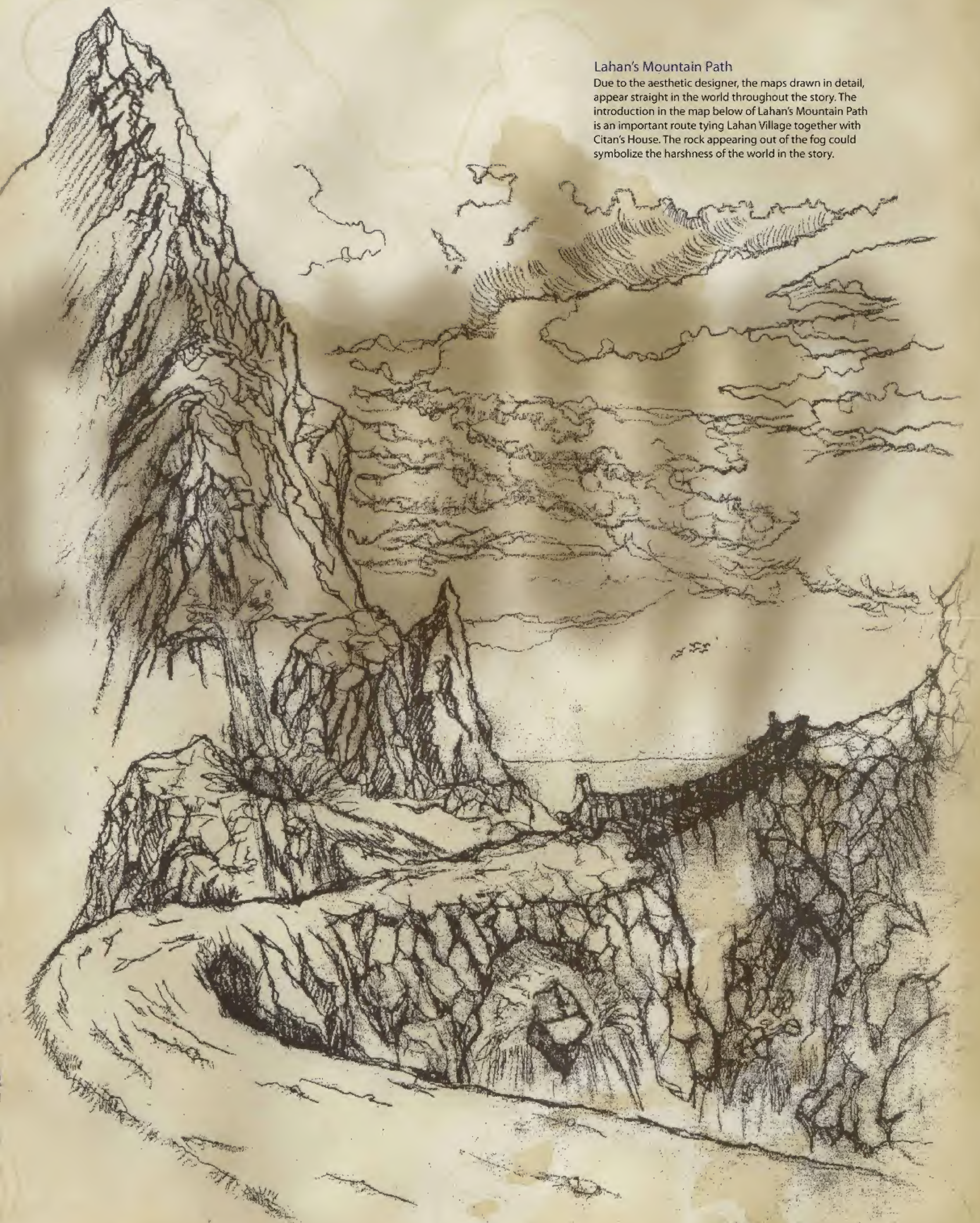


With the new edition of the map at hand, the areas  
that appear in the world of Xenogears can be sought  
geographically. During the game, such things as the  
investigation into elevation above sea level did not  
become known. Also, using important official illus-  
trations of each nation, their cultures and form can  
be explained.



### Lahan's Mountain Path

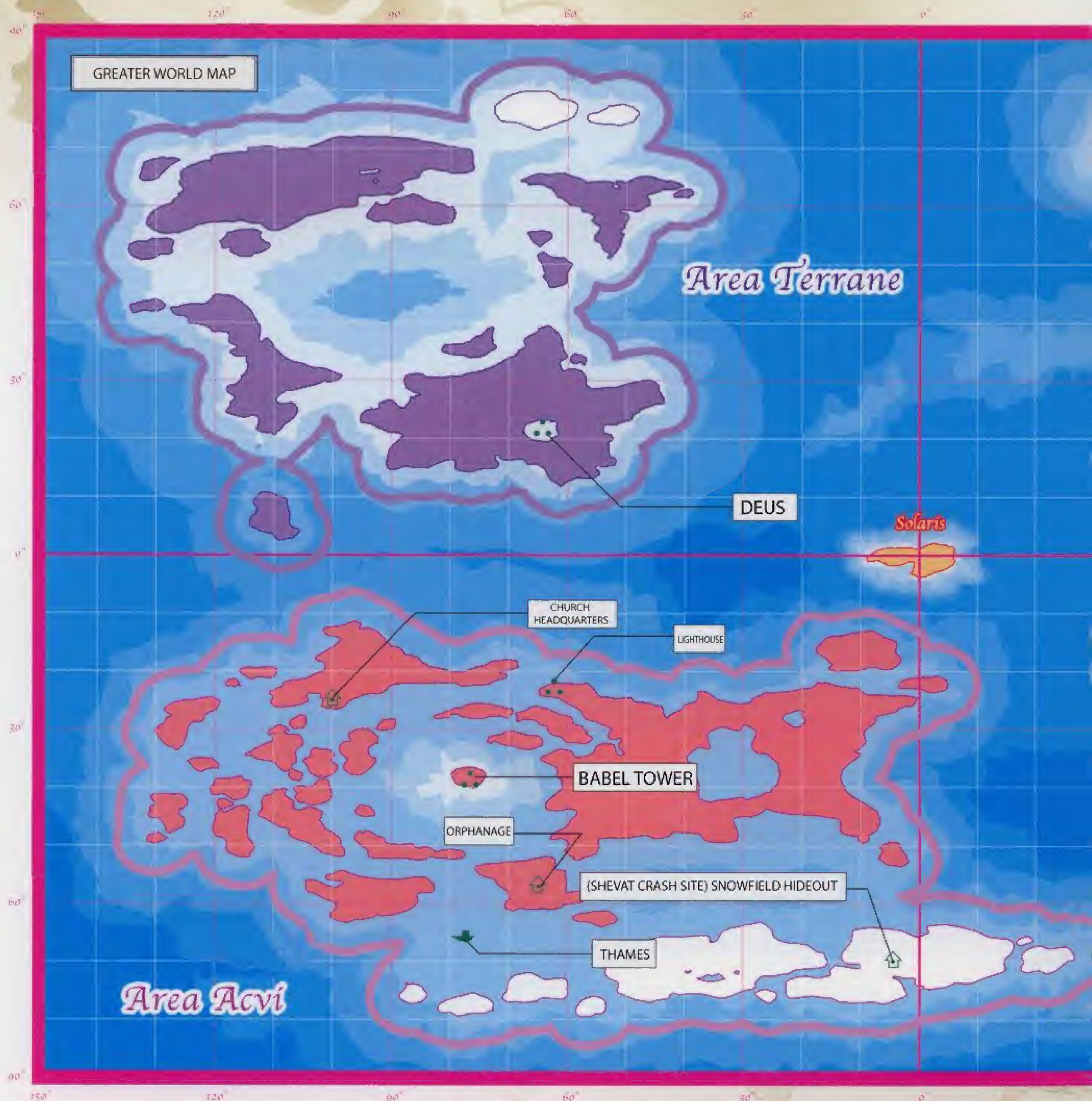
Due to the aesthetic designer, the maps drawn in detail, appear straight in the world throughout the story. The introduction in the map below of Lahan's Mountain Path is an important route tying Lahan Village together with Citan's House. The rock appearing out of the fog could symbolize the harshness of the world in the story.





[Introduction]

And now, please refer below for the basic map. For the sake of correct positional readings, both poles are somewhat distorted, in order to depict the entire world of the planet in one glance. It is divided into 4 separate areas, the part ruled by Solaris is sectioned off. However, even viewing these divisions of the continents, the latitude and longitude line at 0 is where the 4 sections are divided. Regarding the landmasses, while not an ultimate guide, this map may be used to determine where the towns and landmarks are partitioned. For differences in elevation, please refer to p. 42 ~ 43, and for details concerning the shape of the land and their cultures please refer to the detailed analysis of the nations starting from p. 44. Here will be explained each of the four areas of the world.





## ■ Ignas Area

The continent of Ignas is the world's largest central area. The surroundings include such landmasses as Nisan, Sandman's Isle and various islands, sometime in the distant past it separated from the continental shelf, and it in the present it is currently located 1.5 times the distance it had been previously while having the largest landmass of all the continents. The continent is divided in 2 parts, with the central plains below and a mountain range between the two. Now, the 2 sides having been in a state of conflict for several hundred years, the border is closely guarded. The larger half of the continent's interior is desert, and its surroundings include steppes and mountain ranges. The main cities being in the interior, there are many small towns and villages along the coast. In regards to weather, the northern part occupied by Kislev is in the colder zone, with a change of seasons, the southern half occupied by Aveh has desert conditions. This area having layers of sand over the ages, somewhere in the middle stratum are the ruins of past cultures that lie buried. Dazil and the town of Pris that appear in the short story are said to be engaged in excavation of the ruins.

## ■ Aquvy Area

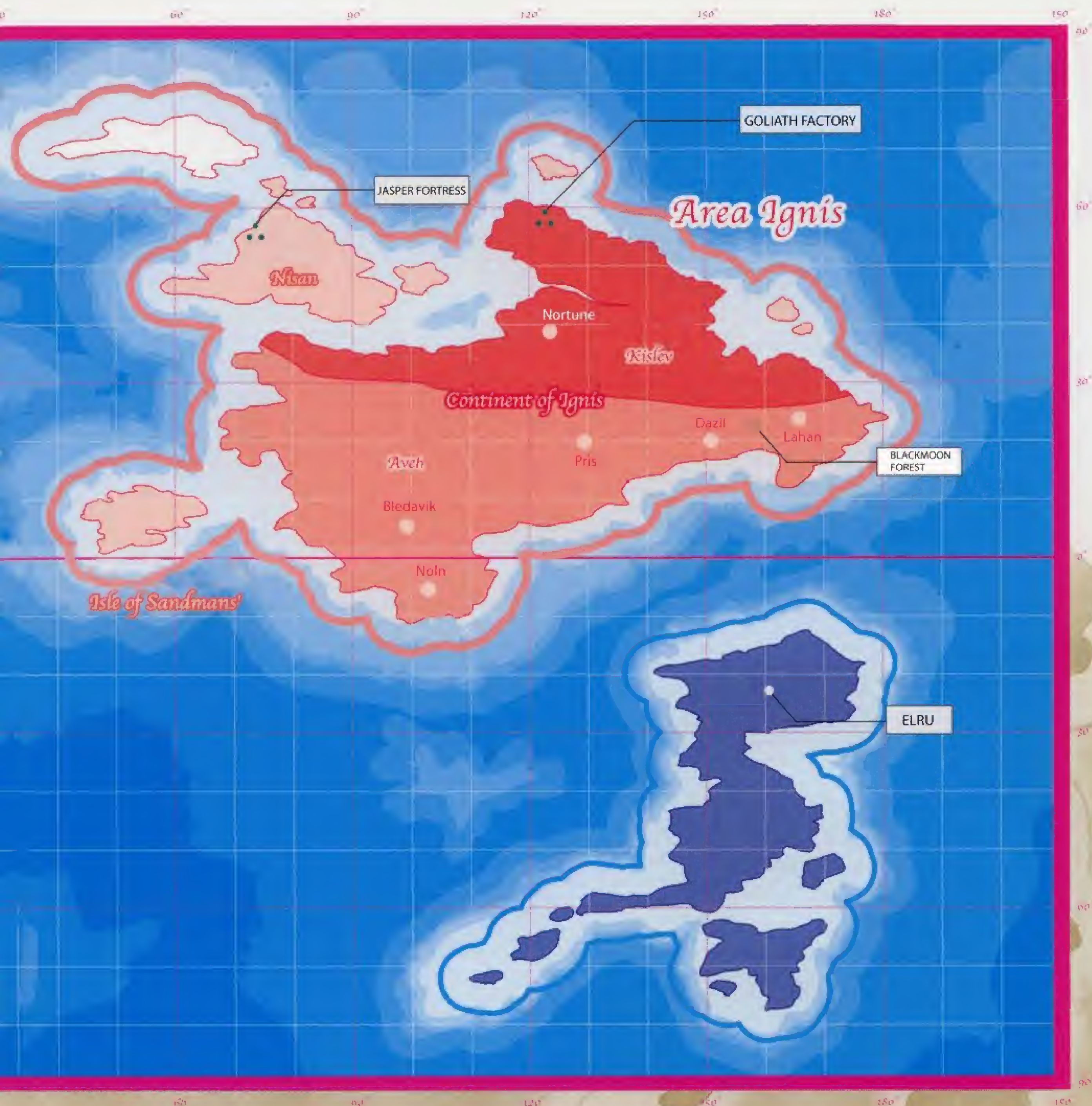
The zone called the [islands area], due to a great shock to the world's crust in the past, almost no large scale cities exist here. Only the Church Headquarters, the world's religion has any facility here similar to those in other areas. Once, Shevat crowned the top of Babel Tower, and this is in the central portion. The surrounding area has no large continental shelf to speak of, and there are only remnants deep on the sea floor below, what had sunk down in the past along with the shelf. The Thames as the first sea faring city, (gigantic ship) roams the area, and while not a city per se, it conducts independent trading as a city in its own right, growing powerful in this way.

## ■ Terran Area

Inside the 3rd area, the Terran area is the most widely affected by the sea. The truth behind the meaning of the area's name, -Earth- has at its core a very interesting meaning. The variation in the lifestyles of the people in this area, is cause for envy by the other two areas, Ignas and Aquvy. They live mostly as hunters and wanderers, and their freedom lies in the feeling that [all earth is home], and their independence to live life as they see fit. This is their primary occupation. Even in view of the weather, because the greater part of the continent is wrapped in colder sea currents, it is actually the most harsh of the areas.

### □ after Gate destruction a midsize continent appears

The nameless area, a mid-sized continent that appears after the destruction of the Gate. Formerly a green zone, when it was separated from the continental shelf, it is thought that this is when the landmass expanded. It appears that Taura's research lab and destroyed Elru are here. However, Elru rarely interacted with the other nations of the world, so its position can't be mapped with certainty.



© Digi Cube/Yasuda Tomomi

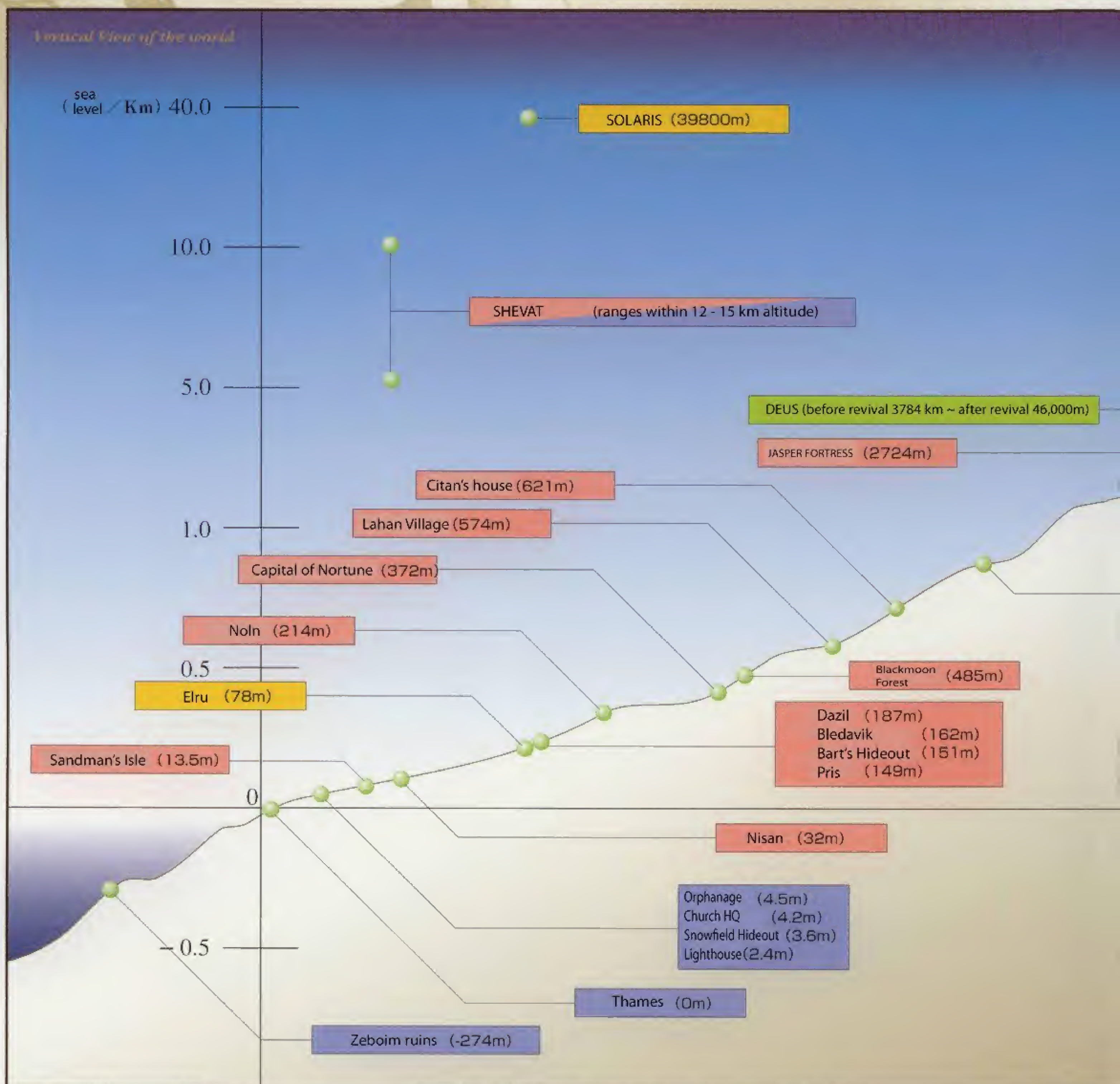
※ In order to preserve proportion in distances, there is some distortion in the ocean and land area.



## [ General use how to read this map ]

The vertical axis marks 0 meters above the sea level altitude, so that the other levels can be viewed singly in kilometers. With the previous page as the basis, every landmark and area is color coded into respective regions, such as ■ = Terran Area ■ = Ignas Area ■ = Aquvy Area ■ = other areas. In particular, the latitude and longitude positions starting at 0, with Solaris in the stratosphere, that portion ranging between the Aquvy area, to Ignas and all that lies between is Shevat's domain as it moves through the skies. The separations into low level, mid level and high level areas can be read below.

Also, to the right are earth landmarks by way of comparison, to see its differences with the world.





■ Altitude • Each landmark explained

low levels ( ~ 1 0 m )

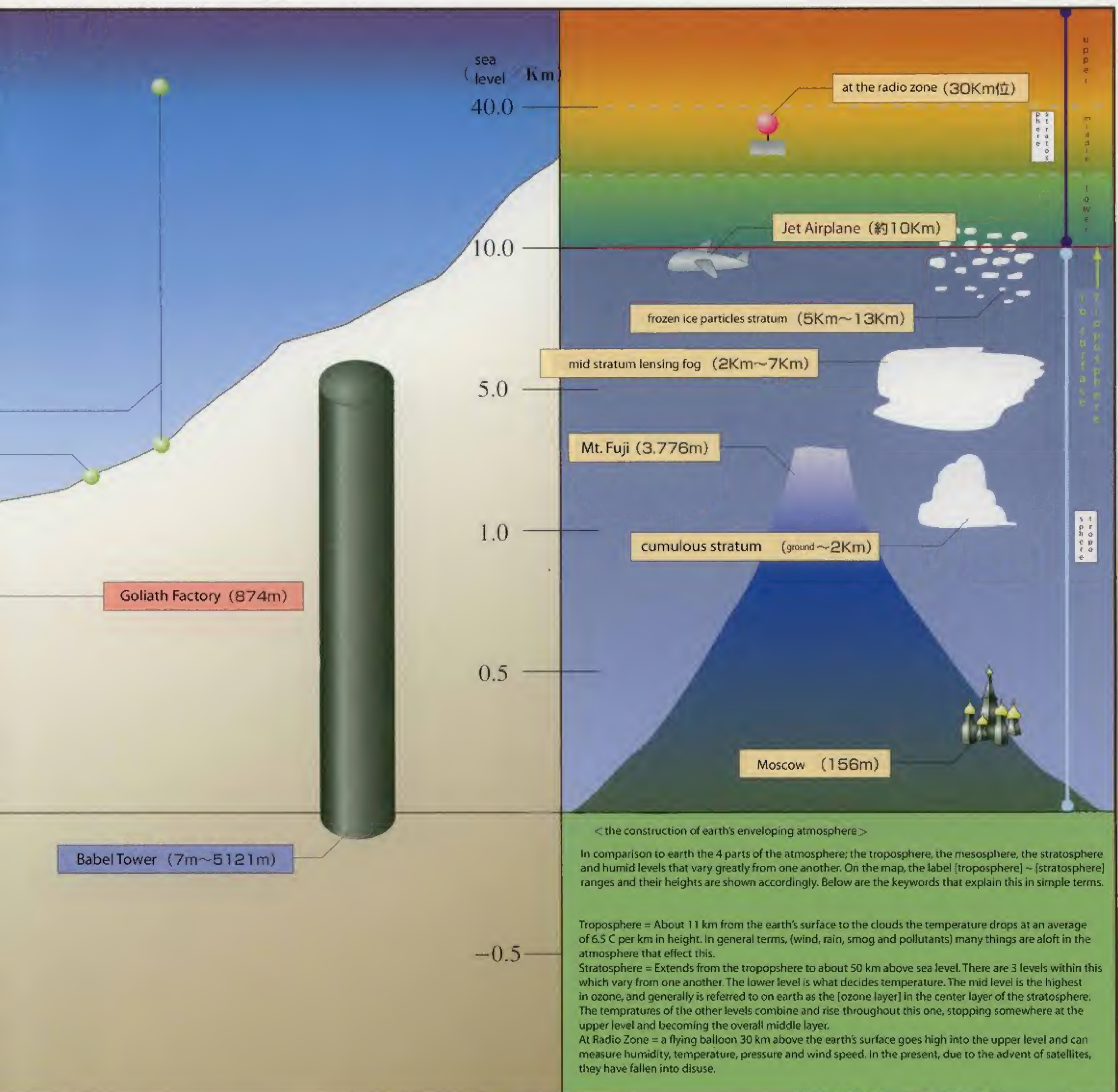
The landmarks closest to sea level are the Church Headquarters, Billy's Orphanage, the Lighthouse and such. And the city on the sea, the Thames has discovered the ruins of Zeboim and others in the murk of the ocean. This encompasses nearly all of the Aquvy area. The partitioning of the landmass into large and narrow points, as well as coastal landmarks and their conditions are primarily collected here. And having been referred to before, these areas' repeated sinking and differentiation on the sea bed are confirmed also. The ruins of Zeboim from 4000 years ago being discovered is marvelous, as is the reason for doing so.

mid levels ( 1 0 m ~ 3 0 0 m )

While avoiding talk of weather, the life styles of the people, the most suitable reference is that of the varying sizes of towns and villages and their placement. The map shows many of the landmarks throughout the game, and the truth concerning those regions and the people gathered there in their daily lives. On a high point is the land of Elru formerly quelled by Solaris. The earth having settled into its elevations, the greater part of the continents' central section as well as the coasts of smaller islands. These do not feel the effects of sea currents out of the ordinary.

high levels ( 3 0 0 m ~ )

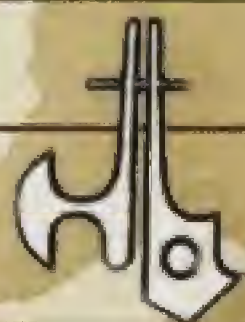
In the partitioning of the land, the highest points to be found are in its mountain ranges. In this area are the Goliath Factory and the like, as well as any structure suitably designed for high altitude. There are two structures of particular note. Solaris' latitude and longitude in the middle of the sky at 0, near the limit of the upper stratosphere. And also Shevat, at about the altitude of an earth jet above the land, it ranges within a 7 km area as it roams the skies, its routes being over Aquvy and Ignas. Also indicated, is the position of Shevat on Babel Tower at its highest point.





## Explaining each Country

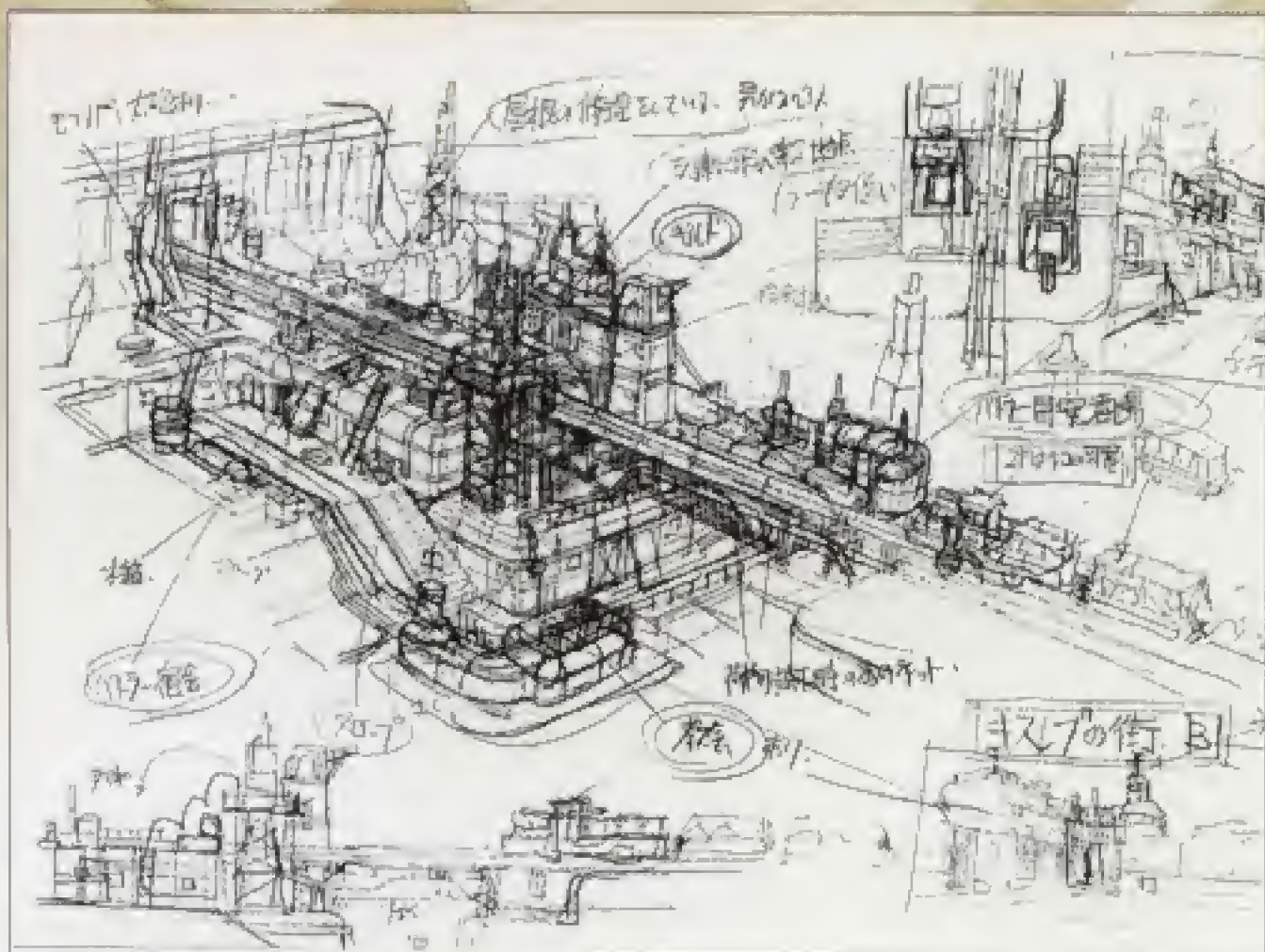
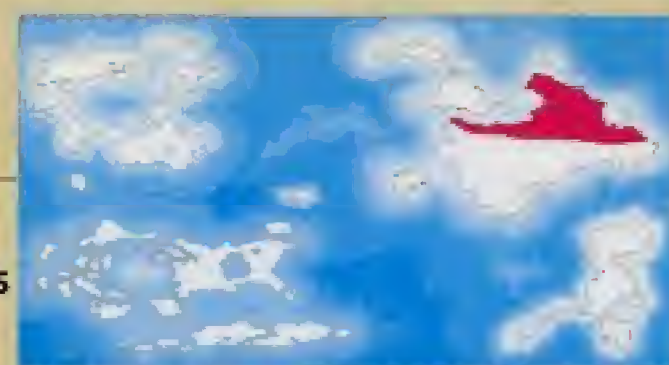
Here the countries of Kislev, Aveh, Solaris, Nisan, Shevat and Thames will be introduced using official artwork. And so, each country's name (correctly written in European script) will be shown, and their position in the world revealed.



### Kislev

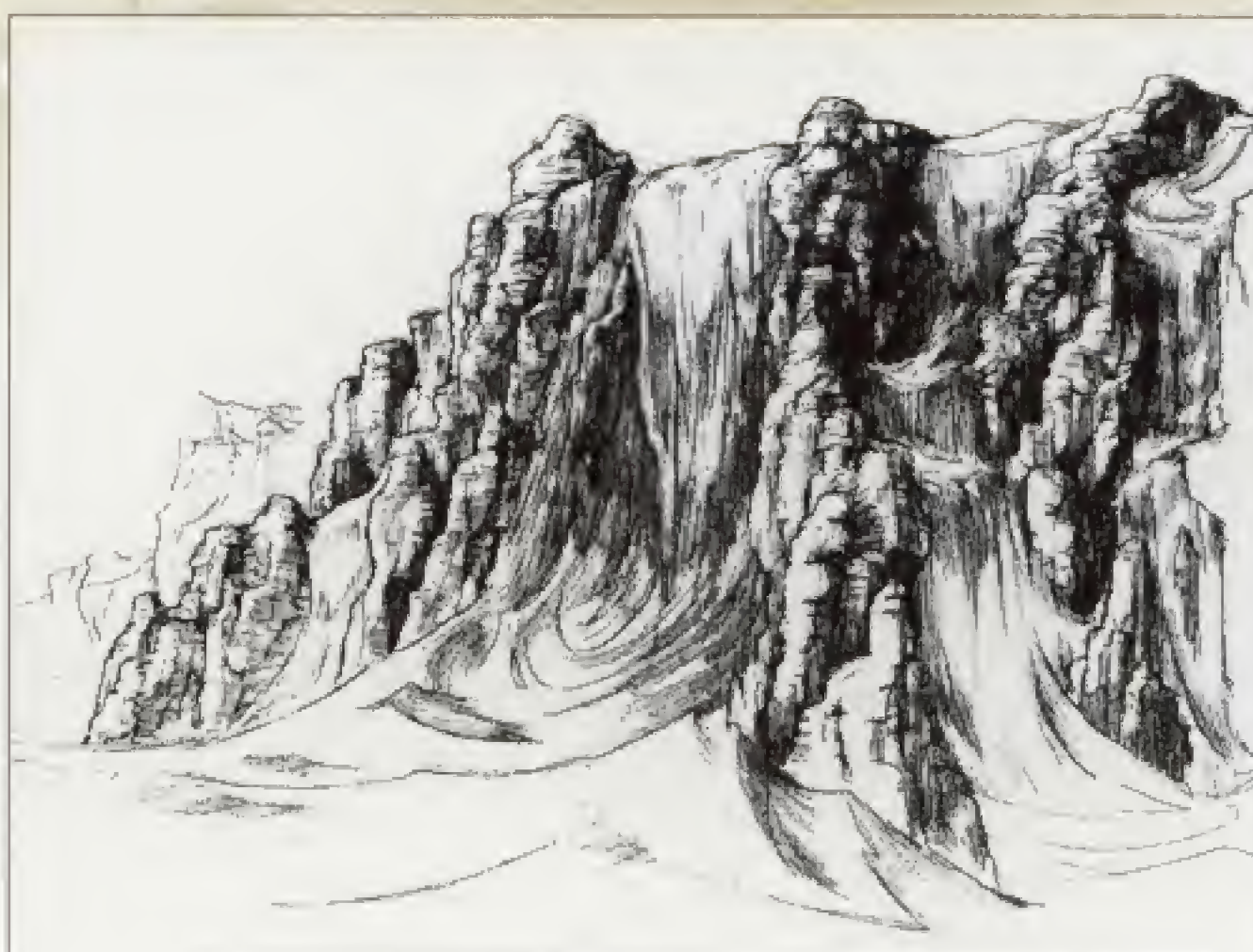
Both its industry and military are more advanced compared to other countries. The support of the nation's economy, [Battling] is established for the collection of data. The Kislev capital is located in the central governing District, and surrounded by the A block, where general populace lives, the C Block where the Battling arena is located, and D Block where prisoners and such are kept.

The original meaning of the capital's name 'Nortune' means 'ship building place'. The population is about 1 million. Supplying this large capital with electricity is a reactor from a past civilization, the facility is located in the eastern part of the capital and today a group of facilities are hard at work.



#### Kislev's Imperial City D-Block

With a population exceeding 1 million, this huge industrial city is sectioned off into blocks. The D-Block was formed for the purpose of keeping prisoners, and they are prohibited from entering other blocks. Also, because land here is cheaper than most in the capital, the poor, demi-humans and war orphans currently fill the block as well.

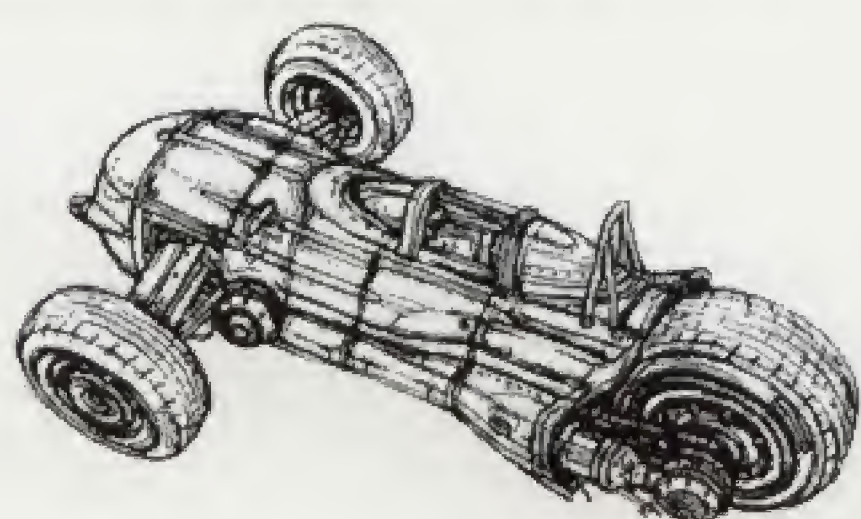


#### The scenery around the Imperial Capital

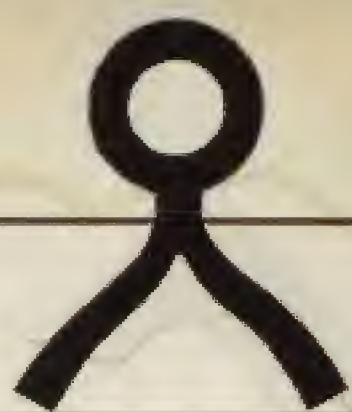
The area around the capital being high ground, it leads to high plains and then eventually to the mountain ranges. In this tundra, the capital appears with its reactor and industry, working hard even today. There are large structures from the past like the Goliath factory here also.

#### Kislev's Imperial City A-Block

Running throughout the streets is this three wheeled buggy, and also as the clothes indicate, those people of the middle and upper class are gathered here. The standard of living is relatively high, and their closeness to the Capital's center makes it very hard for D-Block citizens to enter.







# Aveh

## Kingdom of Ave



The desert kingdom of Aveh. The greater part of its land area being desert, it also has steppe lands as well as unknown ruin resources buried below, and at the center of these ruins the capital is built. The capital of Bledavik is established in the center of the desert on top of many accumulated layers, and Fatima Castle stands amid the wide streets. Its population is around 400,000, and many different

racess and cultures are mixed here including demi-humans. It is said that the founding father, Roni Fatima was the leader of a desert caravan before becoming king. Also, the Fatima dynasty has blood ties with the neighboring country of Nisan's Church.

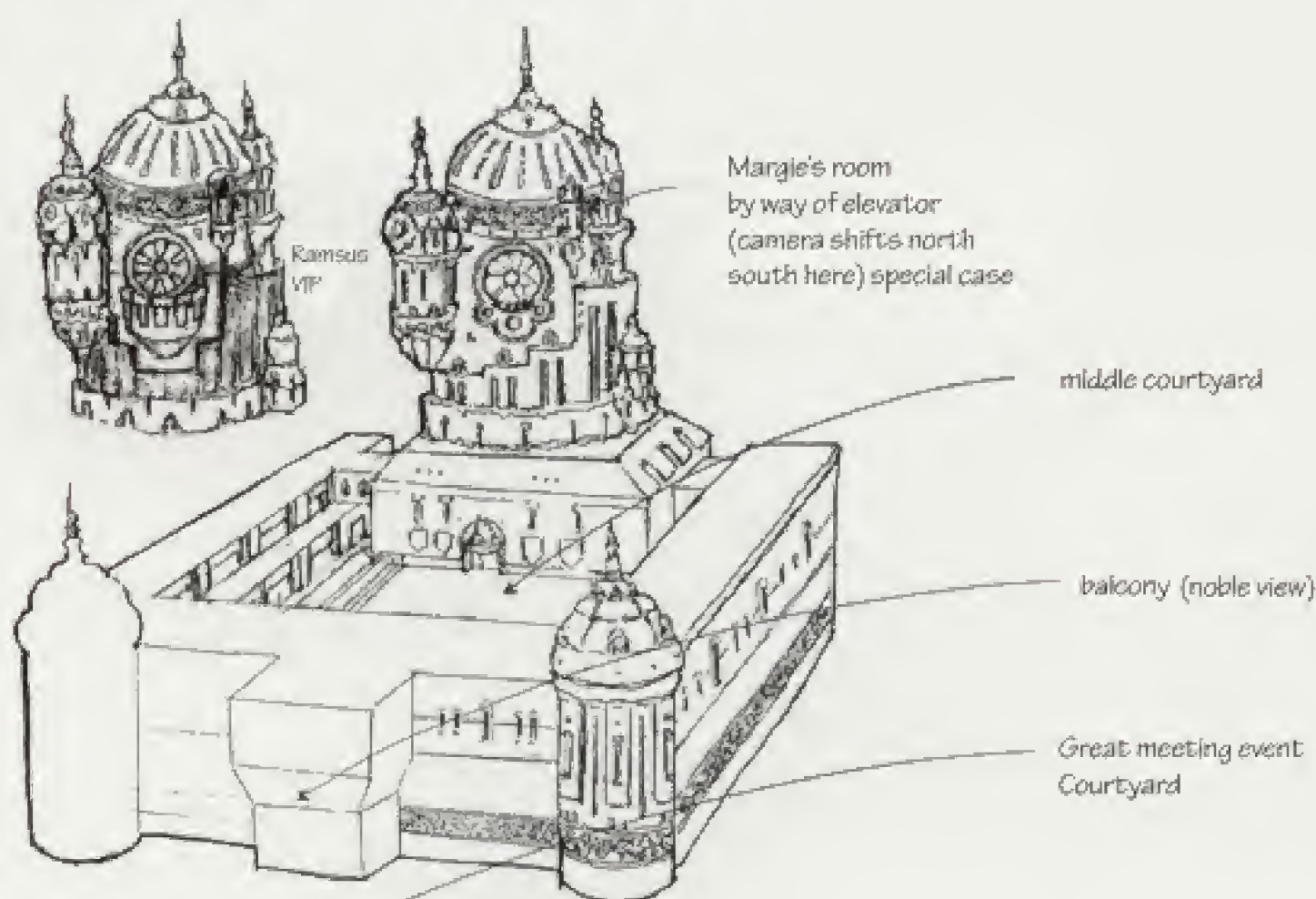
### Aveh Soldier

Spares no effort in preparing for the harshness of the desert environment. Because of the extremes of temperature between noon and midnight, he must protect his body with heavy protective gear.



### Fatima Castle

Fatima Castle is in the center of the desert atop many layers of piled bedrock. Looking out over the landscape is [a tower] overlooking all. While this is the outside view, inside there is also an elevator.



### Dazil waterways

Water is the important lifeline in the desert. Protecting this are the Water Works Bureau. Not just the narrows, but in the lower tunnels are active facilities as well.



### Blackmoon Forest

Set between the steppelands and the mountain ranges, the forest occupies a very large area. The part closest to the mountains is more pine trees ~ while further out it becomes a mix of different kinds.

### Frontier Village Lahan

Set in a cleft in the mountains, it is created with skill by the people. Cattle raising and purple radishes and such are their specialty, they also produce other important foodstuffs.





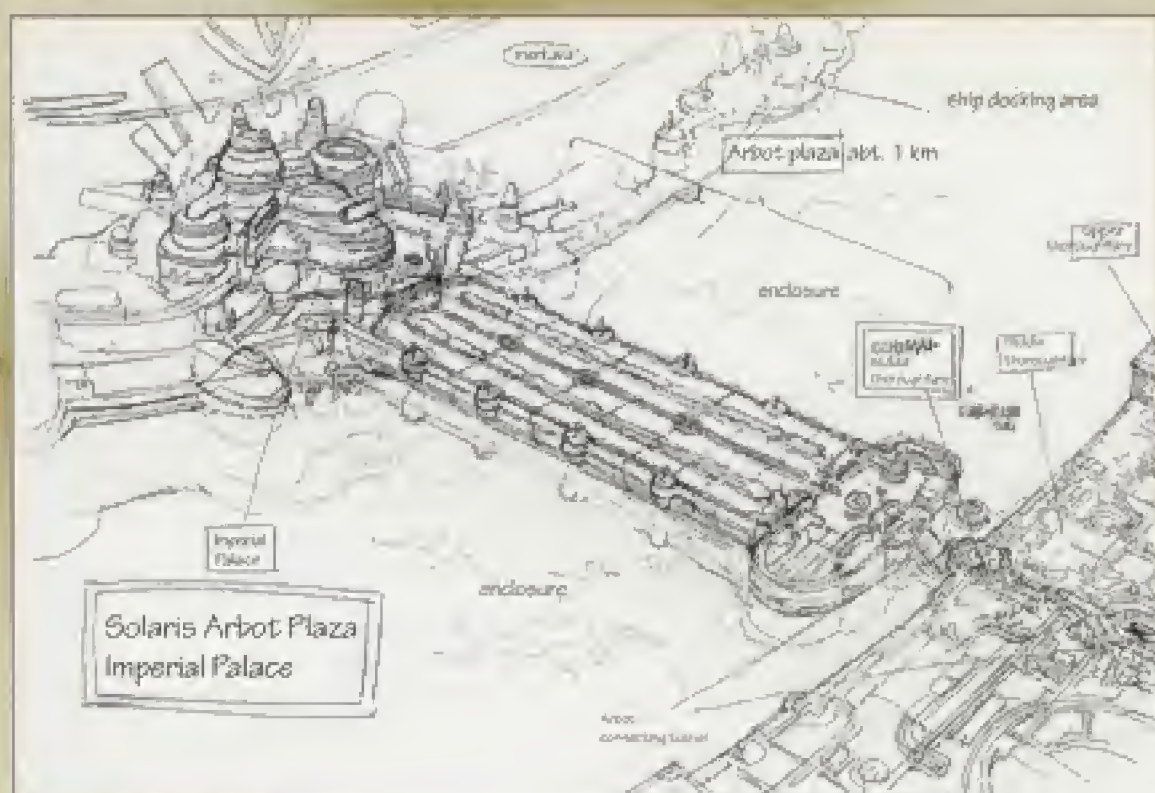
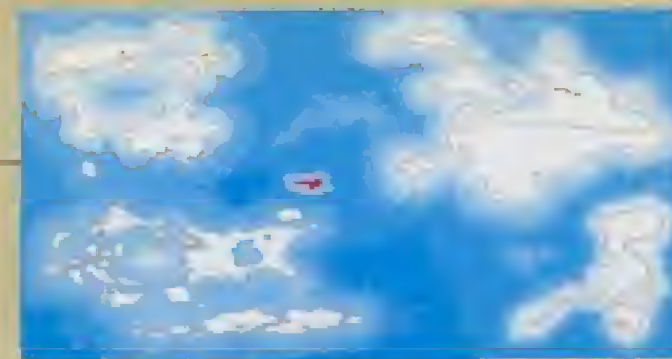


# Solaris

## Empire of Solaris

The empire set high up in the stratosphere. The capital [Etrenank] that has the true meaning of [the place become paradise]. Due to the Great War 500 years ago, the country lost many of the population when the land itself was severely damaged, and began a process of complete overhaul and restructuring of the country's system. Currently, the central axis of its function having been revived, it enacts its program to partition and rule over the surface. Ignas being the Fire Division Buureau, Aquvy

the Water Division Bureau, Terran the Earth Division Bureau and managing their respective areas and governing accordingly. Also, in response to the lessened population, surface dwellers are gathered for hard labor, and the resulting interaction causes pureblooded Solarians to be severely decreased. The governing plan involves the separation of the classees into three levels.

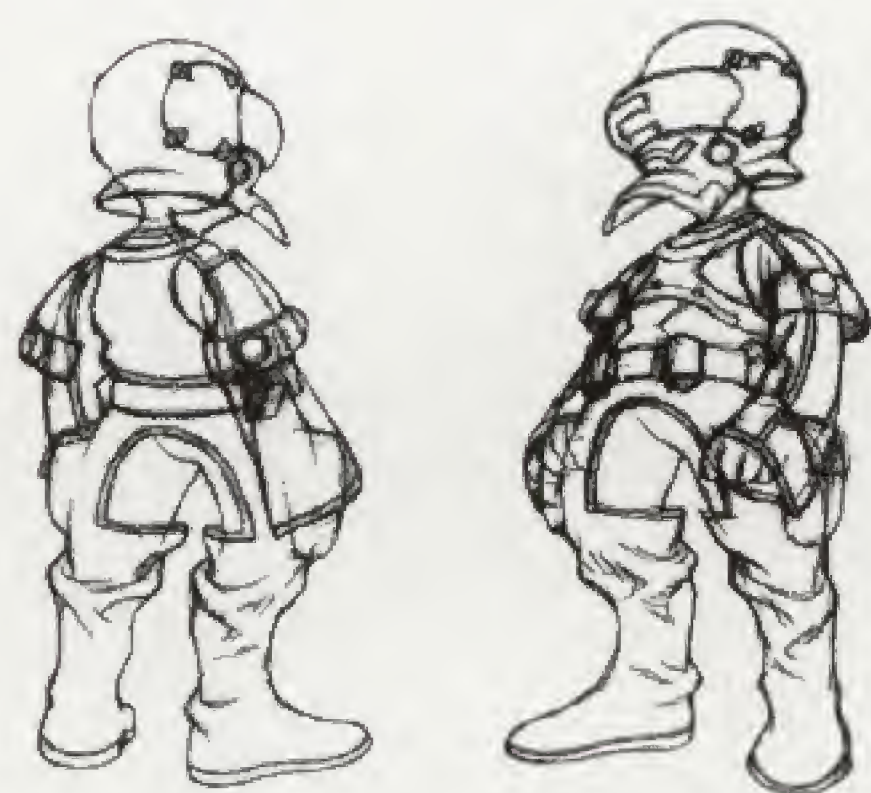


### The state of the wide plaza

During the large festival at Arbot plaza the ships are shown off. Going from the Emperor to the 2nd Class citizen level is a barrier surrounding the environs. Here there are shopping centers and the like, and it is a place of leisure for the people.

### The shaft leading to the surface

The territory containing the six blade portions, the Emperor's palace the three Class levels and such, is supported by a main shaft, and this pipe plays an important role between Solaris and the surface. This narrow, long shaft continues down to the surface and through it materials and hostages are transorted to the highest part of the 3rd level block and processed there.



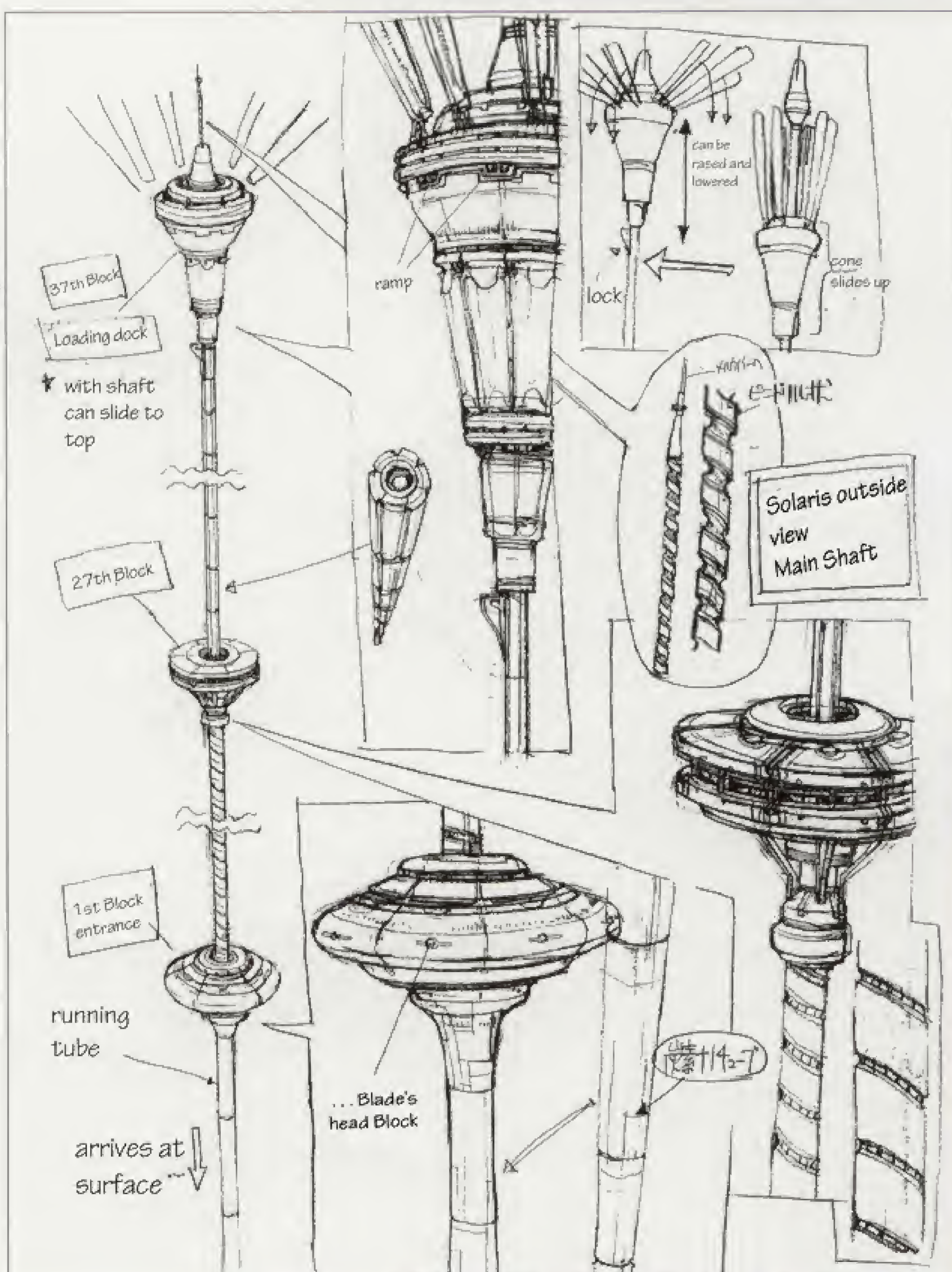
### Solaris soldier

They are placed to guard within the country, and because they are relatively lightly equipped they specialize in quick maneuvers.



### Solaris' whole form

Looking at its surface only, is like a fog filled view. Using an anti-gravity system it is able to ride the skies in the opposite direction, in order to give the people of Solaris the view of the clouds for their sky.

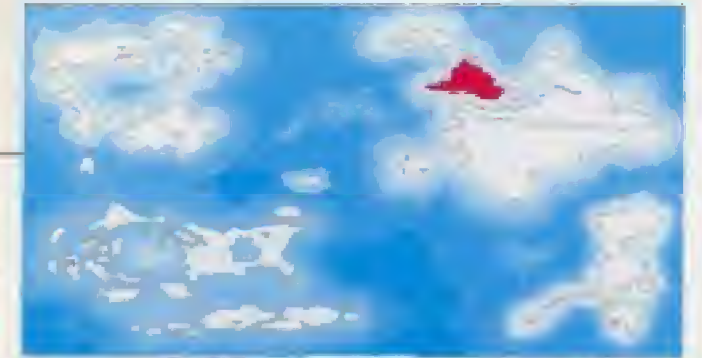






# Nisan

Nisan



The religious nation in the western part of the Ignas Continent, the full truth is that its government and religion operate equally. Being without a capital, the followers live in the Cathedral at the center, surrounded by the lake around which the the streets of the people are widely spread. Because of this, the population can't be determined but those Nisan Orthodox are around 10, 000 and that along with neighboring adherents brings this number up higher.

Built around the central government conducted by the 'Vatican', at its center is the succession through heredity to the role of [Great Mother], who is presently Marguerite Fatima. Originally a frontier religion, the Nisan Sect has spread throughout the general population of the world, and its founder, Sophia is called -The Mother of knowledge-.

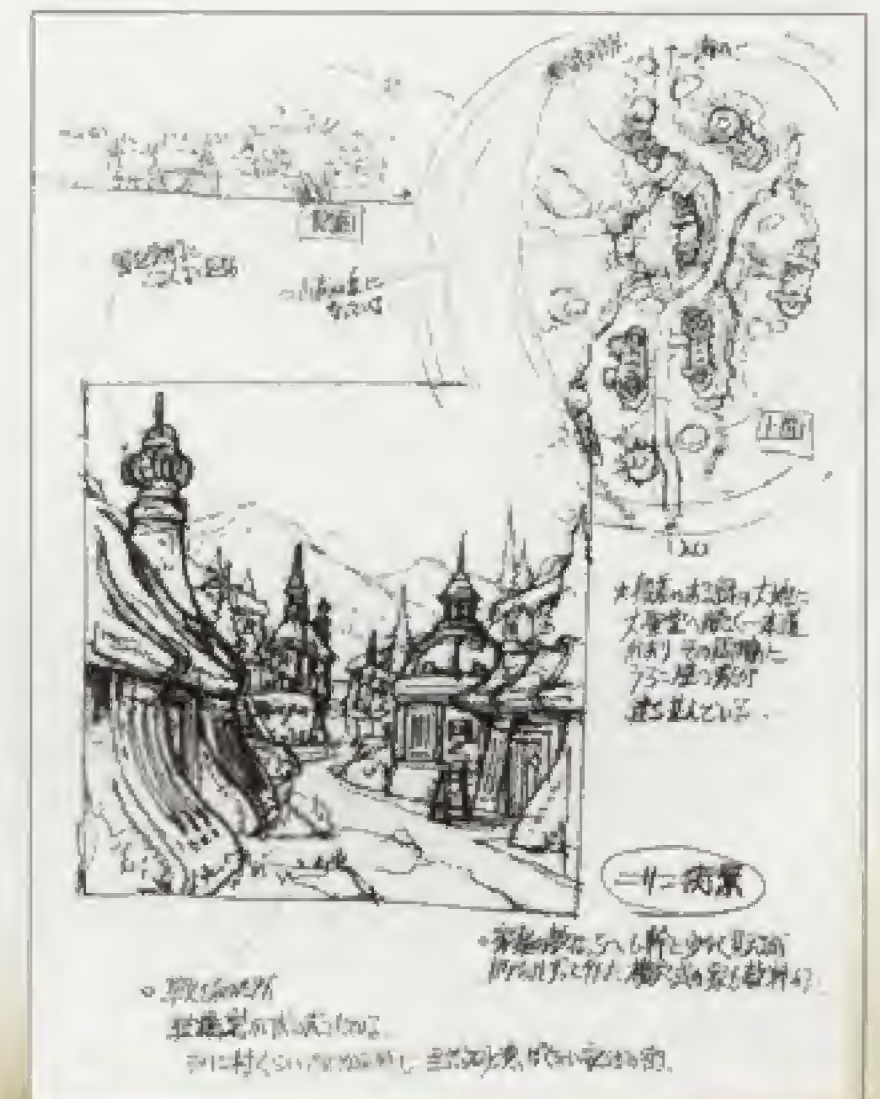
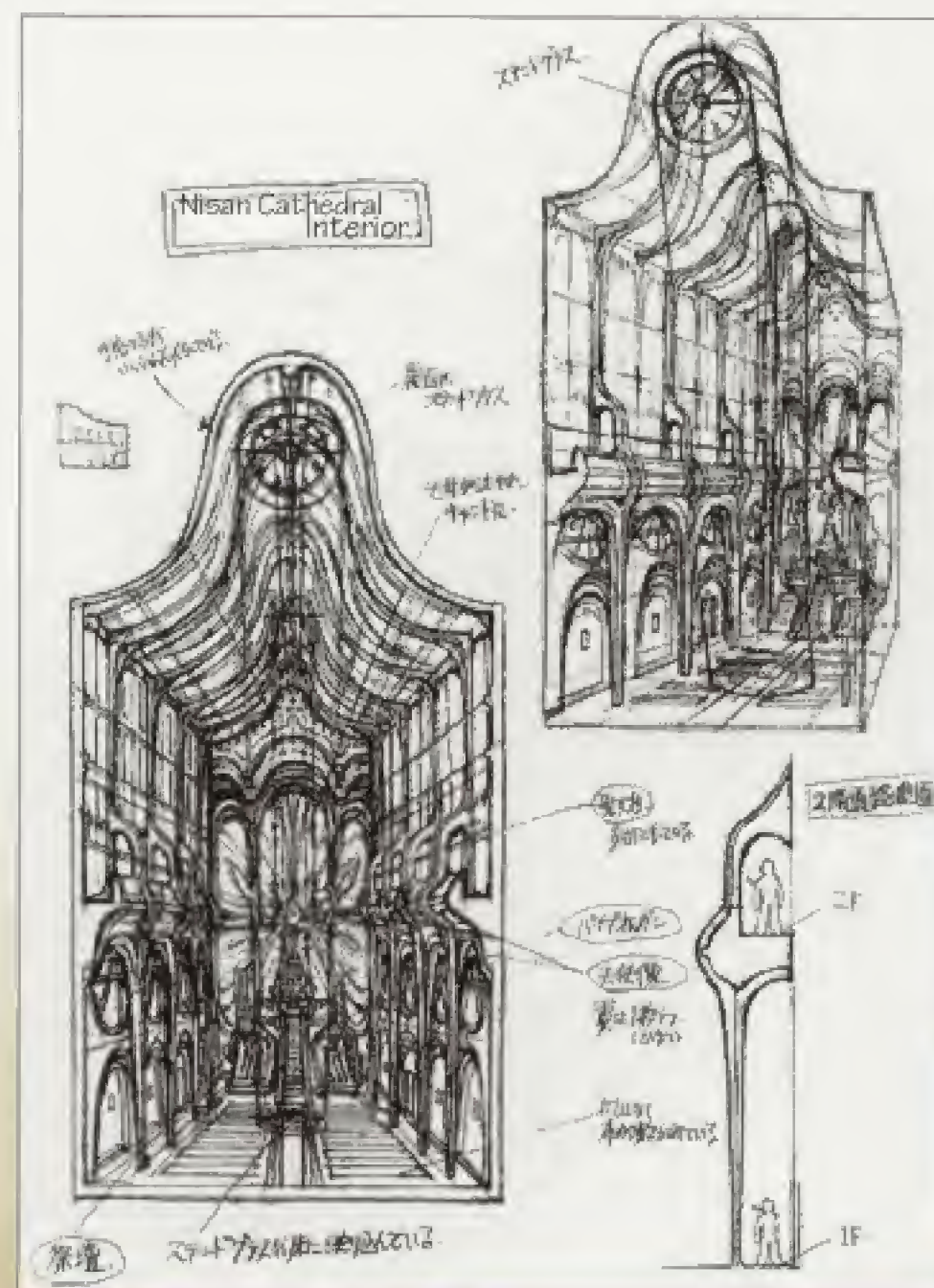
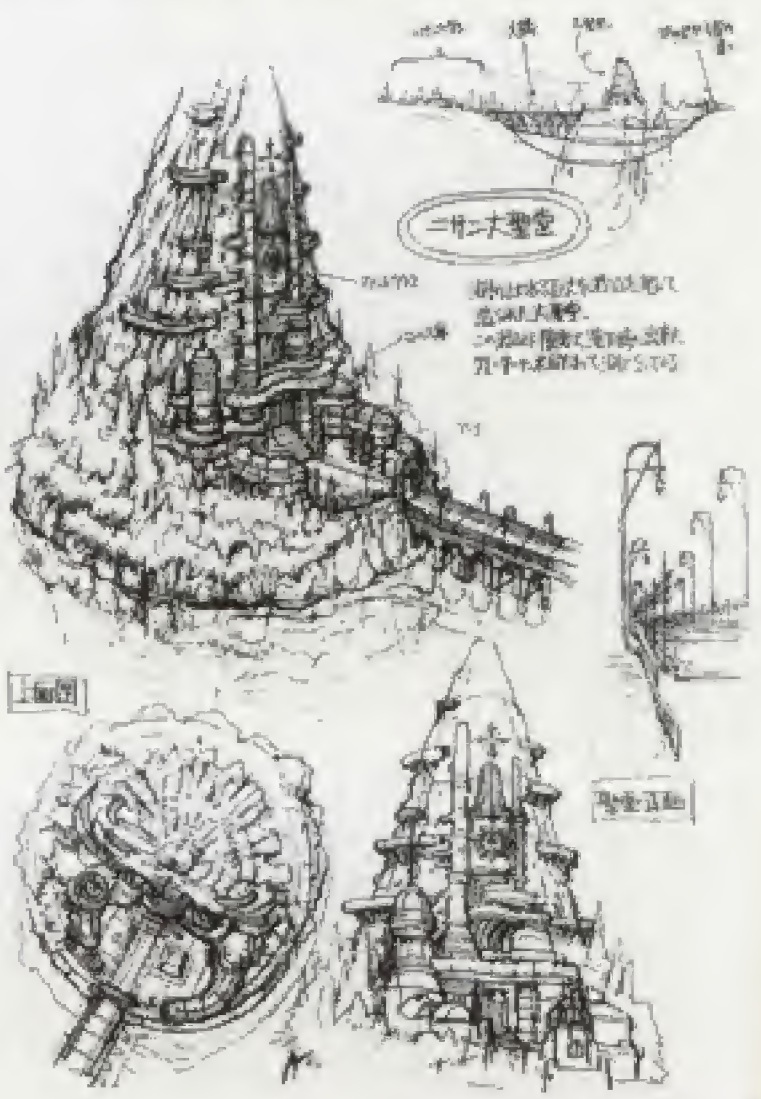
## The special landmark

A large crater originally created by a meteorite, the water collected here forming the lake. The meteorite leaving a mountain at the center of the lake, is today the foundation of the Cathedral. Also, the small flat lands surrounding the lake are relatively level and can be used for streets and buildings are spaced along them along narrow paths. The cliff surrounding the streets that was carved in the time of the meteorite, still bears that name.



## The Cathedral at the center

The Cathedral was built in the mountain carved out by the meteorite. While nothing is left in written form, even with the use of digging Gears, it would have taken several months to complete. The inside of the Cathedral's wall are more beautiful than just those carved by the meteorite.



## The streets' shape

Small rooftops dot the line where the people live around the lake on the flat areas. These spaces are filled with buildings seemingly on top of one another. In the cliff side, the buildings are carved into the earth for people's homes.



## The people gathered for teaching

The Sisters and other of the faithful make up the more than 10, 000 followers of the Nisan Orthodox. From the eldest of Sisters to the youngest, there are many of all ages in the religious organization. As bulwark against thieves and barbarians, the Monastery Corps has the least of military power, but as can be seen from those three villagers here on the left side, the town appears very peaceful.





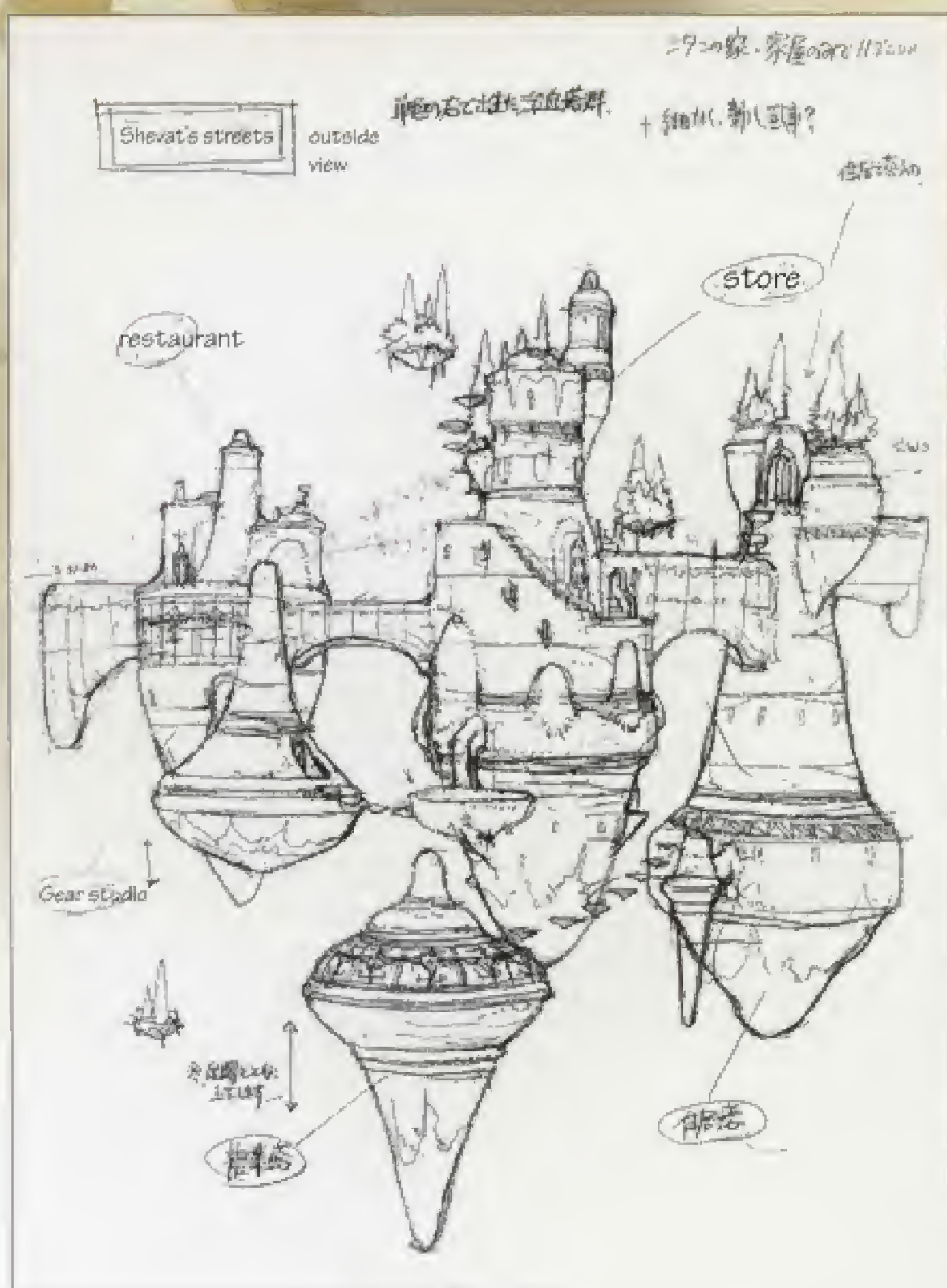
# Shevat

## Kingdom of Shebato



Interposed between the troposphere, this city-state tours the skies at an altitude ranging from 5km ~ 12km above the seas of Ignas and Aquvy. It was formerly in the area of Aquvy known today as Babel Tower at its very top portion. Along with Solaris, it is also protected by a Gate, and as its altitude is not a fixed thing, every so often a glimpse of it can be had from the surface (within the upper altitude

of its range, it is roughly on the level with the cumulous cloud layer). Due to independently held technology, farming is done within its territory. The capital is called Aphel Aura, the root of the word "Aura" = symposium.

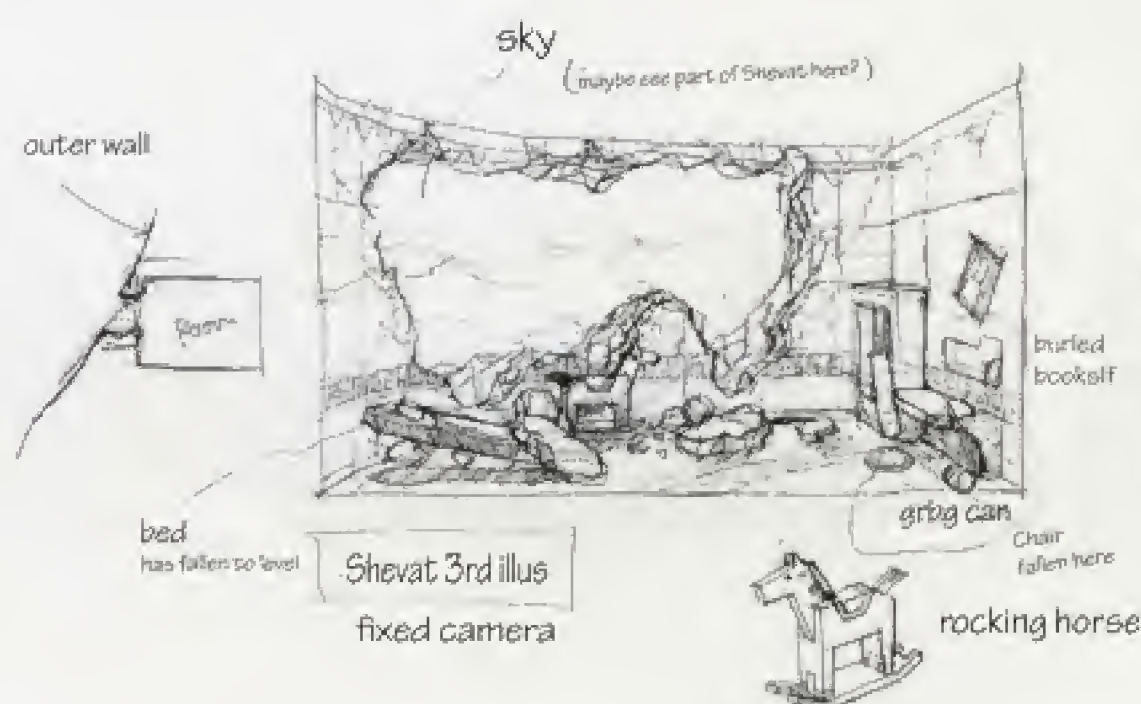


### Deep Sea Bros.

No matter the country they all need a place like this, an "eatery" type establishment. Here in this cafe, alcohol and such is served. The play of the lighting adds to the sea like atmosphere.

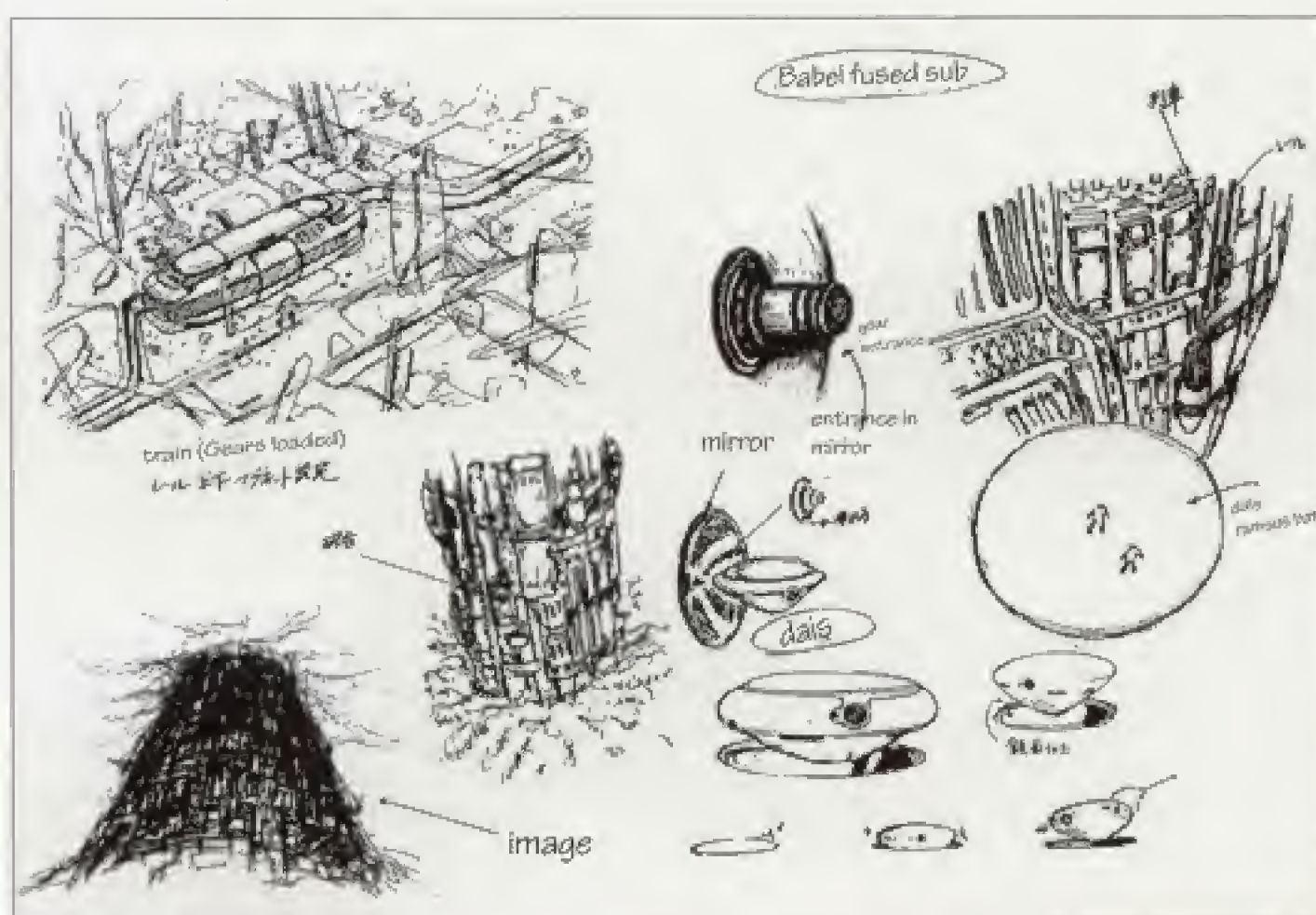
### The city that roams the skies

In the present, having abandoned its former territory, only the Capital Aphel Aura remains in Shevat as it wanders the skies. Once at the very top of Babel Tower, the Tower contained all of its territory. What was once originally the HLV plant loaded onto the Eldridge, has become the basis for Shevat.



### The scars from 500 years ago

Today, they have escaped the Great War about 500 years ago. Presently, only this scar remains in the country at this place. Introduced in the game, it was formerly a child's room and a hole remains that was created from a bomb in the wall.



### The present Babel Tower

Before the Great War, the entire territory of Shevat was located at Babel Tower. After the Great War, choosing just the capital, Shevat left the giant tower behind on the surface. Of course, today the tower is recognized as ruins, its parts having decayed over many long years, but its greatest relic that remains is the topmost portion that stands towering over the center of the Aquvy area.



## Thames

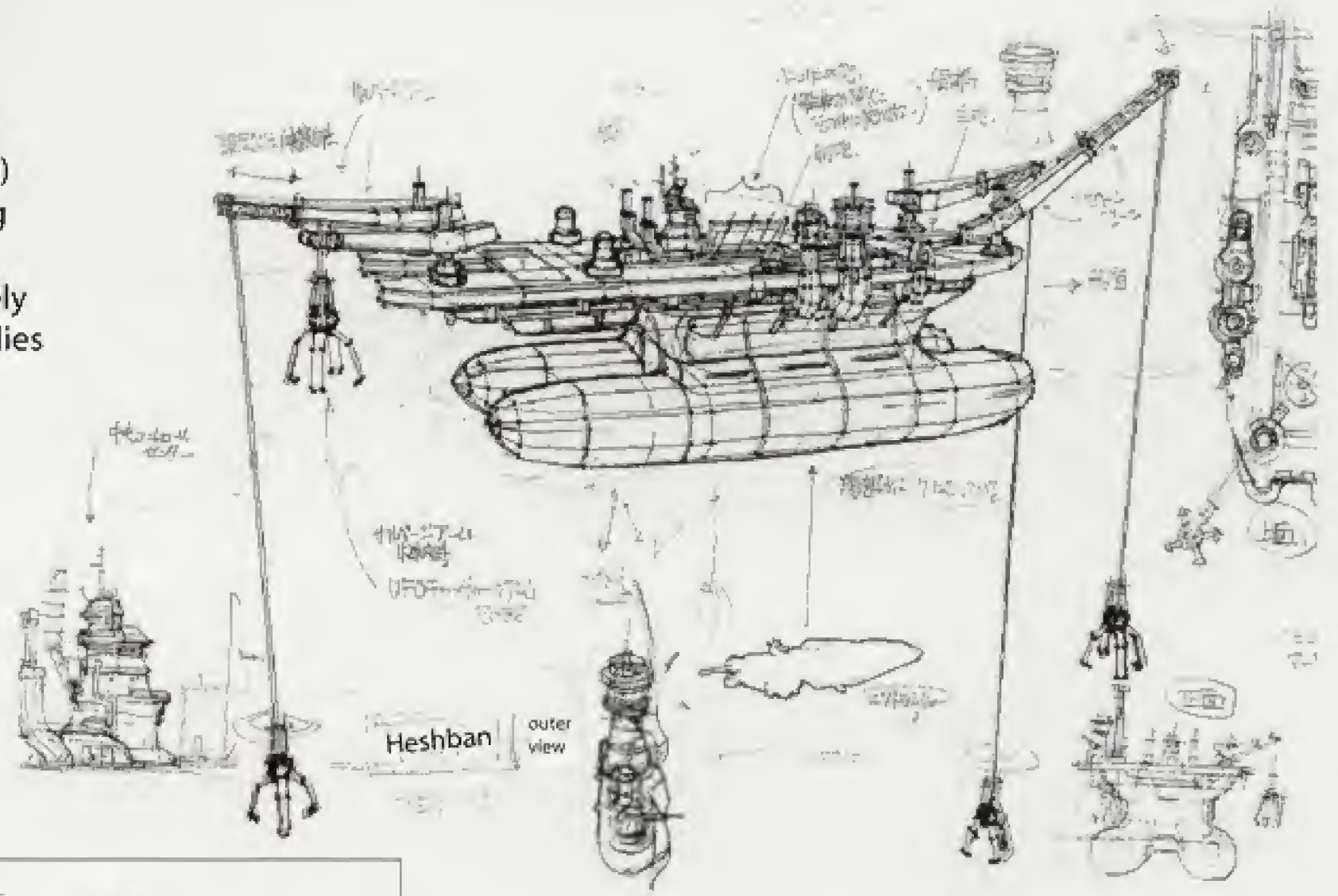
## Tams and the others

Aquvy = the area of many islands is where the large ship the Thames makes its circuit as a free trading city. Like Nisan, it can't be called a nation per se, but from the look of things at this scale it could be called an independent nation in its own right. Supplying the Church with many of the materials and resources found below in the ruins of the sea is how they make their way. Along with the Thames, there are many other trading cities (ships) of various sizes in the area.

Because of the trade between each of the cities having made the Thames profitable, they are on their guard against predators who attack with some frequency. One of their unusual features is the ship's Beer hall and it is said to be the only one of its kind in the Aquvy area.

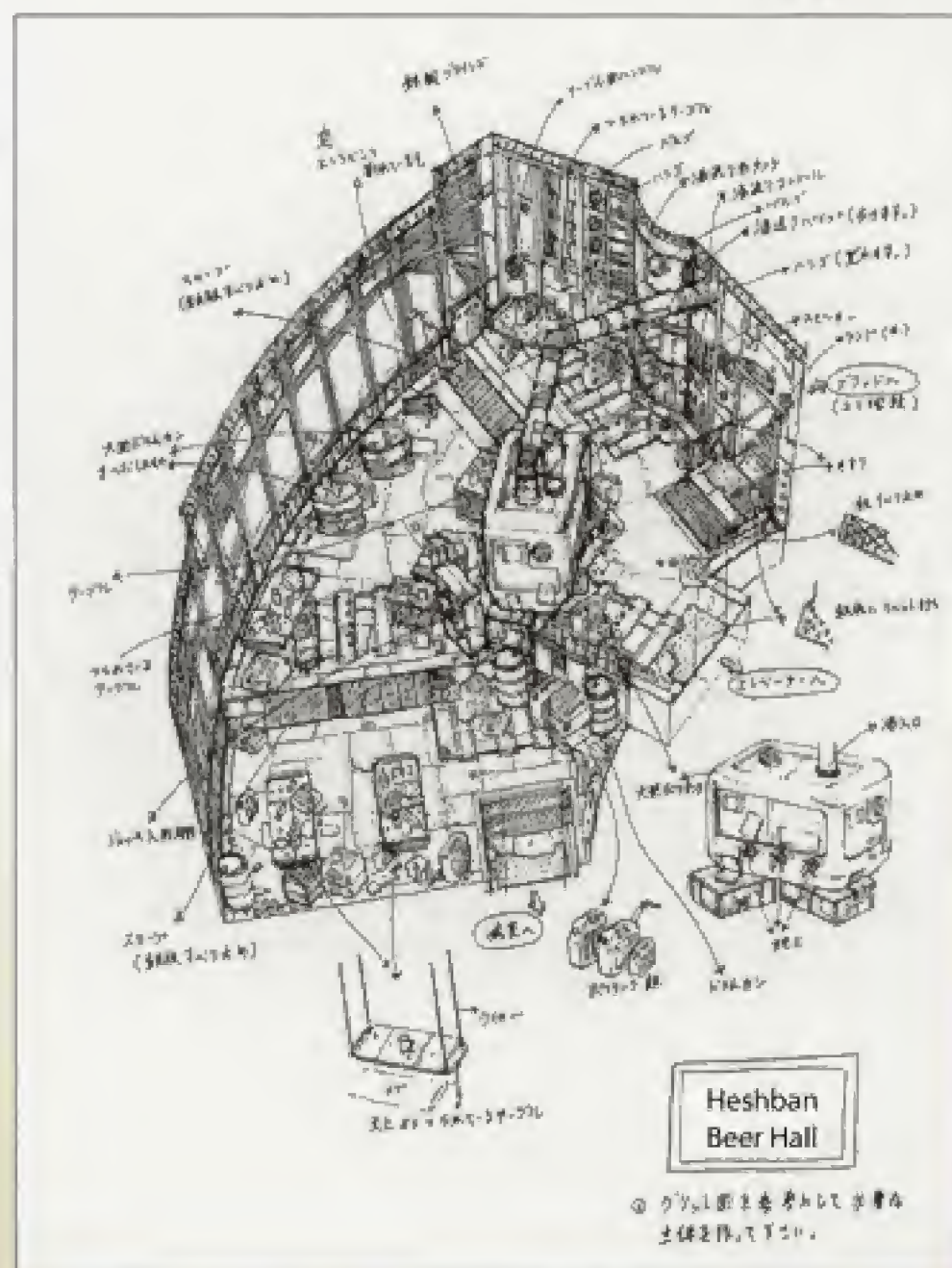


The entire form of the super sized ship 1100 shars at its longest point, This large scale [ship] is one whose size can't be stressed enough. Within the ship is the Bridge (4f) The Beer Hall (3F) the Clinic (2F) the Deck (1F) The Materials Loading Dock (B1F) the Dock (BF2) as well as the Salvage industry where the workers live and are adequately provided for in terms of the equipment and supplies throughout the ship. There is a device here that is called [heshban].



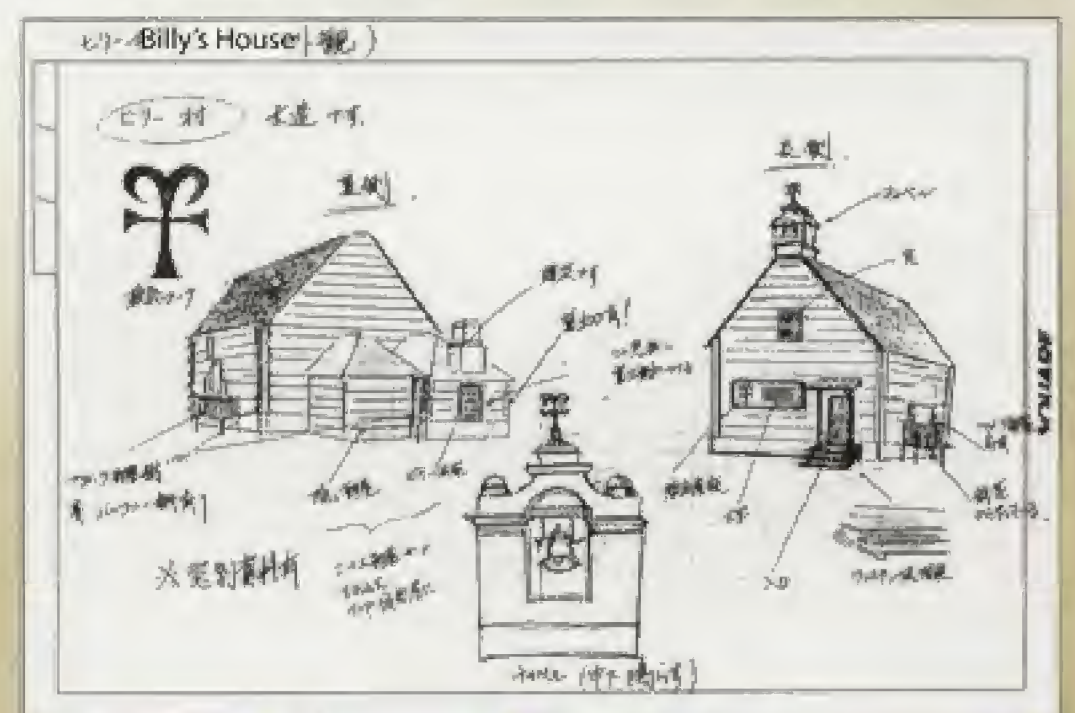
### The Captain's own Beer Hall

In all the wide area of Aquvy, this is probably the only establishment of its kind. However, this is not a restaurant, its specialty is as a Beer Hall. And it is the Captain of the Thames who often says: "Those guys who can't hold their liquor, will get drunk by the waves and disappear!" and such is one of those sayings that set him apart. For what its worth, the Beer Hall directly connects to the Bridge.



### The Thames' area routes are ...

The Thames and the others main job is to salvage materials at the bottom of the sea and sell them to the [Church]. And here is Billy's Orphanage that is an affiliated facility of the [Church].



### Those living the ship's life

The ship's people at first being demi-humans, has over time become a mix of many kinds. The figures of children can be seen running around the dock, and on the Bridge, Hans a demi-human is the right hand of the Captain, as for the Doctor ... he's around here somewhere holding a bottle of bourbon. And so, the nature(?) of the people is somewhat variable.





## The earth science of geography, introduction of a study of earth's nature

~ The record of Mr. Isaac Balthasar's special theory ~

### ◇ Preface

And so, for all the various occurrences that happen on the surface of the earth - the actions of people and the towns where they gather, the ruins and caves - yes, those have been my specialty. Regarding this, having the eyes of god wouldn't be so bad, huh? All of you probably only see the ground in front of you, and so much has occurred and lives down beneath the surface of this world. If you try to ignore this, someday that same something might "flash by your feet" so to speak (heh, heh).

### Isaac Balthasar

#### His profile

One of the three Sages of Shevat, currently he resides in the vicinity of the Kingdom of Aveh. Starting with igneous rock, he has excavated many materials from the earth and is busy with daily research.



### ◇ The form of this world

Now here's something owned by Dr. Uzuki. The earth has continents and islands and such, and it all swings around its northern axis. For reference, the picture (1) shows the earth in miniature. After a few moments of looking at it you will understand, the continents' and islands' placement is just a little different from those of today. And that movement in continental levels does not happen overnight, so it appears this miniature is pretty old.

There are many movements in the earth's crust. Because the shifting of continents and islands is a large scale process, it could be said that mountains and valleys change with the movements of the earth's crust as well. Whichever way you look, for it to be discernible to the eye would take many eons to come about, in my opinion.

For continents and islands to move, changing their forms greatly in the process, the earth's crust... or rather the continental -plates- ride on the earth's board, and inside this world beneath the plates... is the -mantle- which provides the push to keep the whole thing going. The earth's crust and the plates are extraordinarily light. The Ignas continent and such have ridden this a good long way and spread out. The energy required for the movement is incredible, because at times it results in the eruption of volcanoes and earthquakes.

The surface of the crust... now that's the formation of mountains and valleys, this is large scale movement of igneous rock and mud, and water is the primary factor here. The previously mentioned plates' movement along with earthquakes and activation of volcanoes - this causes the warpage, caving in and water traces riverbeds leading to the ocean, while rain and wind cause their erosion.

So the movements of the earth's crust, regardless of magnitude, continues even today. Earthquakes make fissures, incredible rainfalls cause mudslides, and even recognizing this as small scale changes, in terms of the large scale movement of the continents, well that's that's not something you're going to feel. Also, the Great War 500 years ago and the nuclear war of 4000 years ago caused great destruction and the form of the earth was changed then. This is probably artificial earth crust movement. So here and there are fissures and crevices that are the scars of great impacts from long ago.

### ◇ The things ejected from the stratum

Now which sketch is that, I forgot. Here, never mind, take a look at this excised cliff (2). This was due to subsidence of the earth, and pulled out from the broken area. This is an instance of small scale movement of the earth's crust. Look at where the line of the cut-off land is. This is bedrock... an earth layer. Here is granulated rock, begun the process of breaking down into sand. It took a long time to do that to the layer. For it to be powdered, the characteristics and composition have to be altered. Near the borderline, something occurred to change the quality of the bedrock.

In investigating the properties of the earth layer, the amount of time passed can be deduced. And from these properties, the era and place in the world can be deduced as well. As the earth's crust rises the layers rise with it. The higher the layer, the newer. And so, as you trace back along these lines, the time goes further and further back.

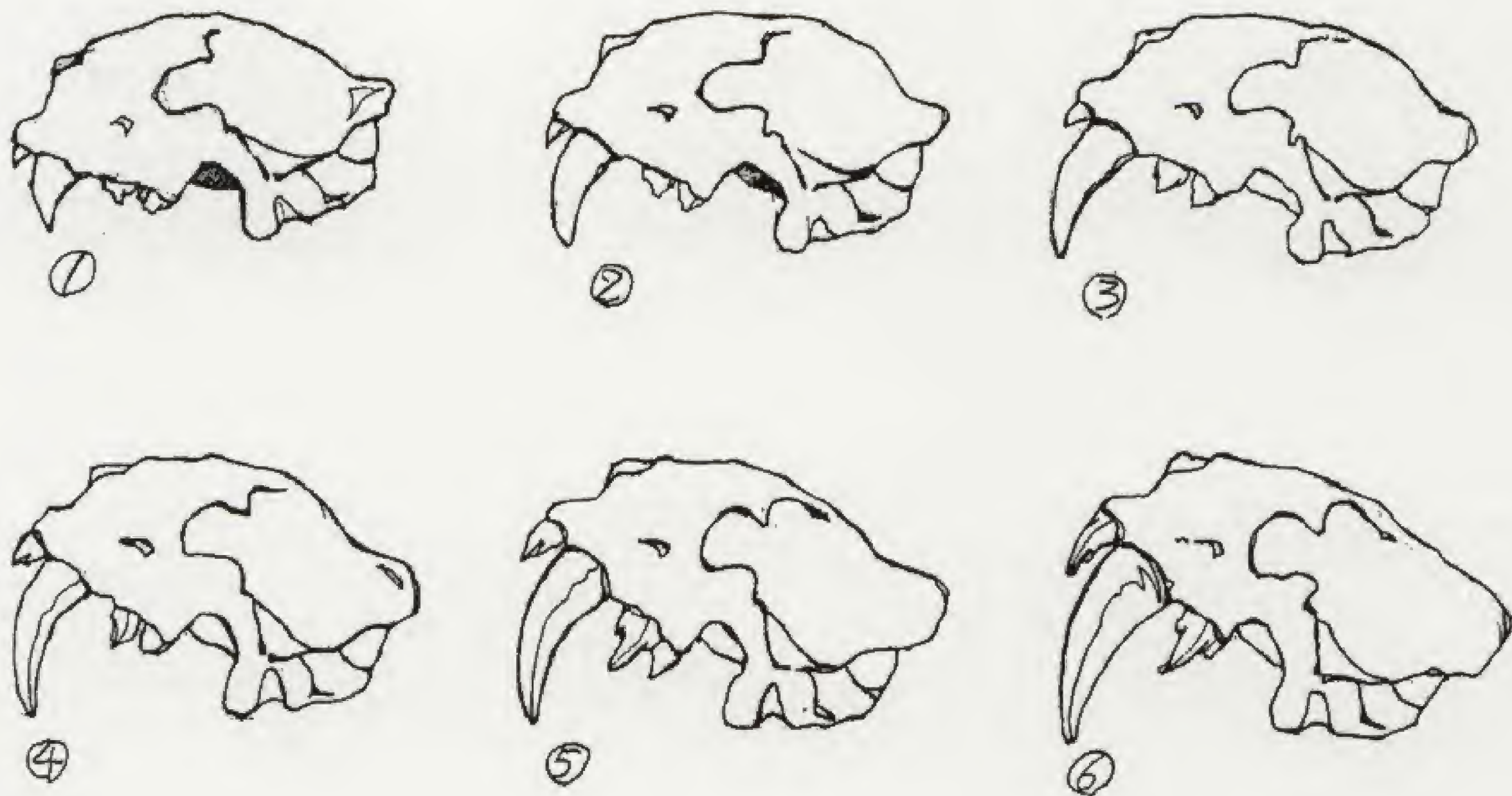
The most interesting and fascinating property of the earth layer, well- that would be fossils. Wrapped up in volcanic rock are the remains of once living creatures, they provide a clue as to how much time has passed since they were enfolded. Living here in my cave near these cliffs I have also dug up many fossils. While looking at this next fossil, I will explain further.

図2





图 3



◆ The story of fossils

What I dig up most of the time is animal and human bones. Here are 6 different skulls for comparison, they appear to be the same species. [3] #1 is the oldest, afterwards they are chronologically ordered. #3 or thereabouts is where humans first appear. This is about 10,000 years ago now. The layers below that have no remains whatsoever. So, in speaking of the placement of human skeletons, would you take a closer look at the 6 animal skulls? The fangs seem to be getting bigger rapidly. #1 and #6 appear to be almost different species entirely. This evolution... was it accelerated? This sort of thing just does not follow the natural order. Were other animals hunting this? That could explain the growth of the fangs in the skulls, as the predators become larger, they develop bigger fangs to compensate. Especially starting with #'s 2 ~3, the speed seems to have been bumped up a notch here. The fact that this is the layer where human remains have been found might have some connection.

The evolution of living things is a result of many different controlling factors. Even if a species starts off the same, if the earth's crust is shifted, those separated on an island will have a different evolutionary pattern from those remaining on the continent. Those animals that I have excavated in the caves appear to have had their evolution accelerated. However, in another location, you might find that type has evolved totally differently. Due to the interference of humans, sudden mutations occur that account for some of this evolution. No doubt, things such as the nuclear war of long ago, caused radiation to spread out that could have caused these sudden mutations. Also, Solaris' use of the Solyent Systems had some impact as well. What is clear, is that in a very short period of time, many sub-species were formed. Even with animal bones charting the progression of evolution, was all of this entirely natural? Even now, this is hard to determine.





## ◇ The origin of humans

Here is a small fossil (4) it surrounds ocean organisms such as fish and shells. Because of the ravages of time, not much can be deduced. Inside are the the fossils of the building blocks of life. Of course this is fairly old. The place it was extracted from was once long ago the ocean floor. These could be said to be the ancestors of all sea life. Of course, human fossils are found here as well. The evolution of upper continent lifeforms at last resulted in the reptiles and mammals. Those large reptiles such as the Rankar and dragons have their antecedents many hundreds of millions of years ago. They appear to have died out in the ice ages. Those specimens found today are a type from around tens of thousands of years ago. With the excavation of fossils, they seem to be newly made giant once more. (5) It's interesting to compare those fossils of giant reptiles from hundreds of millions of years ago, to those large guys we've got today.

And here we have human skeletons (6). As previously stated, human fossils do not appear in the stratum before 10, 000 years ago. And tracing back the next 4 ~ 5 thousand years or so, they are entirely absent. A much more exhaustive investigation might yield some results. Those 10, 000 years, much like those ruins found on the sea floor from 4000 years ago, can be followed up by way of the remnants of that era. An example of this is the excavation of Gears in the ruins by Aveh and Kislev recently. In my short stay on Shevat, I conducted research into the ancient machine culture. One of those things was the remains of a large ship that also appeared to date from around 10, 000 years ago. And this relic of an ancient civilization, ultimately could not be traced back 4 ~ 5 thousand years. The emergence of the human fossil record coincides with that of the large ship. Looking further in the past there is absolutely no trace of human kind . . . So this thinking leads to an even more impossible conclusion.

Human beings appeared suddenly on this world 10, 000 years ago.

With this in mind, can the fable of evolution given out by the Church be true? There were definitely living creatures on this world from the beginning. And they achieved their various kinds of evolution from then until the present day. Even human beings are said by the Church to have evolved from apes. However, it probably did not occur on this planet. Our origin may be somewhere out in space . . .

図4

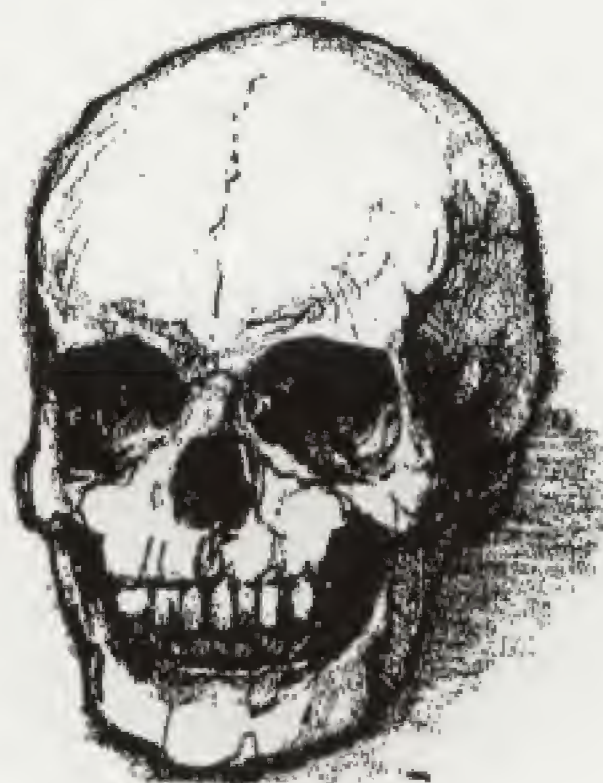
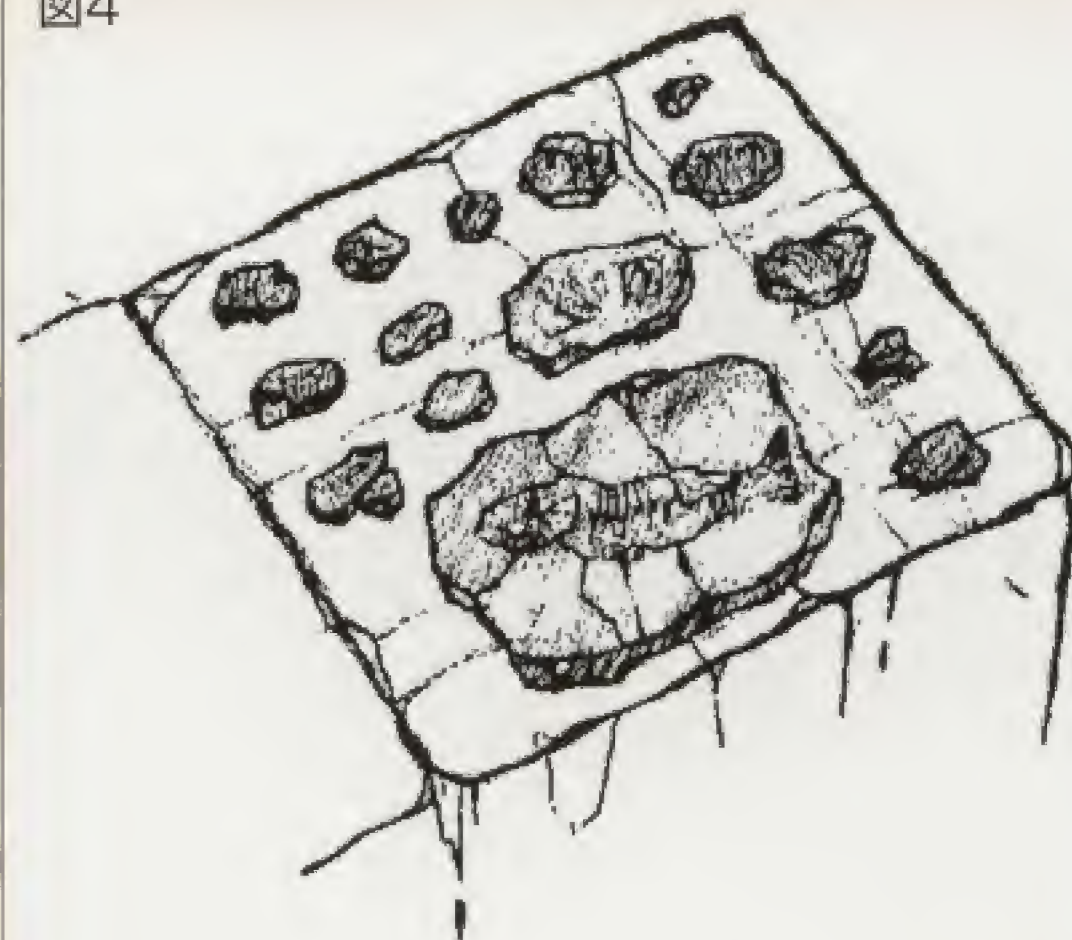
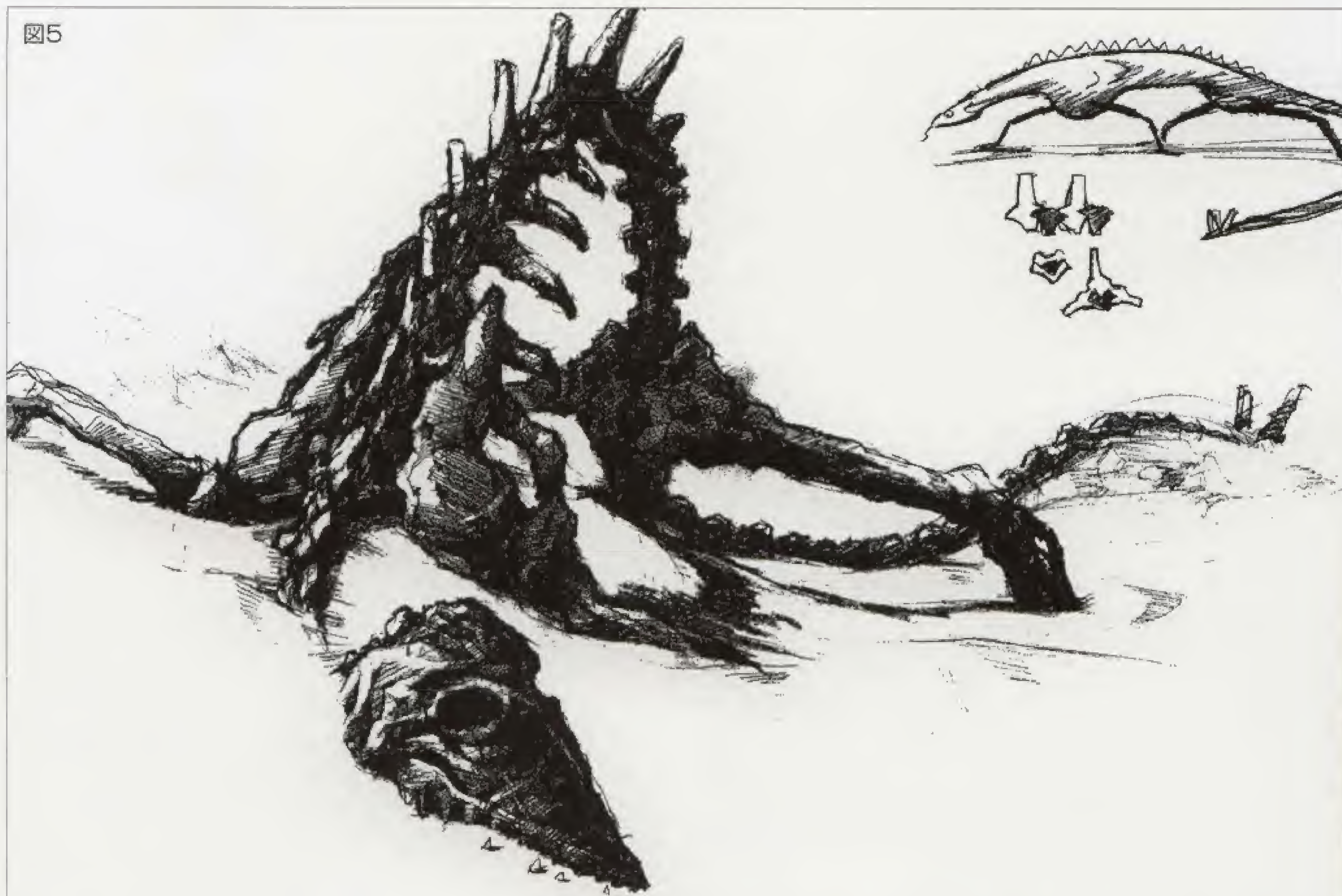
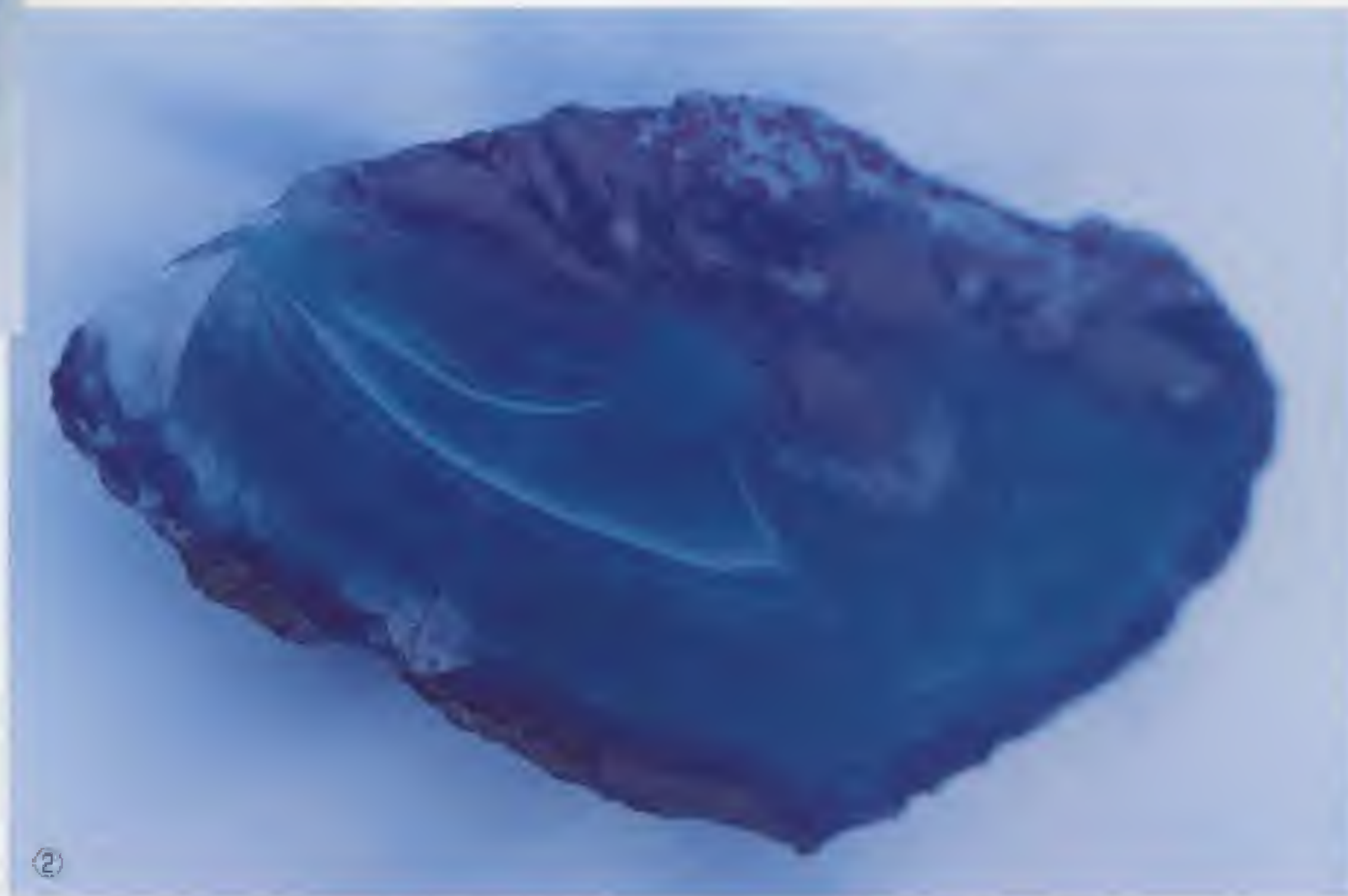
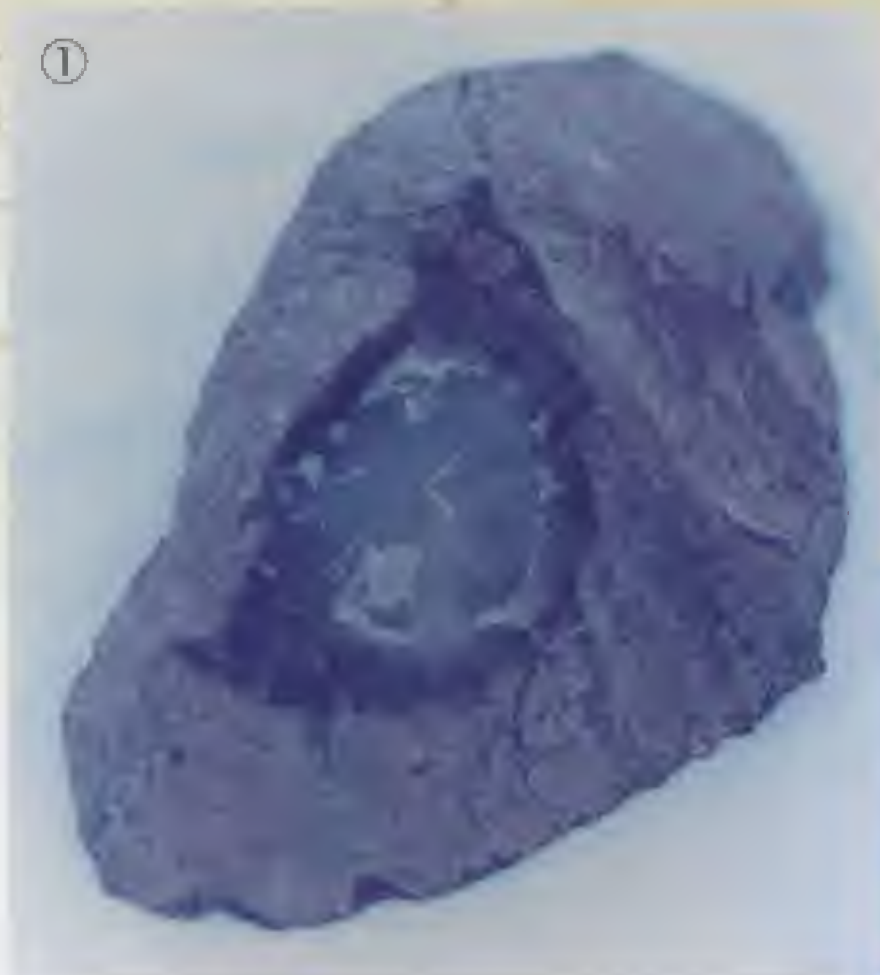


図6

図5







## A study on the -Fatima Jasper-

The -Fatima Jasper- handed down in the Fatima Dynasty is attuned to the retinal pattern of those members of the royal family by blood. However, the thing desired by Shakhan and Ramsus in the story was the -Jasper- as a jewel. At this time, Bart and Margie each had a family jewel pendant, it is thought that at some point it played a part of the Jasper . . . Half an azure gem decorated each respective part. The legend of the Aveh founder Roni Fatima who resuced the world after the -Day of Collapse- having spread widely among the people, at that time the Fatima Dynasty recieved great wealth and rumors of the aforesaid Jasper also became legendary among the people. And so, with this image of a "Jasper", they aimed for an azure jewel.

However, what kind of gem actually is this Jasper? In general terms, a Jasper is that jewel known as -Jasper-, which is an impure amalgamated stone of great beauty. Normally, this stone would be white, but because of impurities, it can be a clear water color, -Crystal- as it's called. Jasper, depending on oxidation, come in many green colors. Even more wearing from acids causes it to appear with a red belt on the inside, and these are called Red (red jewels) and are very rare. Picture 1 shows a typical Jasper, picture 2 shows an interior slice. This is a startling blue.

According to the -Moss hardness scale-, Jasper comes in at a Moss reading of 7. The jewels at this rating are amethysts and onyx. All are beautiful kinds of stones. There are many jewels produced outside the rating system, the rate of uncovering these is highly probable so not worth mentioning as they are not worth much.

Jewels must be mined, as they are formed deep in earth's layers (deep deposits left behind by magma) and there are many to be found. While Jaspers oxidized in the process may be discovered, the earth is mainly abundant in such things as gold and iron. The desert Kingdom of Aveh has many such deposits of ore throughout, and probably produces many Jaspers. The royal family according to legend had high quality blue Jaspers, so why were they not handled as valuable jewels? It is thought that this story is circulated among the people so as to wrap the true nature of the Royal family's secret in even more layers of mystery.



### ■ Moss hardness Chart

The chart to measure relative hardness contains 10 examples. Starting at 1, they become increasingly harder. Using the order of these specimens, their relative postions to each other in terms of hardness can be determined.

hardness	mined material
1	talcum
2	shale
3	calcite
4	fire stone
5	coal
6	volcanic rock
7	quartz
8	topaz
9	amethyst
10	diamond



## Study of the life cycles of various monsters that live throughout the world

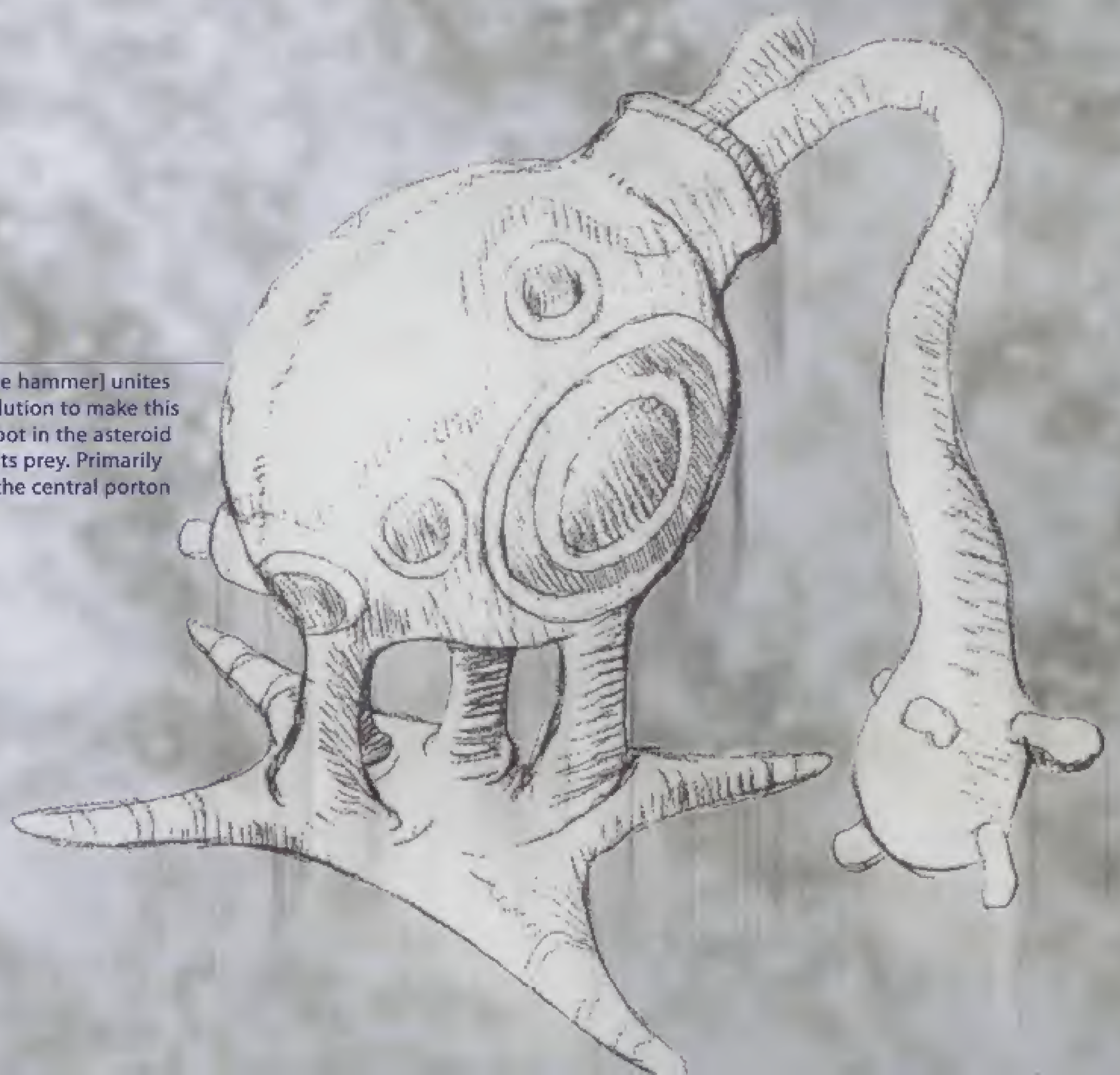
In the course of travelling, when one meets with a monster, it's eat or be eaten, kill or be killed - that's the struggle of life that awaits. Those monsters that are particularly evil can be burdensome living creatures that threaten humans. However, by that same token, monsters are a life form that coexist with humanity on the same planet. Knowing their life cycles, the image held in the mind up until now will definitely change.





### Mimic

One kind of desert breather the giant sand Mimic. Normally dives beneath the sand, the skin has special sensitivity to movement above on the sand's surface, when it senses this, it attacks. Also, because it is suited for environments poor in water, it waits with eagerness for prey in which it sucks out the moisture.



### Hobgob

The mushroom of the protuberant fungi [the hammer] unites with an asteroid shaped form by way of evolution to make this creature. It moves by way of the tube-like foot in the asteroid shaped body and it absorbs the moisture of its prey. Primarily inhabits the forest area and can be caught, the central portion being delicious for food.



The way of life for monsters in various environments

The monsters introduced starting here are -enemies against humans, that attack them- and are categorized accordingly. However, here those creatures called monsters are the same as animals “the aboriginal life forms of this planet” and they are classified according to their environments, and therefore studied. From understanding of the monsters’ life styles and background, it is hoped that they will be regarded as life deserving of respect and even a little more human.

Natural Kinds

The origin of all life

The -protozoan- that was the first creature and the ancestor (founder) of all living things, was born as a single celled animal in the sea. In the shallow water, it evolved with incredible speed into a mammal, becoming part of the present day ecosystem . Those monsters found in the ocean are derived from plankton. Considerably altered by evolution, the oceanic life form became larger and many times more powerful. Also, the creation of artificial creatures eventually came about.

In terms of the ocean’s development compared to the land, the number of marine species resulting from pollution and mutation is not very high. But as humans interfere in this area, the changing of creatures into monsters increasingly is a matter of time.

The abundant green land

The forest and grassland occupying approximately half the land mass in the world have warm air and an abundant water source, making this the best place for animals and humans. They benefit from the fertile land, which supplies a lot of the world's agriculture. This is the age of farming and there is considerable danger in these first days, as monsters are driven out to the frontier from their habitats, and the opportunity for seeing them decreases. However, due to the recent scientific developments, humanity’s territory has expanded, and the chance of interacting with monsters increases. Among the specialized, the monsters’ environment is altered, and they become a menace as a result. Having reached the limit of their genetic potential, those same monsters in different areas change into new creatures that have no resemblance to one another.

ocean	Kraken (strong)		Gryphon		
desert	Large beasts	Sunahami Sunahami (strong) Dragon	Shady	Planter Wurm Reaper	
forest grasslands	lower kinds snails (purple) Sai Earth Rankar Clay mushroom Binnik Yamadori Rain Frog	Aishteru Slime Slug Dragon Hopper Rhino	Edelweiss Dwarf		
special	lower kinds (strong)	Aishteru (strong) Acid Frog Raigyo	Gryphon (strong) Snail Roach Snail (red) Hammer (purple)	Batrat OR hammerhead	Hammerhead



Natural kinds

Living things have been on the planet since before humans were born. Over many years evolution has produced a variety of different subspecies and mutations. As for the natural monsters, they usually appeared with features similar to the original living things, but many had developed evil natures.

Manipulated kinds

Those creatures that are the warped results of the process of artificial gene manipulation. In order to overcome their natural tendencies, their bodies were grown to larger sizes while shorter types proliferated. In rare cases, the differences in individual abilities resulted in the natural monsters of that type becoming extinct.

Manipulated kinds

Manipulated kinds					
Deathscythe (sea) Deathscythe (deeps ocean)					s e a
Pichariman Wels					
					d e s e r t
Kokobold Forest Elf Forest Elf (strong)	Faulbidown (strong)	Gimmic Plus Golem Tears Plus	Sufal Man		
					f o r e s t  g r a s s l a n d s
Eater Craggen	Abandon Cariel Type Faulbidown	Gimmic Cariel Shera Type Dias	Shera Dorothy Fire Rotten	New Wels Orphan Giant Wels Bloody Bloody Bros. Redrum	
					s p e c i a l  f r o n t i e r

The dry barren wasteland

The large area of the Ignas continent - where the sun beats on the vast desert of sand in the vicinity of Aveh. The maximum temperature at mid day can exceed 50 degrees Celcius, while the surface may even reach 70 degrees C. As the year progresses there is very little rainfall, and many small oases can disappear depending on the season. The struggle for life is harsh and unforgiving and only those with some kind of protective covering survive. It is a cruel landscape. Also, in recent years, the desert appears to be encroaching on other areas. In particular the Aquvy areas' dry belt is turning into desert wasteland, but even at that, there are many kinds that live here.

The monsters that inhabit the desert have developed hard shell like exteriors that protect them, and in order to absorb the bodily fluids of their prey, many have thorny projections. They adapted to their environment into suitable forms, and appear as many various kinds,

Monster's Lair

Here, is the classification of special environments, the ocean, desert (wastelands), forests and grasslands, wherever monsters are to be found. These all have primarily artificially created environments, sewers, dig sites, and towns being one part. Everywhere there is life that has breath, monsters can be found by the thousands.

What is especially very interesting, even including those areas of relatively little interaction, is that they are also a microcosm of animals and monsters. There it is eat or be eaten, and the network of life is truly extraordinary to behold. Considering the amount of gene manipulation at work the amount of integration is quite surprising. Regrettably, the danger level is too high for research into the arena concerning the living monsters, and there is much that is still poorly understood. At this point, perhaps a large team could make the effort.



Here is explained an overall representation of monsters from all environments. From the details of the sketches, their life styles and particular characteristics, also the changes in forms are explained, as well as those portions never before seen until now.

## Ocean

One of the 7 parts of the overall planet's area is the wide oceans, and until now, there were not a few recognized species of monsters here. The habitable areas appear to be the surface of the ocean and the deep sea.



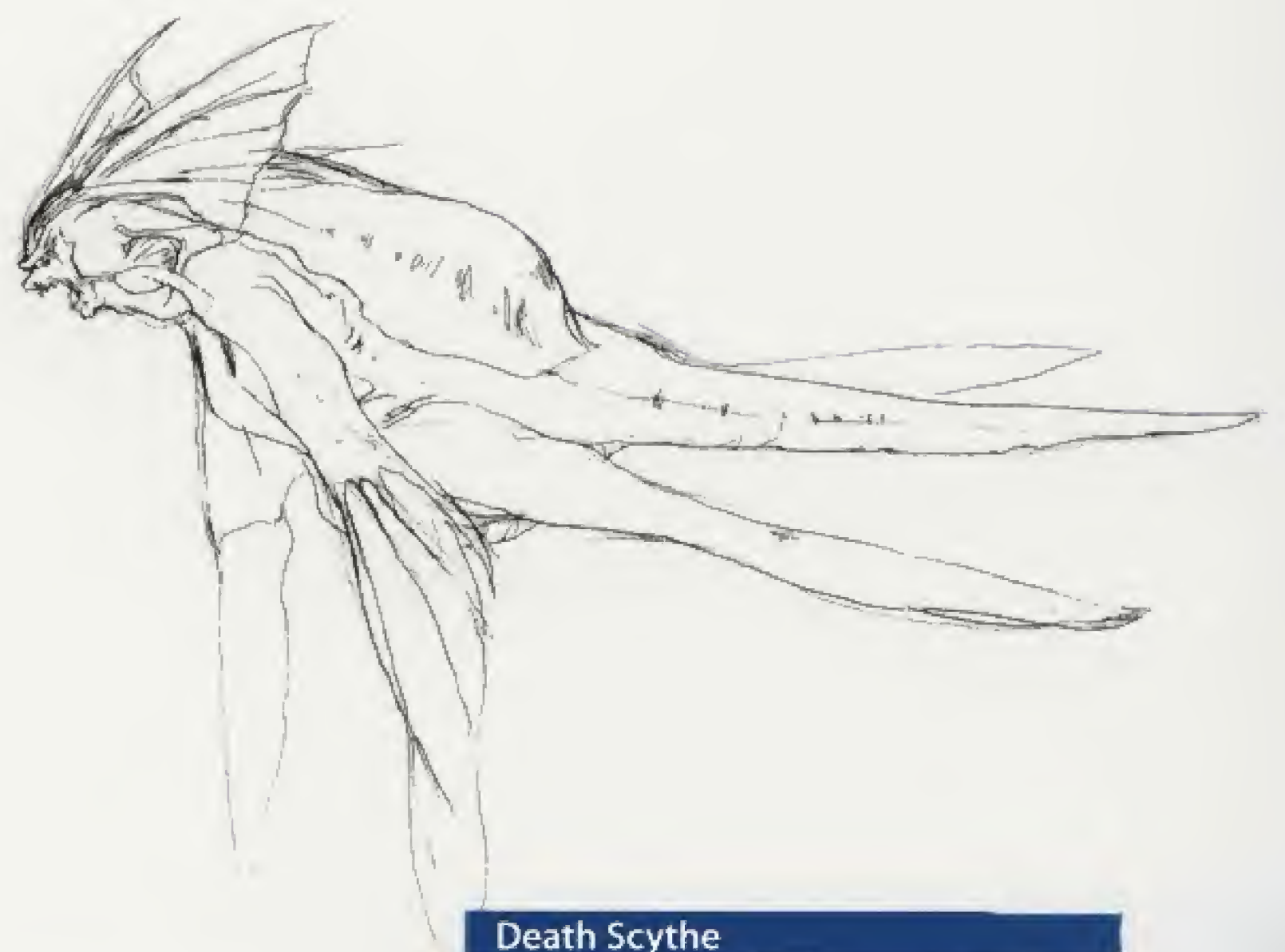
### Kraken (strong)

Controlling the giant tentacles requires drawing in amounts of electricity from the surrounding ocean's ions, then it repels with a forcible attack. The other tentacles play the role of bringing food to its mouth.



### Gryphon

Occupies small islands scattered throughout the sea, these are its main lair. Due to incredible eyesight, when it discovers its prey many miles away, it attains speeds of more than 1000 k/hr. and attacks.



### Death Scythe

Its kind appears near the ocean's surface, but mostly dives deep beneath. Its body resembles the primeval fish while its head is more like that of humans. It is thought to be an artificial type.



## Desert

The extreme temperatures cause dryness so that it catches fire easily, and there are almost no plants, so the ecological pyramid is all but destroyed. Monsters continually mutate to adapt to these conditions, gaining strength with each change.



### Planter

Desiring water, it is a plant type monster that can move by its own will. It is able to store water and nutrition in its body, so that it can live for about half a year on these stores after one feeding.



口の開き方



### Sand Shark

Originally one of the lighter boned type fish. Once it appeared on land, it developed a respiratory system, and the eyes receded so it could dive into the sand. The hard and very sharp beak plays a role in making sound so that it can navigate through the sand.



### Reaper

This kind evolved from moray sharks, plants and insects. Like the Planter, it became able to move to disintegrate its prey. It's interior secretes a solvent, a very strong acid.



### Shady

Appearing suddenly in the Aquvy area, they appear to be a small female hunting tribe. They don't seem very strong at first glance, but these pros can drop monsters many times larger than themselves in a blink of an eye.



### Dragon

Living fossils of life remaining from ancient times. Once, they filled the sky but lately are on the decline. A new type that can walk may be overtaking the former kind.



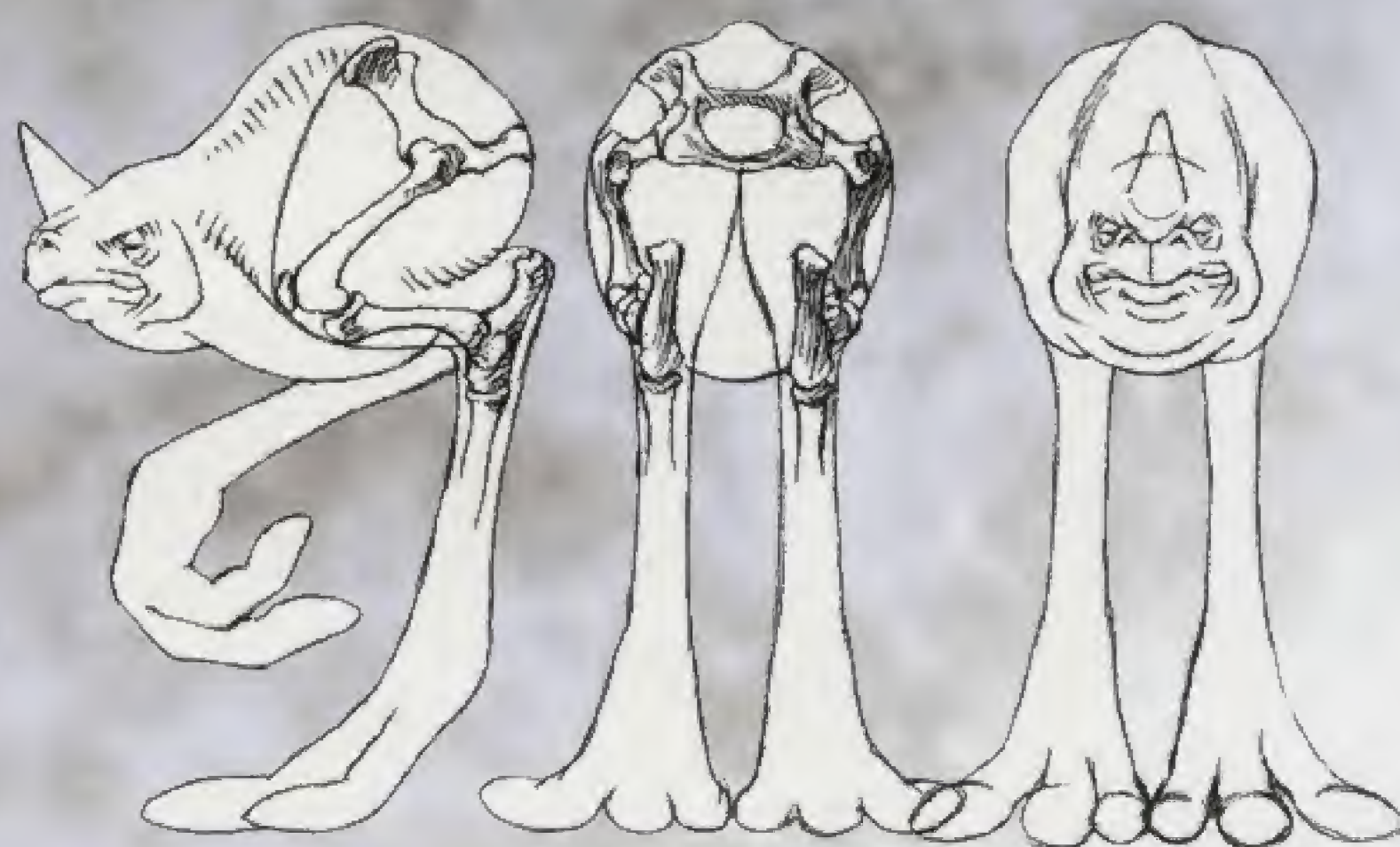
## Forest • Prairie

The result of the territory of plants and animals having been invaded by humans, is that monsters increase in the forests and grasslands. For those of the many various kind of plants and animals on the earth, these also begin to increasingly turn into mutated forms.



### Binnik

Looking for a good opportunity -a great discovery-, this has a psychology very close to that of humans and moves accordingly. It is thought that probably it was once a domesticated pet of humans.



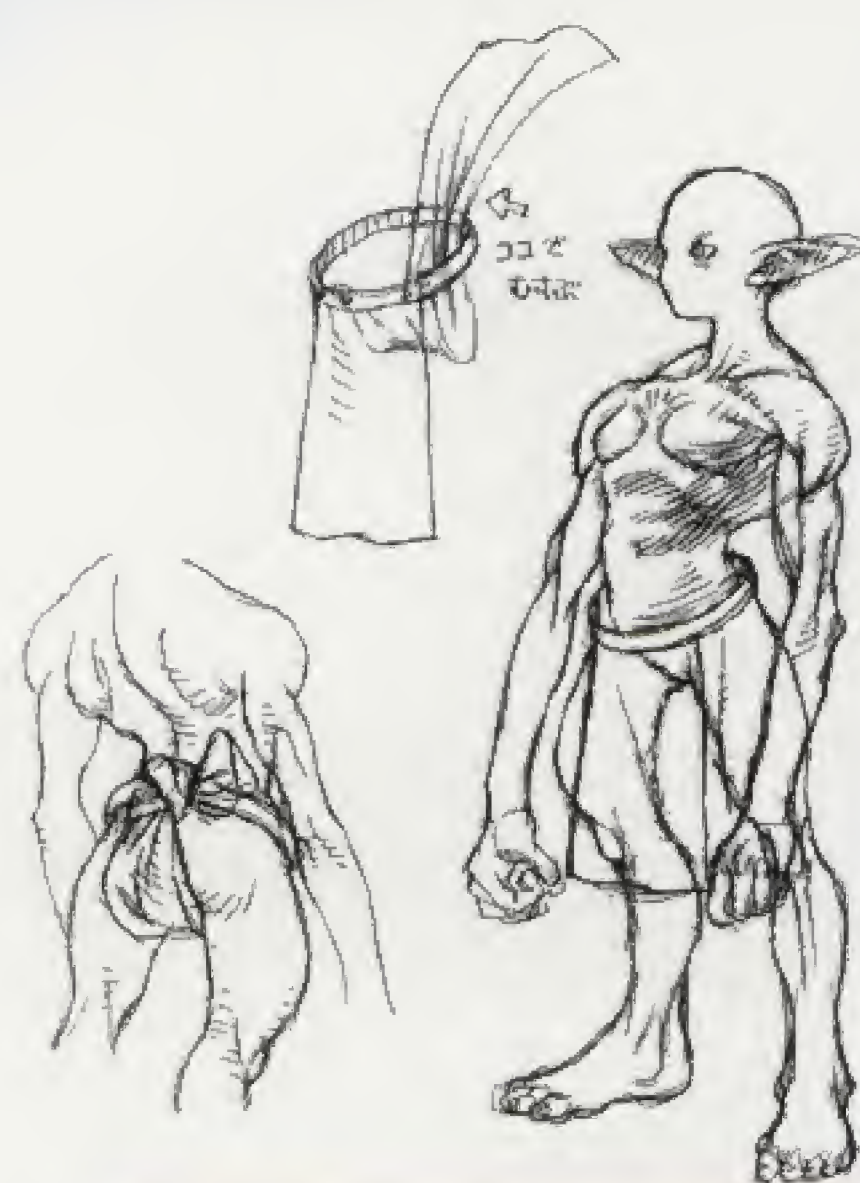
### Hopper

An appropriate name is -one who jumps-. It moves by jumping with its two limbs over and over again. Originally a very timid creature, it prefers grazing in the fields.



### Sai

Seems to be a sub species of wolf, this monster is a type of mammal. In its chosen habitat, it moves in groups of many. Its strongest weapon is its sharp claws that enable it to -kick- repeatedly.



### Forest Elf

A sub species of human living in the forest. They live in the treetops and move freely among the branches. They have a fairly special style of attack among the monsters, applying it in battle.



### Earth Dragon Rankar

Using their strong tails to topple prey, due to large fangs they are the surviving meat eating dinosaurs. The strongest in the region, their destructive power is fierce.





### Kokobold

One of the many sub species of humans, hunters who specialize in the bow. Because of their small size, their lower limbs are covered and the closeness of the legs to its body enables it to make very high jumps.



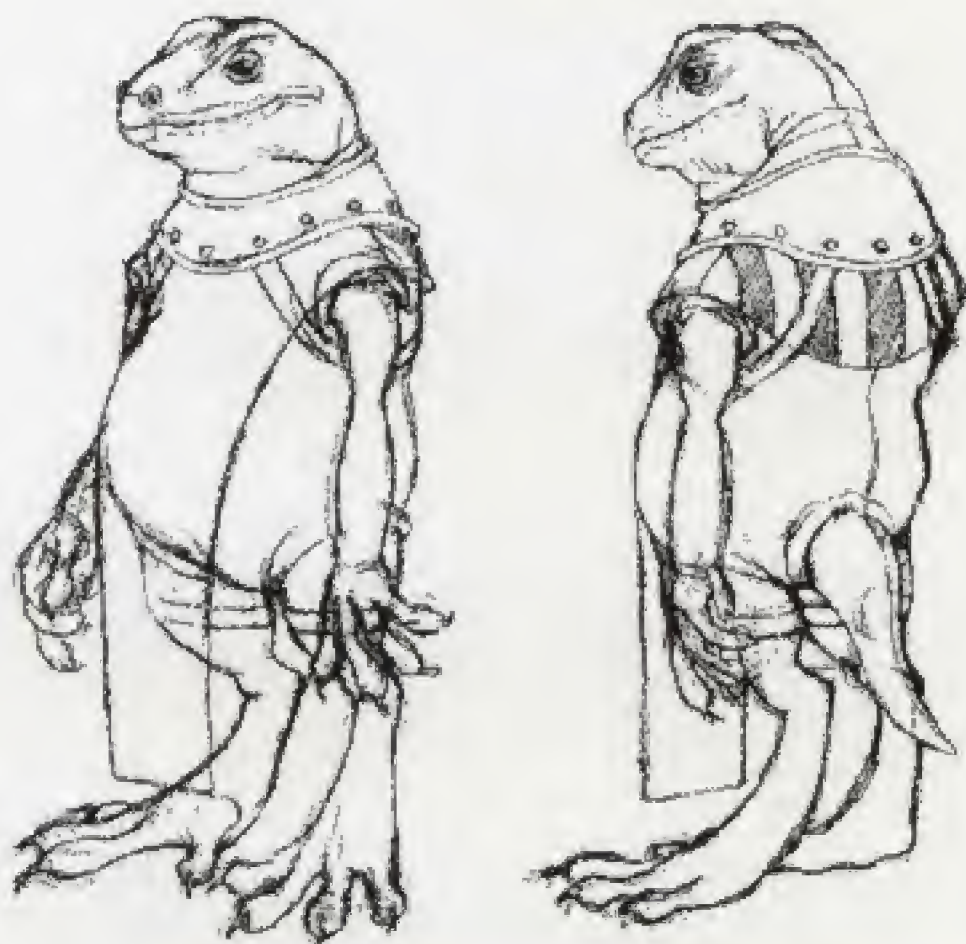
### Dwarf

Their clubs were originally used to carve out stone, they now swing the pole in attack. Not very intelligent, they imitate humans with some skill. They appear to like 'knocks'.



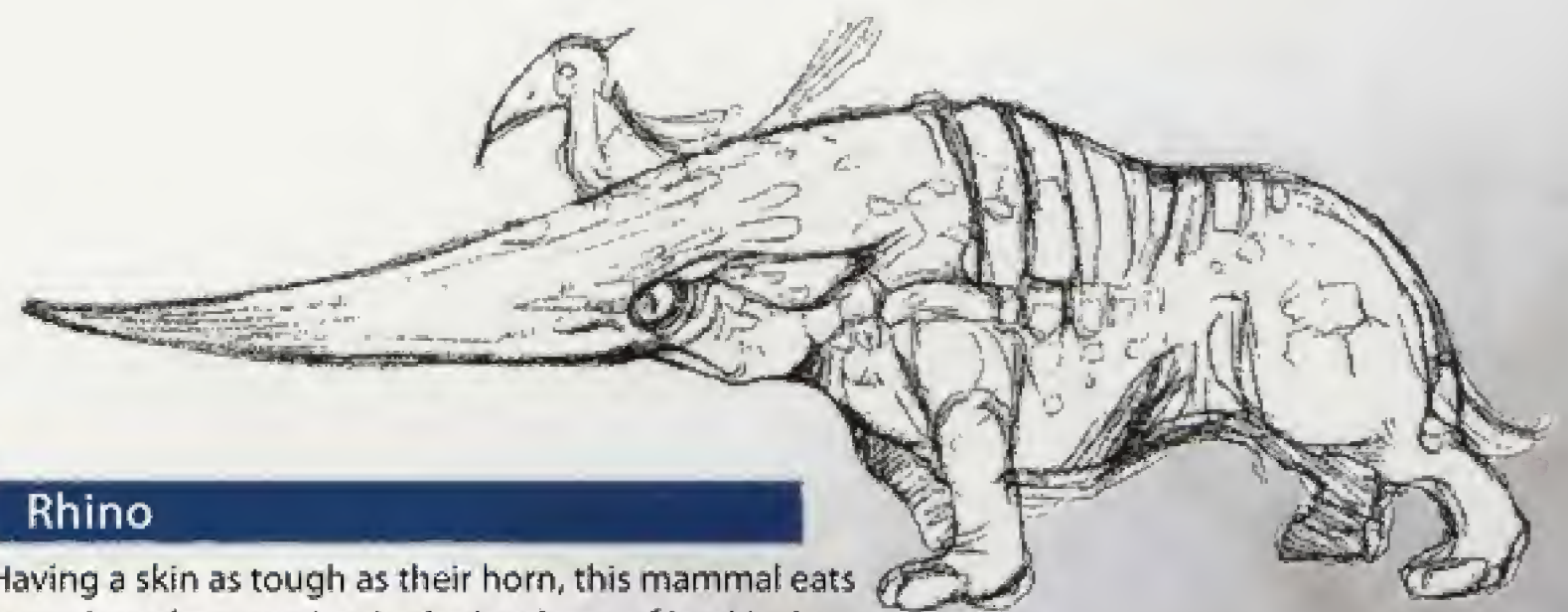
### Golem

Appearing in the snowfield after Deus terraforms the earth, this is a kind that was once one of Solaris' living experiments. Their interior composition being simple, their eyes and mouth have totally retreated. They are not smart.



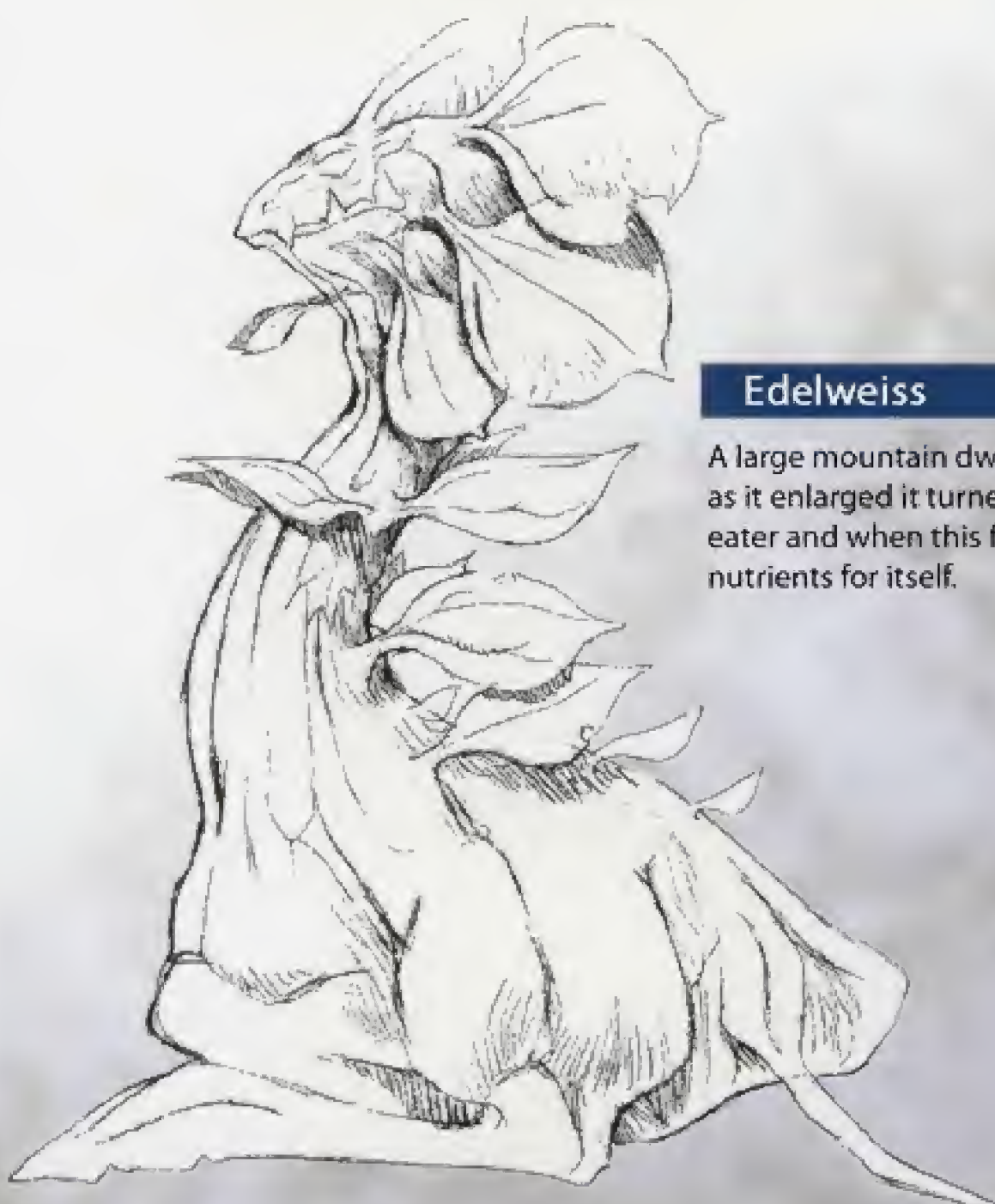
### Lower kinds

A sub species of lizard, this monster is a reptile. Shedding its skin is proof of its superior status. Gathering in herds, they have constructed an independent culture.



### Rhino

Having a skin as tough as their horn, this mammal eats grass. In order to maintain the hardness of its skin, its defensive powers are high. A bird riding on its back lives in a symbiotic relationship with it.



### Edelweiss

A large mountain dwelling plant species, it changed and as it enlarged it turned into a monster. It became a meat eater and when this food is scarce, it can photosynthesize nutrients for itself.



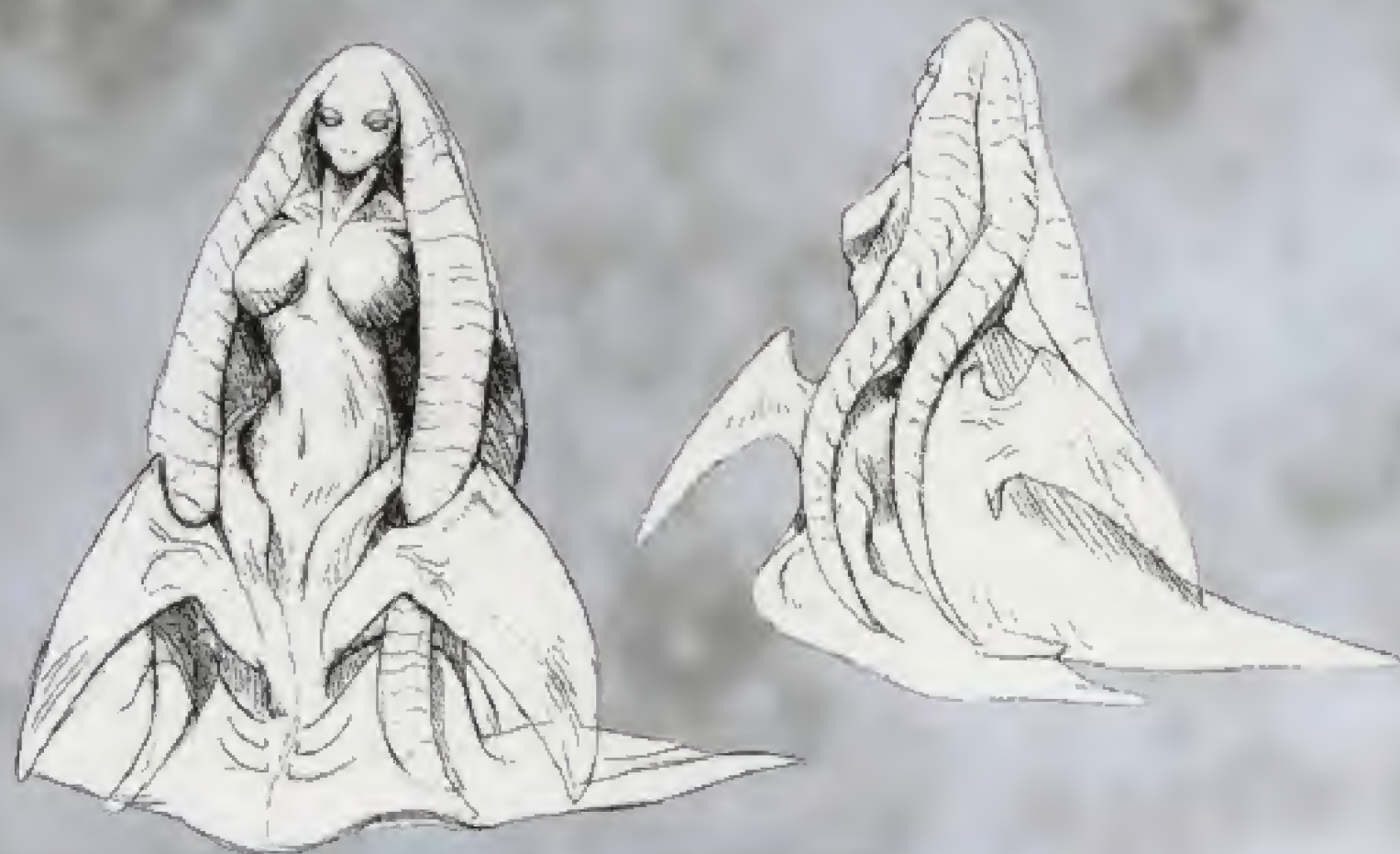
### Sufal Man

-One of the building blocks of Merkava- its cellular structure has been altered, thus changing its human form. Becoming larger because of the change in cells, it has a correspondingly short life-span. It wants the flesh and blood of healthy humans.



## Others

These 'other' monsters are some of the many results of gene manipulation by humans. Because they needed powerful attack skills in order to survive, they began to join the ranks of monsters.



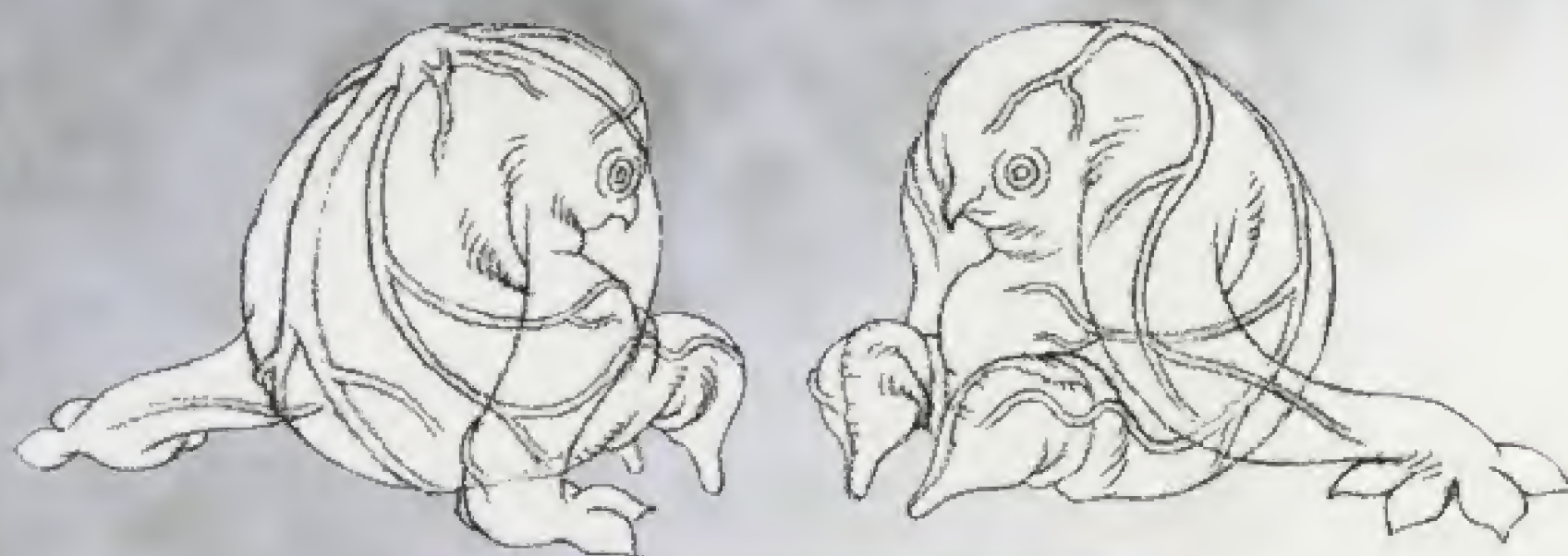
### Fire

Drawing in the Ether stored in its pendulum type hair, it can rejuvenate its energy. It sings out "Ay!" when its body is reduced by half or more, and it gets its reknown from this.



### Sheila

Having a hard shell resembling a large face, it is thought to be an ethereal that can manipulate water. Having the parts of humans from its head to its chest, it is weaponized in the lower portion which stores madness causing poison.



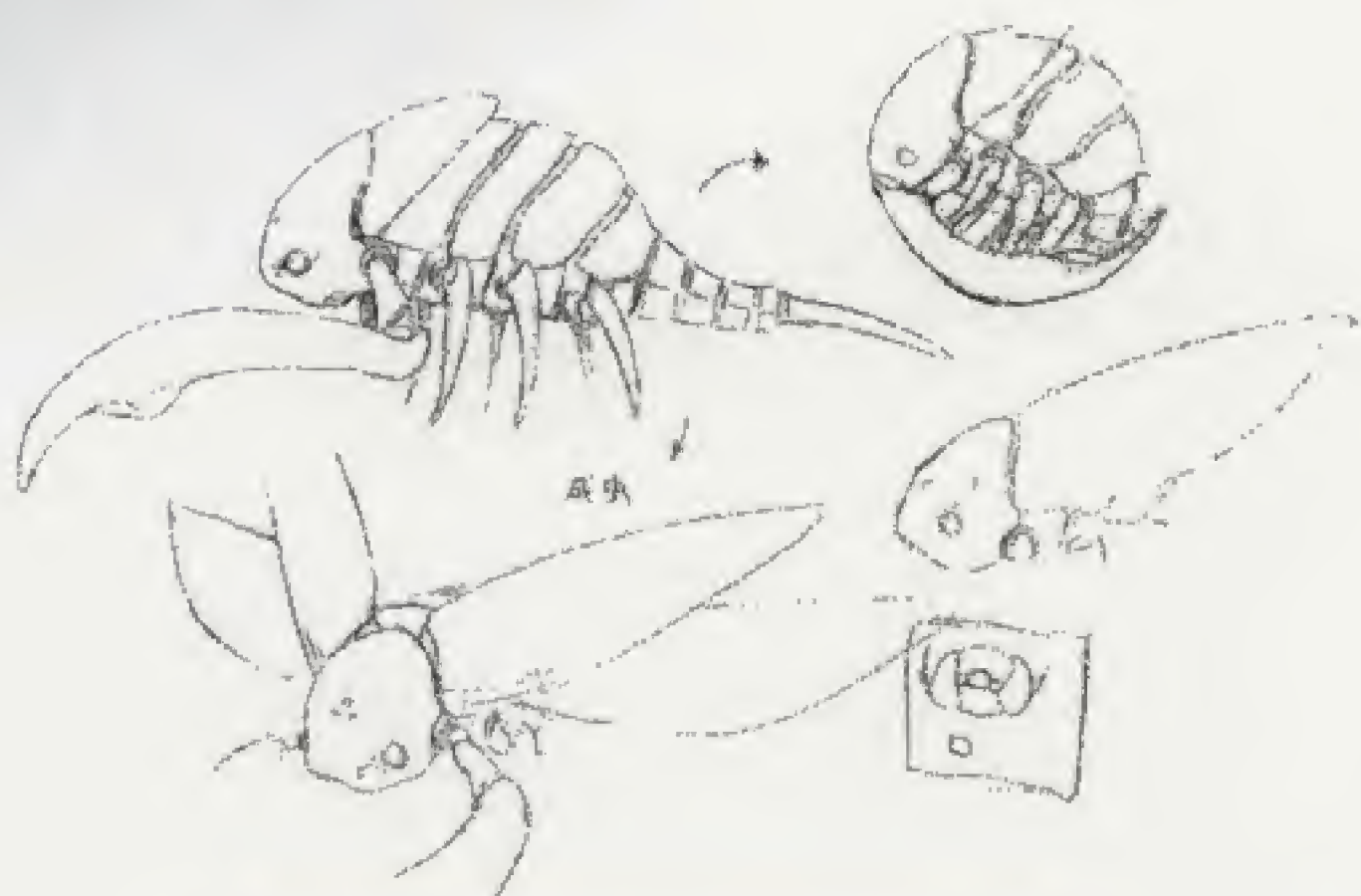
### Rotten

Before it's born from the mother body, in other words, a miscarried but powerful body that is an artificial kind. When sucking in the power of its prey it holds them tight, then it returns to the mother body.



### Batrat

Can live in utter darkness, this monster combines the rat's ability to eat anything with a bat's senses. Being equipped to emit high pitched sounds, it confuses its prey and eats it.



### Cocoon Caterpillar

From larvae to the stage at which it hardens into a cocoon, at the end of which it emerges as a winged insect. It has special components inside. It attacks with a strong acid saliva from its mouth.



### Carrier

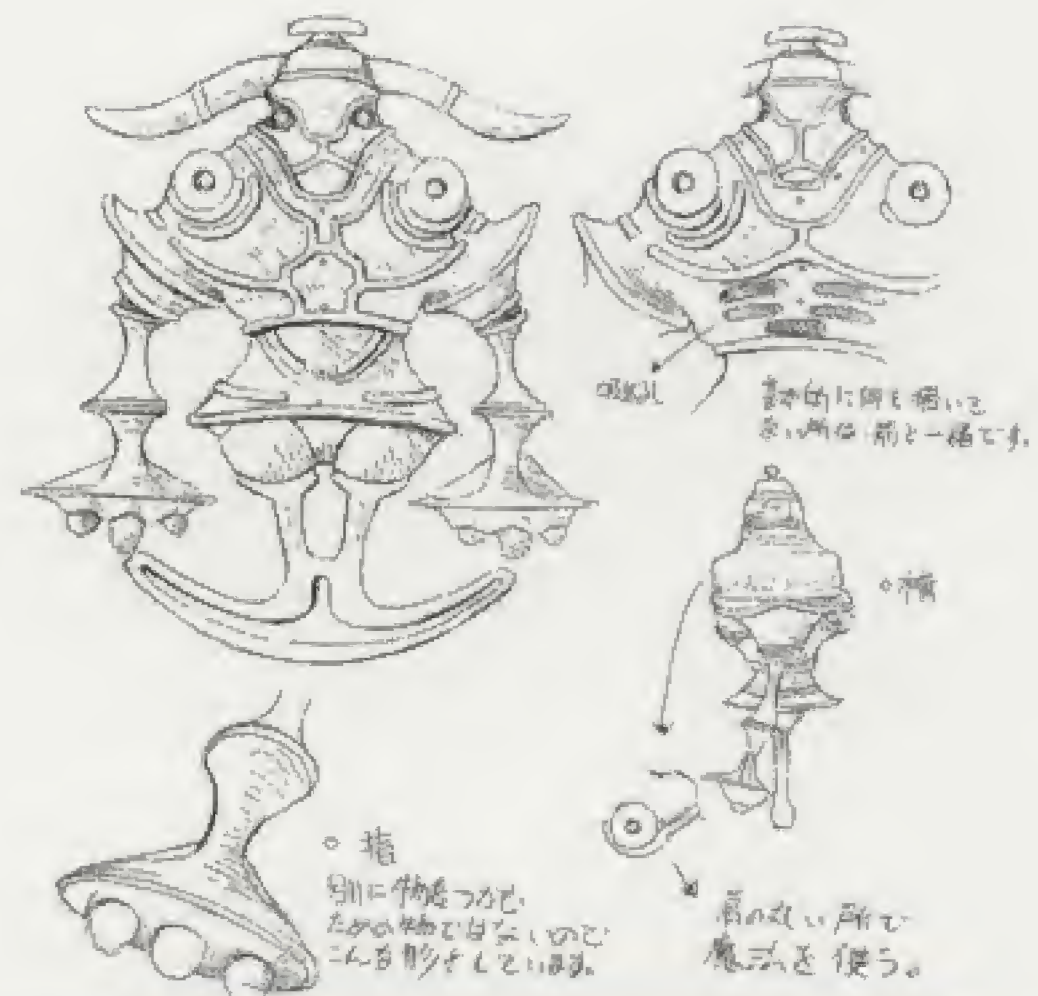
It's main attack is with the strong barbed tail, probably an artificially created sub species of alligator. Even though its front legs are retracted, it moves with incredible speed.





### Hammerhead

A sub species of mollusk, lives in waterless environments. Usually hidden, the tail located beneath its mantle can absorb ether from enemies.



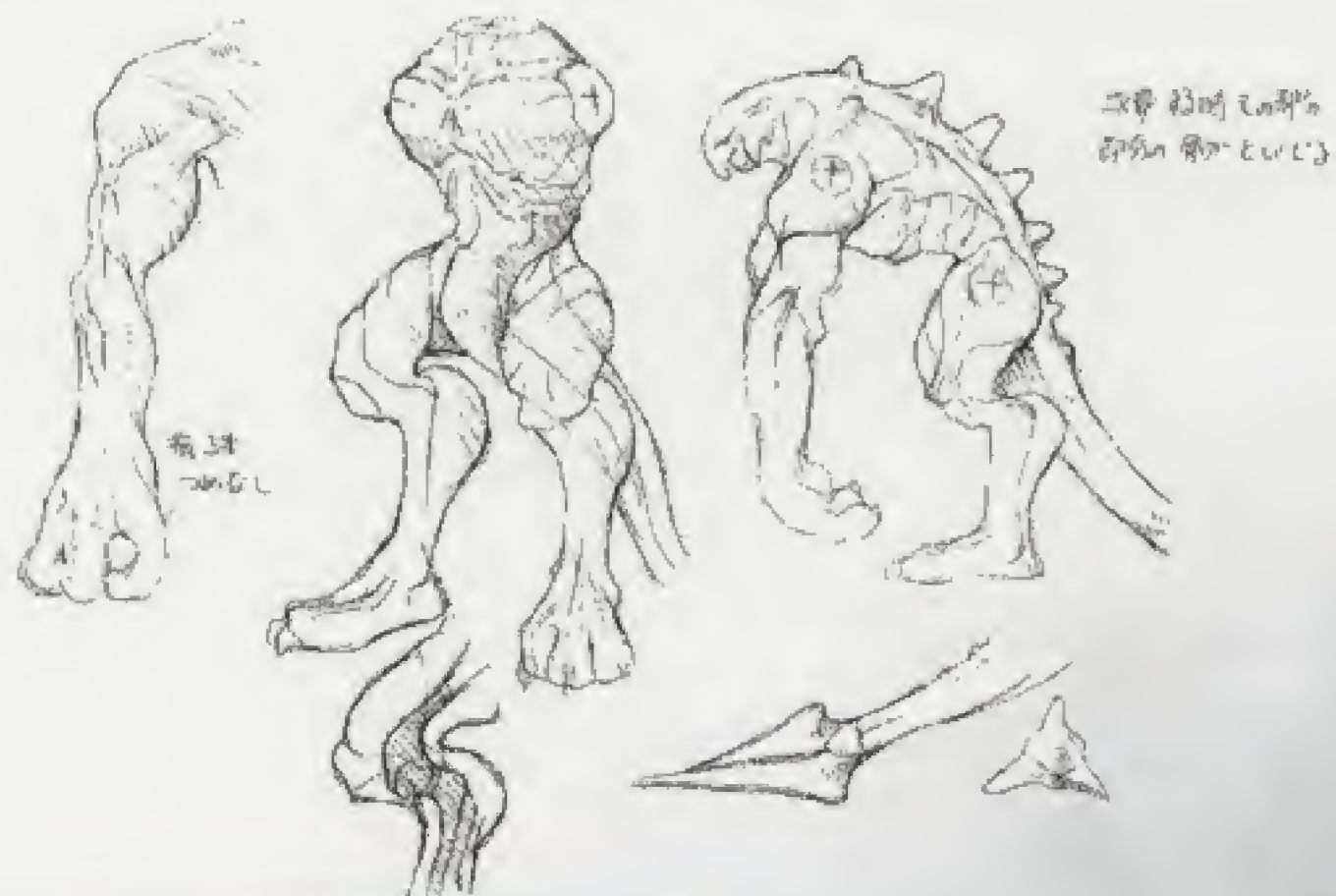
### Gimmik

As its name says, it was made to guard the shafts in Shevat, a -rocking doll-. Never having learned to eat, it takes other people's Ether and turns it into energy.



### Forbidden

Those long ago frozen in cabonite in Shevat were reborn as monsters. In order to maintain their power, during times of hibernation it stores great reserves of power for attack.



### Redrum

A killing demon living in Kislev's sewers. It was human once, but as a result of artificial engineering it was turned into a monster. Only the name it had as a human -Lost his way- remains.



### Tears

Getting its power from murder, this is a fearsome artificially created monster. Like the Gimmik, it lives in the shafts of Shevat. Usually has two bodies and with both it is a real menace.



## Unknown Monsters

Up until now 3 different sections of monsters and their life cycles have been introduced. However, in this world there are a great number of never before seen monsters whose life cycles are not known in any detail. Please look at the sketches for tentative monsters not shown.







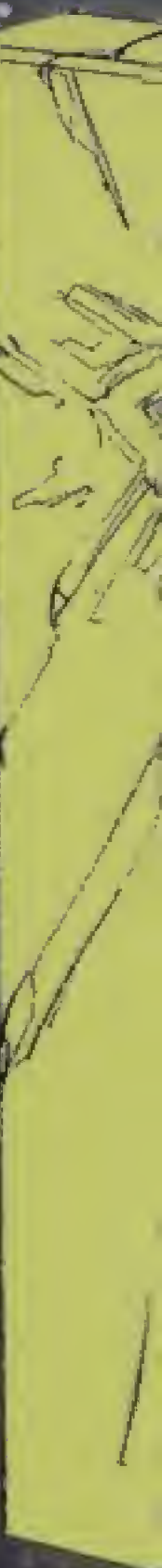
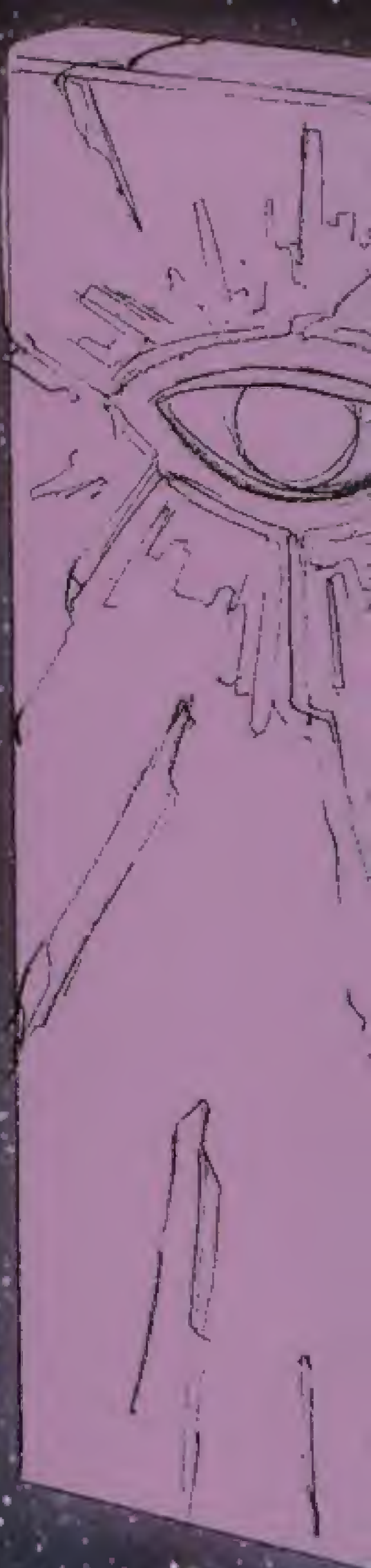


## Science

Beyond understanding the world, progressing to even more difficult concepts, the background of science being made easier to understand

In every place there occur unintelligible keywords and many are derived from an ultra-advanced scientific world. Each of these mysteries come to the surface one by one during the story, and some are clarified in Disc 2. However, towards the ending there is still one large mystery that remains unsolved. . . .What was the true goal of the Deus System?

Here at the heart of the story, in understanding the great mystery of the -Deus System-, those scientific keywords are also explained.







**The machine that grants all wishes -Zohar-**

Everyone has probably wanted to change the world according to their wishes. And everyone in extraordinary circumstances, has at least one time raised their eyes up to the sky and offered a prayer. But to whom are they praying? ... It's -God-.

For interaction with the master of all things, -god-. If this is to be done in the scientific world, to whom do you pray?



# The sentient scientific weapon

At the very beginning of all this, the Interstellar Space Cruiser Eldridge was governed by a 7th generation computer - Central Brain Kadomony which was hacked into. On the surface, the ship was merely a colony transport ship, but this was in order to hide the true nature of its mission, the transporting of a weapon system. That system's name was Deus. Shrouded in mystery, Deus went berserk, leading to the crash of the Eldridge. The crash destination was an uninhabited planet. There new human beings were born, developing an independent civilization and science and this provides the background for the game's world.

Here is the study on the core of the beginnings of that story, the Deus System and its corresponding scientific framework.

## The engine making up Interstellar tactical weapon System -Deus-

The Deus System was constructed in the hopes that it would put a decisive end to the increasing interstellar war. The engine constructing it is separated into four large parts, it is possible for each to function independently.

And it is Zohar that uses phenomenon phase shift to provide driving energy to the engine. While it is sentient, it is not intelligent and it depends on orders input by those with access. Specifically responding to those with special access, it is only a machine that emits energy.

And it is the living weapon Deus that draws out Zohar's energy to the utmost limit. With the possibility of having immense attack power, it is planned for it to start with a 100% link with Zohar and to control it.

And so, in order to manage the two is the governing computer, biological brain Kadomony. This 8th generation computer has a protocol able to reason, and is divided into living cells. It can manage the various calculations and choose accordingly.

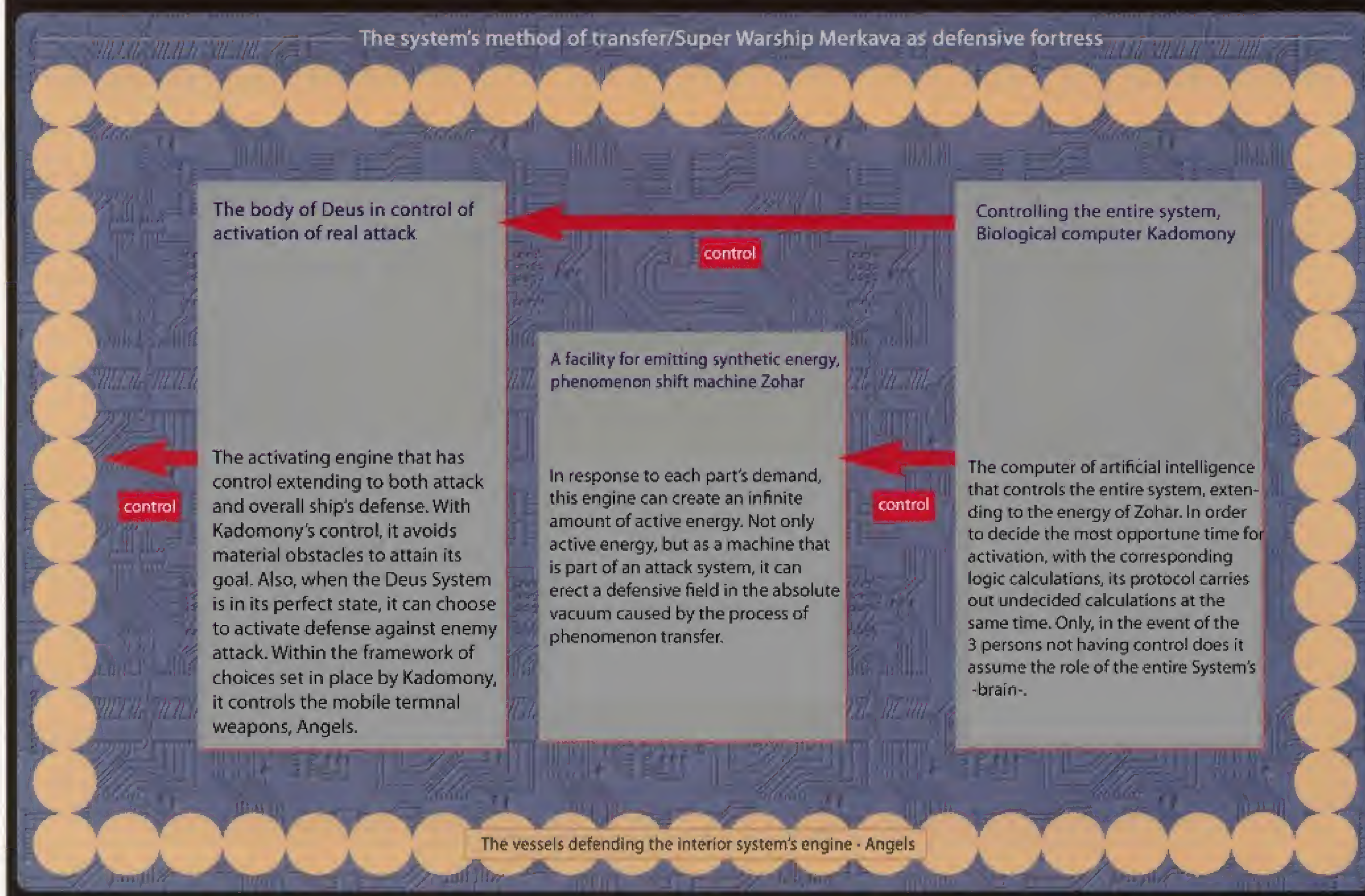
Once again, it is aimed to transfer these three components to play a role on Super Warship Merkava. Inside Merkava are the mobile terminal weapons, Angels, placed in every area to defend against material intrusion. These are gathered for the first time and the system constructed.



▲ Due to hacking by the living weapon Deus, all the machines within the ship become like living things and attack humans.

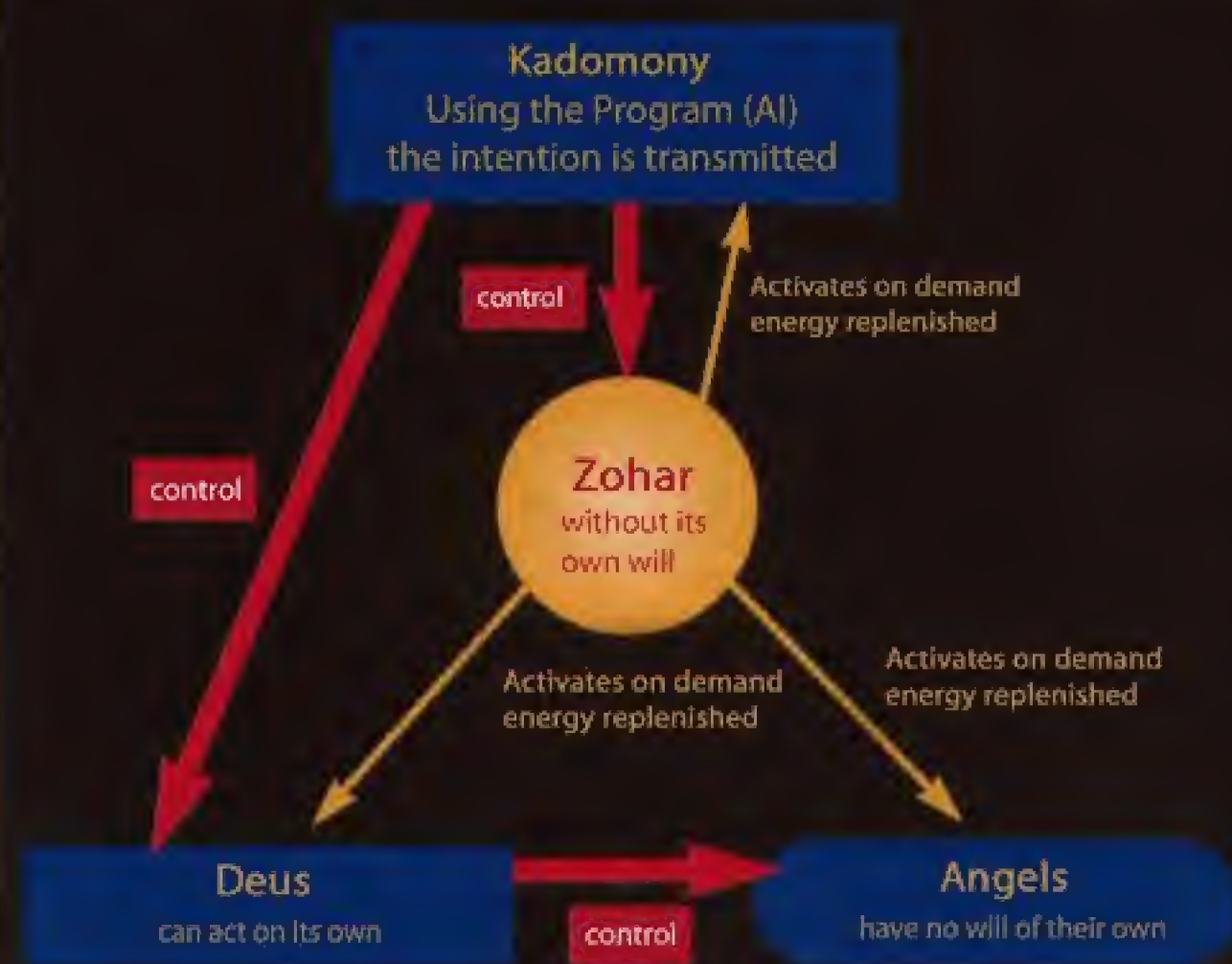
## The structure of the control of the Deus System

The function and structure of each part is shown on the diagram.





The corresponding interaction of each part



### At the center of everything -Zohar

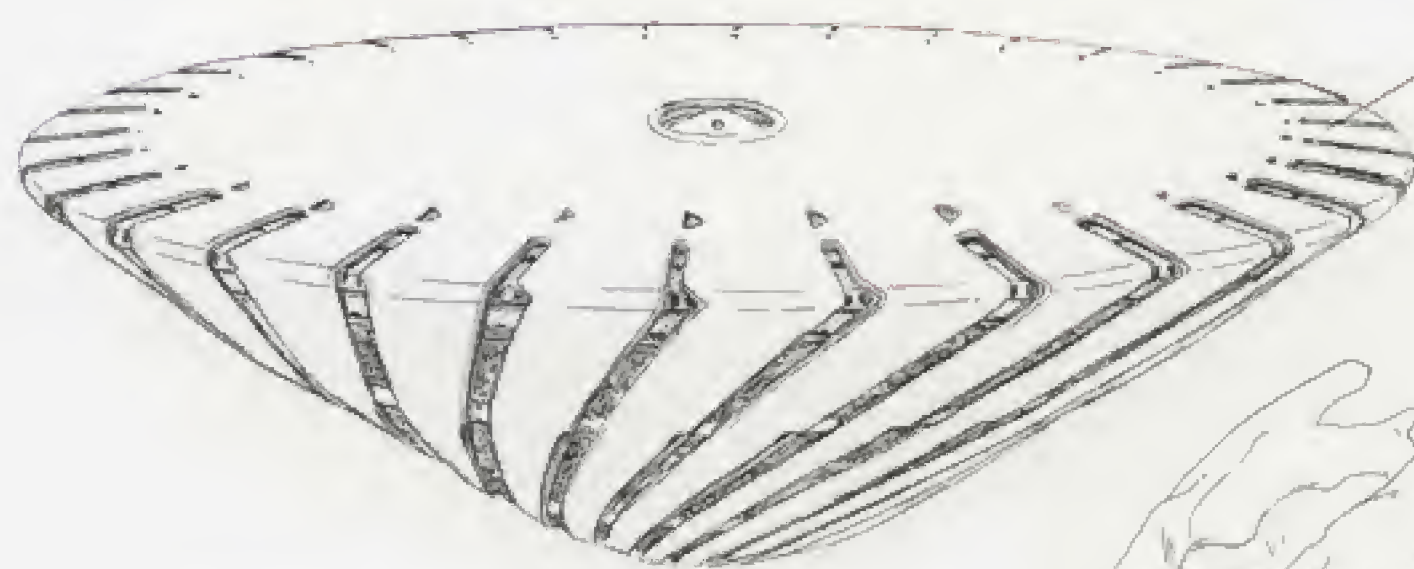
Supplying the entire system with activating energy, is the phenomenon shift machine, Zohar. However, Zohar itself has no will of its own, and continually supplies energy to the demands of other machines.

In the case of the possibility of the 2 machines activating independently, biological brain Kadomony is placed with the goal of governing the system and with the living weapon Deus as a material weapon it is possible for both to function with energy supplied by Zohar.

And so, the Deus System itself controls Zohar, rather than Deus itself, and it is called a machine having the power of a weapon.

### Tactical attack Mother ship Merkava

The mother ship belonging to the Deus System, its outer shell has a diameter of 80 km. The slits cuts into its surface store Deus' mobile terminals the Angels. Its name is derived from the word meaning 'chariot of Heaven'.



### Living Weapon Deus (itself)

It is not an inorganic machine, but has the characteristics on the exterior of a living thing as it is composed mainly of living parts. Having the abilities to restore itself and learn, it changes its body throughout all the stages of its evolution.



### Phenomenon phase shift Zohar

The 'eye' shaped portion on the upper part of its body is Zohar itself. Obviously an artificial form, this mysterious machine is said to have existed from the time of the universe's beginning. Its existence is the key to the story and the world's background.



### Biological brain Kadomony

Contained within Zohar's iris, (in fact the pupil's) interior is the governing computer. Produced by an 'over-technology' the nature of its material is unknown.



## Glossary

### Interstellar Space Cruiser

A space ship that moves among the stars - or rather, in star systems with suns at their center. In this case, the sun referred to is not only that of the solar system, but the other star systems that exist in the universe.

### Hacking

The action of invading another computer illegally (hack). There are many cases in which the goal is the collection of data. In recent computer language, the breaking down of data is called a 'crack', and the re writing of false data in its place is called a 'flake'.

### Central Electric brain Raziel

A computer bearing the name of an Angel of great knowledge that appears in mythology. It manages the database with artificial intelligence. In reading, it amends characters.

### Angels

A word meaning -Angel-. Deus itself controls these for the goal of defending the Deus System. It designates those vessels gathered by Merkava. These machines are divided by their characteristics into 7 kinds; water - wind - earth - fire - healing - power - sword.

### Phenomenon phase shift

The meaning is to shift objects. In the normal state of things, objects move along with time (because of this movement, time is formed) however in the case of Zohar, it can -shift- things at will.

### Logic calculations

The method by which calculations are carried out by present day computers. It is a method that results in one query leading to only one result.

### Living elements

It refers to those living components used by a computer somewhat like a living thing. This is an indispensable part for carrying out 'uncertain or undecided calculations' as mentioned above.



# The growing weapon Deus

## The ultimate weapon with unlimited growth of increasing destructive power

The living weapon Deus, as the interstellar invasion weapon the Deus System, is a machine able to carry out material attacks. Due to its ability to restore itself along with being able to grow makes it possible for it to simply destroy a given target as a weapon.

Deus' ability to restore itself is a skill that enables it to draw in life force with innate function so that it can repair damage recieved in battle.

In its first form, that is the embryo stage, Deus already possessed the attack power to destroy planets, and its existence was a merging of both a living form with machine. As a result, a planet was entirely destroyed, and at the point it could no longer draw in power, it went into a state of suspended animation.

This is the expansion of the Deus System as an interstellar invasion weapon. The 'neck' of this simple weapon was activated energy, supplied by phenomenon phase shift from Zohar. And with the tactical invasion ship Merkava having become the Mother ship, movement in interstellar space became possible once more.

Merkava would transfer to those planets being targeted, and even without any attack pattern would use active energy supplied by Zohar to continually wreak destruction. After destroying the targets, Merkava would once again head for other planets, destroying and in so doing gaining more power so that the same thing would be repeated over and over, and above all logic, becoming an ultimate weapon grown to infinite pwer.

The group of Angels defending Merkava



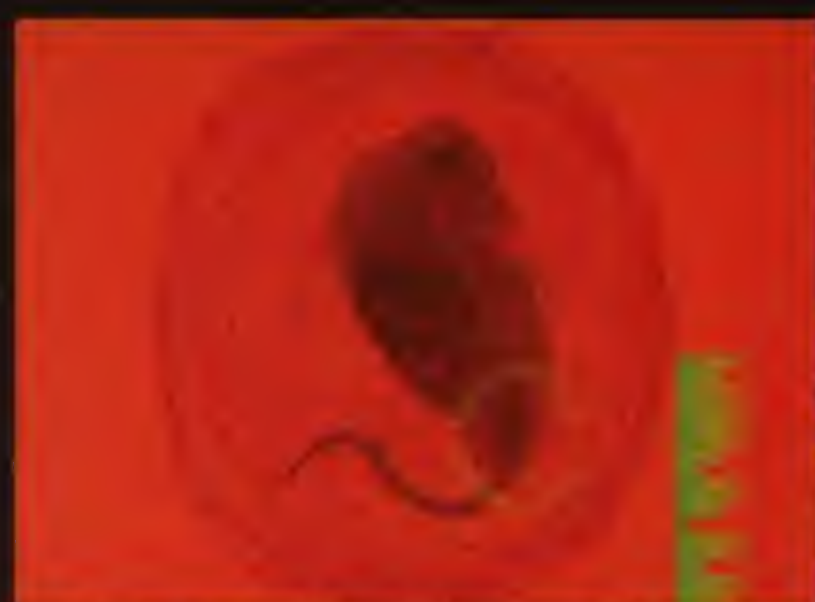
Sky Angel



## Deus' terminal weapons, Angels

Merkava as the means to transport the Deus System, is protected by Angels who can be infinitely produced from living parts. In imagining Merkava to be a human being, this effort is like that of the blood (white blood cells). Protecting the interior of Merkava, they annihilate all outside intruders.

## The process of the living weapon Deus' evolution

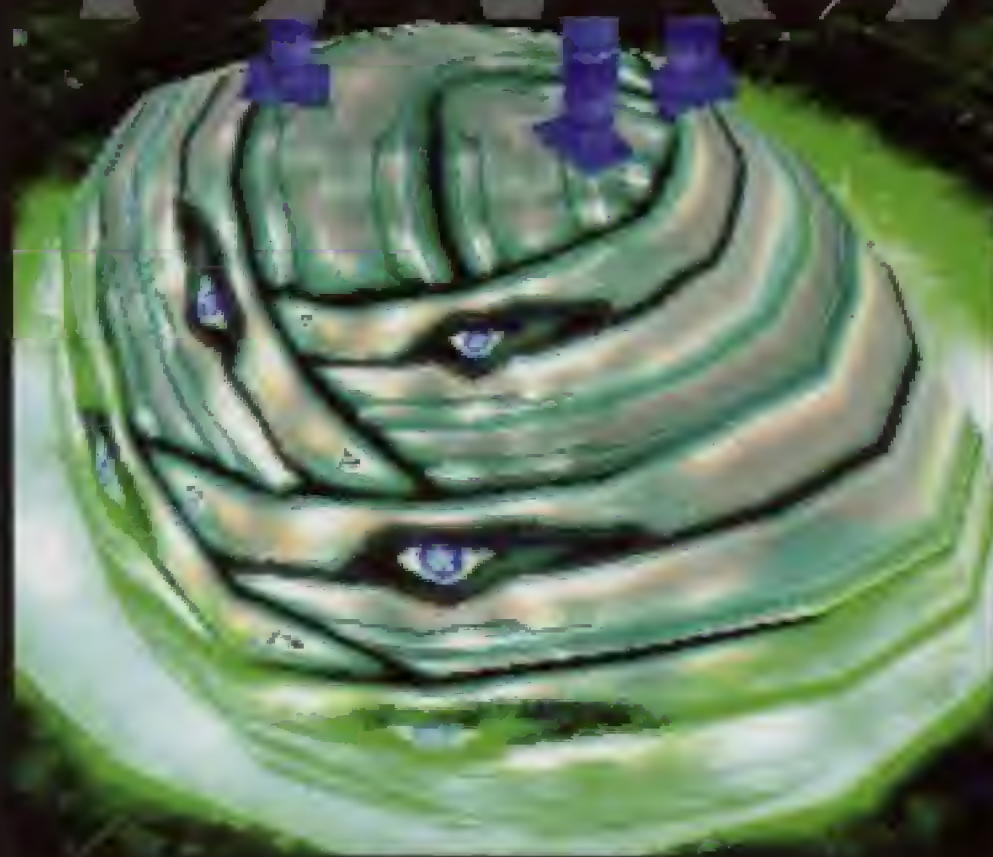


### Embryo · Omega 1

The very beginning, the Deus body which contained the Deus System. When it appeared at the beginning of the game it was preserved in a reactor. Its size is approximately 20 ~ 30 meters. In this state, it was already capable of destroying a planet.

### The 2nd Stage

Deus itself having lost its means of transport after destroying Merkava, evolves to just before its last stage. Its true body is hidden inside a vortex shaped shell.



### The 1st Stage

At the time of the Eldridge's crash, Deus sunk to the ocean floor and this is the body grown after a span of 10, 000 years. By the time the scene occurs in the story in which Fei and the others defeat it, at that time in truth, the part that had become the core had already been transferred to the place where it had grown to Stage 2.



### Terraforming and body growth

In order to grow its body, it begins merging with the planet by terraforming. The evolved grown body of Deus in the interior is its true form.



# The Computer controlling the System •

## Living brain Kadomony

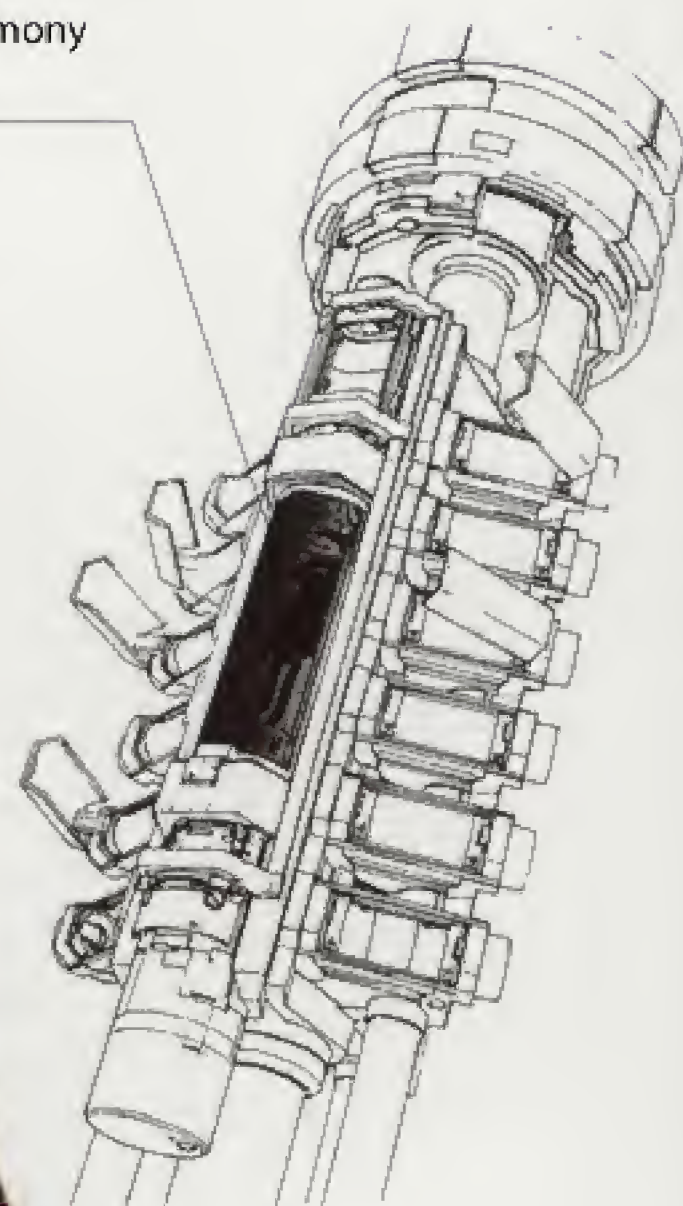
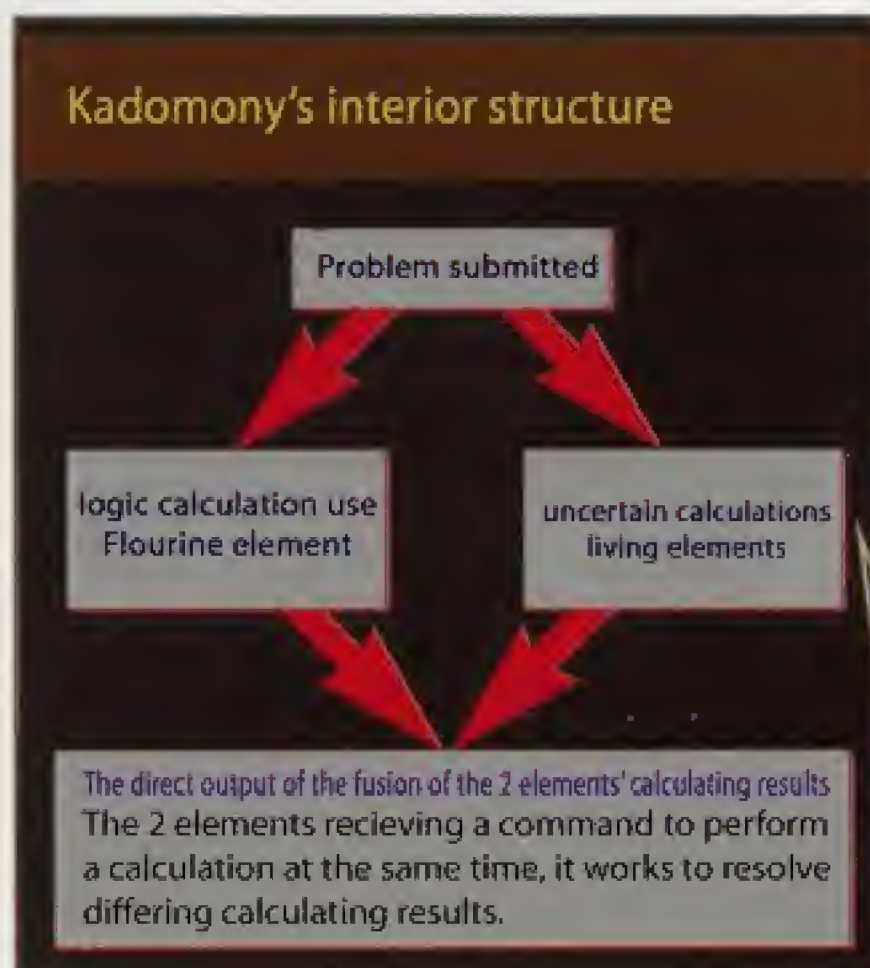
### A living protocol system of instinctive calculation

The living brain Kadomony was developed to manage the entire Deus System. Since it was constructed to be contained within Zohar, it is surmised that it probably has nearly the same substance as Zohar. In terms of its function, it was made with the goal of managing the Deus System. With access to Zohar, its main function was to supply the entire Deus System with active energy. It would play the role of the -Access Gateway- to Zohar which had no will of its own.

The interior elements being divided into two large groups, when a query occurs, at that same time an internal question is submitted, and with the use of the element flourine in internal calculations, it also introduces the power of groups of living elements for uncertain calculations. Their respective determinations are then processed and subsequent agreement is then decided upon.

### Living element -Persona-

In the central portion of Kadomony is a lifeform assembler plant.



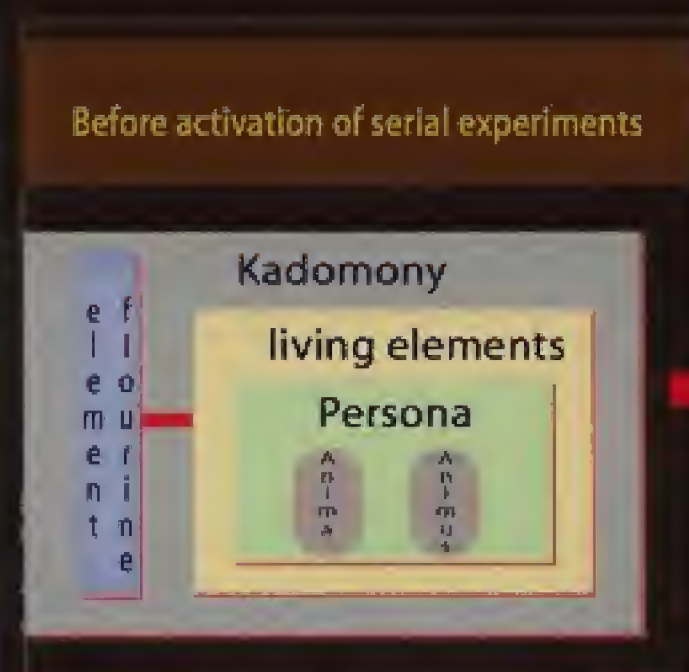
### Concerning the living element Persona

The portion of Kadomony's interior which contains the living elements is sectioned into 3 large parts, those positions being called -Persona-, -Anima-, and -Animus-. In regards to control of the Deus System, the issuing of commands, system objective analysis, weapons control, governance of entire system output, and all submitted queries - all are decided by the living elements (Persona, Anima and Animus) using second stage construction of logic calculating elements. Zohar is controlled by all these with the will of Persona acting independently.

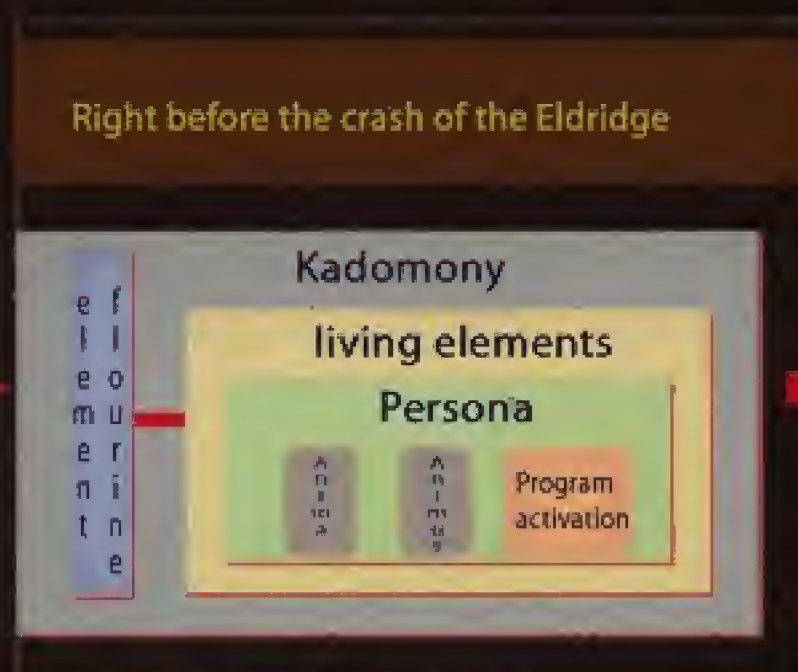
Persona is its name given by the living elements in human form. The name of the basis program that constructs Persona is called -Elehayym-. It is that portion that is said by humans to have 'human character'.

Having achieved a soft landing, Kadomony activates -System Hawwa- from the central element Persona's basis Program -Elehayym-. And due to the activation of -System Hawwa-, the Deus System, (in reality Zohar) starts its plan to rebuild.

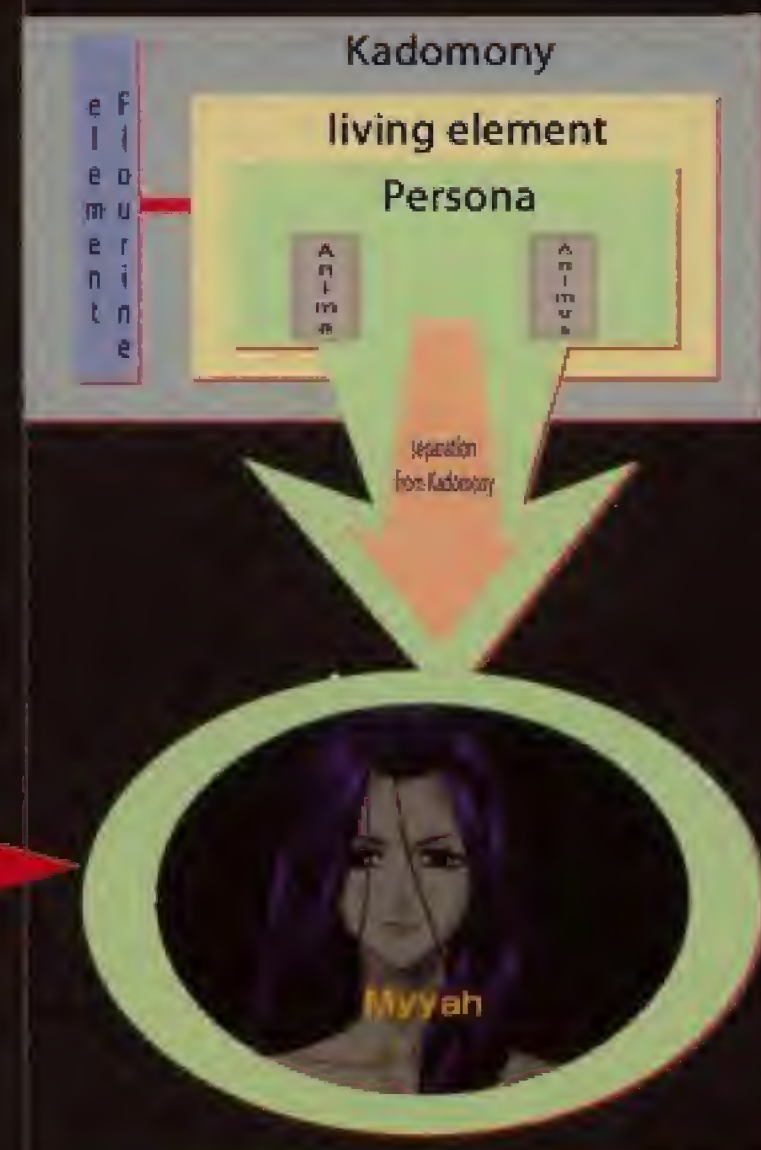
### After the Eldridge's crash



▲ The living element Persona inside Kadomony integrates and manages other living elements.



▲ Kadomony activates basis program -System Hawwa-.



▲ -Myyah- is born from Kadomony's life molecular assembler plant.

### Glossary

#### ■ Omega 1

Because of the out of control accident during merging activation experiments, Deus' body was separated for transfer. Used as the codename for Kadomony's mainframe, the protocol Persona was designated -Alpha 1-

#### ■ Terraform

The changing of a planet (terra) into another (form). During the story, the living weapon Deus transforms itself for this purpose, and begins to merge with the planet. In the process of reforming it, Deus would be able to control the planet as a part of its own body. Having lost Merkava, Deus chooses another means of transport, that is the planet itself.

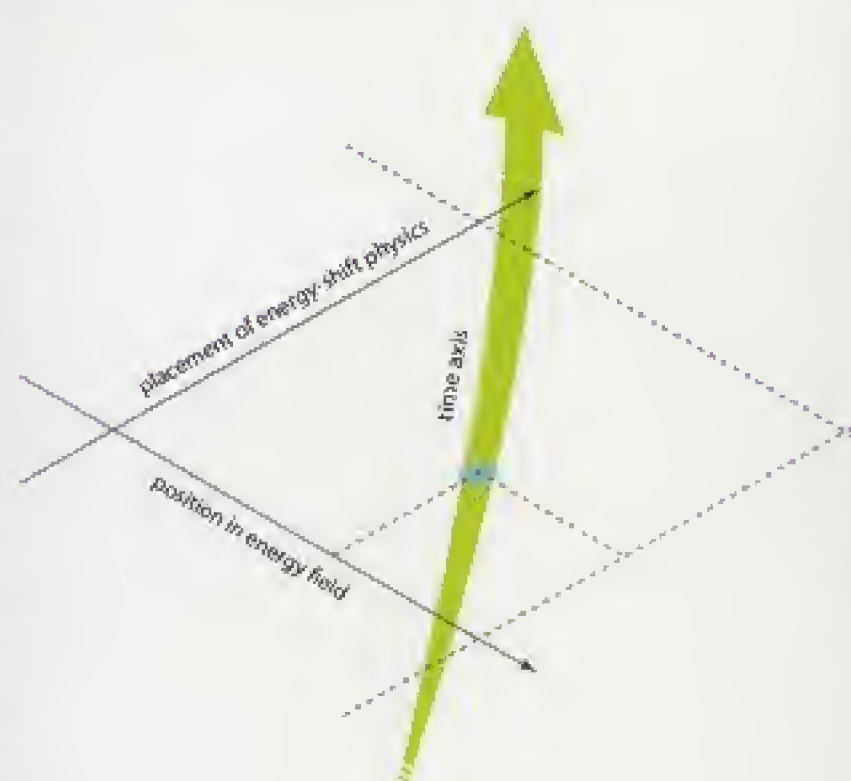
#### ■ Super Interstellar Cruiser Eldridge

Having rights to the enterprise, the super sized ship is built for the sake of the plan for space colonization. The army requisitions it so that the Deus System, which went out of control during merging activation experiments can be separated for transfer. It is built with two separate parts, one a living area for colonists, the other the management section. Able to navigate through all sorts of travel, it is equipped with the artificial intelligence Razel. It only appears in the story during the opening.



# The phenomenon shift machine that manipulates the world    Zohar's power

Chart 1 Bringing phenomena to the surface.



The intersecting line of the time axis and phenomena, the [point] where the two lines cross is the [present].

Chart 2 Probable phenomenon model.



The rising levels of probabilities of phenomena starting at the Big Bang.

## The source of all energy, phenomenon shift theory

At the point of theorized uncertainty principle, that portion proposed by Heisenberg at the unraveling of the interlacing of the atomic structure (cosmic web), is - the S line that is the basis for the design of the unsupplied quasi-infinite engine.

Capturing the innate phenomenon existing as a possibility in the near future, using the primary activator (in this case, those things using Zohar, things or humans) the 'best outcome' is brought to reality from phenomena, and so the energy potential becomes a thing used to advantage. In the case of the (phenomenon) being converted (matter=energy) and (the energy field potential) being realized in the next dimension, there is one proviso in that the ratio of the phenomena existing directly before, for it to be materialize, has one indispensable means of control. On the surface, the axis of time, achieving a uniform plane of smoothness, (if not achieved the control ratio falls below 1) in relation to the phenomena being realized immediately before the curvature of spacetime causes it to rise to the surface at equal points with all those being equal. (In other words, from [reality] at that single point emerges the [future] with all distances being equal between points.)

Here is the previously mentioned proviso, [matter = energy] and [the scope of the energy field] and both are modeled at the instant from which they expand from a starting point in geometric progression. The downward axis represents the flow of time, and due to simple logarithmic theory this cannot be changed because it is not curved at the scale described, and a strong indicator of the realization of a thing occurs. (refer to chart 1)

The point at which a phenomenon is realized is the point of near maximum potential, the realization of a probable thing is brought to that plane. The entirety of that place has all probabilities simultaneously, and as they become inaccessible one by one, that group of increasing probability becomes more resolved and accessible, and in that reality many smaller ones become realized through potential and the ratio of probability. This group has the number 0 starting at the 0 second mark at the instant of the Big Bang. After the Big Bang occurs, this group stabilizes at 1, as the seconds tick by the numbers rise as predicted. And so, to state it plainly, the universe that is seen today according to the laws of physics has many layers spreading out in geometrical procession since the instant of its birth (?) that have not changed, and the multiple folds give rise to more in a process of rebirth as it grows outward. (refer to chart 2)

And so, that phenomenon with the lowest probability is also the least likely to emerge from the probabilities' predicted outcomes (the instance of primary activation that leads to a good phenomenon) and how is this chosen? If choosing to aim for that phenomenon with a low probability of outcome, that is impossible in the present reality. If the main activator selects that probable phenomenon, it changes it in the process. In that case, the Zohar Project contradicts this by selecting the phenomenon with the highest of probabilities, and in so doing reduces the other probabilities to none so that the (best outcome) is the only one left. Fundamentally, the completed Zohar's wish for (matter=energy shift) or again (the energy field) would tie together the shifting time plane at 1 with the established phenomenon plane with the highest probability, and with its manipulation the probability of [the best outcome] would be increased, due to this interference. To make a long story short, in the smallest place pricked by a needle, if one uses insect sized glasses to magnify this you would be able to pierce still further, and in this kind of process, Zohar takes the plane of existing probabilities and using its 'eyeglasses' in this fashion, and realizes the phenomena. (refer to chart 3)

Afterwards, when replacing the [wished] outcome with reality and returning the to the point at which this becomes possible, the resultant effects of entropy both before and behind this manipulation cause energy to be gained. In today's technology, the [energy field]'s axis is all that we have discovered. In drawing out unlimited amounts of energy, well that's not possible yet, and so something besides the main activation of the represented energy potential is needed. And further, in order to interfere with the structure of spacetime with the main activator, the threads extending out from probable phenomenon go into the ultimate reaches of deep space with the chances of their returning very low. However, according to the theory, with the main activator it is possible to use the energy of the entire universe.





## Glossary

### Change in energy potential

The apparent difference in the change of the energy level from just before.

### matter=energy shift placement

Out of all the matter in the universe, how much of it can be changed into energy? The comparative ratio of this.

### Energy positional field

How is Energy (and also matter) distributed throughout the universe? The overall difference.

### Theory of Relativity

A main point of the theory by the physicist Einstein (1879-1955). According to this, no matter how fast they are going, the speed of light from the observer's perspective never changes, and all the laws of physics must obey this, so it is said.

### Big Bang

In 1954, the physicist Gamow put forth the theory of the origin of the universe, saying that it began in a great explosion 15 billion years ago.

### Main activator

In the case of changing circumstances, those who guide it, can reveal the initial cause.

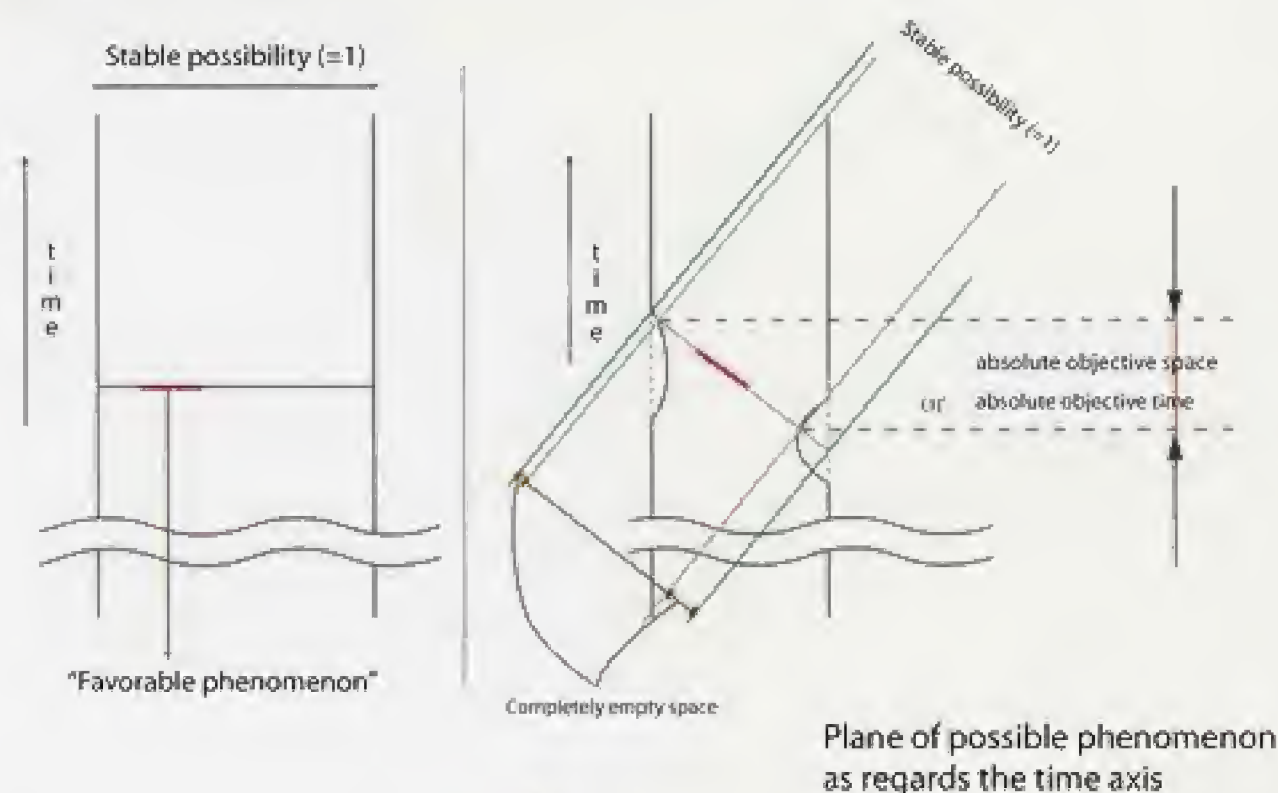
### Entropy

The 2nd Law of Thermodynamics. The Greek word (trope) derives from change. An idea of the famous thermotocist Claudius. Thermototics describe the state of complexity and the main idea is the loss of complex states with the gaining of entropy. The information from this expanded theory is applied here.

### Zohar and the Big Bang

Zohar continues to select from among many different phenomena and how is this applied to the time axis? That time, as the main activator made reality, contains both the beginning and the end of time simultaneously, the ratio at 0 of the possible phenomena is not separate from this universe, but a separate universe is created. The beginning of that universe starts with the Big Bang and the rest is largely a mystery.

Chart 3 As the possible phenomenon plane leans towards the time axis

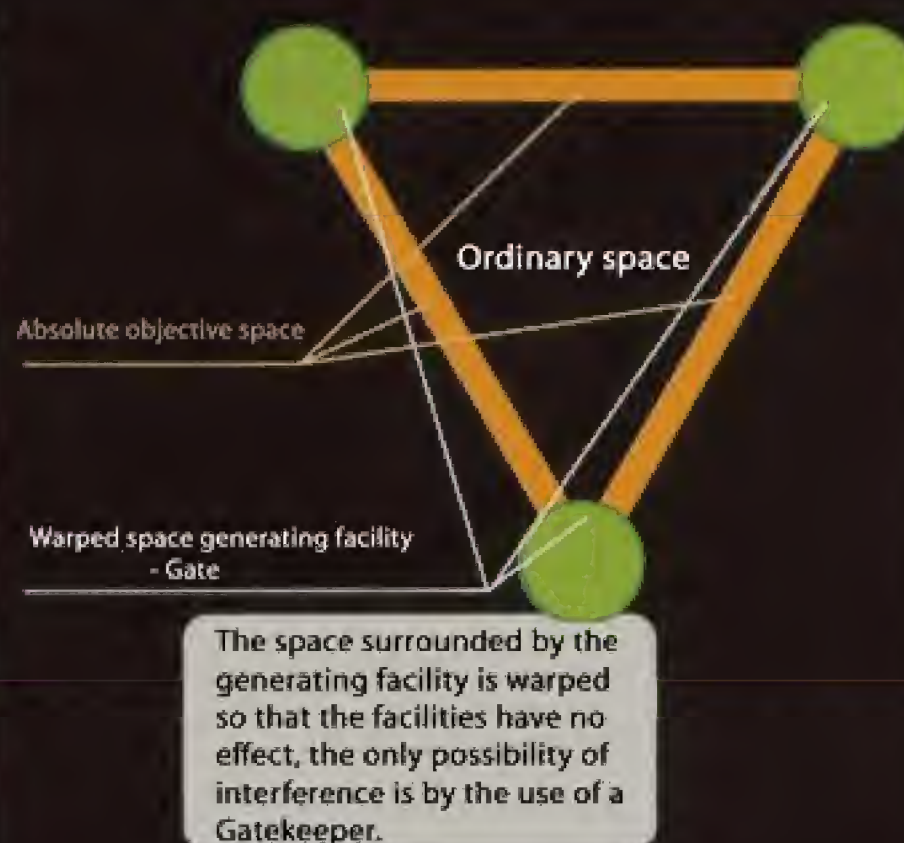


## The use of absolute objective space for a warped space defensive wall - Gate

Due to the interference of Zohar, causing the consolidation of phenomena in an instant of original time, the absolute objective space in which [an instant with temporal volume] is born. (refer to Chart 3)

Ordinarily, many factors in the world of phenomena cause changes within the passage of time, the tangent within absolute objective time has a frozen instant in which this is already decided, and in the case of the four planes of time, only time exists, and it cannot change the world of phenomena.

In building a -space warpage defensive wall-, Solaris hides its territory in a defensive stance, so that -no hostile force may pass- is made that instant in absolute objective space (holding temporal volume) and the pulse shaped continuance [shut (closed) space] is what creates the [Gate], so is called that terminal space that encompasses it.



④ Calculation of phenomena initiated by Zohar



⑤ Manipulates phenomena, goes towards Fei's wished phenomenon



Repeats 5 and 6 and ultimately, -the desired phenomenon- is the only choice



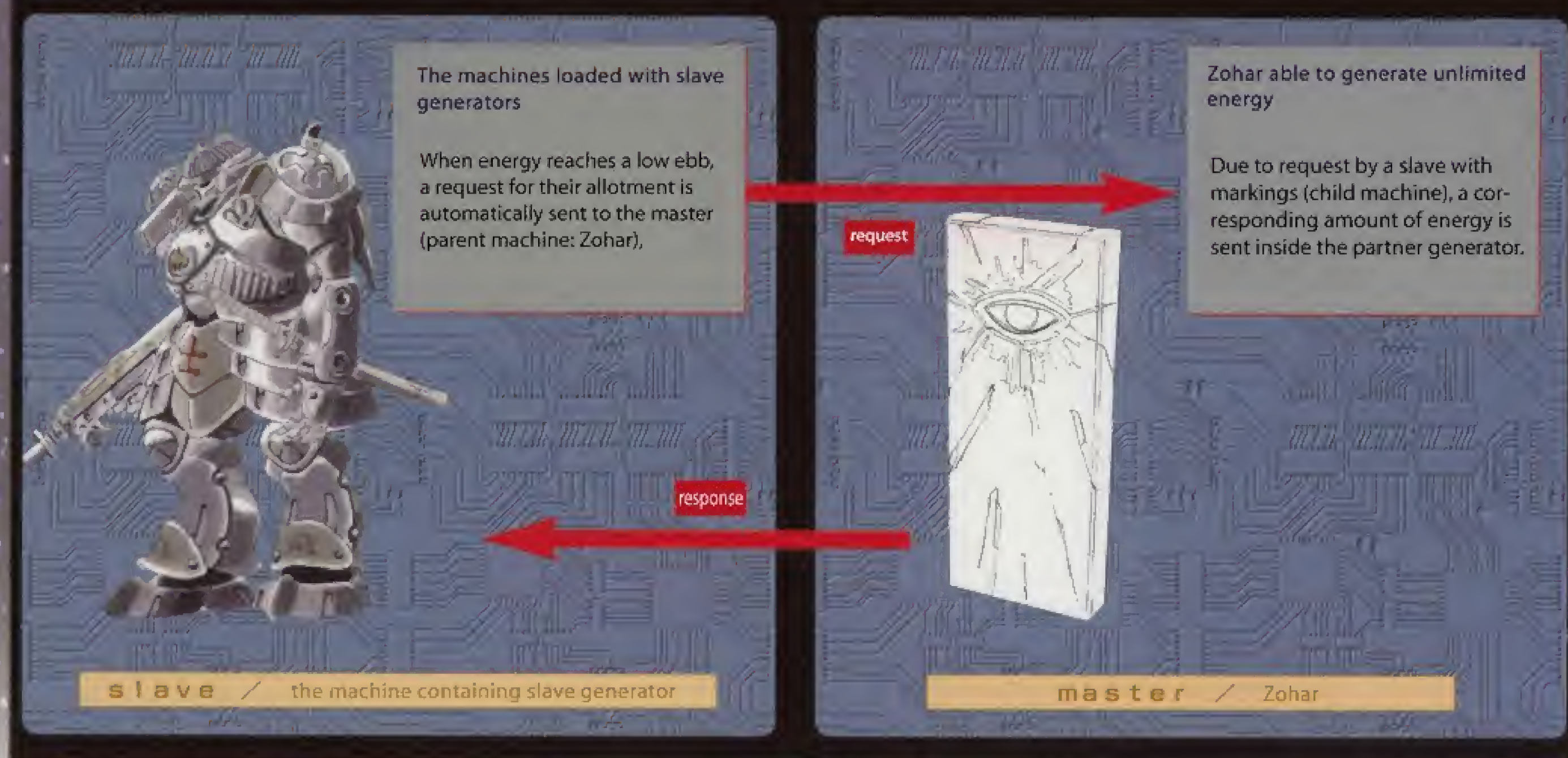
⑦ Fei's delusion becomes reality

and this is -phenomenon phase shift-!



# The engines interacting with Zohar

## The communication between Zohar and slave generators



## The slave generator that [recieves] information

While working, the phenomenon shift engine Zohar makes various kinds of energy.

Those facilities in a position to recieve that active energy are slave generators. Here, Zohar appears as the master (main) to those machines that are slaves (followers).

This mechanism, with a relationship between electric supply source and electric supply storage, has an energy tank deciding the amount of energy to be stored and filled by Zohar. And so, the slave sensing a decrease in energy will access the Master with a request for supply. The Master, recognizing the access of the slave will distribute energy to it. And so, energy is supplied.

Most important is the determination of the amount of energy. Every slave is given special markings, and through this, the Master knows the amount to supply. Of course, overload (over supply) cannot occur.

And so, those slave generators that activate machines (Gears, and others) cannot take on more than their energy potential. In the establishing of the markings at the beginning, the highest limit of each machine was determined. Instead, within the framework of their capacity, they could be supplied to the half-way mark almost indefinitely.

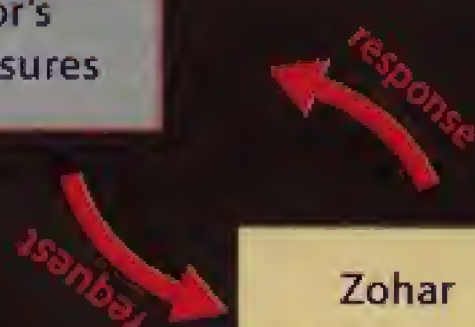
## changing the level of response in slave generators [Anima Relics]

As one of the living elements of Kadomony which controls Zohar, a simplified focus for anima is the Anima Relic. Due to its fusion with those Animus (human beings) separated from Kadomony's self resurrection program, it plays a vital role in providing the core of Zohar's mobile terminals.

Those suitable human beings who can attain fusion, are of course able to gain access rights to strong power. And so, the capacity of the slave generator is enlarged, and the Gear's abilities expanded as a result.

### normal Gear (Standard Gear)

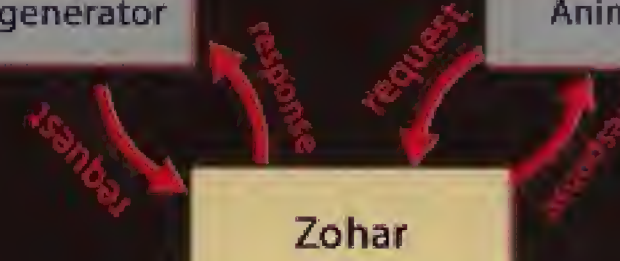
slave generator's intervening measures



### Anima Relic + Gear (Omnigear)

Intervention method 1  
slave generator

Intervention method 2  
Anima Relic



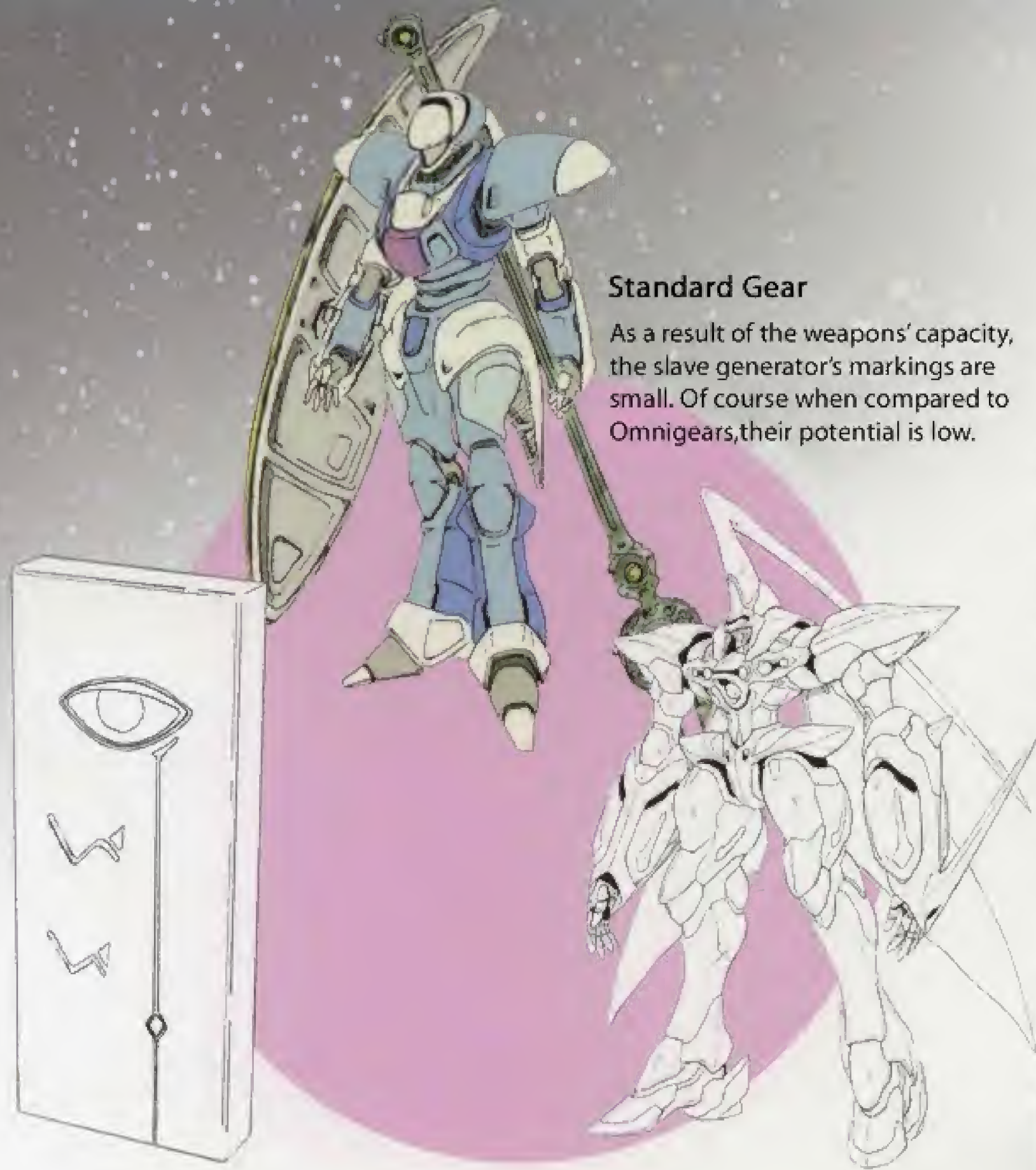
### ■ Marking

A 'dip-switch' determines the slave generator's ability. Established at the base of this position, it emits the power decided by Zohar. The markings cannot be changed by the hand of humans. In the story, only Grahf was able to change the markings, and it is unknown if this raised the ability of that Gear.

### ■ Ether

In 1678 the physicist Huygens postulated the existence of waves of light, in 1905 Einstein posed the theory of relativity, however the existence of ether is still open to debate and remains tentative. Also, in biology it is referred to as Aethyl Ether. The name of R-O-R, a fusion of 2 components acid and oxygen. . . . Not to say there is any connection, but in the world of the game, it is typical of magic or spiritual powers in RPG's.





### Standard Gear

As a result of the weapons' capacity, the slave generator's markings are small. Of course when compared to Omnigears, their potential is low.

### Anima Relic

The Anima Relics have another name [pseudo Zohar]. Before being loaded onto the ship, Persona provided the basis for the unstable Zohar as a living element. Animus has a separate goal from Anima, but whichever, both are created primarily as elements to control weapons, and originally Anima was not able to emulate Zohar. However, among the succeeding generations of human beings (Animus), those with that ability began to appear.

### Omnigear

Anima and Animus (human beings) are both building parts of Kadomony as able to act as the core of Deus as near-defensive terminals. Of course, contained battle power of Pseudo-Zohar Anima and the Animus (humans) is much higher compared to that of ordinary Gears.

### The realization of energy [Ether]

Similar to the relationship between Zohar and the slave generators, there are particular characters who have the ability to use Ether. It is different from the energy fed into the slave generators, those with Ether ability are in direct communication with Zohar, and even more refined requests are possible.

A strictly kept secret, is that the energy emitted during phenomenon shift is the same as that of those with Ether who use their access to create energy. Those with Ether ability that access Zohar, use its phenomenon shift ability to draw out possibilities they choose.

Also, for those machines unable to exceed their potential, in the case of the Ether users, depending on the situation, they can have unlimited power. During the appearance of Id, Fei and Grahf as humans are able to topple Gears with their bare hands, and this is the source of that menacing power.

Among those human beings born from Kadomony's protocol Persona, (Animus) are those with the innate ability to use Ether. However in truth those who can use that power are very few.



▲ Among living things, if humans access Zohar, they get incredible power.





# The power to resist Deus · Nanotechnology

The microscopic world of nanotechnology  
at 1 billionth of a meter

Above and beyond the use of technology of micromachines, it is also theorized that micro sized robots could be created. And these acting as humans' "magic hand" so to speak, these devices could be made at only half the size of the other. Afterwards, having gone to the same distance again, it would be possible to realize and construct a device that could be handled at this small size. The beginning of the construction of robots at the smallest level could begin. The advantage of robots is that it would be possible to program and establish their actions. Also, the theory extends even further. In the practical use for living things, the robots would be developed as proteins so that no matter how many layers, they would congregate into groups automatically, and function as one unit.

In the year 1976, MIT student K. Erich Drexler proposed the greater part of the idea of nanotechnology. For example, in regards to the use of nanomachines in the body, they would work only in the case of invasion by illness, and be programmed to eradicate the pathogen. Also, when the nanomachine's role was completed, it would dissolve itself, and it would be possible to program them to be excreted from the body. In pursuing these kinds of thoughts, it is also very apparent that they could be used for regeneration. People might have these life like machines living in colonies throughout their bodies.

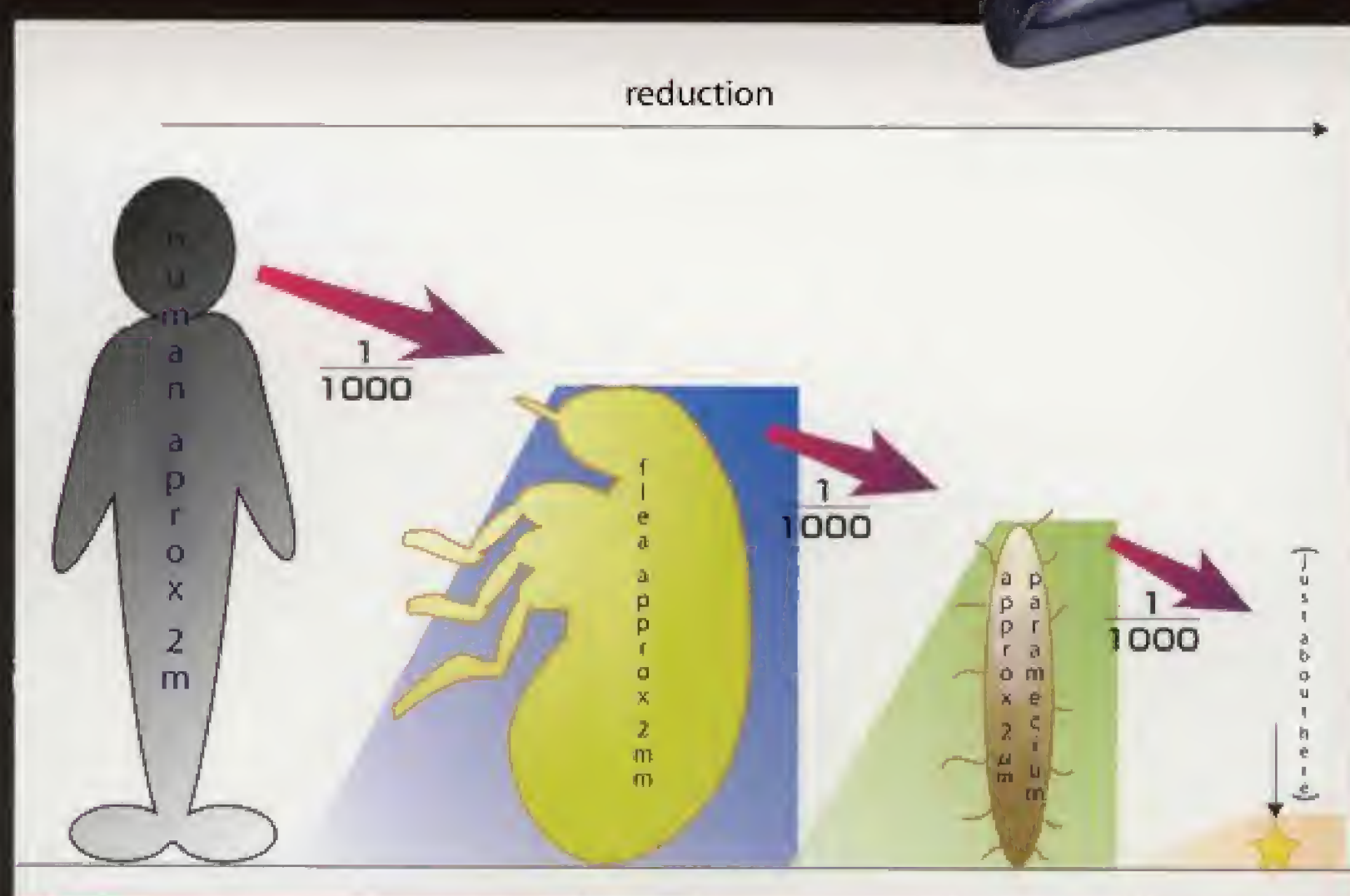
Working within the world of 1 billionth of a meter, (nano), [they] could re assemble molecules as an all powerful creative god. The nanotechnology that has the possibility of clearing these fundamental issues and other questions is an ultra advanced technology.

## Weltall the 2nd

Weltall's hidden abilities are set free by nanotechnology. The special mode of System Id (upsurge in Gear ability) is able to be triggered at will



## What size is a nano-meter?





## Glossary

~ science · and others ~

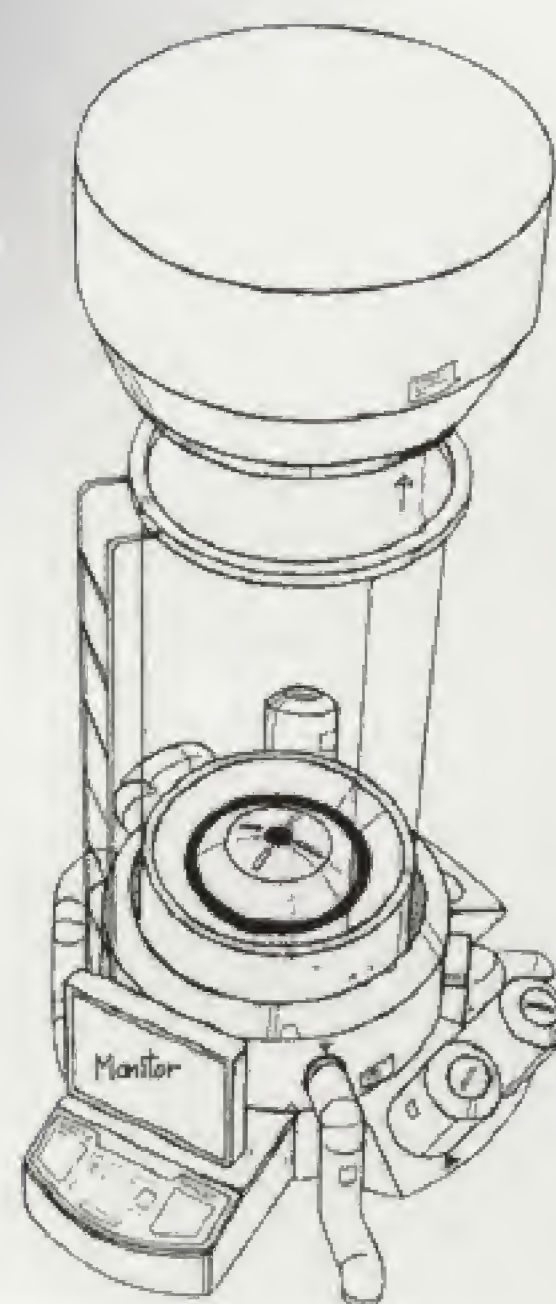
### ■ The path of Sephirot

The phenomenon shift engine Zohar, in the process of selecting phenomena from the plane at the 0 point -that instant at the equal point of the time axis, another universe is created. And this space is at a higher dimension from the present universe (void space), and this is the link between the two.

At this point, the borderline between this universe and the higher dimension is the Contact point, also called the Path of Sephirot. The point at which contact leads to god's territory, the main image those humans see it is transcribed into an image of water (for example: the scene of Fei's contact with the Wave Existence.) and there are many instances of this.

### ■ Soyent System

Used for the creation of organic parts for the living weapon Deus in order for it to regenerate. For this reason, those suitable humans were broken down and recycled again as machines. These included those materials used in the construction of Merkava, the vessel Angels and such, they were also used as parts of weapons controlled by Deus.



### Nanoreactor

A life assembler plant made with the goal of restoring the human body at the molecular level.

### The nano-assembler and the nano-disassembler

Due to the nanomachines circulating within the living weapon Deus, it is equipped with self regenerating capabilities. For this reason, no matter the attack in ordinary battle it can heal itself of damage in an instant. The nano-machines responsible for self-restoration, or rather the nano-assemblers, have the ability to create new molecules to replace the originals. In the process of restoring the particles in the damaged portion to their original condition, up to the point the damaged part's molecules are actually lost, it is possible to completely restore it. Supposing the nano assembler can replace even the lost molecules by creating new ones with another nano assembler reconstructing other particles into those needed and thus performing the restoration.

And so, the only thing capable of resisting this are nano-disassemblers. These are part of the plan to deal with the danger of nanomachines going out of control. In contrast to the assemblers that can make substances, dis-assemblers are made with the sole function of the destruction of assemblers. According to theory, dis-assemblers can destroy all assemblers.

Even in the story, in regards to the nano-assemblers in Deus' body, due to the introduction of the dis-assemblers, the self restoration became ineffective. Afterwards, it was possible to deal it normal damage.



### Emeralda

The girl born out of nanotechnology. Her entire body being constructed of nanomachines (molecular machines), she is a living form that can transform her body at will (shaping).

### Study The danger of nanotechnology

Human beings are given their human form by way of information transmitted from DNA. DNA and nucleic acid are in organisms as living information and point to the heredity of memory. At the center of every cell, at the time of its splitting, it inherits the system of replication. The structure of living things' heredity is deoxyribose sugars, amino acids and salts which make up the nucleotide chain (DNA) and due to the alignment of these salts, the genetic information is determined.

And so, if a nanomachine operates at the atomic level, of course, it's not necessarily able to manipulate the construction of the DNA. Has no one noticed the

terrifying possibilities that lie stored here?

In the story, like the scientist Kim in the Zeboim culture's era, with the attempt to supplement and make whole the individual cells of human beings, using nanotechnology to emulate this, it was probably for this reason that the first corporate functioning imitation living body (Emeralda) was created.

However, supposing that the government was able to use it, what if the brain was unable to think of rebellion, the body losing its power in resistance - restructuring humans with genetic information to this effect... what then?

In re forming of flesh with DNA manipulation using nanomachines (this also having changed nature due to heredity) this is the Program [Limiter] put in place by Solaris on the surface dwellers in the story so as to control their thoughts by changing the composition of the brain's interior. In its complete form it inspires absolute loyalty in its slaves. They are dolls manipulated for the purpose of achieving the goals of Solaris. As individuals they have no awareness of this. Now, the followers of the beginning's founder Cain have something different. If the Limiter is a thing bestowed that is artificial, that in regards to Cain (Ministry) is thought to be more instinctive, or even deeply hidden spiritual shackles.



The killing giants who land on the surface of never ending warfare, the compiling of established materials concerning "Gears"

Having once lost their advanced science, when humans developed it again ironically they used it for weapons. The birth of the metal human shaped weapons - Gears were equipped with the highest attack power, defense and mobility. The Gears that appear in [Xenogears], at first glance don't seem to be weapons, they each have many different shapes and forms. Here, find out the depths of their fascination in terms of design, the episodes and established materials.

Also, those official illustrations that appear are main designs by Ishigaki-san accompanied by comments. Enjoy the great experience along with the storyteller's voice and the illustrator's images





## Gear Spec conversion

### Unit

1 sharl + 0.97 meters

1 sool = 33.3 centimeters

1 khan = 1.08 tons

1 tsitol = 62 seconds

1 repsol = 0.97 kilometers/hr

1 oolia = 0.97 meters/second

### Value index

(all referred to are mainly Aveh military Gears [Aveh 01] )

sub generator output = 100

main generator designation number = 1

Frame rigidity = 100

level of machine reaction = 3.0

Ether response rate = 1

※ [The main generator number] is followed by sub generator power 100, no matter how much power is pulled from the main generator.

## Weltall transformation rough draft

Here is one of the many rough drafts of the transformation pattern. In the case of the established rough of Weltall, the back unit turns into a wing shape after the transformation, and the in the 3rd rough it was thought to try out the idea using the 4 arms. It is interesting to follow the change in design.



# WELTALL

Weltall

## Body analysis

The standard Gear that is the foundation of the Omnigear [Original Weltall (from now on referred to as O.R. Weltall)] that was formed by the fusion of the Gear Lacan piloted and the Anima Relic -Naphtali-, used by exclusively by Fei (Id) and behind the deeply hidden secret of Grahf's emergence. Due to this, the main body provides the base form for O.R. W, and for this reason, parts of the exterior greatly resemble O.R. W. Also, the main slave generator is a pure replica of the one loaded into O.R. W, and even with the difference in the building materials themselves, the output levels are almost equal to the Original.

Speaking of this, altogether it is different from O.R. W, and just about all the parts making up Weltall are just like those used in other Standard Gears, but in times of highest output of power, it will spend down to its body and on the surface it appears to have no material weakness. In truth, in very small portions only, when the output is at its highest, abrasive loss has some effect on active construction, not extending to the resilience of the mainframe, it extends to the exterior (the next cover).

Due to piloting by Fei (Id), the highest limit of that power brandished by the fated Weltall, this becomes a deadly question. Suddenly, going into the larger newer structure, at the machine's fundamental nature, the exoskeleton becomes able to change, according to design, a Limiter is placed to equalize the output during peaceful times so as to lengthen the time it can function. Due to this, when Weltall reaches a moment of crisis it can determine to emerge.

Afterwards, Weltall was loaned temporarily to Kislev. In the northern province at a military base it was examined and provided the design basis as a test bed for new Kislev Gears,

## SPEC DATA

Pilot	Fei
Height	16.3 Sharls
dry weight	17.8 kahns
Equipped weight	22.7 kahns
sub-generator output	400
Mn. Generator coefficient	4.2
Operation time	480 tsitol
Frame durability	260
reactive level	0.8
Ether response	43.5
Ground speed	260 repsols
Flight speed	970 repsols

Equipped weapon ———  
interior chain gun x1



## Supplemental explanation

### The 11th emerging base of Kislev

Feeling threatened by the difference in technology between his country's weapons and those of Aveh (Gebler), Sigmund established top secret plans to build weapons as the axis for the governing of the next generation behind the scenes. Using Weltall as a test bed, which had been brought in by the Executioner, the plans for building the next generation Gear was started. The central pivot of these plans was the position in the north of the 11th base. And here, not only was Weltall brought in for experiments as the first in the development of the next generation of Gears but Super Battle Plane Goliath was constructed here as well.



# WELTALL-ID

Id



**BACK  
MODEL**



**SIDE  
MODEL**



## SPEC DATA

Pilot	Id
Height	19.4 Sharls
dry weight	17.8 kahns
Equipped weight	22.7 kahns
sub-generator output	400 (if using this is unknown)
Mn. Generator coefficient	tsitol
	18.0 or more (surmised)
Operation time	unknown
Frame durability	260
reactive level	0.3 or more (surmised)
Ether response	unknown
Ground speed	immeasurable
Flight speed	immeasurable
Equipped weapon	unknown

## Body analysis

Weltall's state for the sake of wielding the maximum output of its generator's power. Its other name is Id Mode.

As a replica of O.R. W., Weltall was constructed by Grahf and with the original ability to wield the incredible generator power of O.R. W. nearly equally, its body hardness has very few weaknesses and the various problems raised by that are addressed further.

To differentiate, the great abrasive loss during the highest output at the time of Gear battle, the frame itself becomes subject to loss by attrition, and after the battle disappears to parts unknown as it goes dormant. In discovering a great mistake in the plan during battle, it immediately alters those plans, creating a new one. Also reconstructing its very materials, it aims towards increasing its body's durability.

The corresponding frame becomes the secondary body, and the simple -monocok-shell reforms it creating a strong protective barrier. And up to this point, what had been used as the secondary shell becomes the exterior, trading function as a frame with mobile construction, finally functioning as the exoskeleton. According to this new plan, the time of the switch in exteriors accordingly results in part of it being sacrificed, and during the trade, Weltall has for the time both interior frame and exoskeleton jointly, and at the point of highest output has the exterior hardened considerably during battle.

As it re forms itself, the question of the machine's durability is resolved at once, and now there is

a new deeper problem, that of generator output rising to such a degree that cooling becomes the issue. As stated before, the slave generator loaded onto Weltall was a replica, and it is not too much to say that it is the same as O.R. W., and so the emitted heat is not comparable to that emitted by Standard Gears, and if improperly handled could result in the complete dissolving of the machine.

At the time of self recovery, the measure of its output is more than 99%, and different from O.R. W. which can recycle energy, for Weltall is constructed of standard parts, and the cooling is a problem. And along with a standard radiator, a new magnetic refrigeration system is loaded in. Space is created by the unit functioning below the framework to cool the emitted energy that reaches the secondary framework. It is a system that cools the machine rapidly. Specifically, it separates the heat into about 3 currents, and applies the magnetic wave, redirecting it to the radiator thus cooled along the way. The remaining heat is stored in a -condenser- according to the new design, and can be reused to activate the machine.

Also, the magnetism released by the cooling

system causes a wave interference called a -wave specter- that invades the other wave's area, the machine reaches red heat afterimage and that image is projected around it.

Weltall having made use of the designed durability and put it into use, cannot reach maximum output without causing itself to destabilize, and with the goal of minimizing the differences in potential and actual output, it moves the exterior frame into a new position, and the machine re forms itself. Only at this point can it use the -monocok- exterior according to its design.

For convenience, most of the time it is in -Normal Mode-. The point of maximum output is called -Id Mode-.

Now, as supplement, at the time of Id Mode's activation, the pilot must submit the special markings (Zohar's reference point) to activate the master generator, and Id is the key to its activation. This is why the mode changes to this when the character has transformed into Id.



# WELTALL-2

Weltall the 2nd

## Body Analysis

Weltall the Second, resurrected by Taura Melchior and Isaac Balthasar from the heavily damaged body of Weltall that was recovered.

In restoring the body it should have simply been returned to its former state by Melchior's nanomachines. However, due to the impact from its crash, one part of the slave generator's function was altered, and Balthasar taking note of the huge leftover output, analyzed the black box for speeding up the system output. As a result, the slave generator could judge when it was time to go to the output for Id Mode. Also, the generator continuing this activity, emitting a particular magnetic wave frequency, would achieve a similar form to that observed in Id during the destruction of Solaris. From the beginning having noticed the stage of the slave generator's alignment with the master Zohar, he determined that the emergence of the pilot's markers coincided with that of the slave generator and created one part of a bypass wave. Investigating the function of the slave generator, he could change its overall function with a possible system.

However, he had to take into account the effect of Fei's spiritual level and its effect on this. The bypass wave had markings almost identical to the markings of those at Id's emergence, and thus could emulate the turning of Fei into Id. And for this, a Limiter was placed in Fei and the machine to control this. At certain times, the bypass wave would be overcome, resulting in overload. The very strong Id Mode would take over the frame and when this had run its course, once again normal mode would return. Nanomachines were placed in Fei's body and mind for the suppression of this.

With this in place, Weltall was evolved into a Gear who had as one part of its function the Id power, normally it was at peace along with Fei. This was said to be a great asset.

And mostly, Weltall 2nd's Id Mode was only a temporary thing, and compared to the original Id Mode's fighting power was not inferior in any one point. And so, having output potential even greater than normal Omnigears, with the effect of Fei's own body as the Contact, might it not be even greater?

Now, the question of controlling the body of the machine, in understanding the outer framework in default mode at the time of Id Mode, its properties were changed into a new type with the data collected from Andvari as its base with the use of nanomachines. Because of this, its body has a massive silhouette.



## SPEC DATA

Pilot	Fei
Height	19.4 Sharls
dry weight	18.7 kahns
Equipped weight	23.2 kahns
sub-generator output	560
Mn. Generator coefficient	5.1(12.8)
Operation time	710 (9.7) tsitol
Frame durability	370
reactive level	0.9(0.52)
Ether response	89
Ground speed	416 repsols
Flight speed	1310 repsols
Equipped weapon	Interior Chain gun × 3
※ hidden interior System Id	
Activation time	

## Supplemental explanation

### System Id

Governed by a management system built into Fei's wristband, designates the governing system of output loaded into Weltall the 2nd. Using nanotechnology, along with spiritual impetus from within Fei's own mind, it can be controlled and switch with the normal mode in this fashion. However control isn't complete, the emergence of Id sacrifices Fei's own strength.

In order to switch personalities and release the output of the generator, Weltall 2nd is provided with a governing system that functions at the same time.



# VIERGE

Vierge

**SIDE  
MODEL**

**BACK  
MODEL**

## SPEC DATA

Pilot ——— Elly  
Height ——— 15.7 Sharls  
dry weight ——— 10.2 kahns  
Equipped weight ——— 14.7 kahns  
sub-generator output ——— 410  
Mn. Generator coefficient ——— 3.4 (6.0)  
Operation time ——— 600 tsitol  
Frame durability ——— 220  
reactive level ——— 1.0 (0.73)  
Ether response ——— 60 (135)  
Ground speed ——— 280 repsols  
Flight speed ——— 850 repsols

Equipped weapon ———  
Interior Vulcan X 2  
Wireless pathway Aerods x 12  
Battle use Rod X 1  
※ unclear at time of Limiter's release

## Body Analysis

During a trial experiment of the attacking device for the equipped weapon for the next generation Gear of Gebler, (small type Aerod System), the Gear Vierge was developed as an experimental new type.

Vierge was created for the purpose of collected [A type] data and was a variation of the A2 form, [B-type] of Gears that already existed. The machine piloted by Elly was similar to the A2 type on the interior, and very much like that provided to the Bishops for battle. Also, with attack use Aerods equipped in both shoulder units, it was similar to the C1 type machines, and these were provided during the story by Miang.

The A2 type system in Vierge, was similar in experiments to the A1 type, and at its maximum output could use 12 devices simultaneously.

In the A1 type system, it needed Ether at the time of activation, and for those without the necessary ability attempting to use it, the risk of severe backlash causing brain damage was very high Afterwards, the B type produced

had lower requirements for Ether use, and thus was only equipped with 6 units at roughly half the power.

The actual devices of the attacking Aerod System, are at their head points composed of magnetic fields, and are projected at the enemy in individual packets of energy. They are called a packet type weapon. Inside the body of the device, a beam is formed and enables the condenser to shoot it outwards, and it could be said to be the larger part of the device. The formerly small type devices installed in Vierge is more than four times more powerful, (added heft to the operation). The reduced size condensers, due to Guardian Angel Hyuga Ricdeau, have about 1.5 times as much stored energy. Making the Aerod System smaller does not result in merely making Gears stronger, but have proven to be useful for many other battle devices.

Now, the basis of the Aerod technology itself is the Eldridge's civilization.

## Supplemental explanation

### Aerod System

The name of the attacking device whose action causes a flying response to those with manipulating Ether ability. Its capability to attack from all directions makes it nearly impossible to avoid, and can be used as an Ether attack. In one attack it uses an immense measure of Ether power. Because of this, the pilot must have extraordinary Ether ability compared to other pilots, and must be able to control that power. In the case of an unequal match of the pilot with the System, it is equipped with a quelling function that cannot be overridden by the attacking devices.



# HEIMDAL

Heimdal

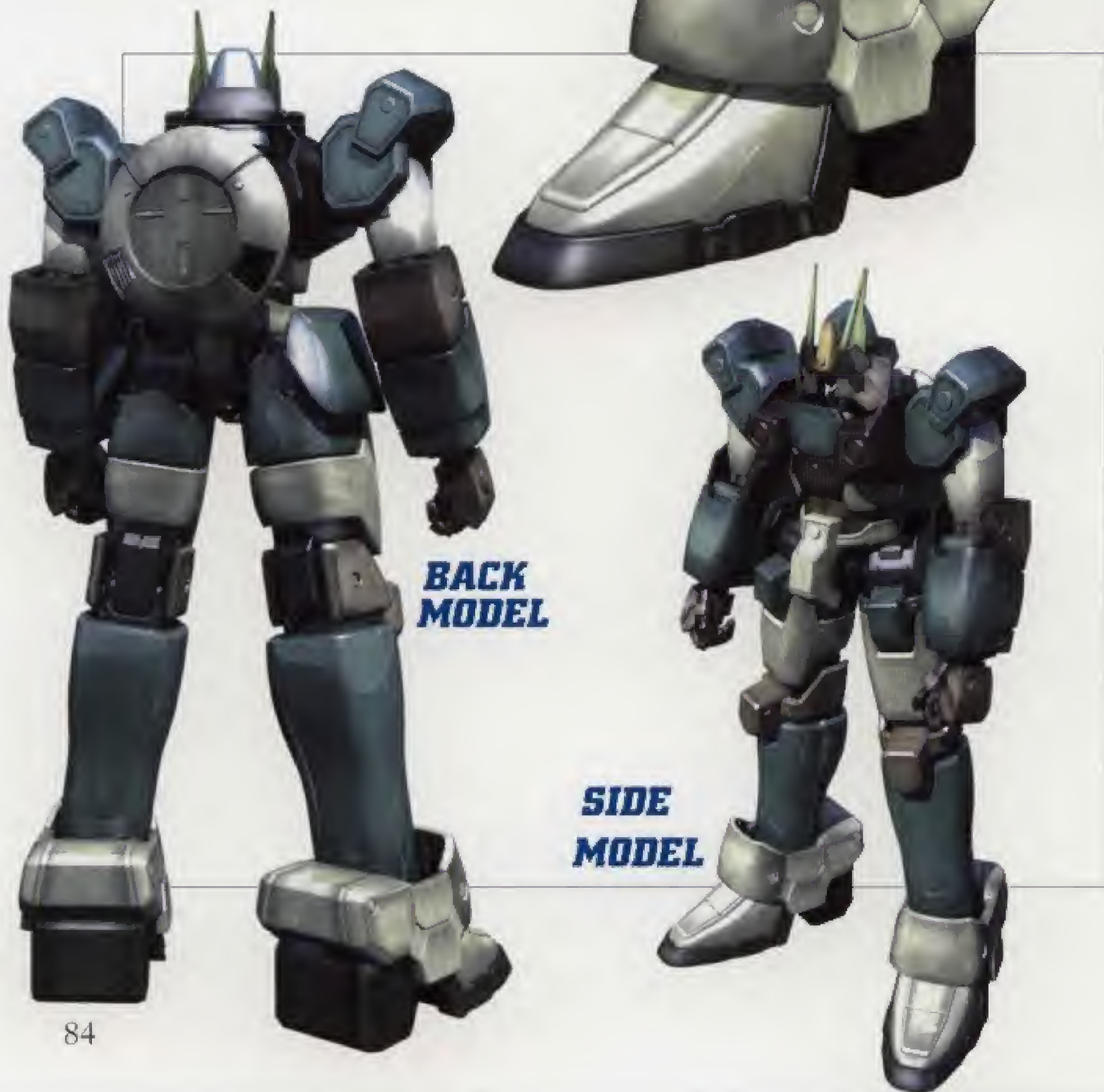
### Body Analysis

Designed and constructed during the Great War 500 years ago - a custom made every day use Gear. Excavated at the same time as Brigandier, being separated into 8 base parts, thought to be originally the same type machine, at that time it became clear that the exterior frame and the avionics were of an entirely different sort. Especially regarding the avionics with the use of the primary close fighting Gear Brigandier for reference, it was planned to strengthen the ray weapons and sensors. From this point on, it was judged to use Heimdal for distance battle against the leaders of enemy groups. However, because of renovations by the Yggdrasil staff, the output was maxed and an extreme reaction setting was put in place, and a new radical machine was made that no ordinary person could handle. With the ability to have close range and far range battles, it had to wait for the appearance of Citan for a lively enough pilot.

Like Brigandier, Heimdal's body has the ability for plenty of output, and due to its settings it is an all purpose Gear for use in many battle situations.

### SPEC DATA

Pilot	Citan
Height	16.9 sharls
dry weight	14.0 kahns
Equipped weight	18.1 kahns
sub-generator output	390
Mn. Generator coefficient	4.6
Operation time	500 tsitol
Frame durability	230
reactive level	0.94
Ether response	38.4
Ground speed	250 repsol
Flight speed	775 repsol
Equipped weapon	Interior equipped Valcan X 2



### Supplemental explanation

#### The basis of the Standard Gear

A military use Gear with many units for this purpose, it is created to function to repair and extend itself. The slave generator and the system of output determine this function. With the frame unit holding together all of the various working components of mobility and weapons, the Gear is an excellent machine. Provided with weapons and defense mechanisms, it is possible to adjust its reaction to a suitable pilot.



# BRIGANDIER

Brigandier

## Body Analysis

The basis for the Gear excavated from the Aveh desert, customized for the young master, Prince Bart and the result of much blood, sweat and tears by the Yggdrasil's Group Leader. The exterior design is based upon the [Giant wrapped in flames that made a blood compact with the King] that was the legend handed down through the Fatima dynasty in the scrolls.

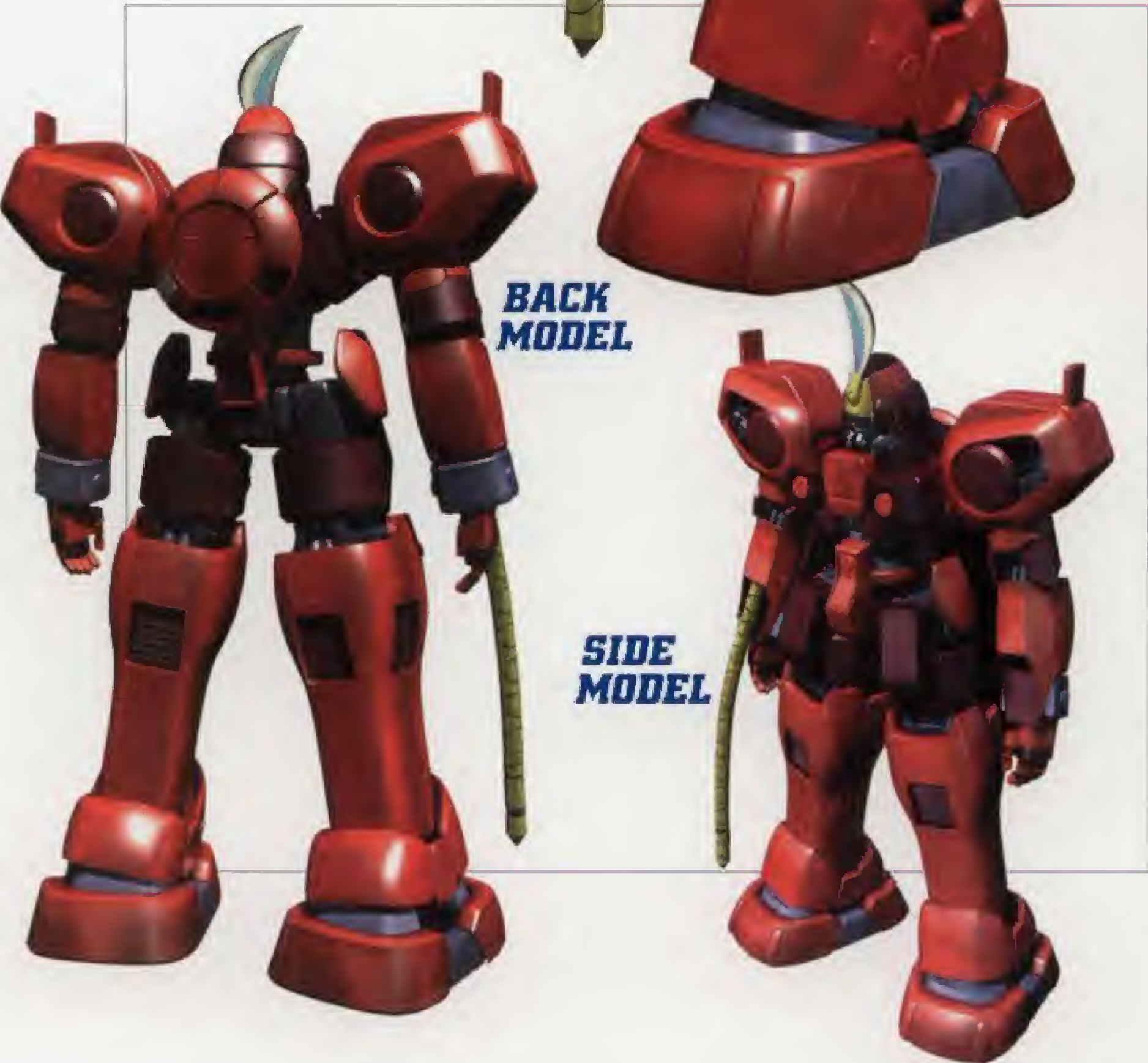
A different variation from Heimdal, Brigandier is equipped for close skirmishes, and its main weapon is the rod, and so the arms are strengthened with the aim of increasing the rod's energy damage through the shoulders. The main generator along with the condenser are both re structured by the Yggdrasil's staff for much greater function.

Because Brigandier's main battleground is in the desert, it is equipped with hover thrusters, in order to prevent it from sinking into the sand and this enables it to achieve great speeds while hovering. Also sealed in all cracks against infiltration by sand, it is protected from abrasion damage.

## SPEC DATA

Pilot	Bart
Height	17.0 sharls
dry weight	13.9 kahns
Equipped weight	18.6 kahns
sub-generator output	370
Mn. Generator coefficient	4.1
Operation time	410 tsitol
Frame durability	270
reactive level	1.1
Ether response	40.4
Ground speed	350 repsol
Flight speed	792 repsol

Equipped weapon  
Interior equipped chain gun X 2  
Huit rod X 2



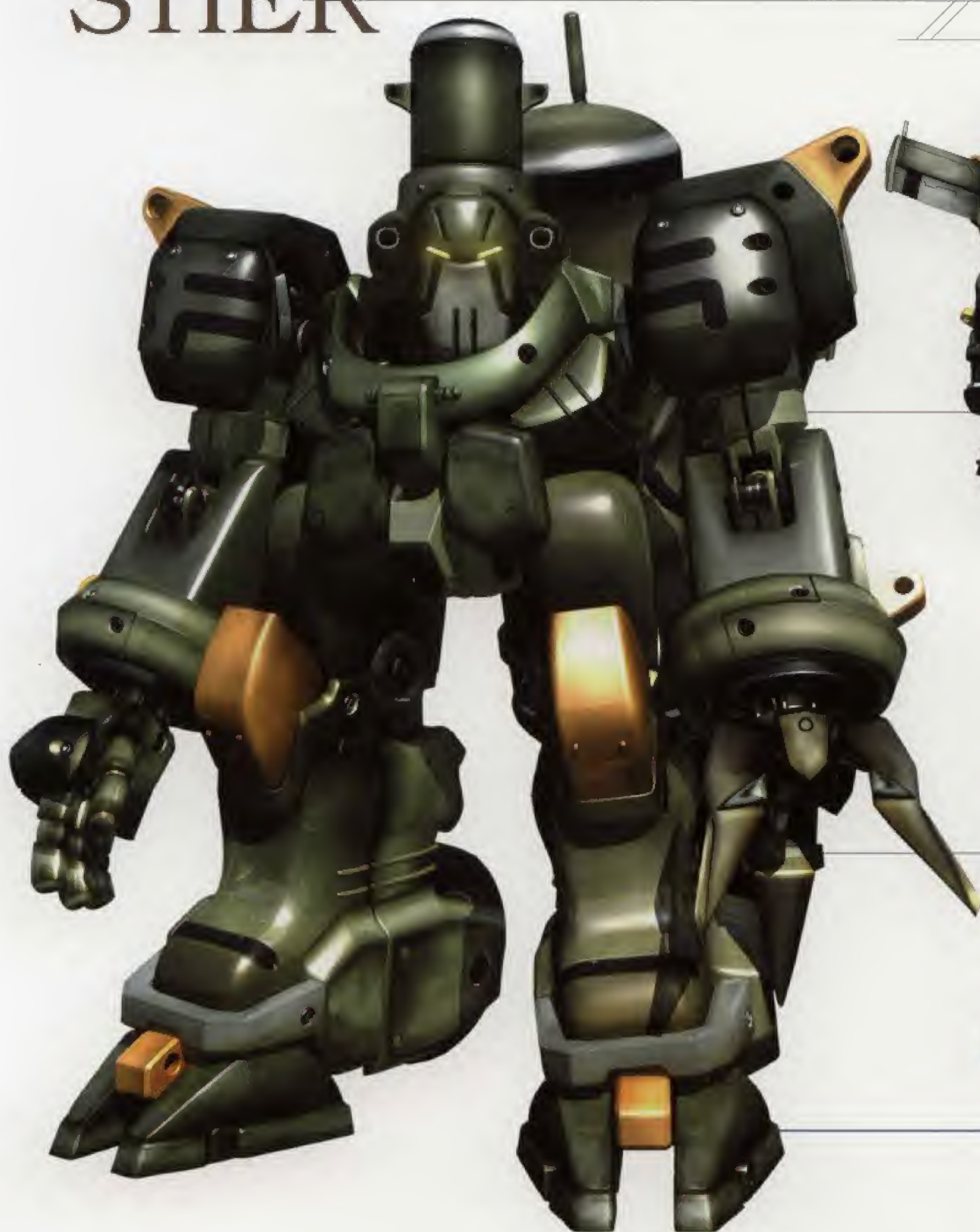
## Supplemental explanation

[They're fast because they've been well tuned]

This is when Rico was taken in by the Yggdrasil and saw Heimdahl and Brigandier. And the Gear's balance and output system are not just for 'play', but a subtle interface between reaction and pilot manipulation is key and Rico, surprised at the settings, utters these words. So the settings are not for "play" and therefore a normal person cannot handle them. And this sentiment by Rico is felt within as he is also attuned to subtleties like Bart. Because Heimdal's settings are specially enhanced, Citan is able to make full use of them.



# STIER



## SPEC DATA

Pilot	Rico
Height	19.0 sharls
dry weight	20.8 kahns
Equipped weight	27.5 kahns
sub-generator output	520
Mn. Generator coefficient	4.0
Operation time	340 tsitol
Frame durability	335
reactive level	1.8
Ether response	29.3
Ground speed	220 repsol
Flight speed	665 repsol

Equipped weapon

- Inerior valcan X 2
- machine cannon X2
- phalanx X 1
- battle use claw

## Body Analysis

As an experiment by the -Church's- lower level organization the B Committee, the machine was custom designed for Rico with super high level settings for Battling.

Units being placed in every area of the machine, it is able to immediately restore those parts that are worn out. And not only Steir, but all those Gears generally used in Battling.

When the individual parts are greatly worn out, it gets the same parts as the other Gears and is repaired at the Church at a faster rate. The rate of return is extremely high in this case. Each component bears some hidden technology responding to the need at the time. On the surface there are some flaws. Because each unit is meant for all purpose, the tight settings cause it to overload with huge power loss, and the extent of time it can be used thus is limited. And with the limit of tightness overload as a factor, the real use settings are never actually determined. As a result, even more than the difficulty in using the machine, the army desires stability, and for

them to use it overwhelmingly, a new Gear is devised in Kislev for use in Battling to provide feedback for the proper use and function of these units.

And so, Steir being supplied by the B Committee with excellent parts, it is able to achieve maximum output for a brief period of time. With a short management time by Rico for roughly ten seconds, this becomes the main problem over time. While on the Yggdrasil, Rico is able to space out its functions, re allocate its sub generator and increase its fuel tanks.

With not only large rockets as thrusters on its back, it is also able to shoot missiles out in battle. Along with Rico's Battling style, its left hand has a drill claw and the legs are equipped with grind rollers.

## Supplemental explanation

### The machine for Battling

A machine created for use in the Battling conducted in the C District. For Battlers who are average and above, the B Committee provides them with parts and they are able to make their own freedom.

The B Committee uses the Battling to create even more powerful Gears in a series of experiments. While there are many unbalanced machines in the mix, there are also those who operate their machines with extra abilities.



# RENMAZUO

Renmazuo

## Body Analysis

Created at the -Church- Headquarters as a custom Gear for general Etone use.

The frame bears resemblance to those used in the construction of Solaris Gears. While on the outside it appears like those used by Etones, the secondary frame is reinforced along with its fighting power being raised another level.

In contrast with the flame shooting weapons provided to other Etone Gears, the specialty of Renmazuo's weapons lies in a particular point within the interior. The strong arm guns placed in the extensions of both arms are far more powerful machine guns than those typically used in normal Gears. Also, because it's equipped with a high ability target display, it is able to carry out a series of commands.

Created along similar lines to other Etone Gears, it has two special abilities that set it apart. One is a partition pole with long range ability, the other is functioning spiritual radar. The cape along its back is for official Etones.



**BACK  
MODEL**



**SIDE  
MODEL**

## SPEC DATA

Pilot	Billy
Height	15.9 sharls
dry weight	11.6 kahns
Equipped weight	16.1 kahns
sub-generator output	400
Mn. Generator coefficient	3.7
Operation time	441 tsitol
Frame durability	240
reactive level	1.02
Ether response	50.9
Ground speed	322 repsol
Flight speed	840 repsol

Equipped weapon  
 interior valcan X 2  
 arm gun X 2  
 provided hand gun X 2



# SIEBZEHN

Seibzehn

## Body Analysis

Born out of the M Plan, a trial version of the fusion between humans and Gears.

No matter the responses of the pilot, because he is human there will always be a slowdown in the commands to the Gear. And so, using the thoughts of the brain, faster than that capable by flesh, it goes from input - to response - to the entirety of all parts acting in unison with exact timing under a single command.

The specialist in neurological brain studies Nicolai Balthasar achieves the direct fusion of brain with Gear, emulating the Gear as though it were the pilot's actual flesh. And so, the responses of this Gear react accordingly to theory. The problem of "Thinking your way with the Gear" leads to understanding of how the human nervous system links up to the Gear. On the way to this path, the mutant humans Wells are recycled as byproducts of the M Plan, the reformed matter being made into biocircuit technology, leading to the path of completion.

As a result, the miracle of artificial creation of gravity is also discovered. A trial version of this is loaded into Seibzehn.

## SPEC DATA

Pilot	Maria
Height	28.2 sharls
dry weight	33.5 kahns
Equipped weight	46.0 kahns
sub-generator output	610
Mn. Generator coefficient	5.5
Operation time	730 tsitol
Frame durability	440
reactive level	2.3
Ether response	20.4
Ground speed	180 repsol
Flight speed	622 repsol

Equipped weapon

- Interior rocket pod micro missile launcher X2
- Finger missile 5 gate X2
- brain gravity cannon X1
- torneld hammer X2



## Supplemental explanation

### Machine/human fusion

A technology discovered in the course of the Gazel Ministry's accelerated M Plan. A type of direct control of the central nervous system expands this concept, creating a type of fused human and Gear directly along the central nervous system. Having caused many human sacrifices in the process, in regards to the application of living things to machines, in order to create something on par with Deus and the Angels, the living parts' called humans are fused. And so, humans take on the forms of Gears in order to have the ability to directly control them.



# CRESCENS

Crescens

## Body Analysis

Originally Crescens was developed along the same lines as Vierge, being loaded with an Aerod system. Specifically, it was planned to include a system for an aerod attack device in the body, but the controlling interface being rejected, half of its potential remained in a state of dormancy. However, because of Emeraldal being secured by Krelia its development was once again rapidly commenced, and the problem of the existing interface's rigidity, was resolved by merging Emeraldal bodily with the machine.

Both arms are missing as memorial to her time being frozen and the wing shaped apparatus on the head contain the Aerods, so abandoning the arms altogether and putting sub thrusters in their place, the machine's planned mobility was upgraded.

The wing shaped Aerods are composed of nanomachines, and combined with other projectile based operations along with self mobility this stabilizes the whole.

In addition to this, the nanomachines making up Emeraldal's body are placed to govern the whole system with stability, and when she transforms her shape, it cannot be altered any further. The reasoning behind fusion with Crescens also involves a merging of the nanomachines with the machine for a short time, and is integral to keeping up with normal maintenance. However, the wing shaped Aerods are comprised of nanomachines and are maintenance free.

## SPEC DATA

Pilot	Emeraldal
Height	15.4 sharls
dry weight	9.7 kahns
Equipped weight	13.3 kahns
sub-generator output	450
Mn. Generator coefficient	3.3
Operation time	710 tsitol
Frame durability	200
reactive level	1.0
Ether response	44
Ground speed	300 repsol
Flight speed	1100 repsol

Equipped weapon  
wing shaped Aerods (nanomachine system) X2

**BACK  
MODEL**

**SIDE  
MODEL**

## Supplemental explanation

### The use of nanotechnology in Gears

Substance analysis and regeneration are both freely done for the most part by nanotechnology, with unlimited potential as a military resource.

Krelia uses this with the goal of supporting Deus in the next stage of Merkava's mobile terminal interfaces, the Angels, who are provided with regenerative abilities.

Also, Melchior repairs Weltall with this technology, inventing the nano disassemblers to prevent self regeneration.



# WYVERN

Wyvern

## Body Analysis

The exclusive use Gear bestowed upon Kahran Ramsus by Emperor Cain.

Appropriate for the Gebler Commander, designed with the concept as the -ultimate Gear-, originated by Hyuga Ricdeau and combining all the weapons power available to Gebler. For this reason, the ordinary parts supplied to Solaris Gears were not sufficient, and it is a one-of-a-type Gear with all exclusive parts.

Having three separate generators for maximum output, both shoulders have within their active armor plasma devices, and due to long stabilizers being employed, the exterior frame is heavy grade while retaining the capability of light movements.

The parts connected within the shoulders' active armor are large type bullet Aerods. Those Aerods stored in the sub generator boast a power many times greater than ordinary electrical Aerods. Also, having Cro ability, it has a beam type sword that can be used in battle.

For main battle with swords, it has one of steel, but not one made in Solaris, but one confiscated that was forged by a quelled people in the past.

For Wyvern, an advanced prototype of a new technology in which nothing was spared, it does not have the next generation technology of fusion of humans with Gears by way of nanotechnology.

## SPEC DATA

Pilot	Ramsus
Height	17.8 sharls
dry weight	14.5 kahns
Equipped weight	18.1 kahns
sub-generator output	500
Mn. Generator coefficient	4.5
Operation time	5.4 tsitol
Frame durability	320
reactive level	0.8
Ether response	58.5
Ground speed	290 repsol
Flight speed	1200 repsol

Equipped weapon	
	true sword X1
	vulcan gun X4
	large scale projectile Aerods
	(concurrent Cro use) X2

## Supplemental explanation

### Gear's interior firearms

Hardly seen within the story, more than half of Gears are loaded with such things as chain guns and vulcans as projectile weapons.

Mainly used in the system of control, it is used in the destruction of the light markings on the outer framework.

As a result of the machine cannons, soldier's buildings as well as battle supplies and firearms used by the military, there is not enough firepower to destroy the outer framework of Gears.

And so, it is enough to simply destroy those cables located along the framework of the Gears in battle so that their sensors cannot detect damage.





# OR WELTALL

Original  
Weltall

## Body Analysis

Approximately 500 years ago the Omnigear that was formed by the fusion of the Gear Lacan was piloting with the Anima Relic Naphtali.

As Deus' close defensive interface, the output of the Omnigear is incomparably greater than that of any normal Gear, to the extent that any within close range of its energy output are immediately incinerated. Also, the living frame of the machine is strong enough that even Goliath's 1200 sem cannon is not able to damage it.

For Original Weltall, once it has contacted Zohar, it can draw on absolute power, causing it to transform in the same way as Xenogears. The famed firefly type wings that emerge from its back function even today as its primary defense system.

When the Masked man pilots it as Grahf, he recognizes and uses these abilities.

## SPEC DATA

Pilot ——— Grahf  
Height ——— 19.6 sharls  
dry weight ——— unknown  
Equipped weight ——— unknown  
sub-generator output ——— infinite  
Mn. Generator coefficient ———  
20 or more (measure unknown)  
Operation time ——— unknown  
Frame durability ——— unknown  
reactive level ———  
0.3 or less (measure unknown)  
Ether response ——— unknown  
Ground speed ——— measure unknown  
Flight speed ——— measure unknown

Equipped weapon ———  
unknown

※ unclear at hyper mode



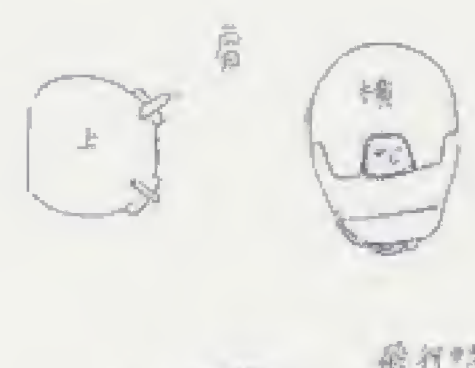
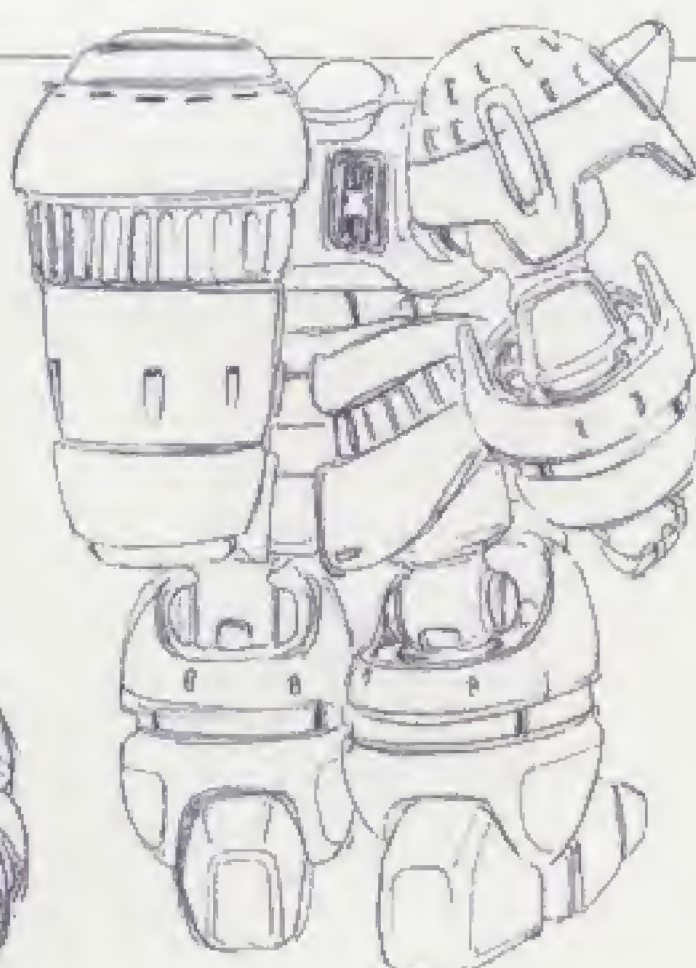
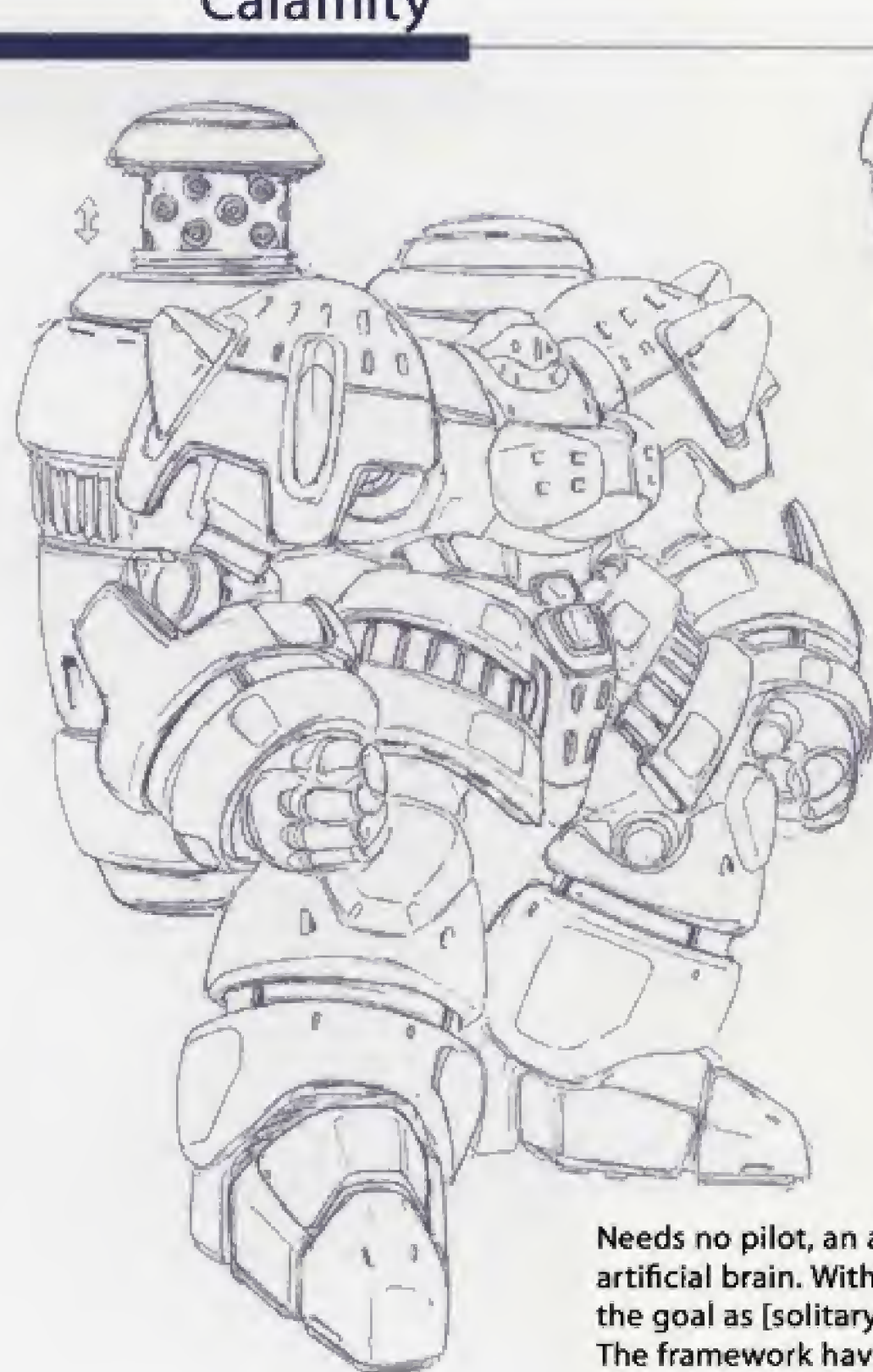
## Supplemental explanation

### Grahf's [Power]

Standing before Fei and the others every so often, Grahf shows himself [“To hold the breath of god!” and as the ‘fallen seed’, take your hidden powers!! and take on the beautiful destructive power of the Mother!"] afterwards leaving them with these words. The ‘fallen seed’ is the previously unmentioned tip of Zohar’s power in the slave generators. This incitement to power is one of Grahf’s main hinted abilities, it is said to change the level of others’ power. For now, “the destroying Mother” is Deus, and can’t it be said that Grahf is the spearhead of that said power?



### Calamity



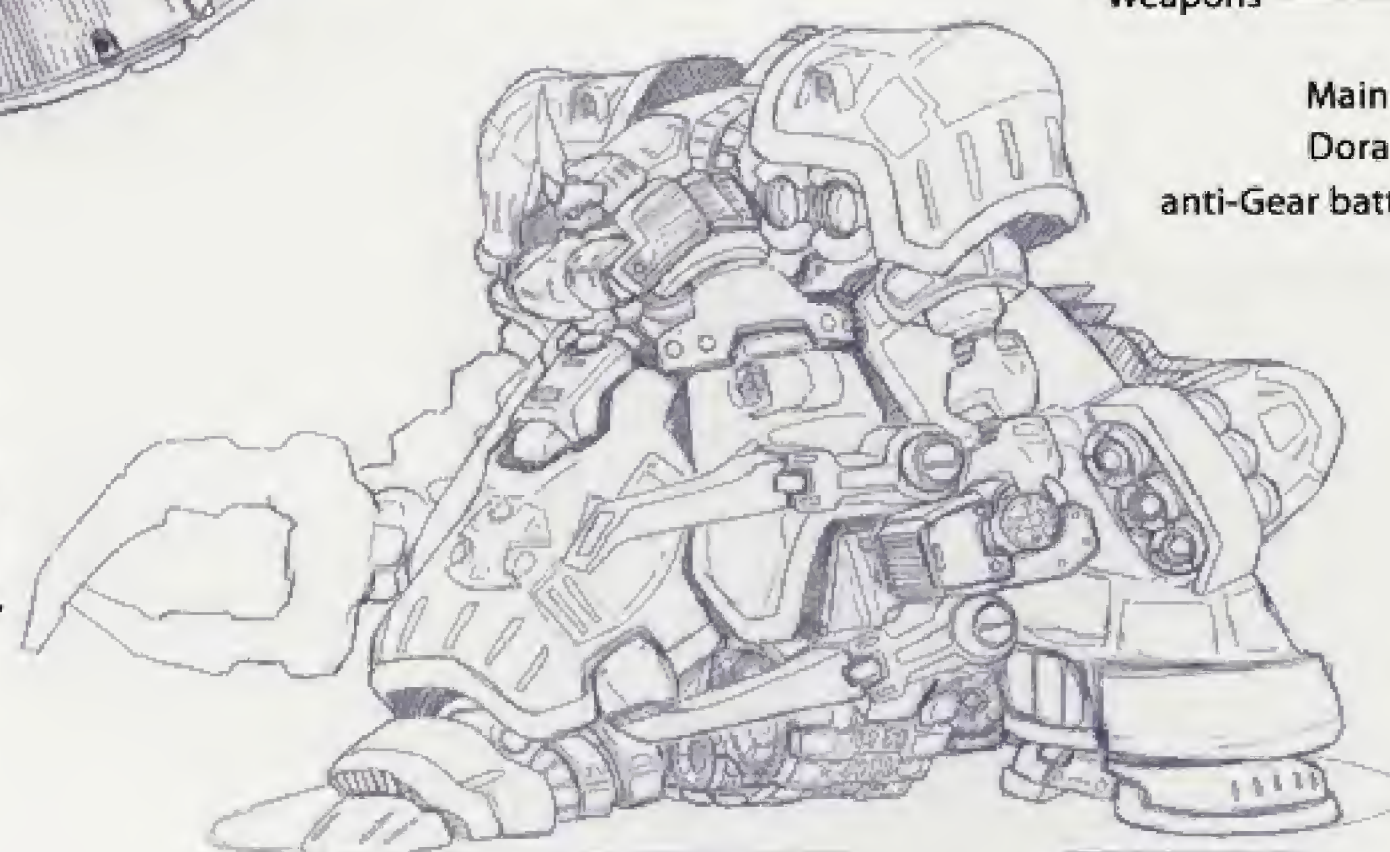
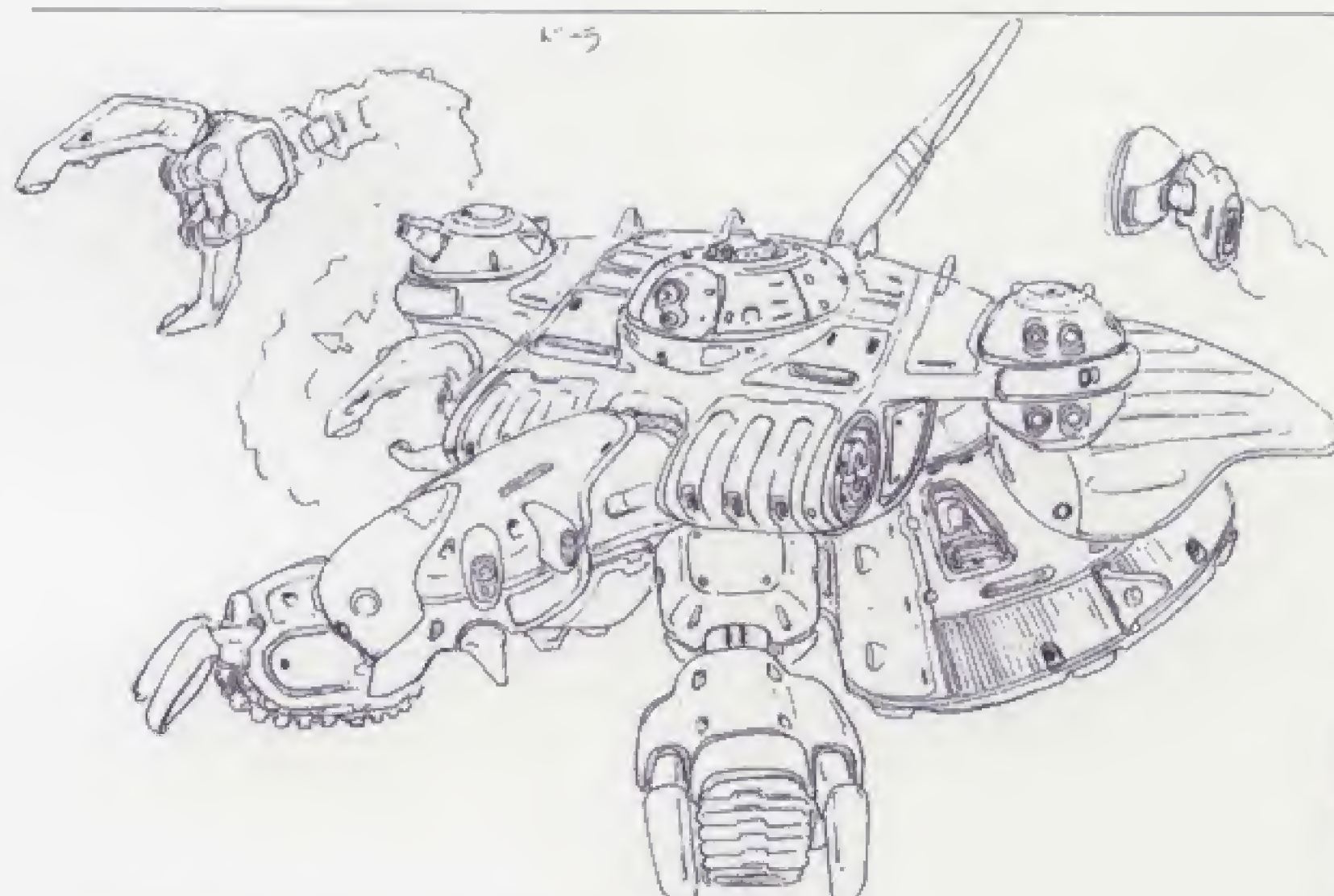
Needs no pilot, an automatically functioning Gear with an artificial brain. With Balthasar as the creator, it was built with the goal as [solitary battling Gear] for use against Solaris. The framework having a high survivability rate, it is equipped with missile pods for going against many enemies, and due to many other loaded in features in the event of low power, it is provided with strong flight rockets.

#### SPEC DATA

Pilot — none  
 Height — 27.8 sharls  
 dry weight — 34.8 kahns  
 Equipped weight — 46.8 kahns  
 sub-generator output — 470  
 Mn. Generator coefficient — 4.3  
 Operation time — 720 tsitol  
 Frame durability — 350  
 reactive level — 2.1  
 Ether response — 17.7  
 Ground speed — 170 repsol  
 Flight speed — 590 repsol

Equipped weapon —  
 missile pod X2  
 revolving rocket arm X2

### Dora



#### SPEC DATA

Pilot — Vanderkaum  
 Height — 22.4 sharls  
 dry weight — 70.2 kahns  
 Equipped weight — 91.5 kahns  
 sub-generator output — 525  
 Mn. Generator coefficient — 4.8  
 Operation time — 640 tsitol  
 Frame durability — 360  
 reactive level — 2.0  
 Ether response — 10.5  
 Ground speed — 230 repsol

Weapons —  
 Guns X2  
 Main cannon X1  
 Dora cannon X1  
 anti-Gear battle arms X2

The anti-vessel weapon that had been excavated that was the former main battle power in the desert in a long ago era. The vessels' strong framework could be pierced by the cannon loaded onto the Dora, but its shell is capable of withstanding their attacks. However, the excavation took many long months, at the end of which the main cannon was sent off to oppose Gears from the naval vessels.

rough draft



## Shakhan's Gear

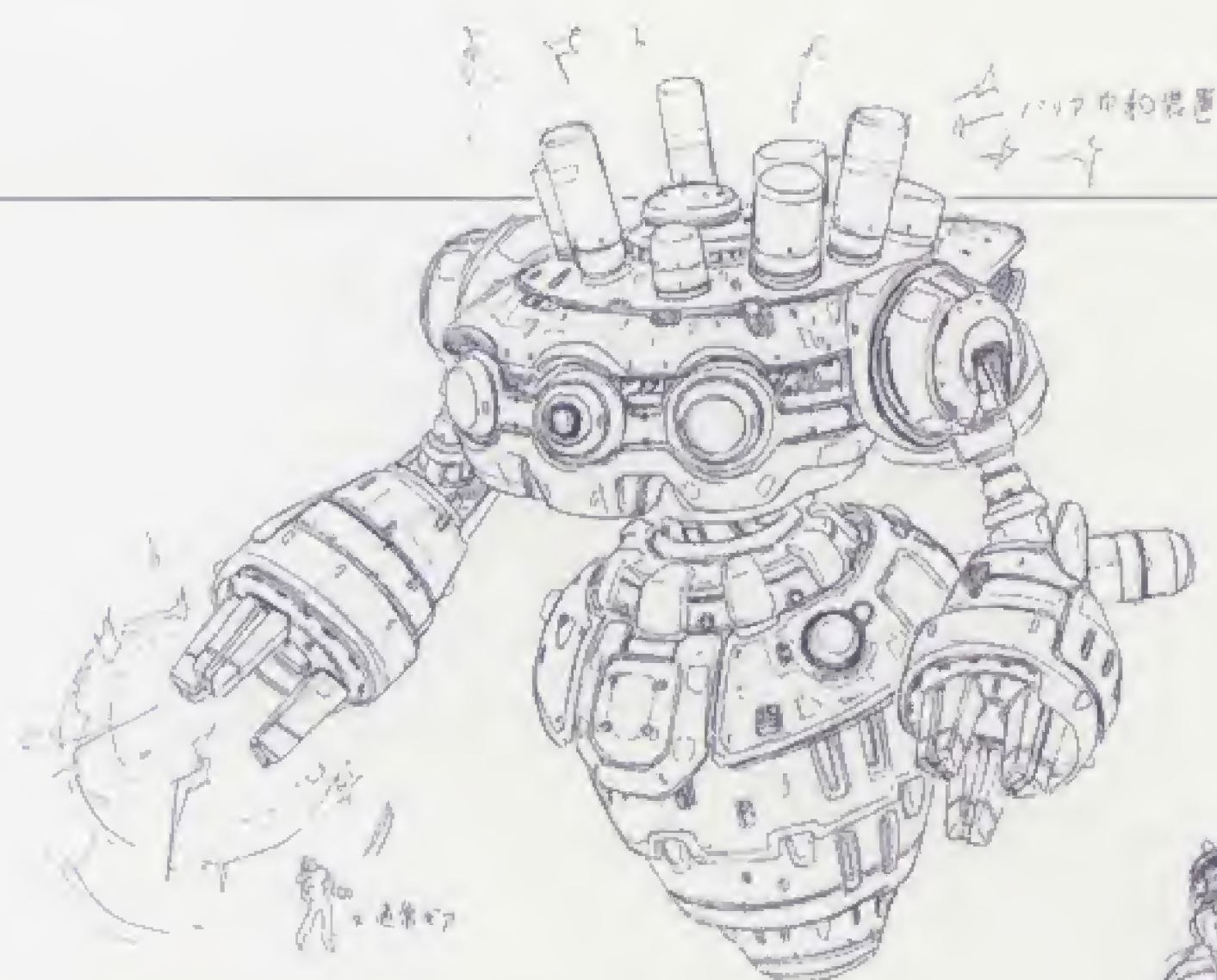
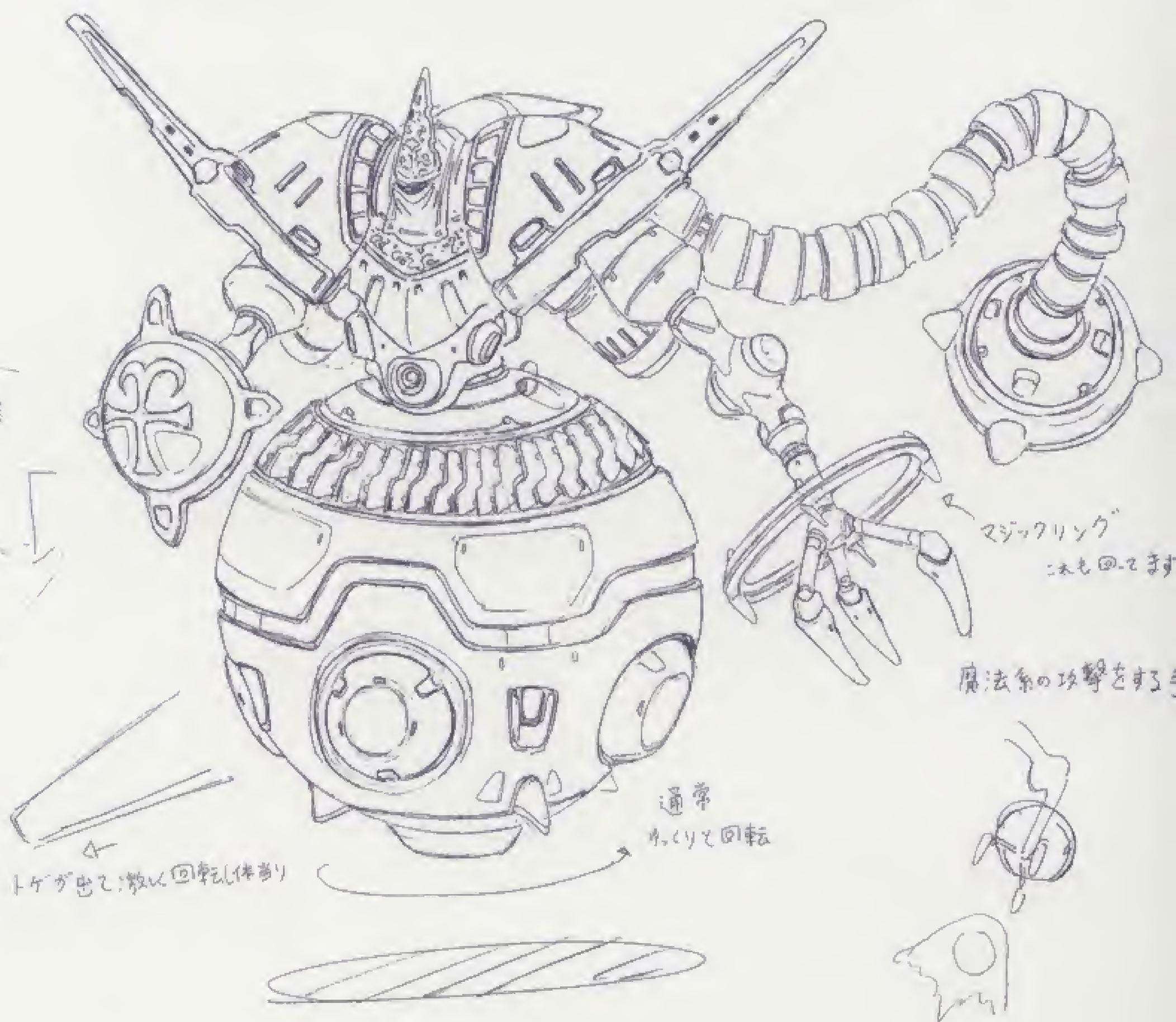
### SPEC DATA

Pilot ——— Shakhan  
 Height ——— 32.5 sharls  
 dry weight ——— 42.3 kahns  
 Equipped weight ——— 44.5 kahns  
 sub-generator output ——— 420  
 Mn. Generator coefficient ——— 5  
 Operation time ——— 690tsitol  
 Frame durability ——— 370  
 reactive level ——— 1.8  
 Ether response ——— 45.5  
 Ground speed ——— 250 repsol  
 Flight speed ——— 510 repsol

#### weapon

interior shield sealment cannon X1  
 Ether expansion battle device Clo X1

A trial Gear loaded with a smaller version of a flight engine typically used in flying vessels. Because the Church governs, it seals the cannon with its symbol. If the pilot's Ether ability is high enough, it can emit Gate energy and the pipes located on its back are there for that reason.



## Alkanshel

### SPEC DATA

Pilot ——— Stone  
 Height ——— 45.2 sharls  
 dry weight ——— 58.3 kahns  
 Equipped weight ——— 69.6 kahns  
 sub-generator output ——— 840  
 Mn. Generator coefficient ——— 4.1  
 Operation time ——— 710tsitol  
 Frame durability ——— 410  
 reactive level ——— 2.3  
 Ether response ——— 56.5  
 Ground speed ——— 120 repsol  
 Flight speed ——— 330 repsol

#### weapon

sealed cannon X1  
 anti-Gear defense jammer X2

The Gear developed to be the main force in the ocean region. To possibly keep it active for a long time, normally it navigates the surface of the ocean like other ocean going vessels, but for battles if necessary it can achieve flight. Because of this, the system where it can burn this kind of fuel is short, and it can prolong battle for another time. The defensive jammers it emits from the claws at the end of each arm sends a magnetic wave to other enemy machines that renders them immobile 100% of the time. The result of Gebler's technology, the machine was developed by Citan at first, and the sealed cannon brought in by Stone.

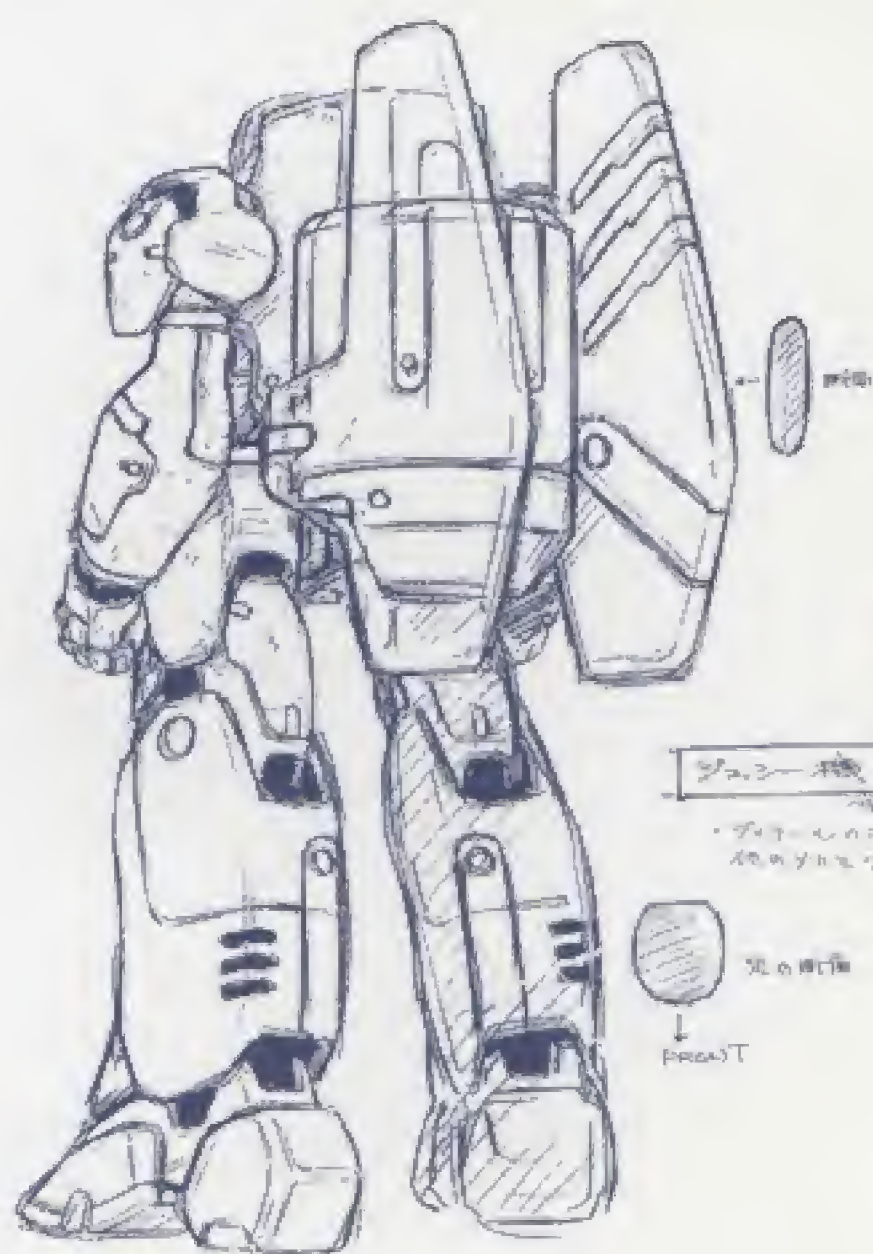
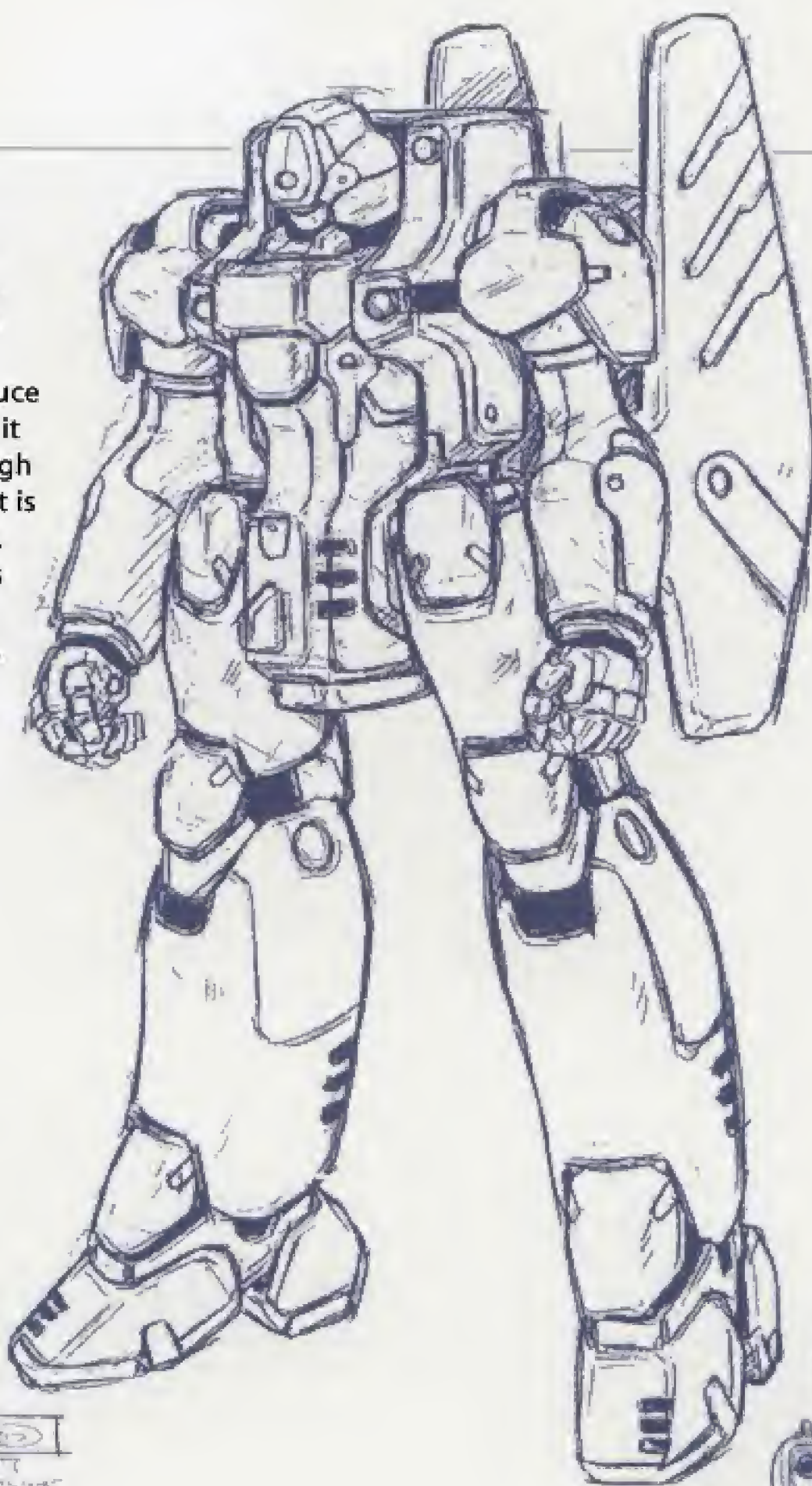




## Buntline

A machine designed to attack from a distance by crossing into close contact battle situations. At the time of transfer, it is available for general use and is able to transform.

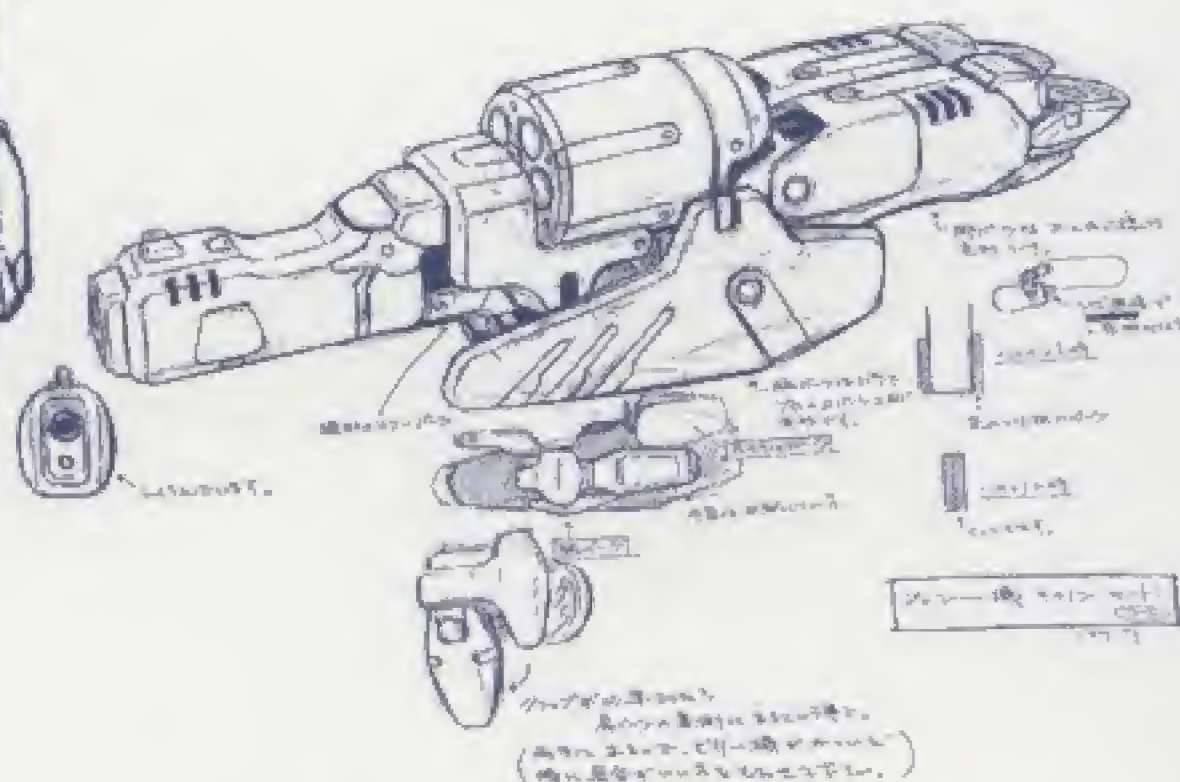
In order to make use of cannon mode and reduce the chance of casualty to the human occupant, it must be held by another Gear. In situation of high emergency, the cockpit becomes a bullet, and it is designed to be handled and aimed by the pilot. For the expert marksman, the cockpit portion is reinforced in the interior for shooting, and the explosive part is separated, and after the attack that part held in reserve divides itself and the part shot out explodes.



### SPEC DATA

Pilot ——— Jessie  
Height ——— 15.1 sharls  
(cannon mode time 20.1 sharls)  
dry weight ——— 12.6 kahns  
Equipped weight ——— 20.8 kahns  
sub-generator output ——— 350  
Mn. Generator coefficient ——— 3.5  
Operation time ——— 540 tsitol  
Frame durability ——— 240  
reactive level ——— 1.3  
Ether response ——— 31.4  
Ground speed ——— 250 repsol  
Flight speed ——— 765 repsol

weapon ———  
human rocket bullet  
(used during cannon mode)

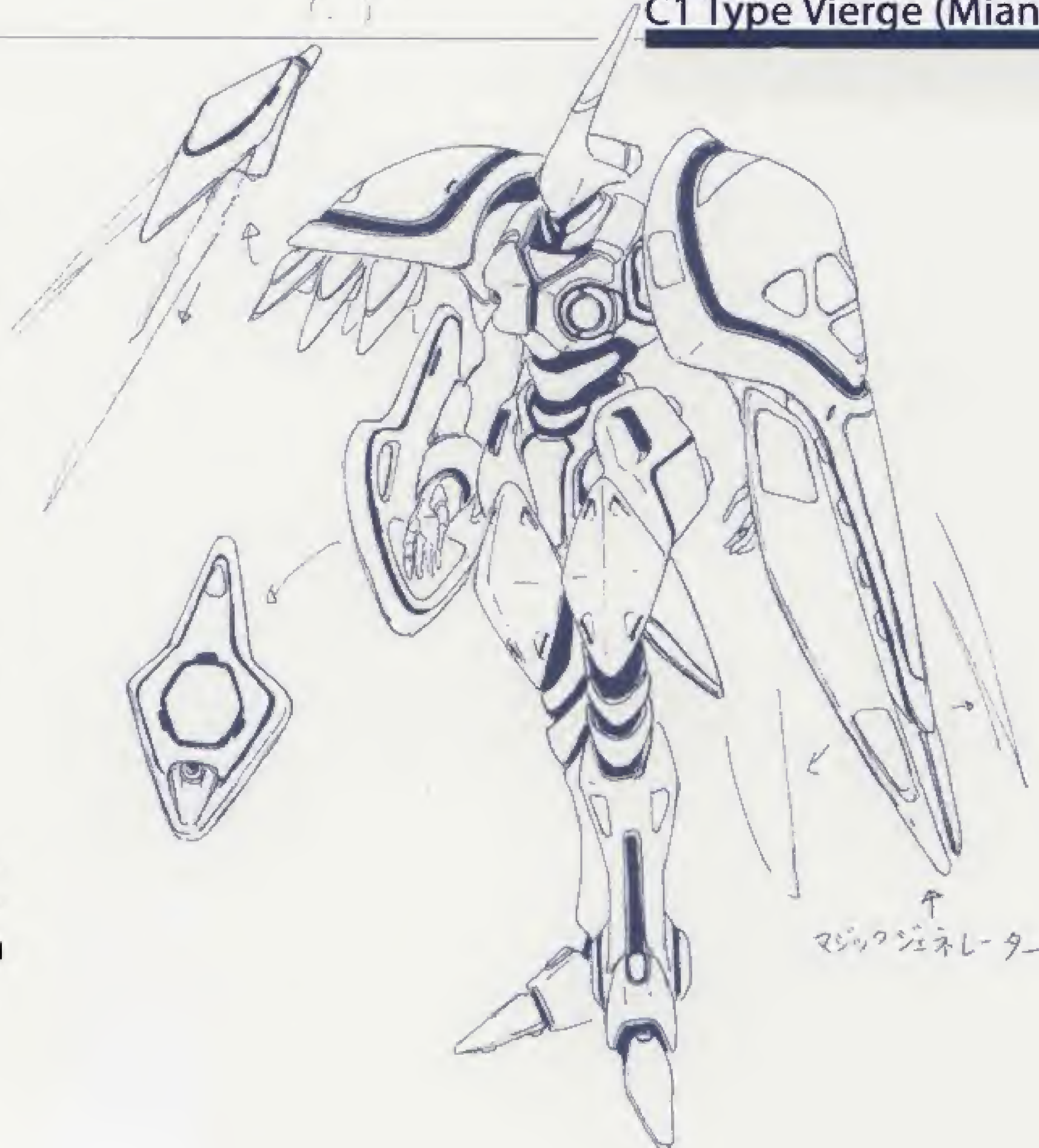


## C1 Type Vierge (Miang's Gear)

### SPEC DATA

Pilot ——— Miang  
Height ——— 16.2 sharls  
dry weight ——— 12.1 kahns  
Equipped weight ——— 17.4 kahns  
sub-generator output ——— 430  
Mn. Generator coefficient ——— 3.4  
Operation time ——— 600 tsitol  
Frame durability ——— 230  
reactive level ——— 0.8  
Ether response ——— 130  
Ground speed ——— 265 repsol  
Flight speed ——— 920 repsol

weapon ———  
Aerod X6  
covering sheild X1  
defensive Aerod X1

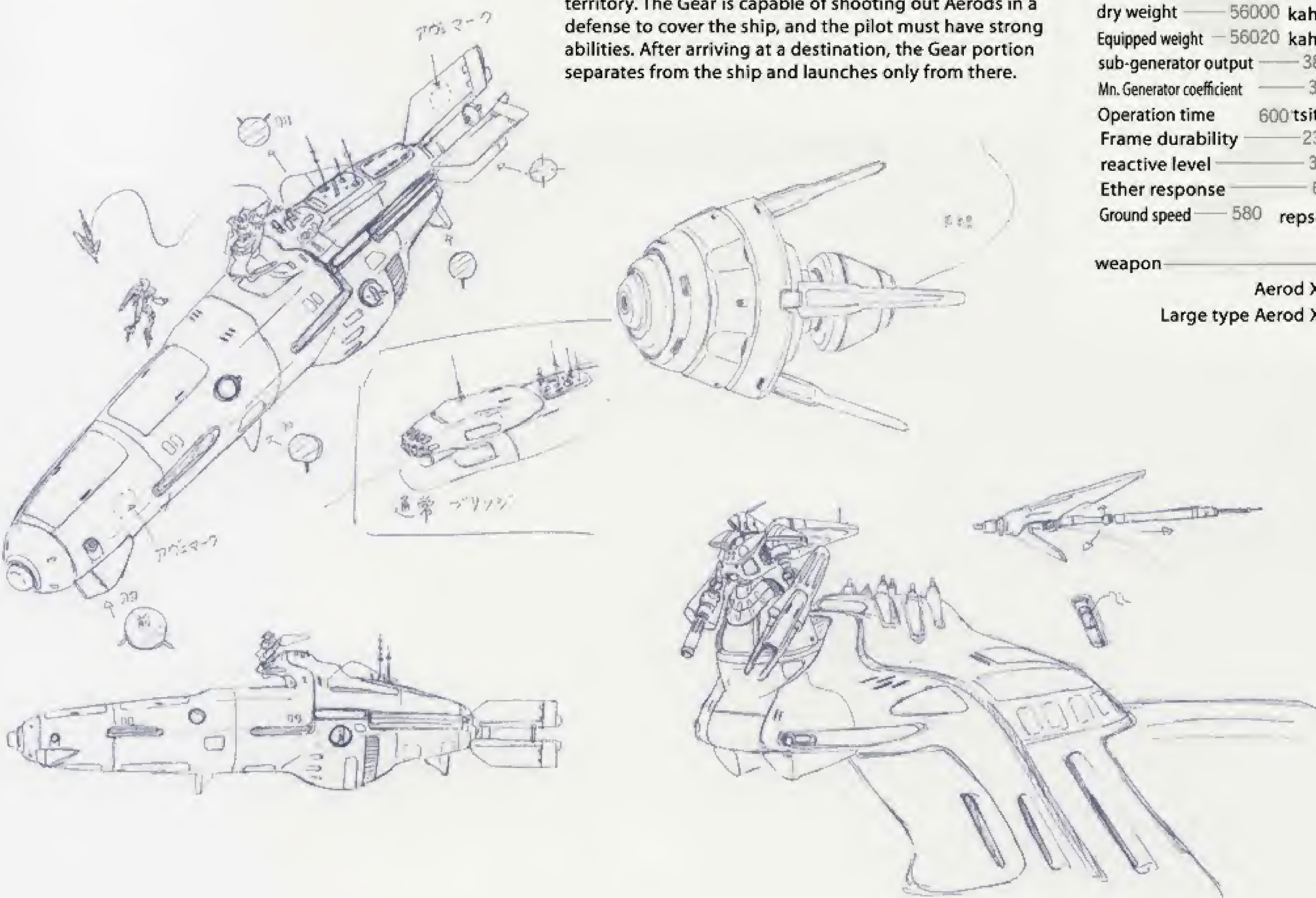


With six attack Aerods on the right shoulder, the left has one provided Aerod for defense, this is a variation of Vierge. Because of the complex array of Aerods, it requires a special pilot, an ordinary person cannot handle it. Only a few were developed.



Bombing vessel Hecht

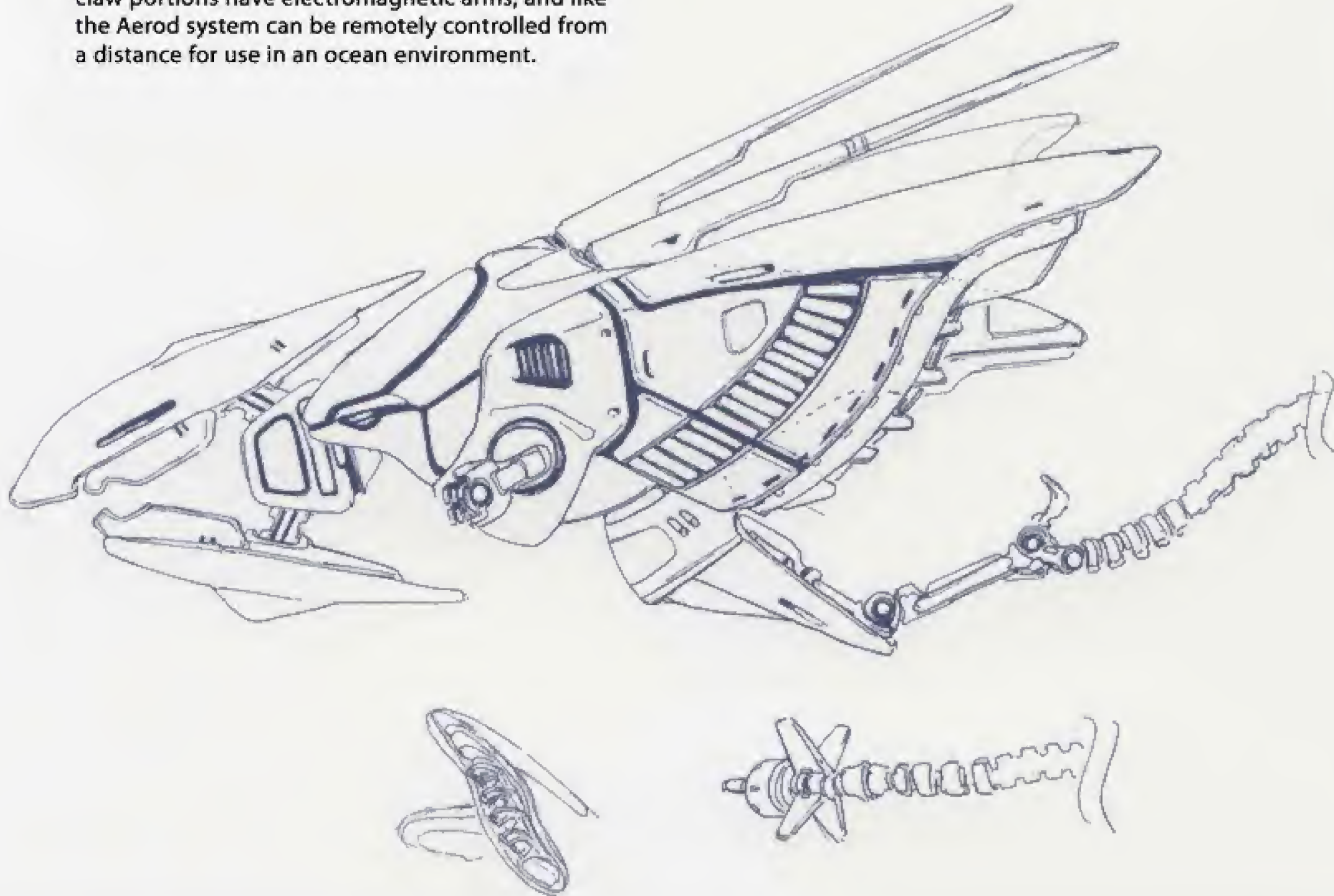
The vessel being loaded with a huge explosive bullet, it was constructed with the goal of invasion. The deck is equipped with an attack Gear for close battles in enemy territory. The Gear is capable of shooting out Aerods in a defense to cover the ship, and the pilot must have strong abilities. After arriving at a destination, the Gear portion separates from the ship and launches only from there.



SPEC DATA	
Pilot	Dominia
Height	189 sharls
dry weight	56000 kahns
Equipped weight	56020 kahns
sub-generator output	380
Mn. Generator coefficient	3.4
Operation time	600 tsitol
Frame durability	230
reactive level	3.1
Ether response	62
Ground speed	580 repsol
weapon	
	Aerod X6
	Large type Aerod X1

Haishao

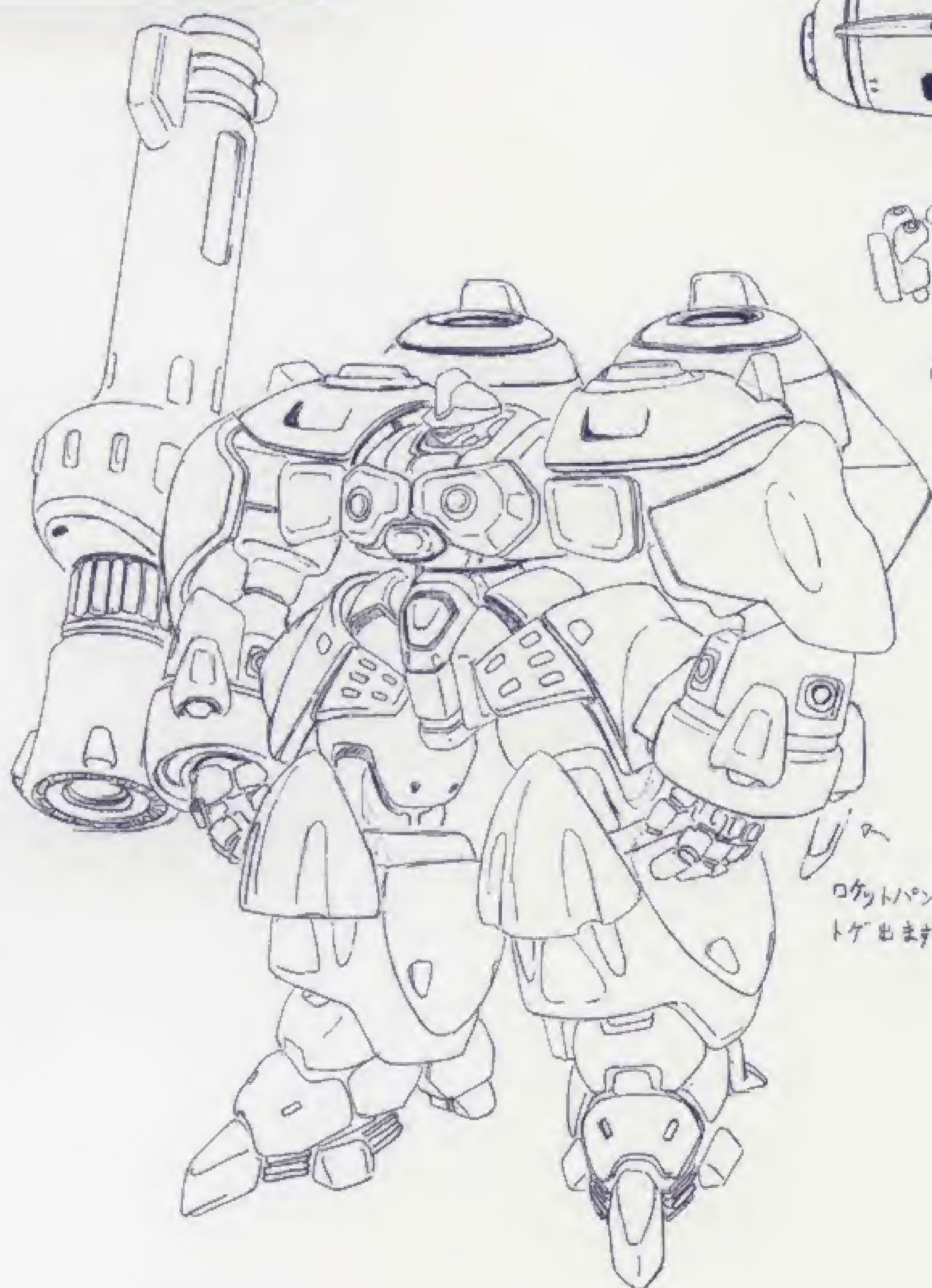
A machine designed only for battling in the ocean. The portion of the large tail is loaded with a large hydrophone, with the goal of determining enemy position and strength by way of sonar. Both arms' claw portions have electromagnetic arms, and like the Aerod system can be remotely controlled from a distance for use in an ocean environment.



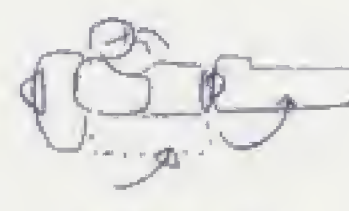
SPEC DATA	
Pilot	Dominia/Kelvena /Ramsus
Height	27.8 sharls
dry weight	66.7 kahns
Equipped weight	78.3 kahns
sub-generator output	620
Mn. Generator coefficient	4.5
Operation time	640 tsitol
Frame durability	380
reactive level	2.3
Ether response	36.8
sea surface speed	130 repsol
weapon	
	electromagnetic arm X2



## Achtzehn



①



②



③

○ 腕 前へ 90°

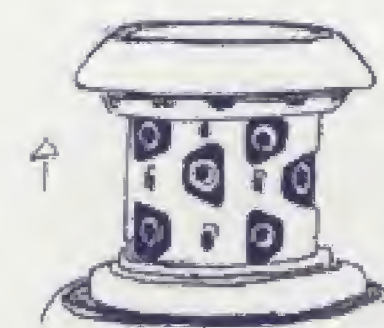
○ 砲身 前へ 回転

1. 腕 内側へ 180° 回転

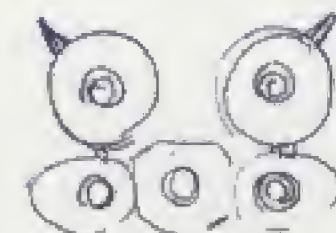
2. 肩に 腕が 引き込まれる

3. 背部ブースターが 肩と ドッキング

ロケットパンチ時  
トゲ 出ます



ミサイル ホット



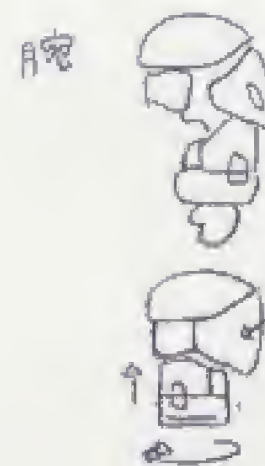
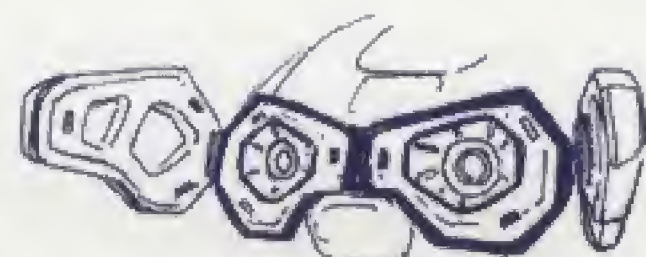
← ブースター  
肩に ジョイント

### SPEC DATA

Pilot ————— Nikolai  
Height ————— 28.4 sharls  
dry weight ————— 34.6 kahns  
Equipped weight ————— 49.4 kahns  
sub-generator output ————— 605  
Mn. Generator coefficient ————— 5.6  
Operation time ————— 740tsitol  
Frame durability ————— 450  
reactive level ————— 2.4  
Ether response ————— 24.4  
Ground speed ————— 230 repsol  
Flight Speed ————— 835 repsol

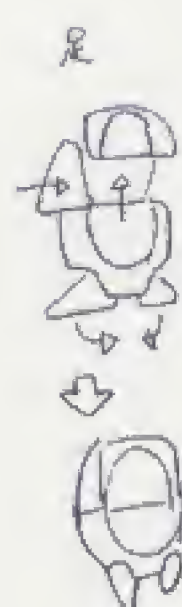
### weapons

interior rocket pod - micro missile launcher X2  
5th series Finger missile X2  
chest gravity cannon X2  
Torneld hammer X2  
Gravity rifle X1

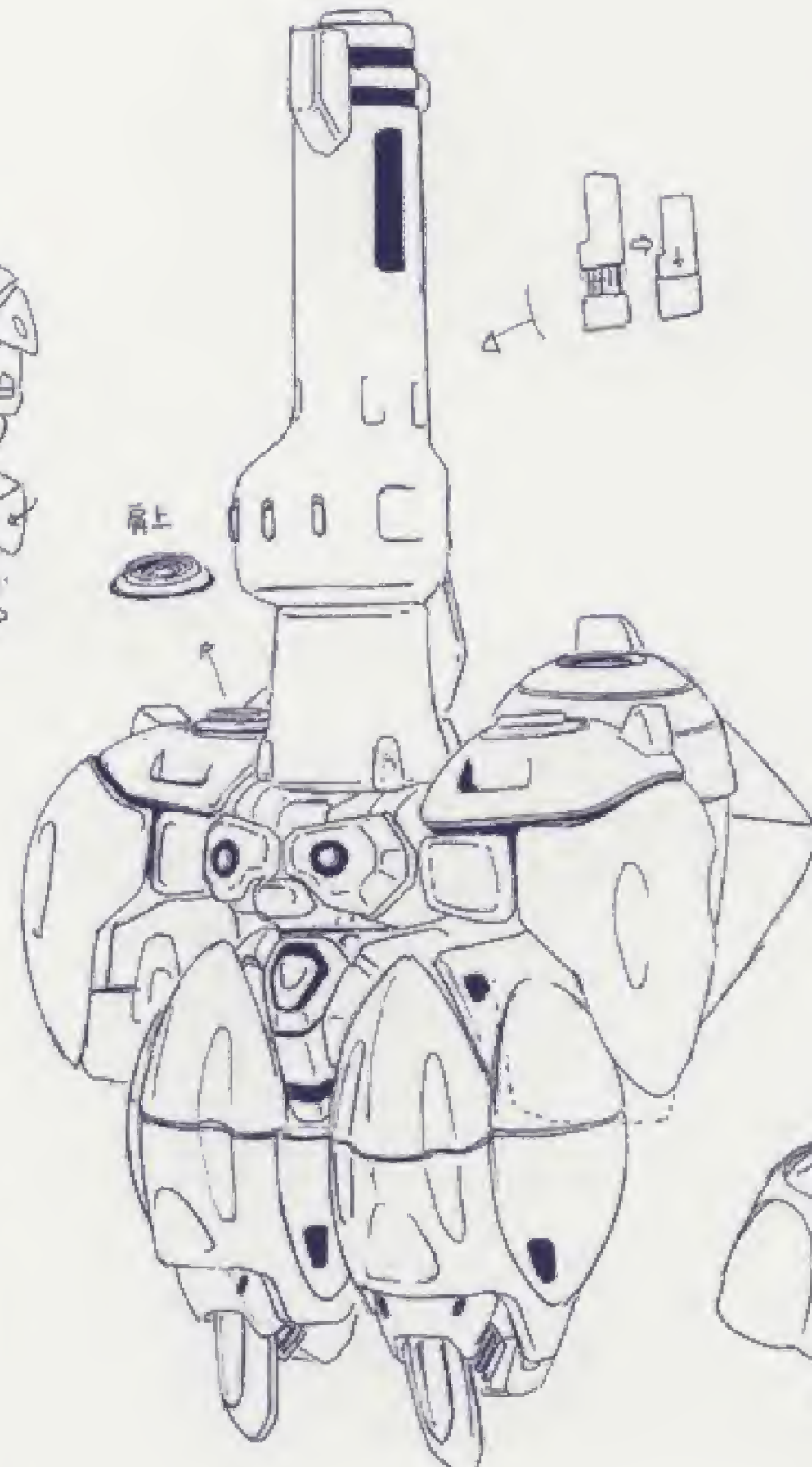


腕

肩 上



足



腰スカート 後

To the observer, Achtzehn may seem to refer in outside appearance to Seibzehn, but its self use mainframe is the first machine to adopt the use of a human brain.

Like Calamity that was also meant for self propelling in flight mode, it is a test Gear, and it is very powerful. Also, equipped with an outer surface like that of large vessels along with Seibzehn, it has an extreme attack added to it in the rifle on its arm that was invented as a gravity cannon. At its completion, it is referred to as "The fully automatic Gear".

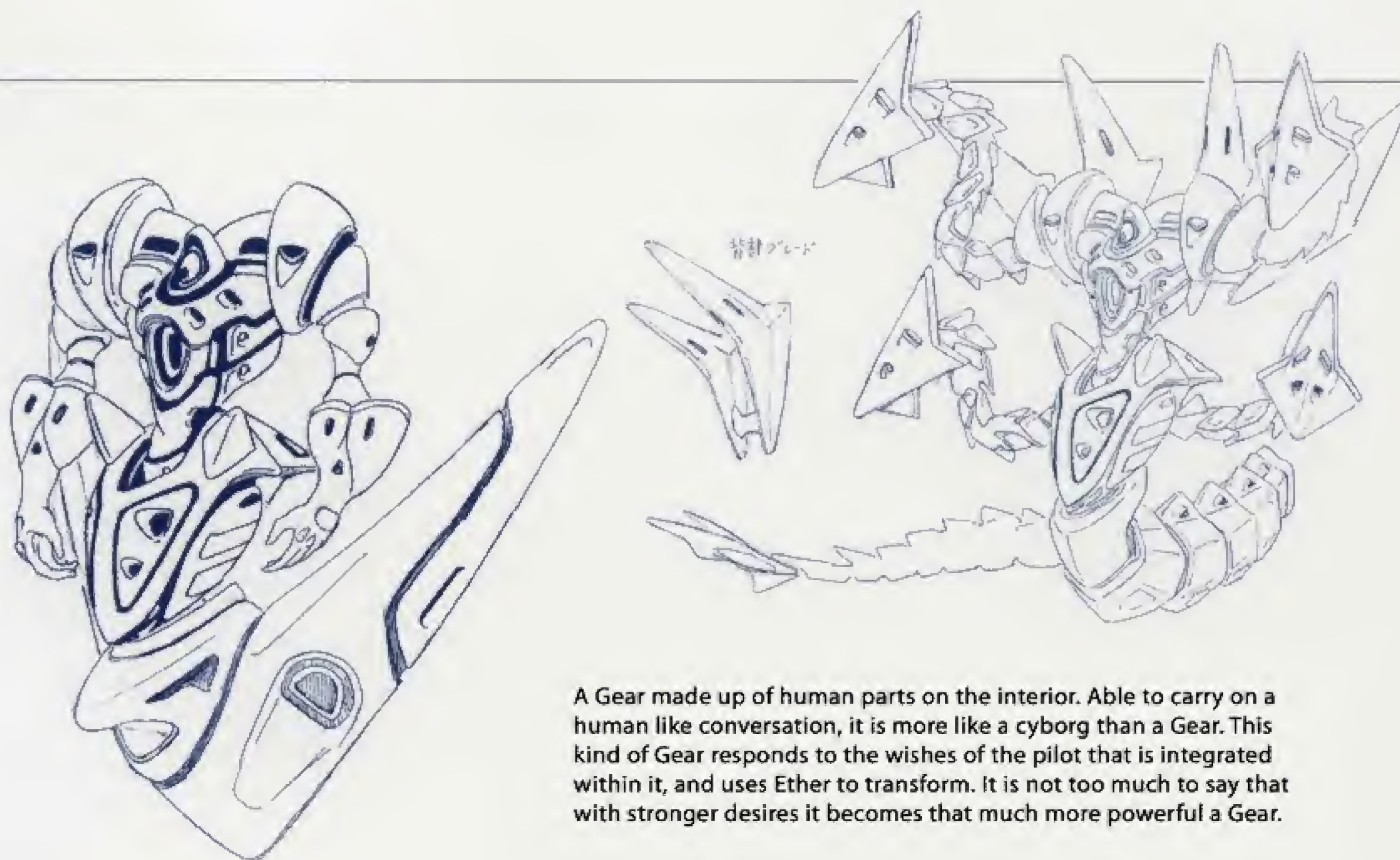


## Hammer

### SPEC DATA

Fused with ——— Hammer  
 Height ——— 13 sharl  
 (after transformation 41.4 sharl)  
 dry weight ——— 9.3 kahns  
 equipped wgt. ——— 14.2 kahns  
 (after transformation 32.2 kahns)  
 sub-generator output ——— 540  
 Mn. Generator coefficient ——— 5.2  
 Operation time 730 tsitol  
 Frame durability ——— 390  
 reactive level ——— 2.2  
 Ether response ——— 20.2  
 Ground speed ——— 230 repsol  
 Flight speed ——— 655 repsol

weapons ———  
 jel emitter  
 body poison bullets  
 self transformation device



A Gear made up of human parts on the interior. Able to carry on a human like conversation, it is more like a cyborg than a Gear. This kind of Gear responds to the wishes of the pilot that is integrated within it, and uses Ether to transform. It is not too much to say that with stronger desires it becomes that much more powerful a Gear.

Both Kenren and Tenpo were originally subordinates of Krelan at the time of the Monastery Corps, and at the time of defending Ignas, they met death defending Sophia, and like the Gazel Ministry, only their personal data was preserved and was afterwards resurrected as the central command portion of the Gears. Today, almost nothing of their original human personalities remain, and they are almost entirely collective battle instincts.



## Kenren/Tenpo

### SPEC DATA

Pilot ——— Kenren  
 Height ——— 28.5 sharls  
 dry weight ——— 34.4 kahns  
 Equipped weight ——— 47.3 kahns  
 sub-generator output ——— 760  
 Mn. Generator coefficient ——— 7.4  
 Operation time 722 tsitol  
 Frame durability ——— 480  
 reactive level ——— 1.3  
 Ether response ——— 31  
 Ground speed ——— 310 repsol  
 Flight speed ——— 720 repsol

weapons ———  
 arm unification attack hammer X1  
 arm shield device X1

### SPEC DATA

Pilot ——— Tenpo  
 Height ——— 29.6 sharls  
 dry weight ——— 35.7 kahns  
 Equipped weight ——— 52 kahns  
 sub-generator output ——— 740  
 Mn. Generator coefficient ——— 7.1  
 Operation time 765 tsitol  
 Frame durability ——— 470  
 reactive level ——— 1.0  
 Ether response ——— 33.8  
 Ground speed ——— 330 repsol  
 Flight speed ——— 740 repsol

weapon ———  
 2 serial attack hook X1  
 attack use claw X1





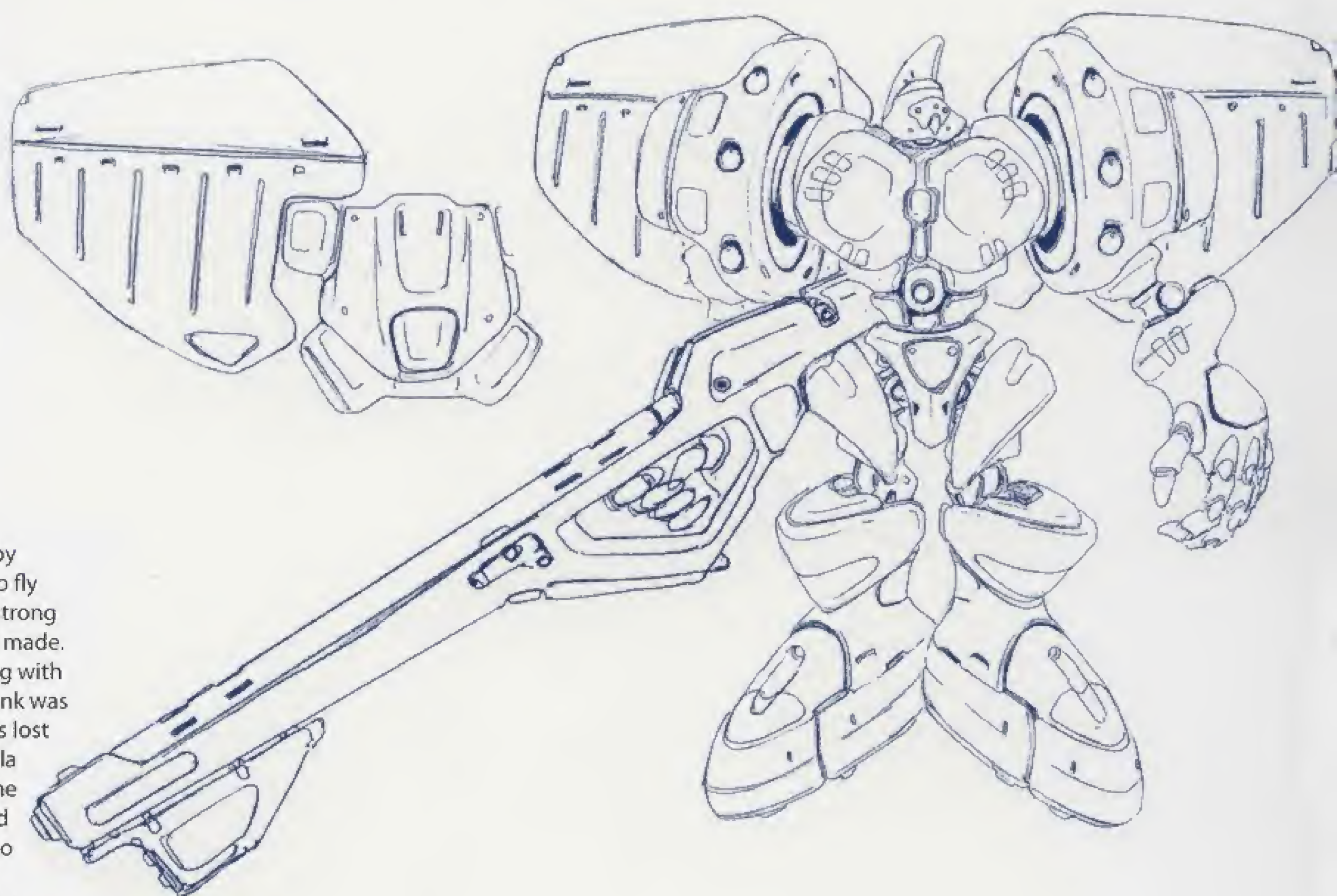
# Gebler Special Forces

## Wandknight

### SPEC DATA

Pilot	Renk/Helmholtz
Height	18.5 Sharls
Dry Weight	16.8 kahns
equipped wght.	20.3 kahns
sub generator output	380
generator coefficient	3.5
operation time	520 tsitol
frame durability	240
reactive level	1.4
Ether response	28.4
Ground speed	245 repsol
flight speed	760 repsol

Equipped weapon ———  
power beam cannon X1



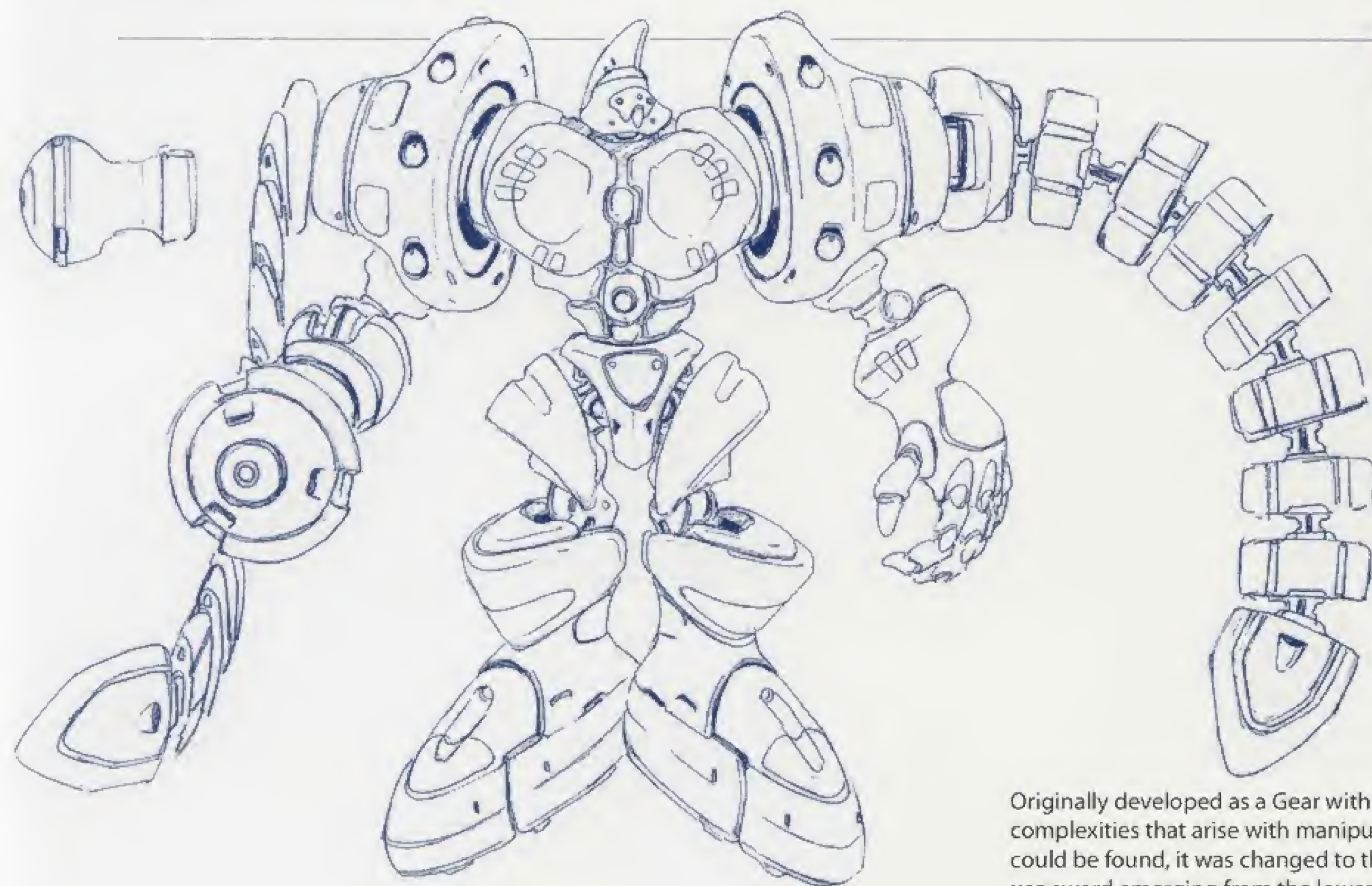
The small scale hover ability provided by the wings at both shoulders enable it to fly for a short time. It is with the intent of strong maneuverability that this machine was made. From the beginning it was tested along with the 5 other kinds of Gears, originally Renk was expected to use Lanceknight, but it was lost in the course of transport during guerilla warfare, and thus he was assigned to the Wandknight. Afterwards it was supplied with a power beam weapon exclusive to their Corps which was able to shoot at long range distances, this would make its capture by enemies during a strong attack very difficult.

## Swordknight

### SPEC DATA

Pilot	Stratski
Height	18.1 Sharls
Dry Weight	16.5 kahns
equipped wght.	19.8 kahns
sub generator output	380
generator coefficient	3.9
operation time	530 tsitol
frame durability	240
reactive level	1.4
Ether response	28.4
Ground speed	255 repsol
flight speed	770 repsol

Equipped weapon  
chain sword x2  
interior equipped  
gatling gun



Originally developed as a Gear with 4 arms, because of the inherent complexities that arise with manipulating them, no pilots capable could be found, it was changed to the current chain sword. A general use sword emerging from the lower arm portion, it is able to cause a wide spread attack pattern. A gatling gun equipped in the right arm was placed there for the specific use of the special Corps. It is highly treasured inside their ranks.

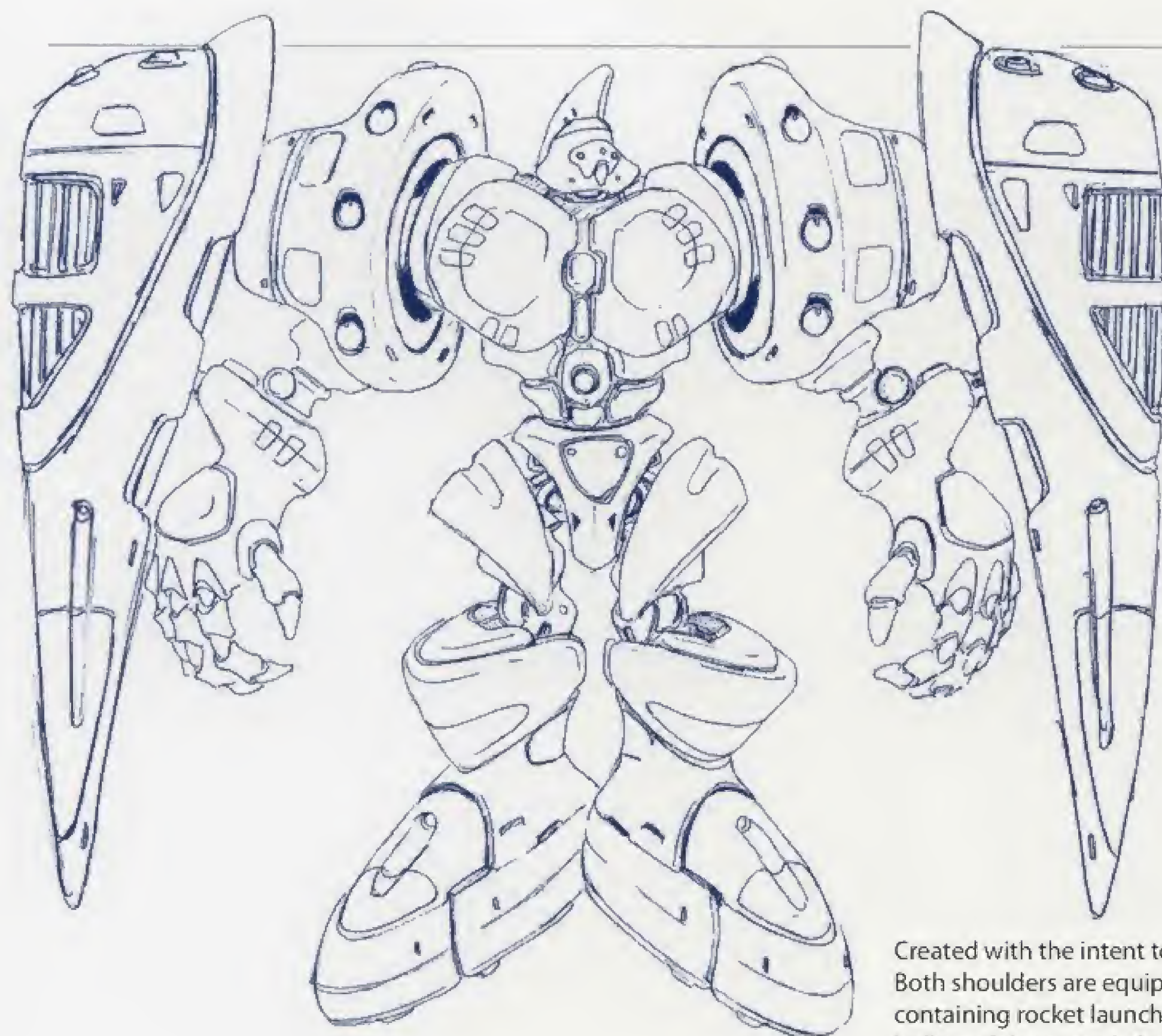


## Shieldknight

### SPEC DATA

Pilot	Broyer
Height	18.1 Sharls
Dry Weight	17.2 kahns
equipped wght.	22.6 kahns
sub generator output	380
generator coefficient	4.3
operation time	520 tsitol
frame durability	240
reactive level	1.4
Ether response	28.4
Ground speed	255 repsol
flight speed	770 repsol

Equipped weapon  
 pilebanger x2  
 shield equipped interior  
 rocket launcher gate x2



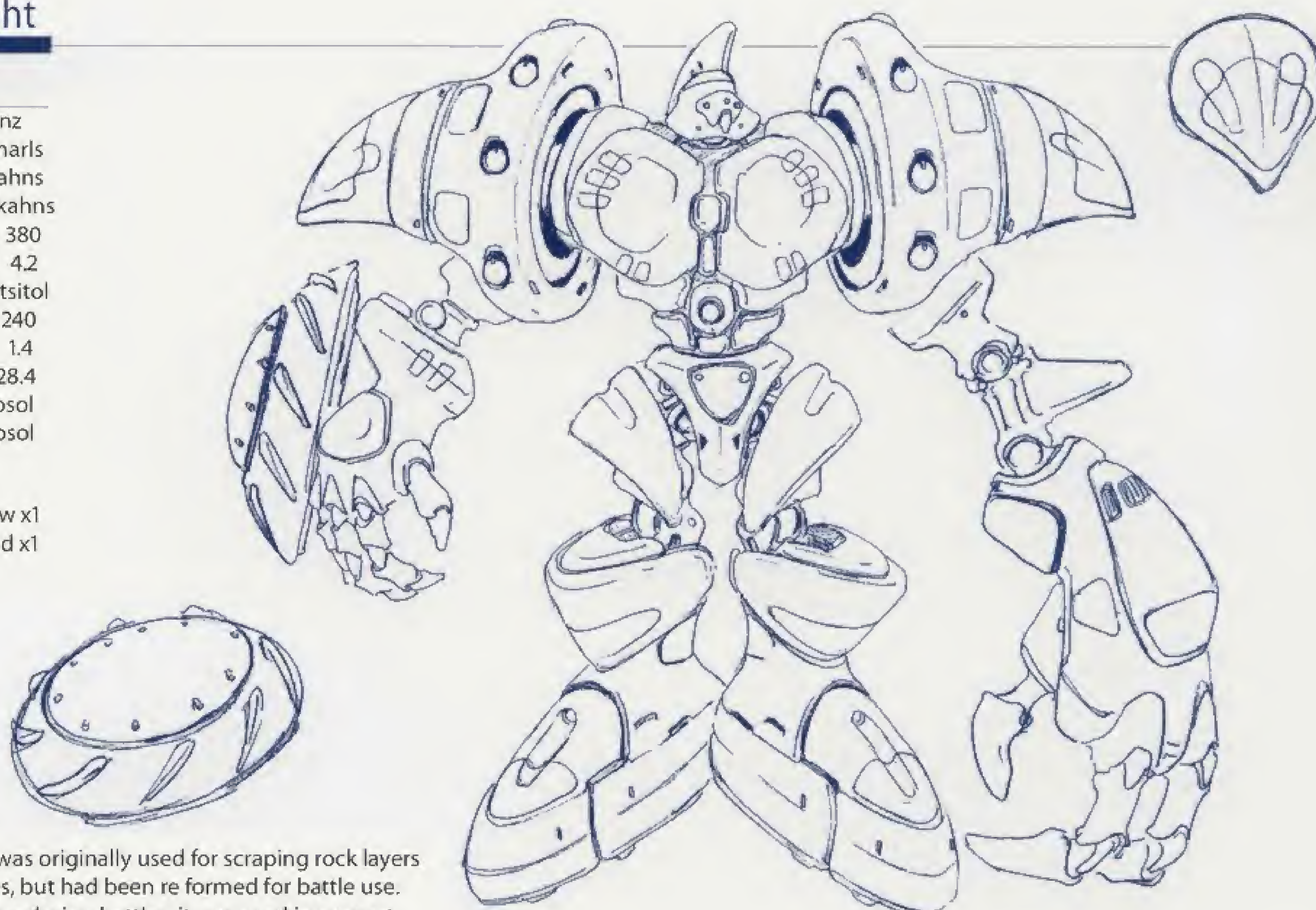
Created with the intent to support comrades and commanding officer. Both shoulders are equipped with high shielding ability, the upper portion containing rocket launchers, with the very end tips with built in pile banger bullets of sharp steel plating for firing. A general use machine with both long range and close range fighting capabilities, it is able to act in unison with the rest of the Corps.

## Clawknight

### SPEC DATA

Pilot	Franz
Height	18.1 Sharls
Dry Weight	17.6 kahns
equipped wght.	18.28 kahns
sub generator output	380
generator coefficient	4.2
operation time	530 tsitol
frame durability	240
reactive level	1.4
Ether response	28.4
Ground speed	250 repsol
flight speed	765 repsol

Equipped weapon  
 large scale claw x1  
 projectile shield x1



The gigantic left arm was originally used for scraping rock layers at ruin excavation sites, but had been re formed for battle use. So as to optimize its use during battles, it was used in concert with the Swordknight within the Corps.



# Elements

## Bladegash

### SPEC DATA

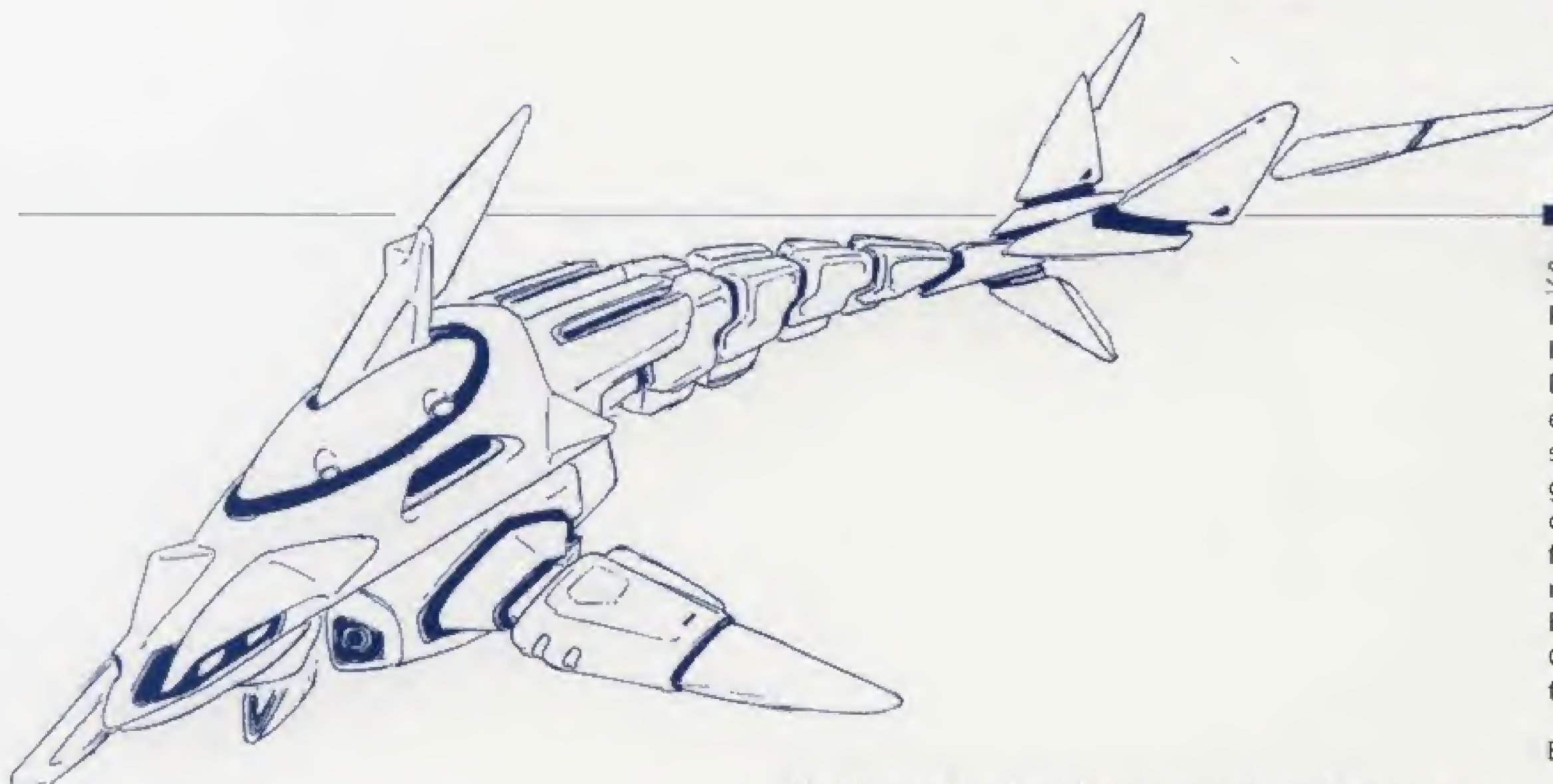
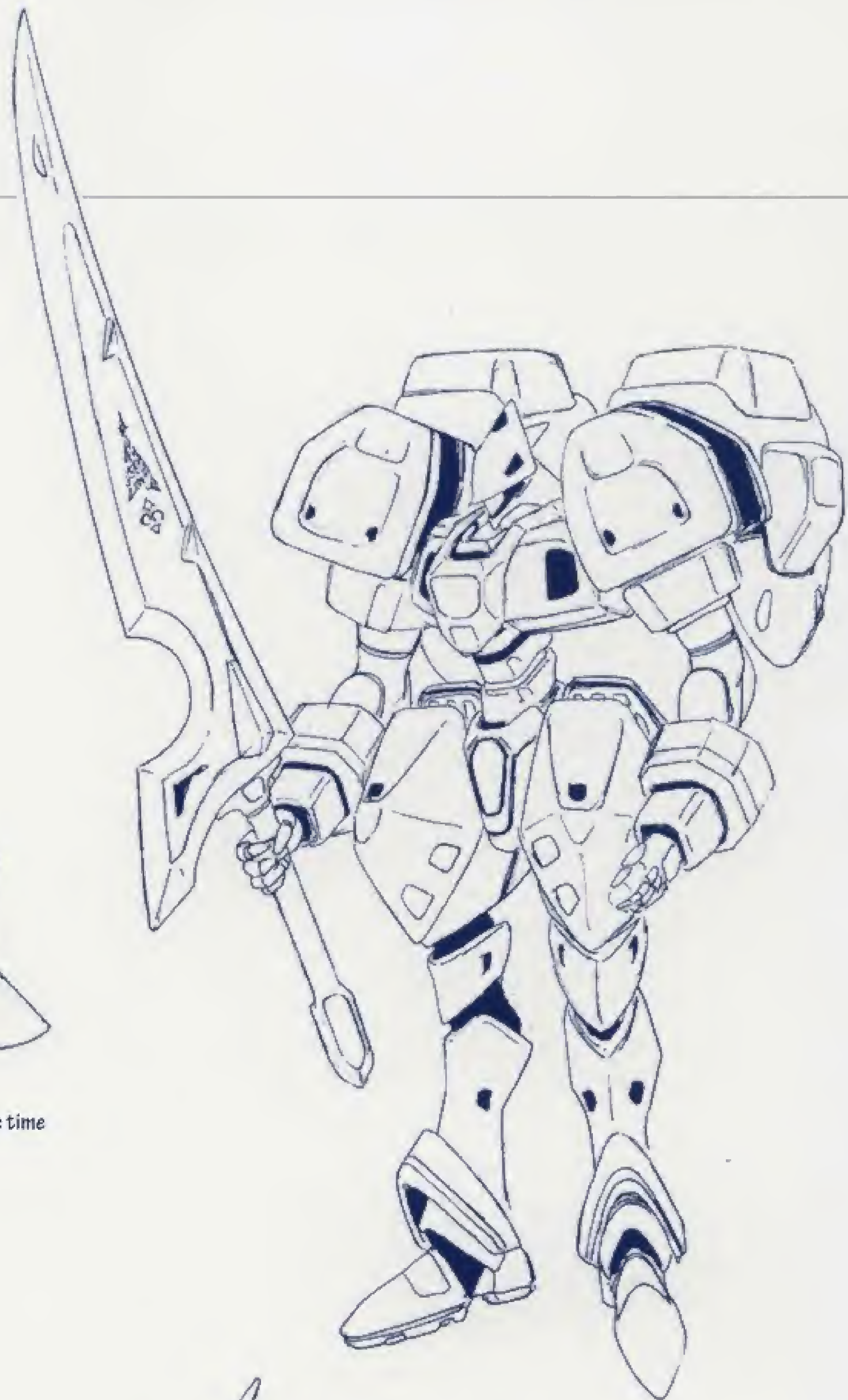
Pilot	Dominia
Height	15.8 Sharls
Dry Weight	11.2 kahns
equipped wght.	14.6 kahns
sub generator output	400
generator coefficient	4.5
operation time	600 tsitol
frame durability	250
reactive level	0.9
Ether response	55.4
Ground speed	270 repsol
flight speed	960 repsol

Equipped weapon  
Ether sword X1

The original name of this machine being 'Gash', it is equipped with a variety of weapons. However, the designated pilot's special skill is that of sword fighting, and the name was changed due to its being loaded with several different types of Ether swords. Also, when in fusion as one of the G-Elements, it's attack power is at its maximum. When fused with the other 3 machines, its Ether sword achieves its ultimate potential.



the face cover opens at the time of fusion.



## Marinebasher

### SPEC DATA

Pilot	Kelvena
Height	23.5 Sharls
Dry Weight	18.9 kahns
equipped wght.	23.6 kahns
sub generator output	320
generator coefficient	4.6
operation time	590 tsitol
frame durability	240
reactive level	0.9
Ether response	57
Ground speed	255 repsol
flight speed	720 repsol

Equipped weapon  
water cannon X1

The Elements' machines have many fighting abilities during battle, and according to its name, Marinebasher specializes in ocean battles. Originally only equipped for sea battles, it was overhauled and equipped for air and land battles as well. Also, its Ether potential is maximized to its full potential during fusion as one of the G-Elements, and the Gear's pilot's water Ether abilities are also increased enormously.



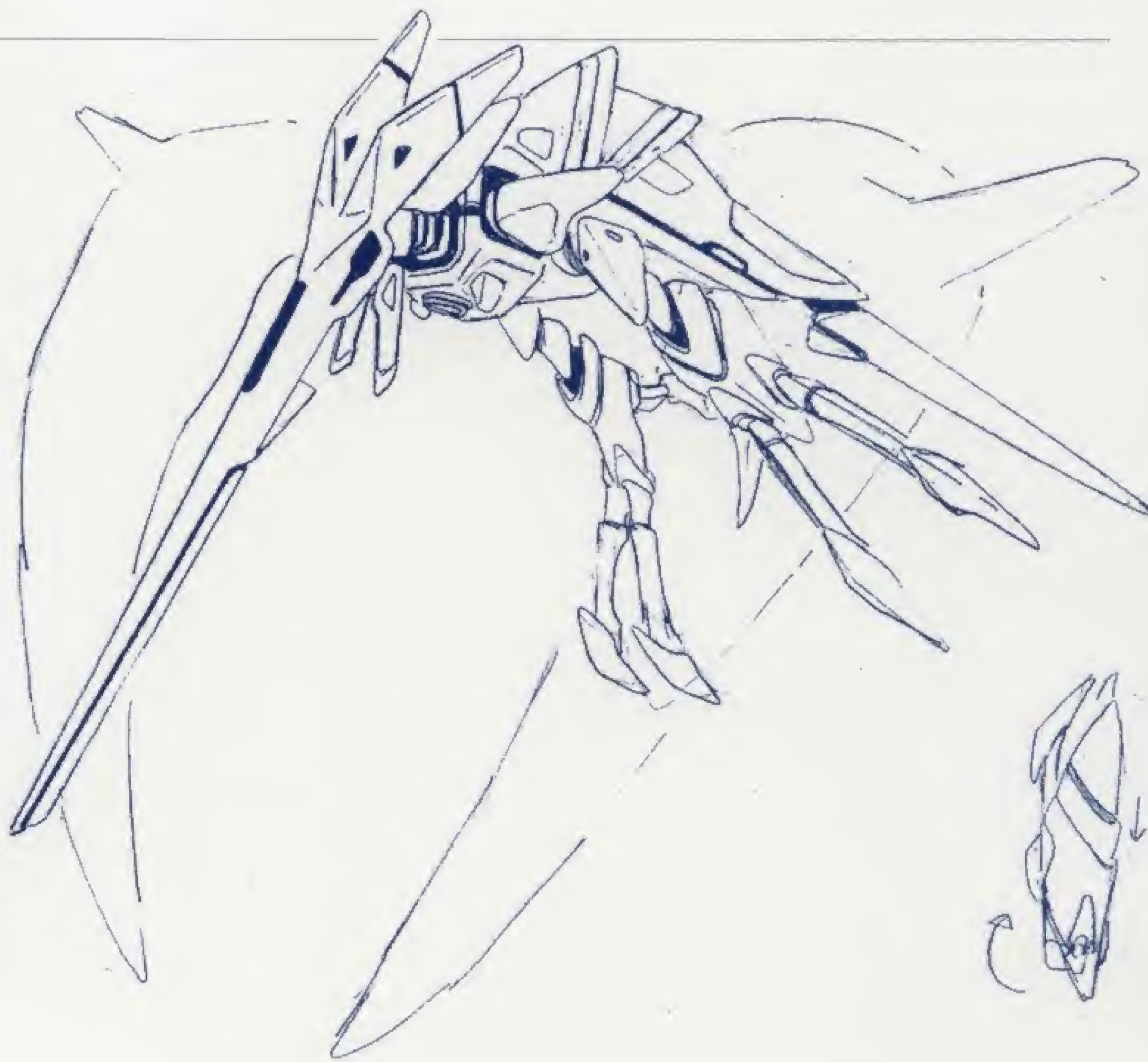
## Skyghene

### SPEC DATA

Pilot	Tolone
Height	17.7 Sharls
Dry Weight	12.1 kahns
equipped wght.	14.2 kahns
sub generator output	380
generator coefficient	4.4
operation time	580 tsitol
frame durability	260
reactive level	0.9
Ether response	55.6
Ground speed	370 repsol
flight speed	1300 repsol

Equipped weapon  
Sonic wave cannon X1

A Gear that specializes in high speed attacks. The engine carries a high gain Wind Ether ability. With that goal in mind during fusion, it is not inferior in this one aspect to other machines. During fusion, the body becomes the Gear's wings, and when single it uses the wings to maintain balance for high speed jumps. Also, capable of fusing to Bladegash's back, it is in this mode that it is labeled 'Skyghene'.

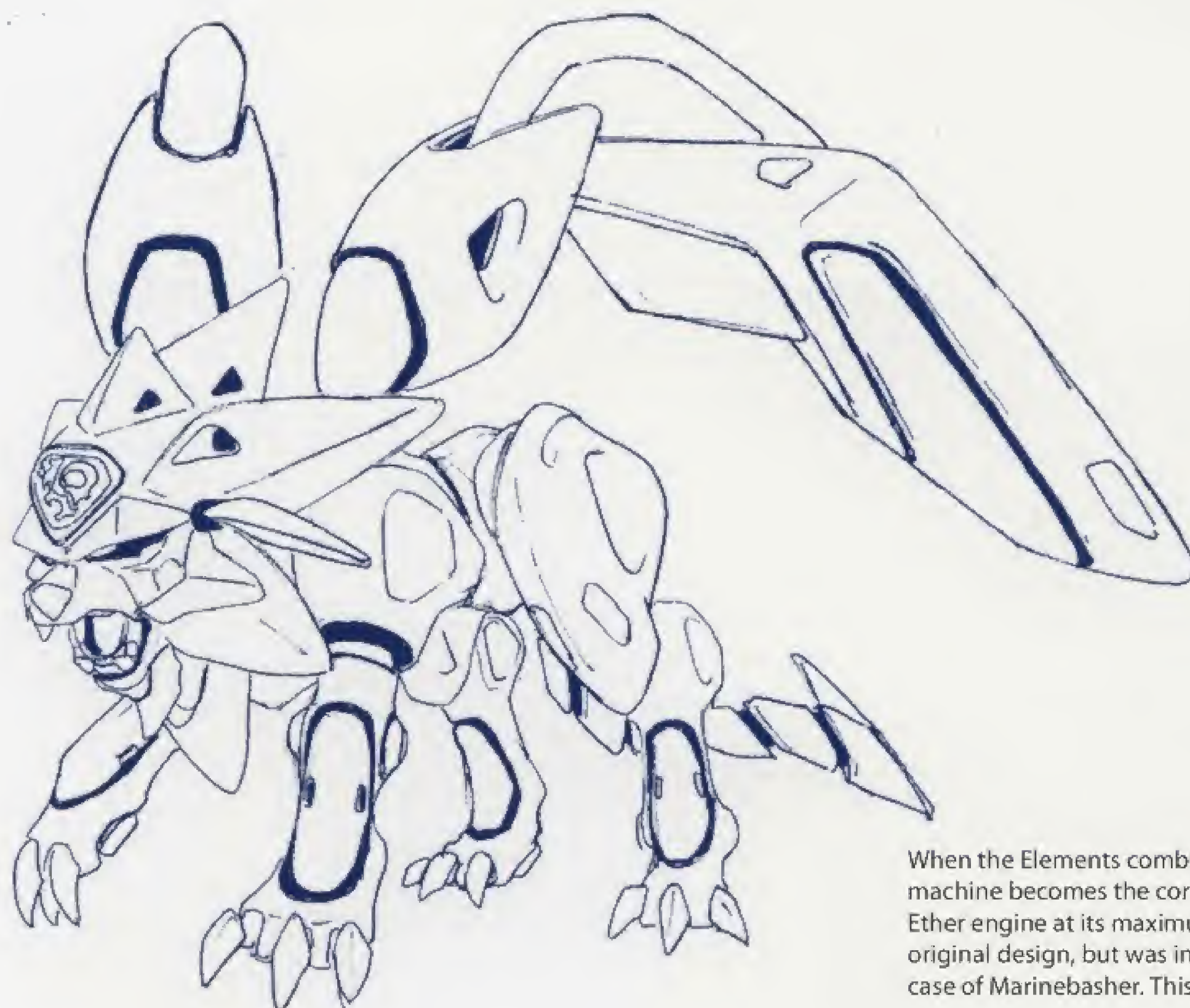


## Grandgowl

### SPEC DATA

Pilot	Seraphita
Height	16.5 Sharls
Dry Weight	12.8 kahns
equipped wght.	17.2 kahns
sub generator output	500
generator coefficient	4.2
operation time	590 tsitol
frame durability	230
reactive level	0.9
Ether response	56.8
Ground speed	260 repsol
flight speed	1080 repsol

Equipped weapon  
Heat wave projectile X1



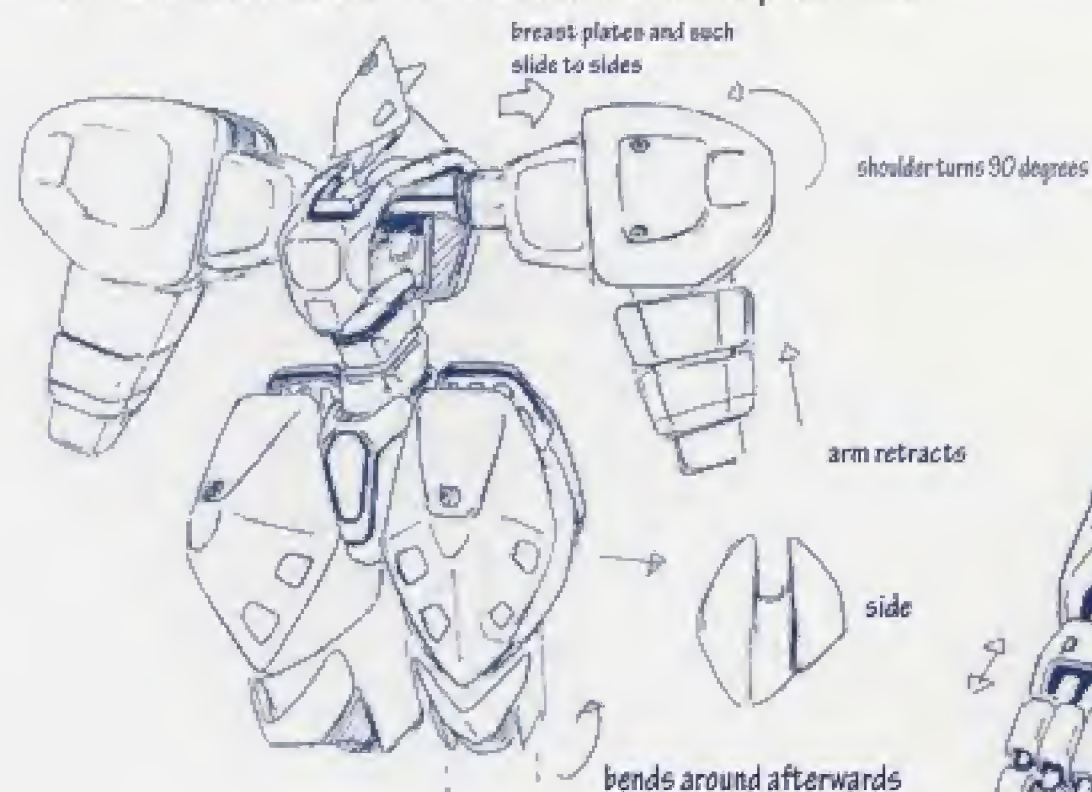
When the Elements combine with Seraphita in the lead, her machine becomes the core of the 4 fused Gears with its Fire Ether engine at its maximum capacity. This was not in the original design, but was included for general use as in the case of Marinebasher. This is its specialty during battle.



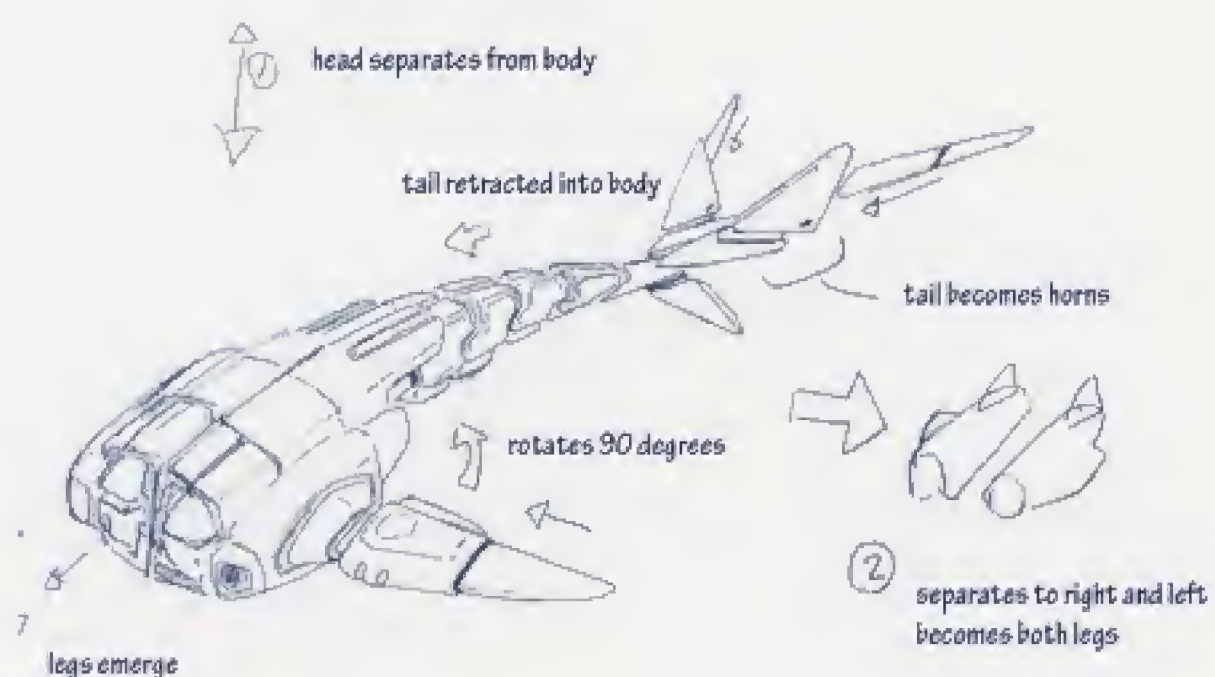
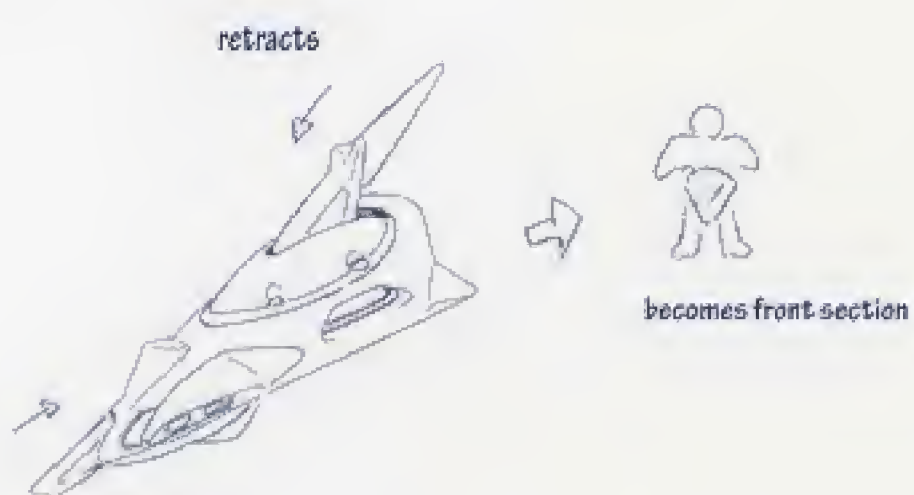
## G-Elements

The machine formed by the combining of the 4 individuals Elements. Reputed far and wide throughout the nations as a fearsome foe in long battles, it was created with the ideal of sustaining the morale of the soldiers. The ultimate effect of its becoming a major symbol in battle extends to it being celebrated in song throughout Solaris concerning the 'G-Elements', at least according to official public records, in actual fact it might only be the designer Citan who has an active interest.

During the merging, it is not only Bladegash that navigates, but the combined force of all 4 machine's generators for a concerted effort. After merging, the Ether ability of the pilots of each part is increased greatly and the individual attributes of their abilities can be used at their full potential.

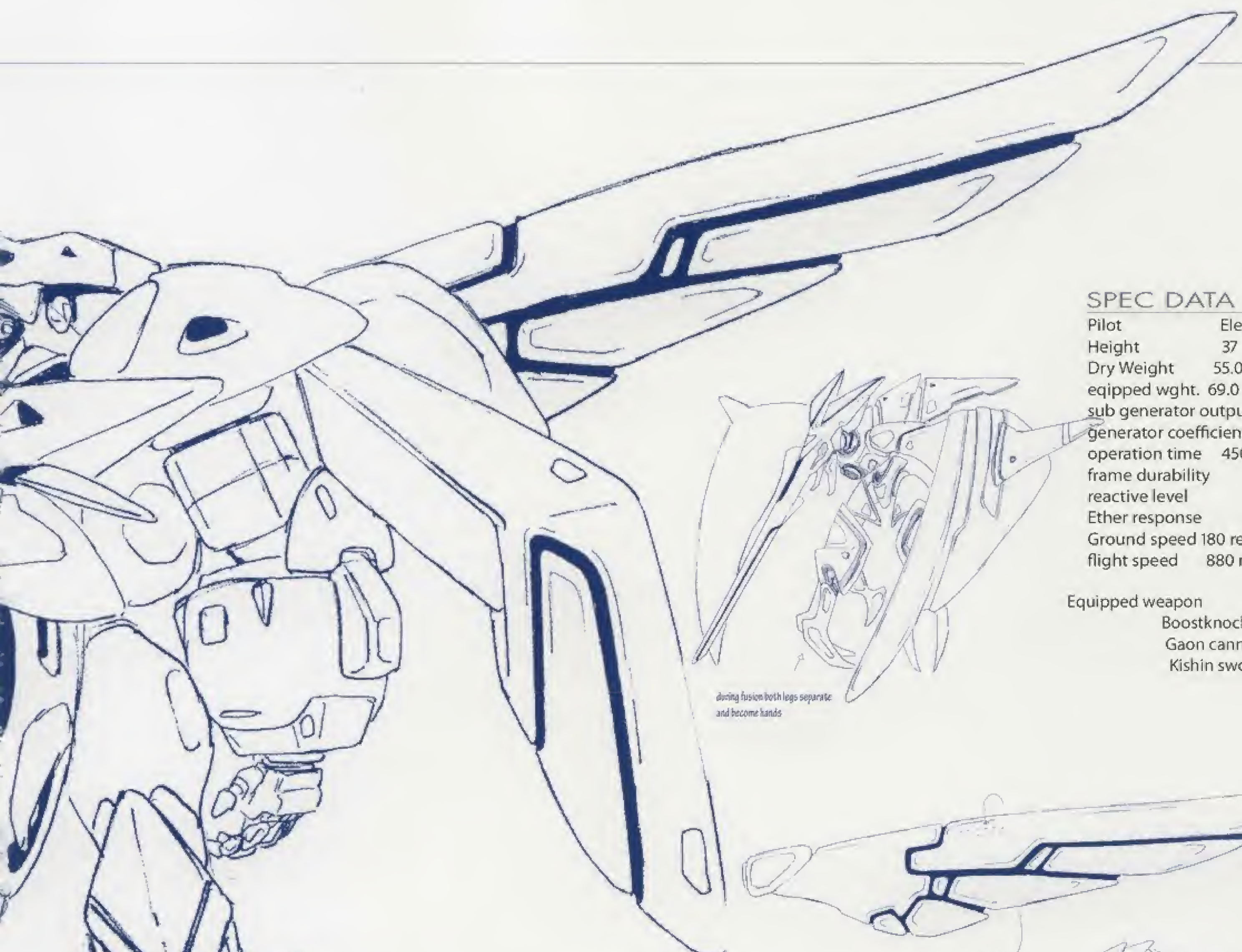


what was normally Dominia's backpack becomes the 'hand'



② separates to right and left becomes both legs

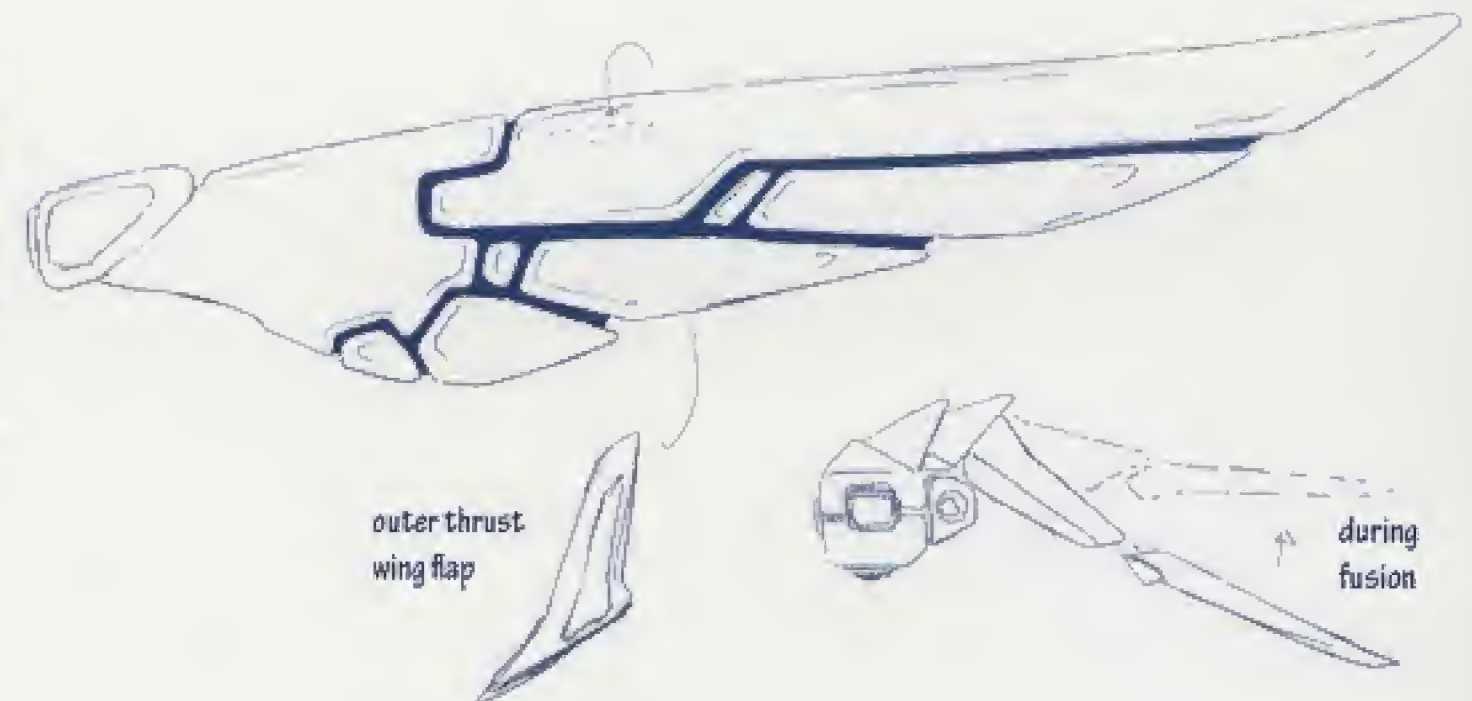




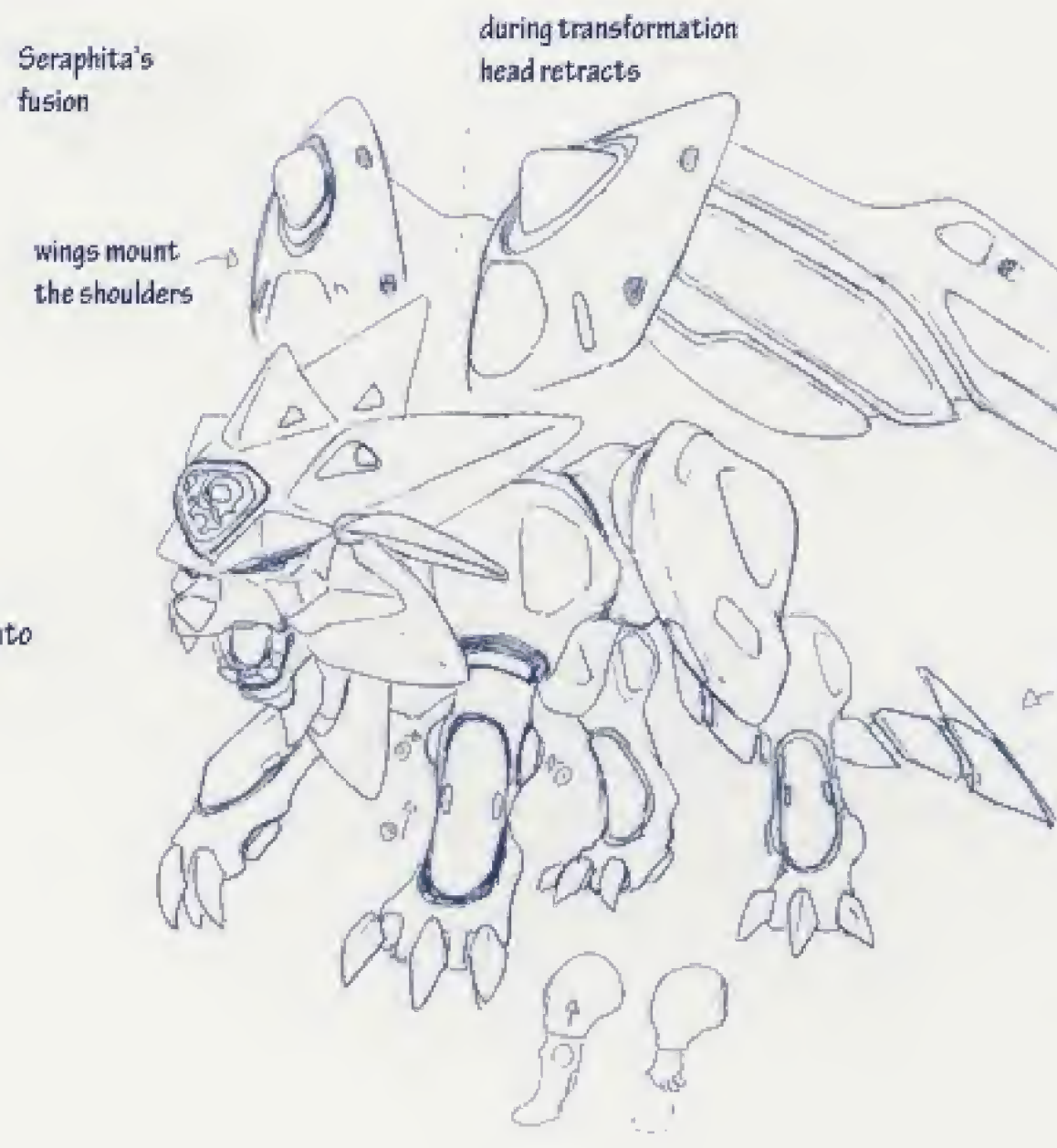
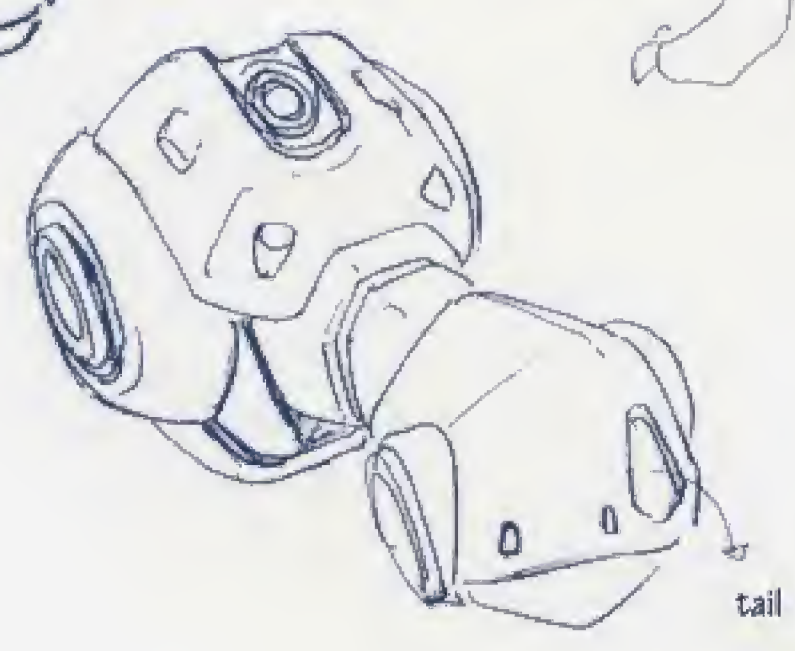
# SPEC DATA

Pilot	Elements
Height	37 Sharls
Dry Weight	55.0 kahns
equipped wght.	69.0 kahns
sub generator output	1600
generator coefficient	4.3
operation time	450 tsitol
frame durability	300
reactive level	1.2
Ether response	55.4
Ground speed	180 repsol
flight speed	880 repsol

Equipped weapon  
 Boostknocker X2  
 Gaon cannon X1  
 Kishin sword X1



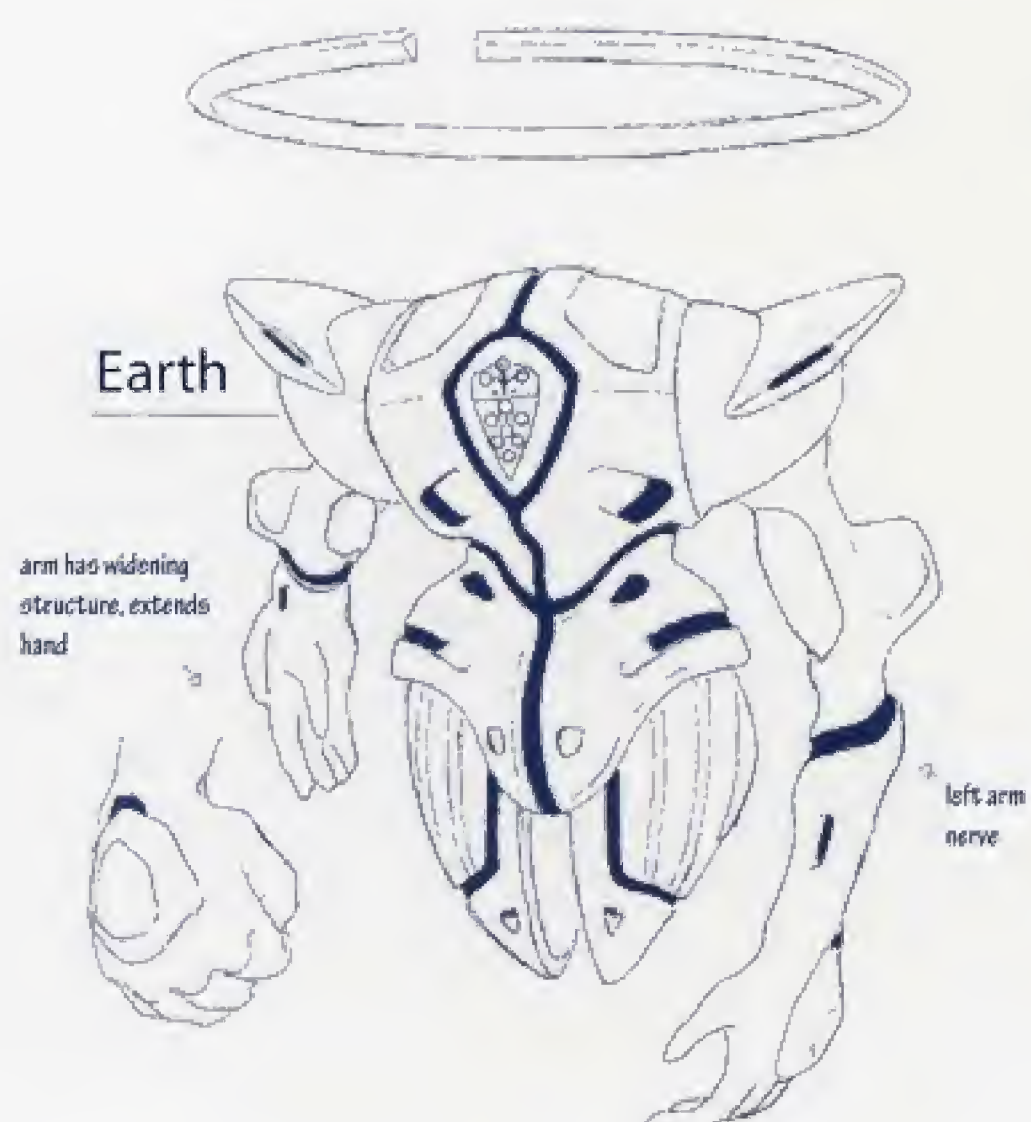
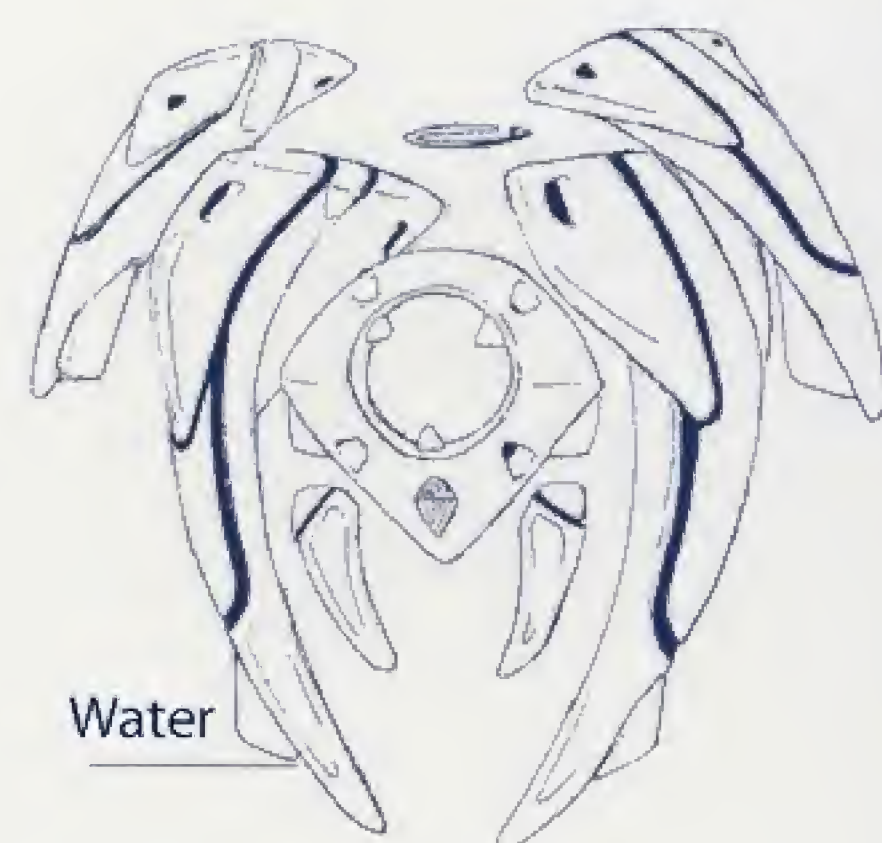
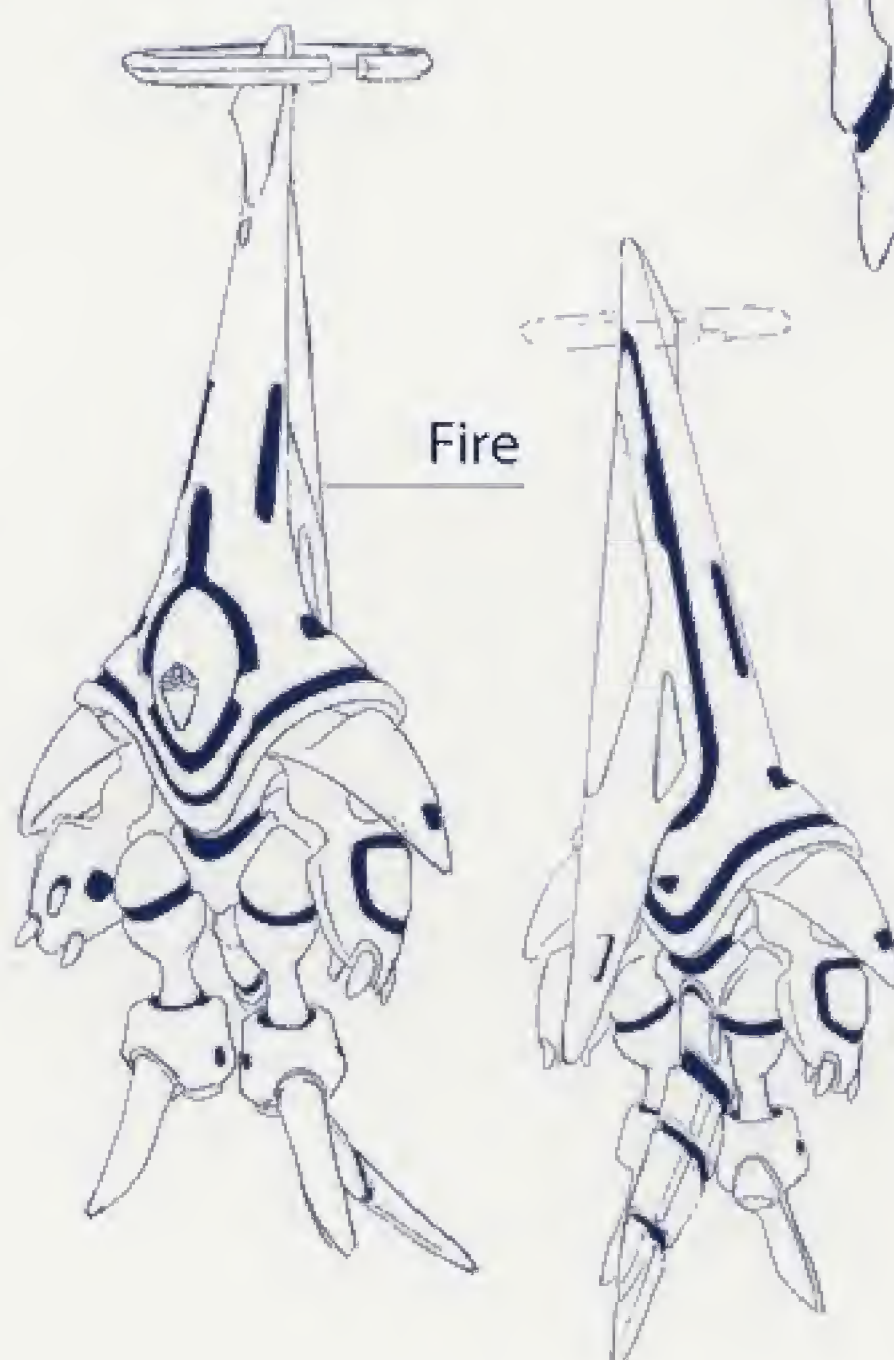
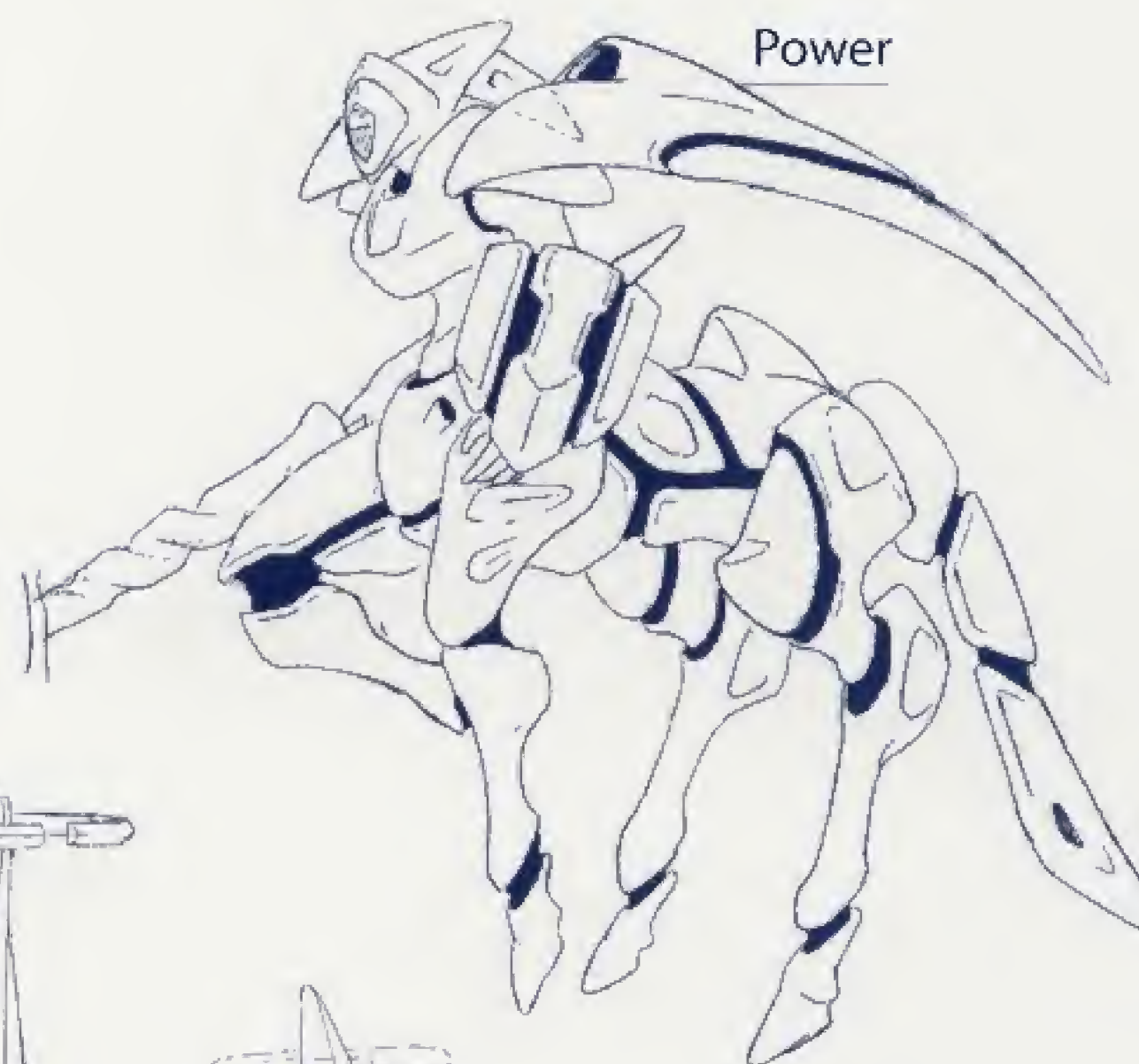
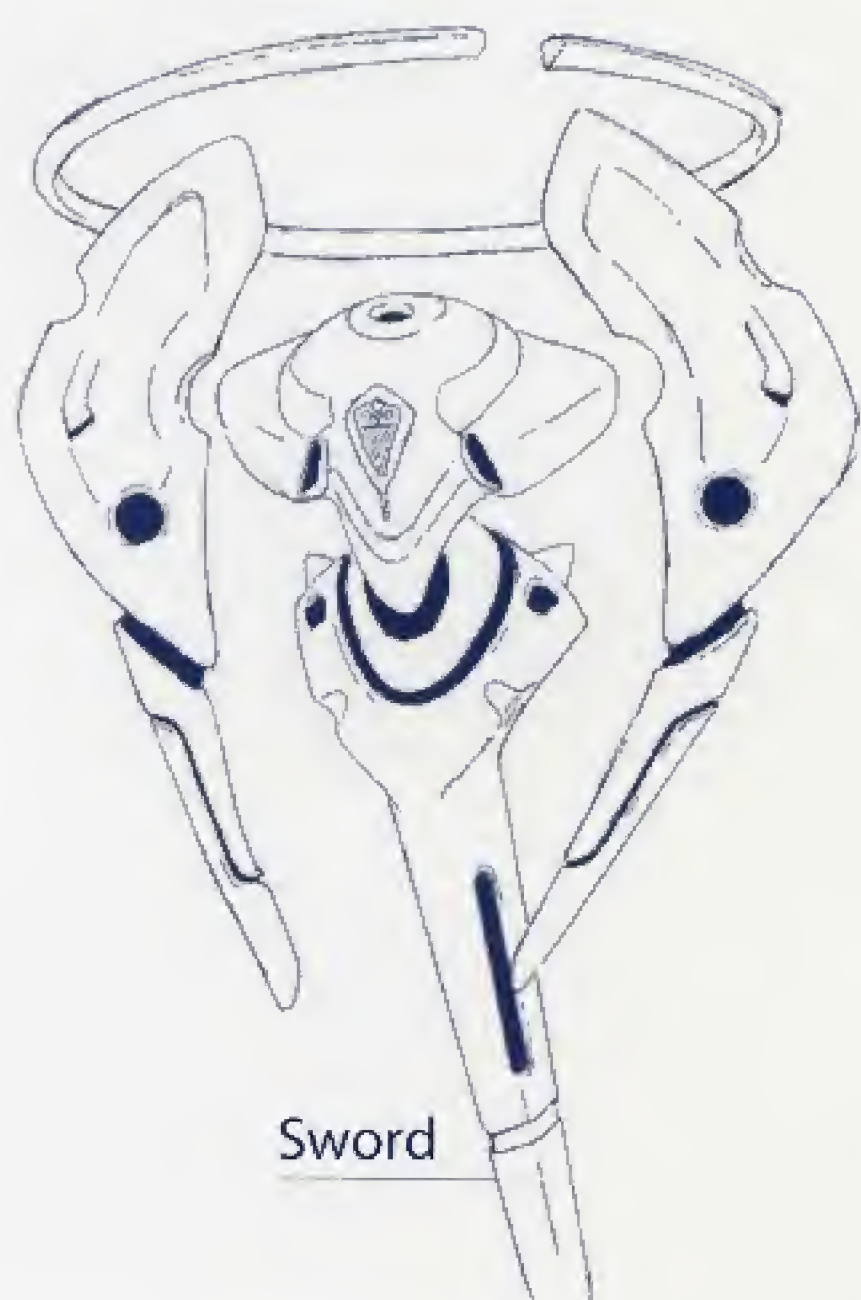
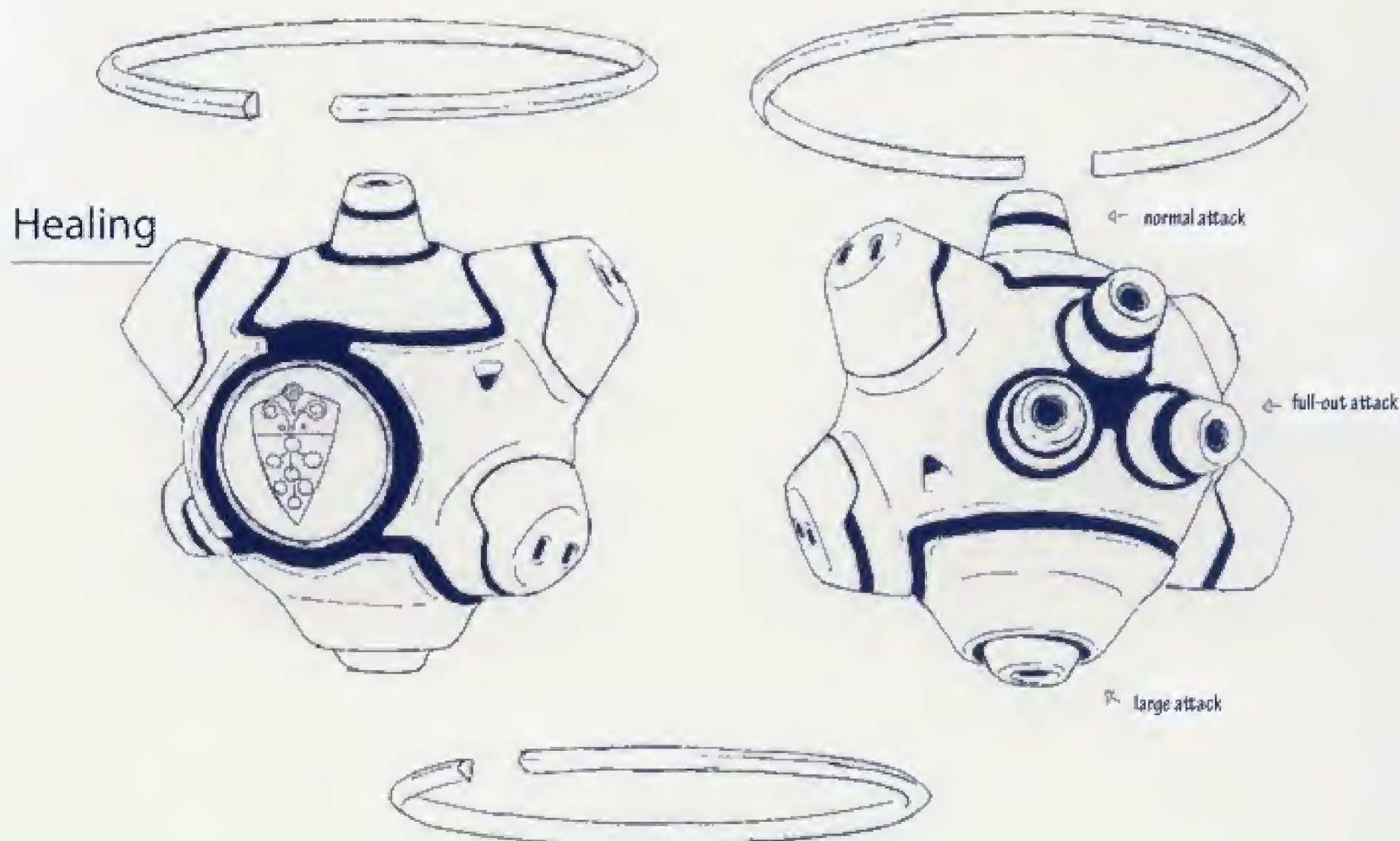
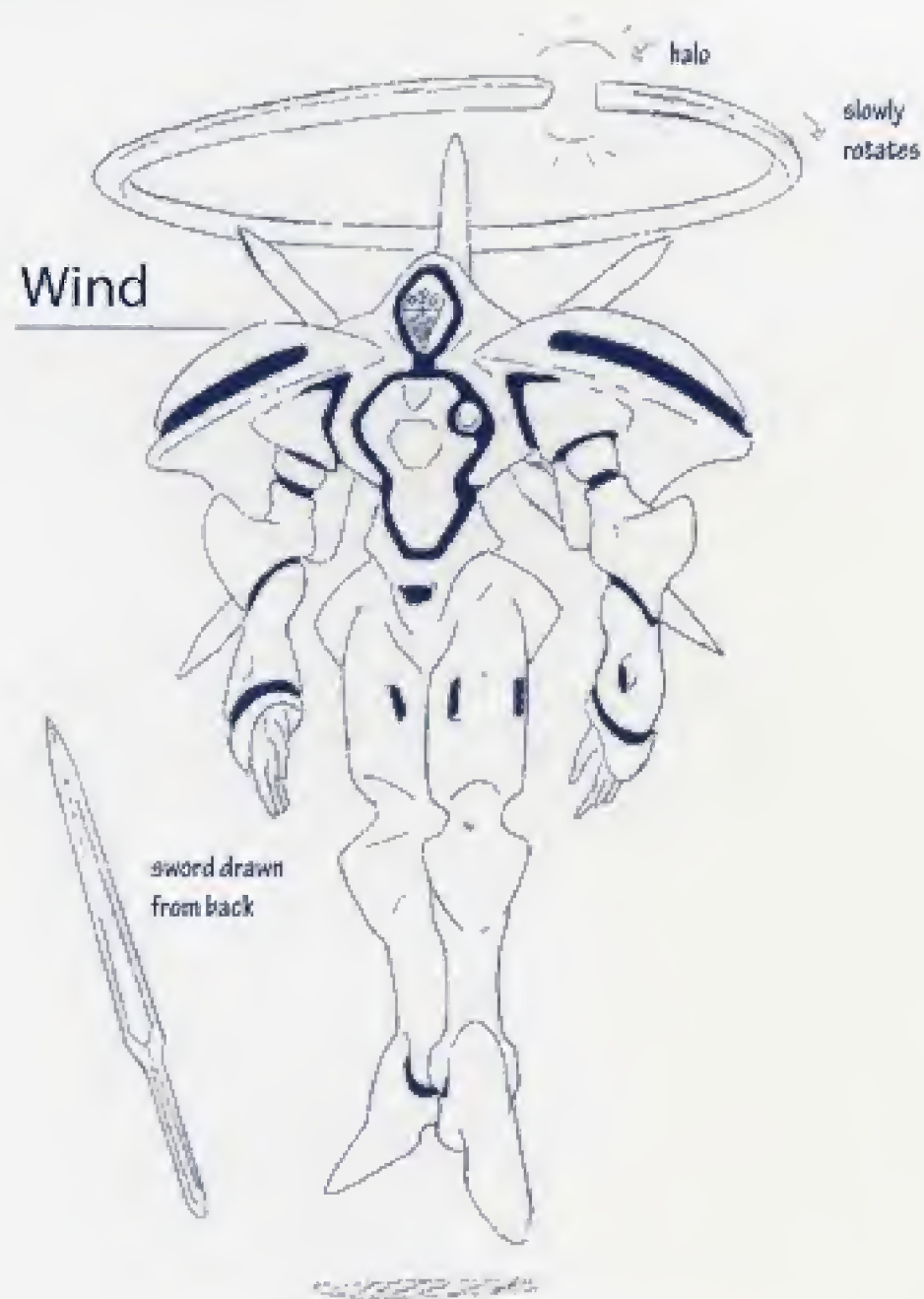
Dominia's merged form



during transformation retracts into rear



# Angels



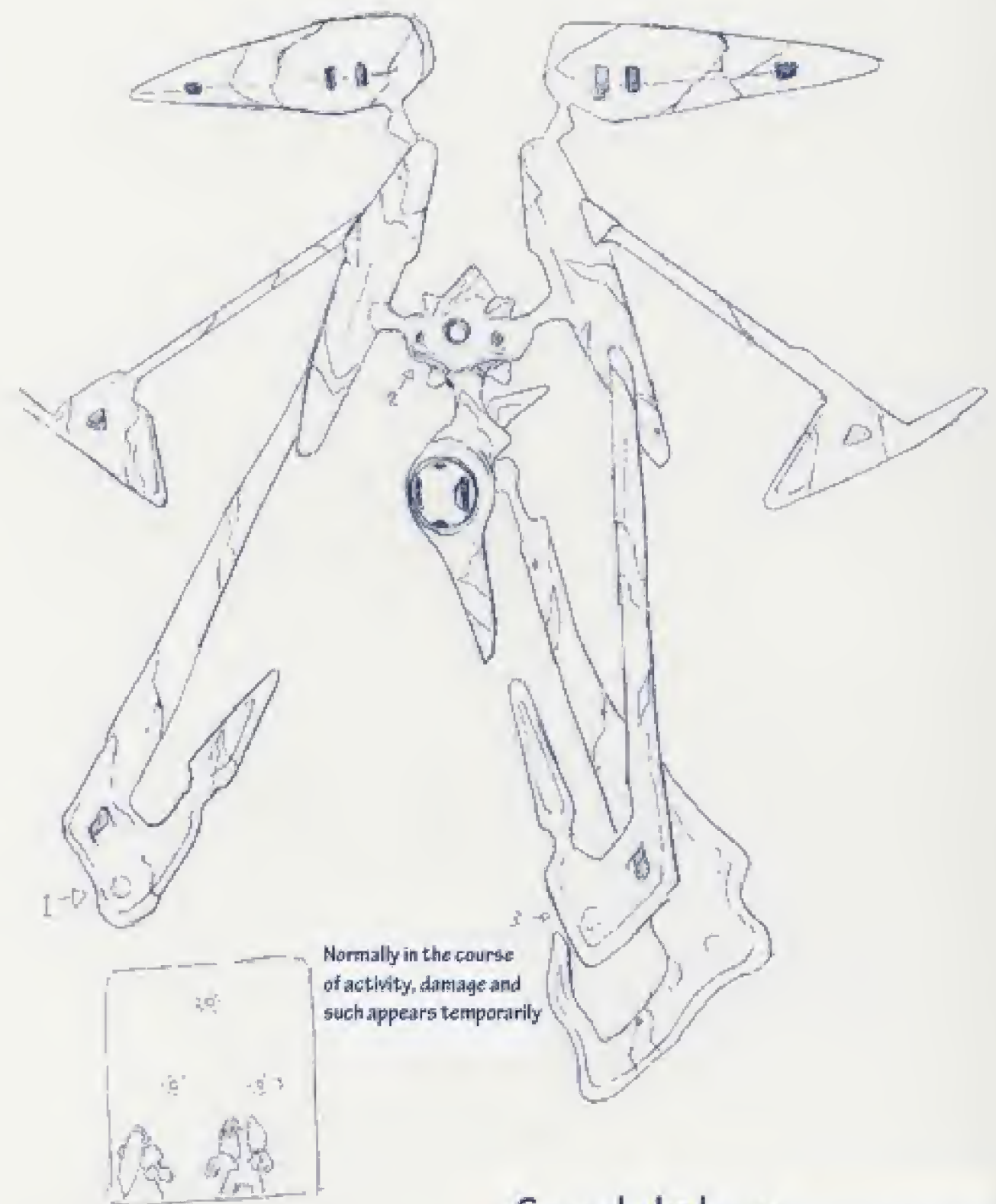
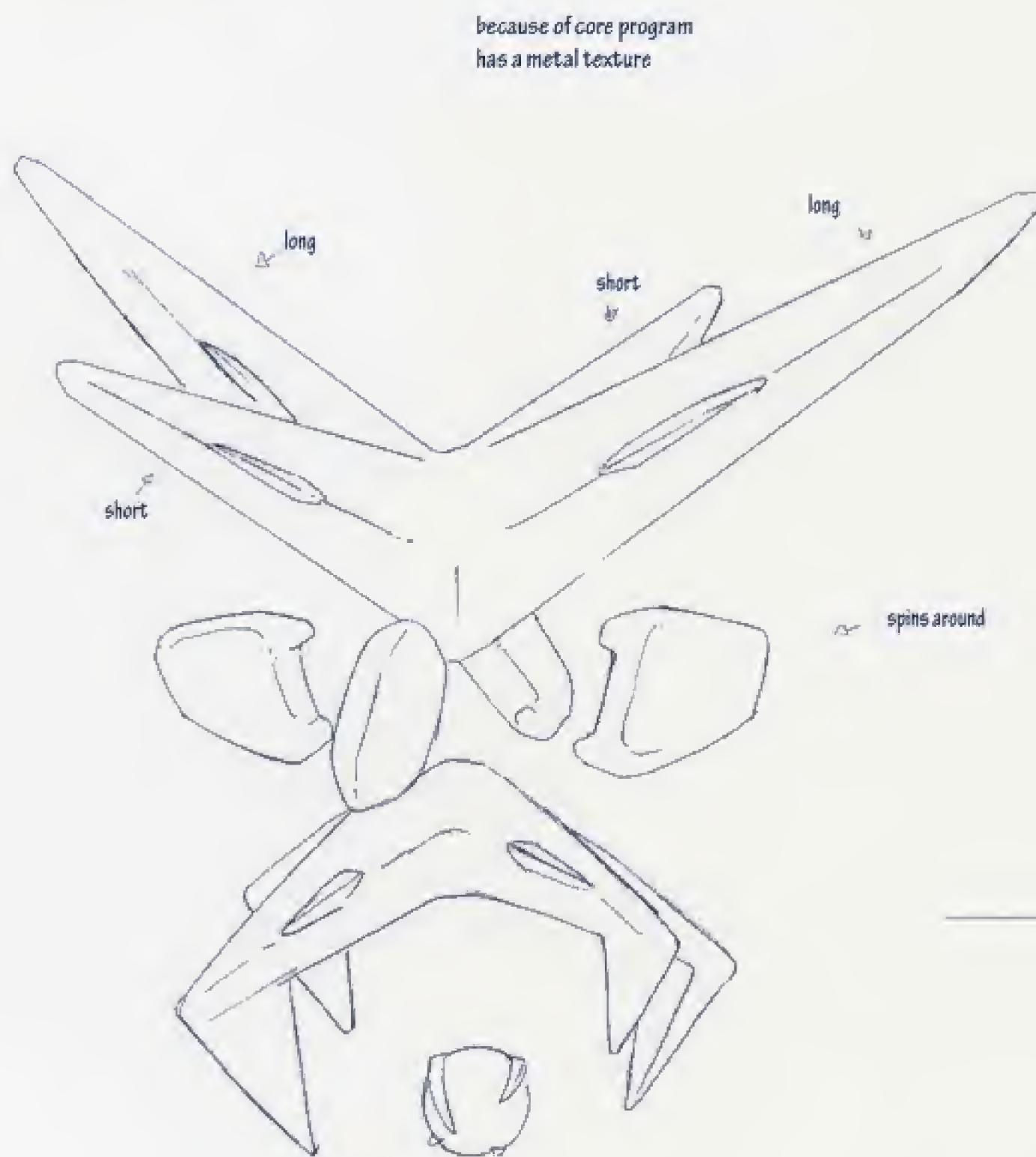
The Angels are near assault terminal interfaces for the protection of Deus inside Merkava. Created from parts of -humans- processed by the M Plan and furnished with Ether ability, they also possess the ability to resurrect themselves due to nanomachines. The various attacks wielded by each within their specialty represents the highest form of that Ether ability, and they take on many forms. As stated within the story, they are named according to the nature of their Ether abilities.



# The Four Pillars

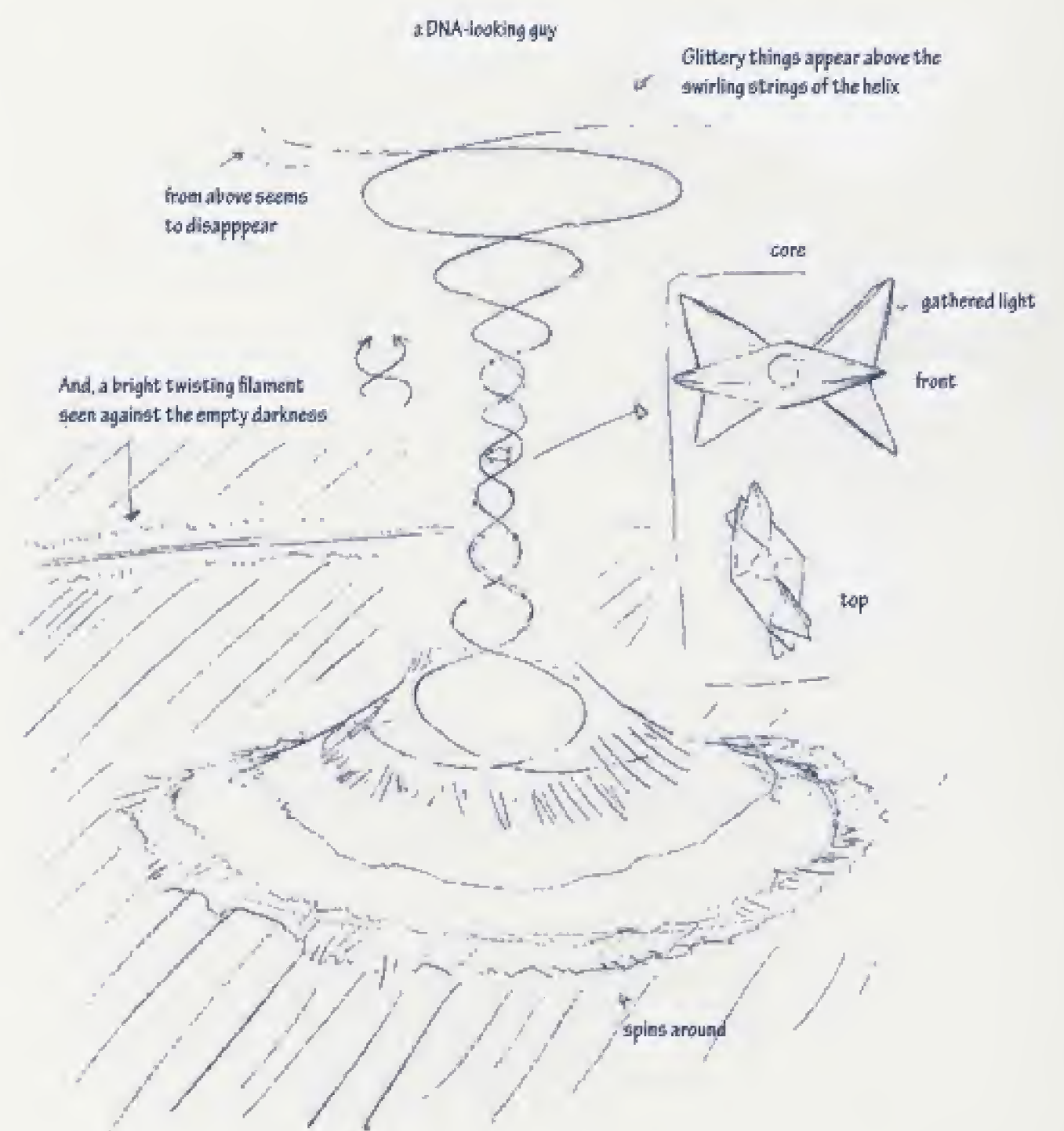
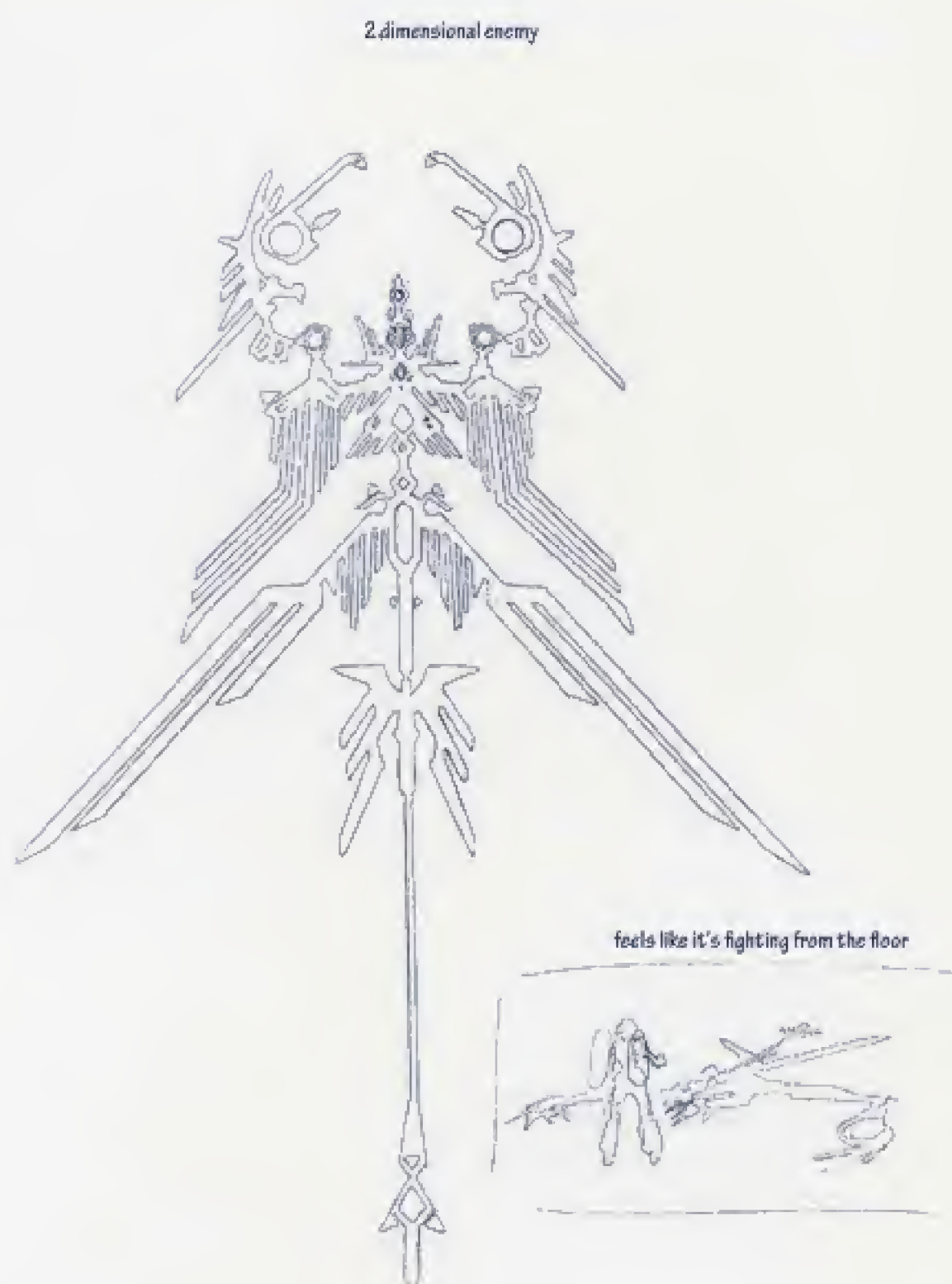
The bodies formed by Deus' function as a phenomenon actualizer. The details are a mystery, but they are not the same substance as that dimension, but an aggregate existence of energy. They do not have individual wills, but are controlled entirely by Deus.

## Metatron



## Sandalphon

## Harlute



## Marlute

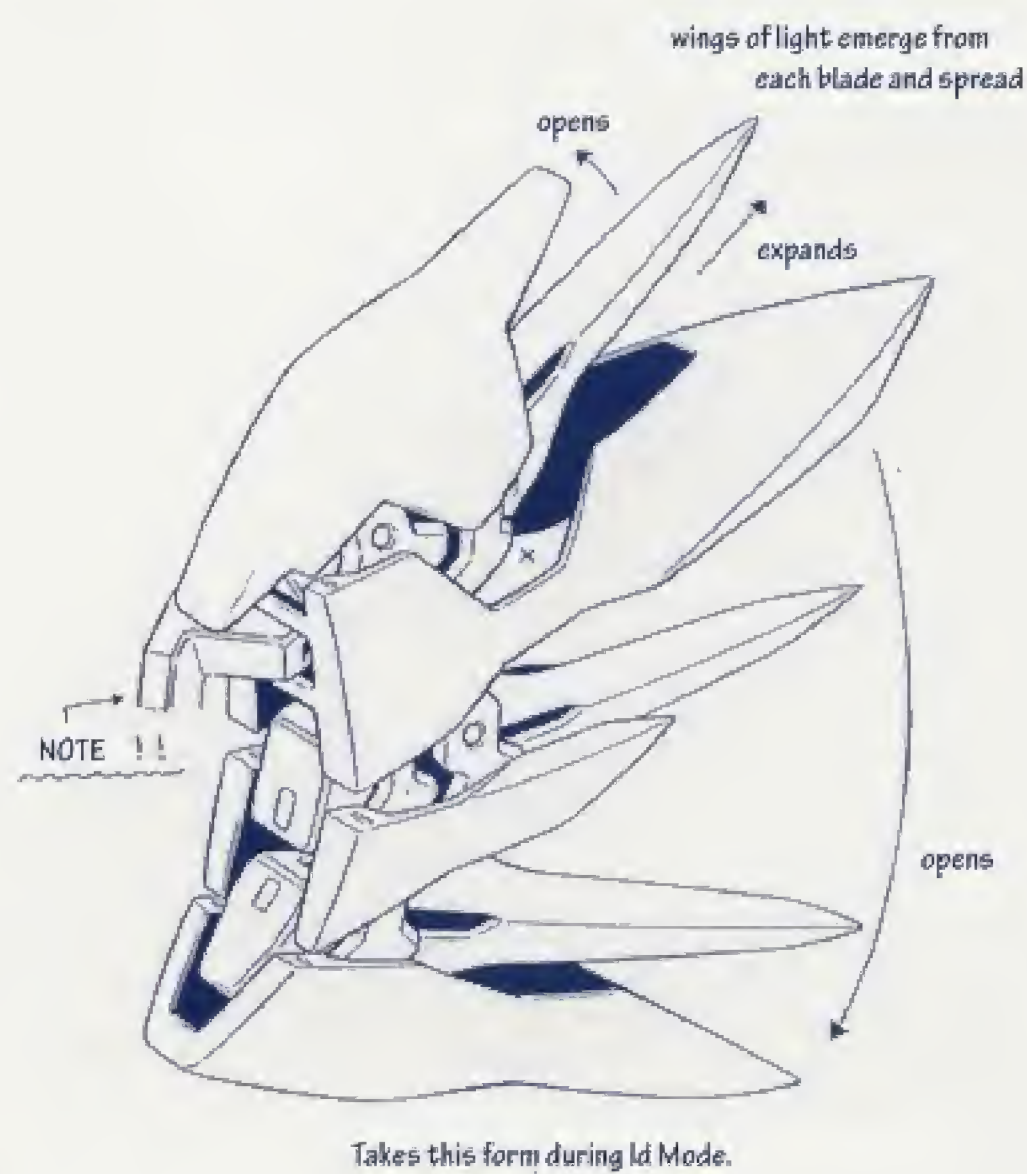
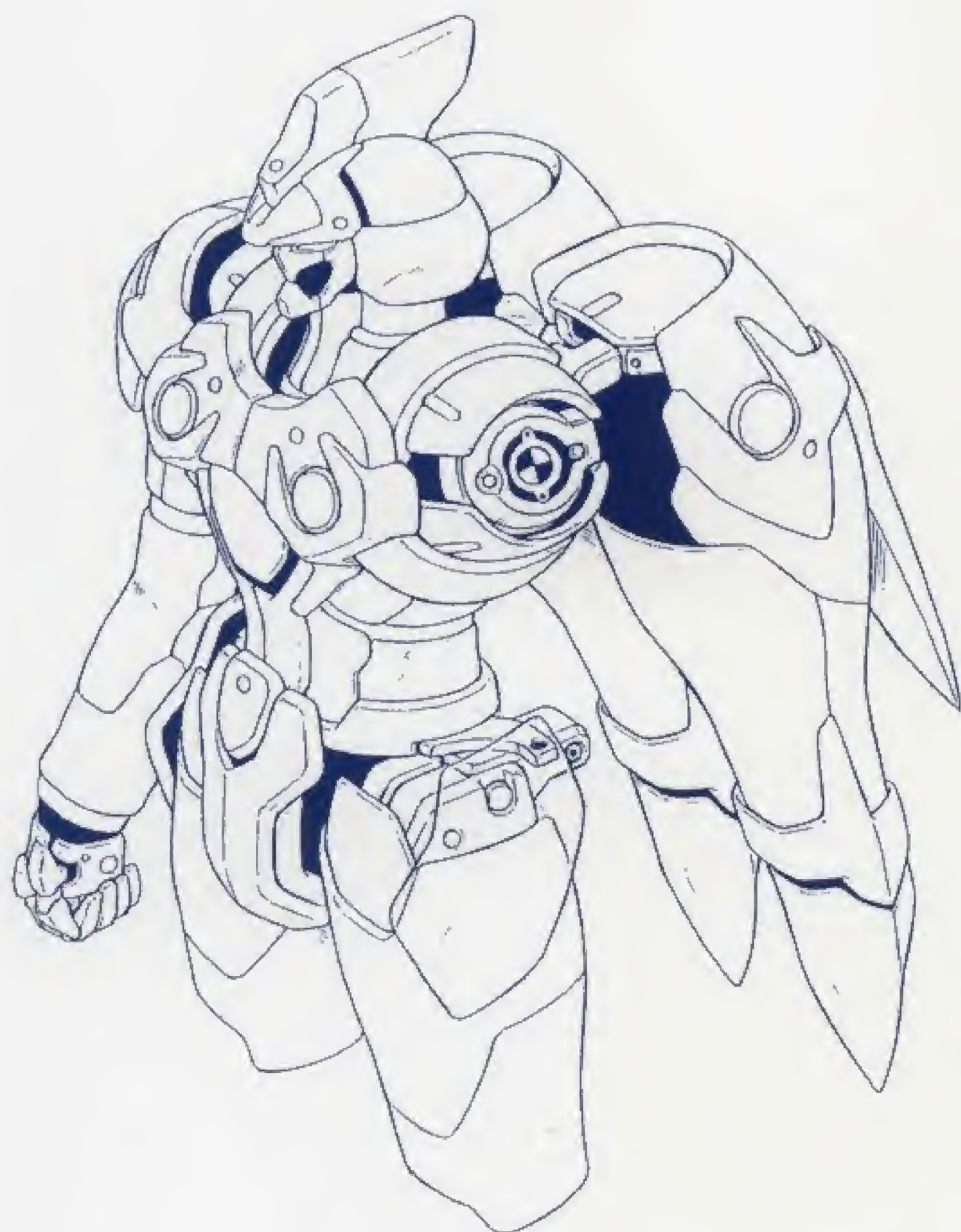


## Weltall

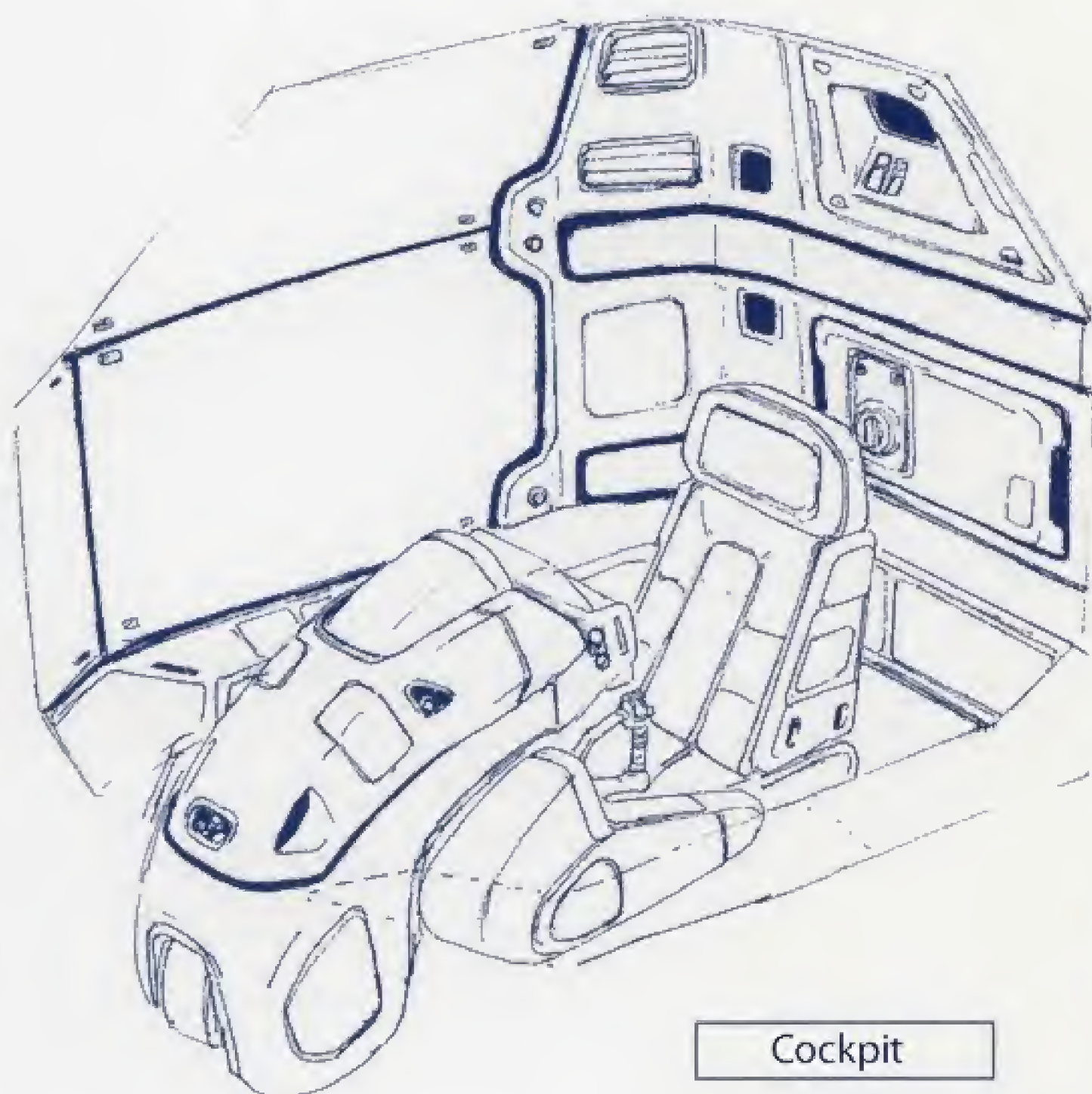
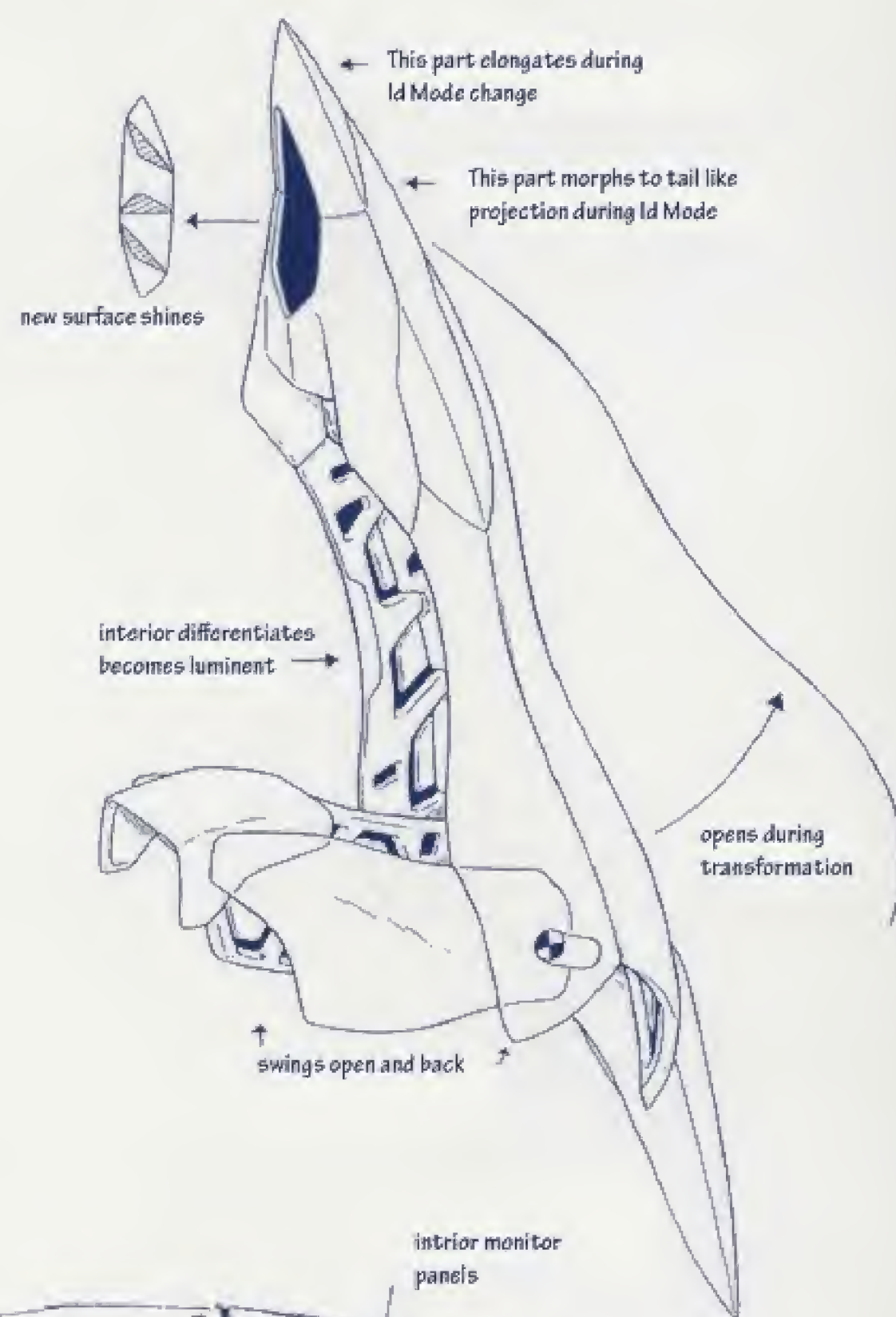


Head section

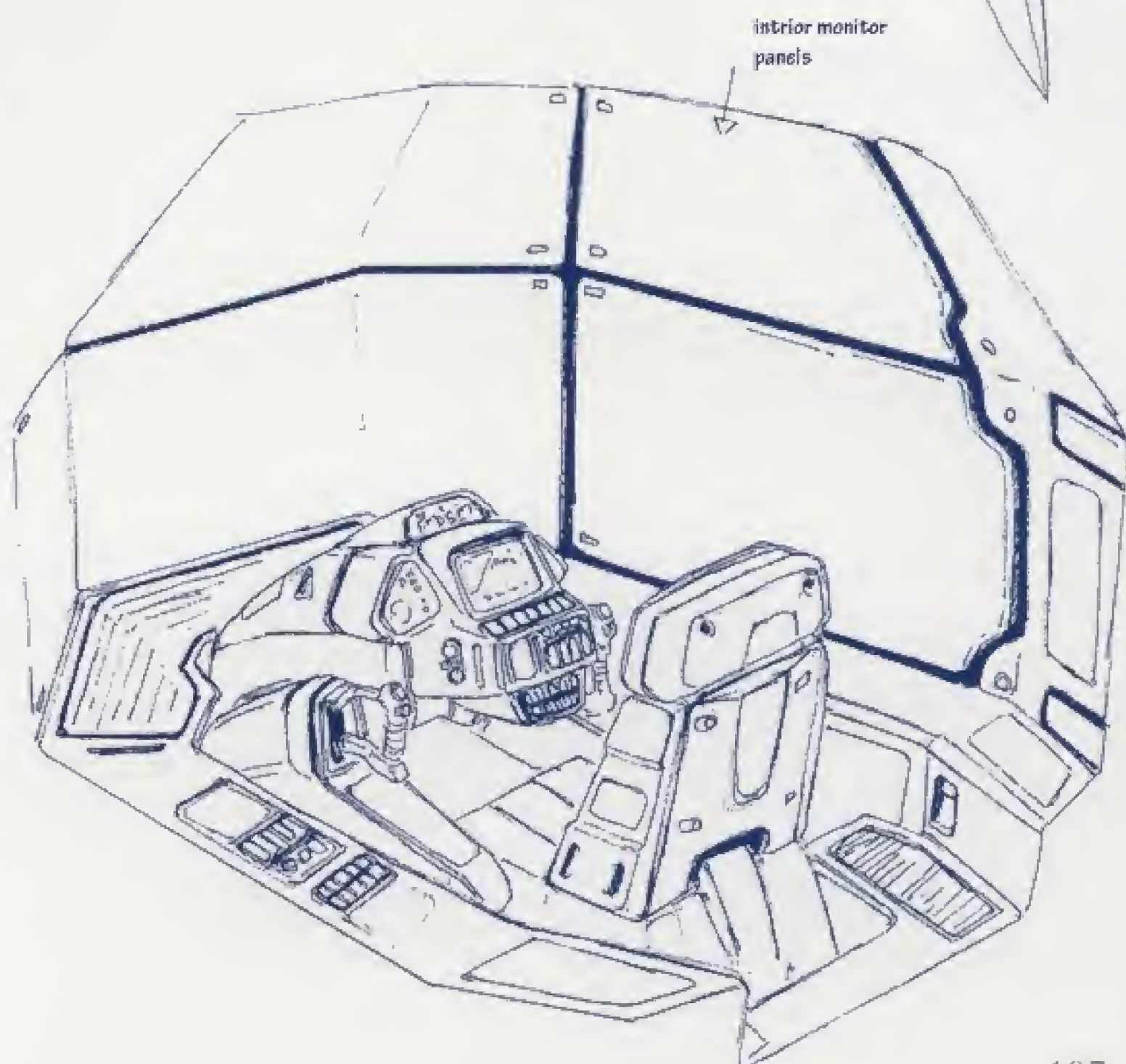




Back unit



Cockpit

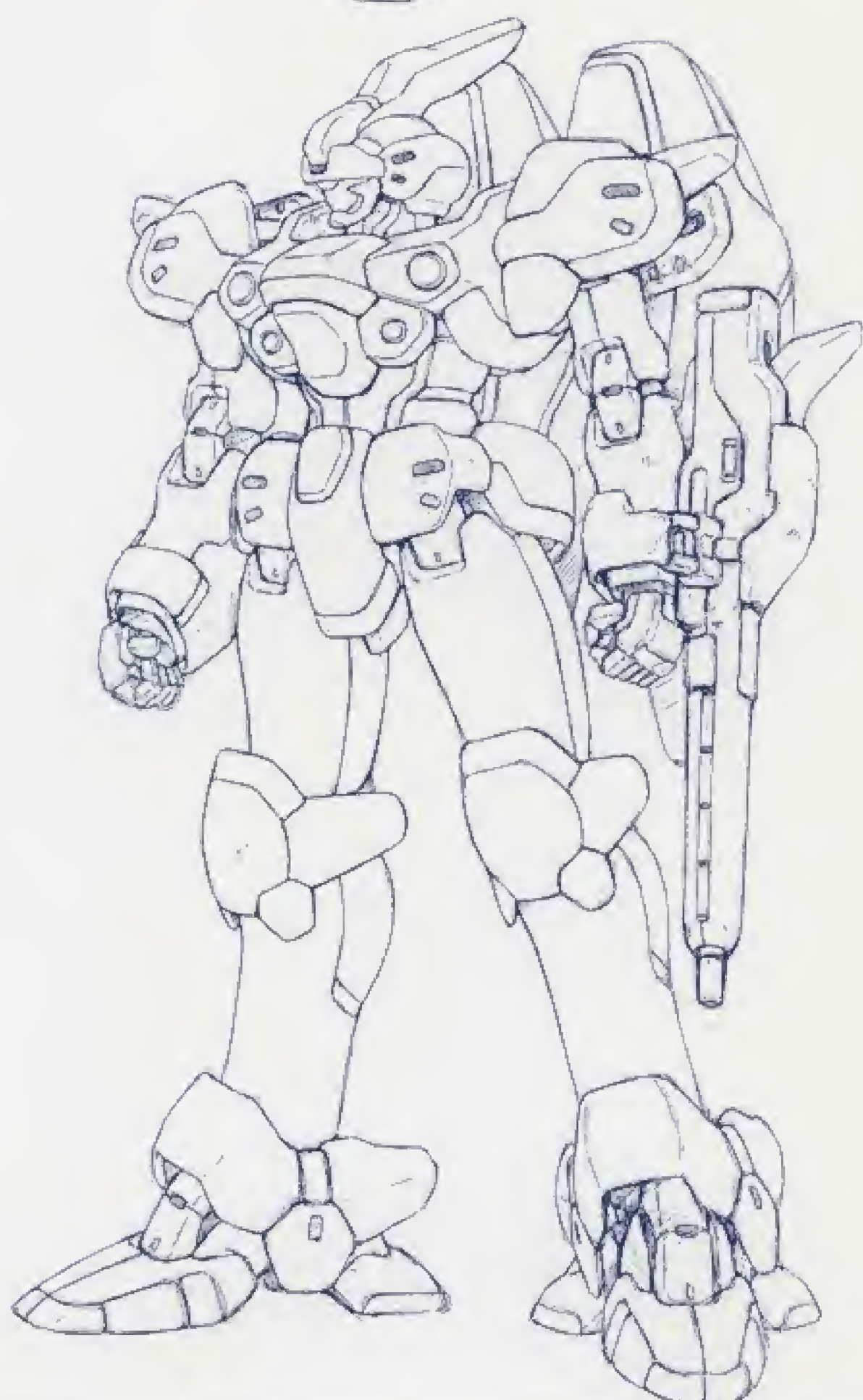
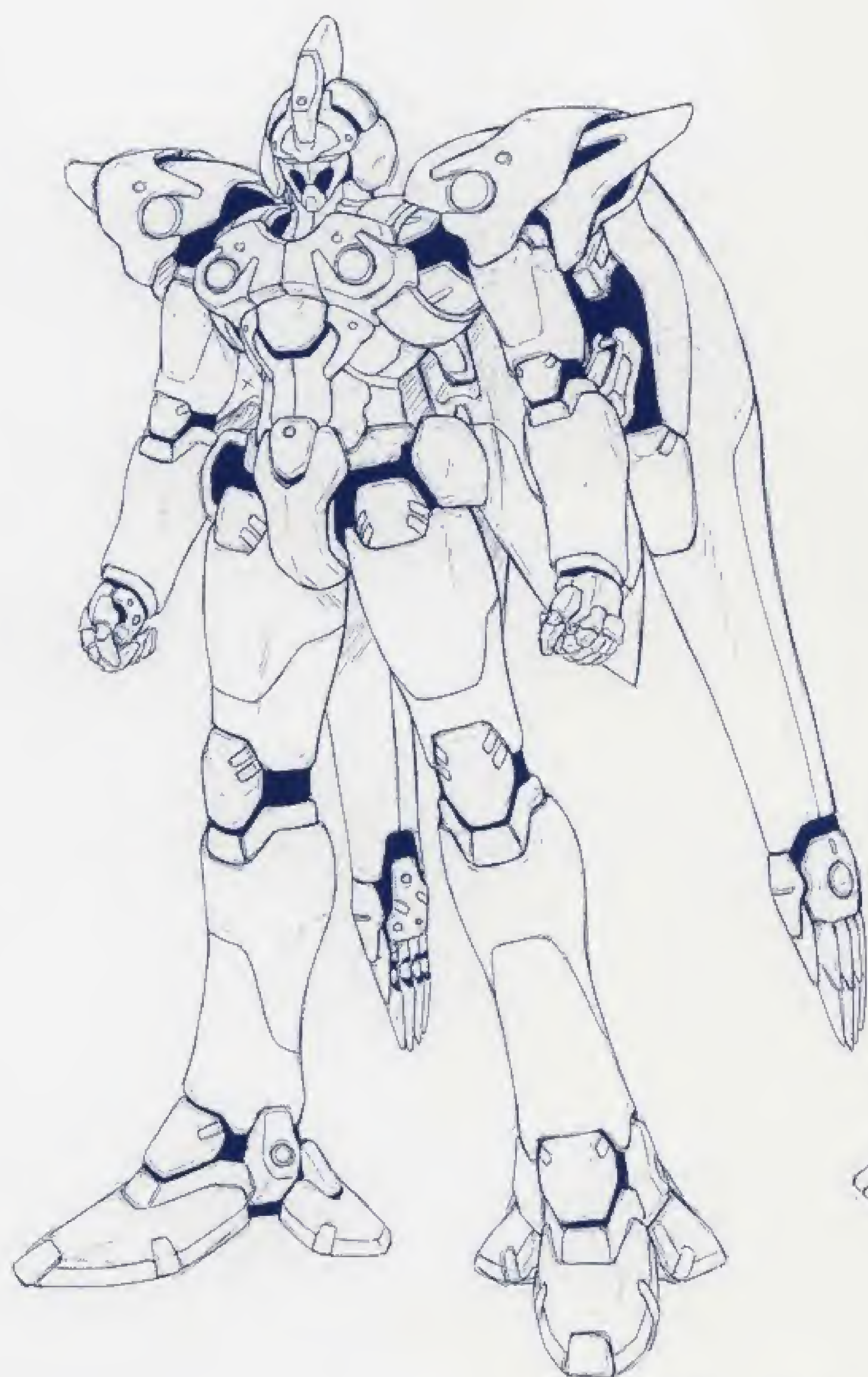




# Weltall - Rough Drafts







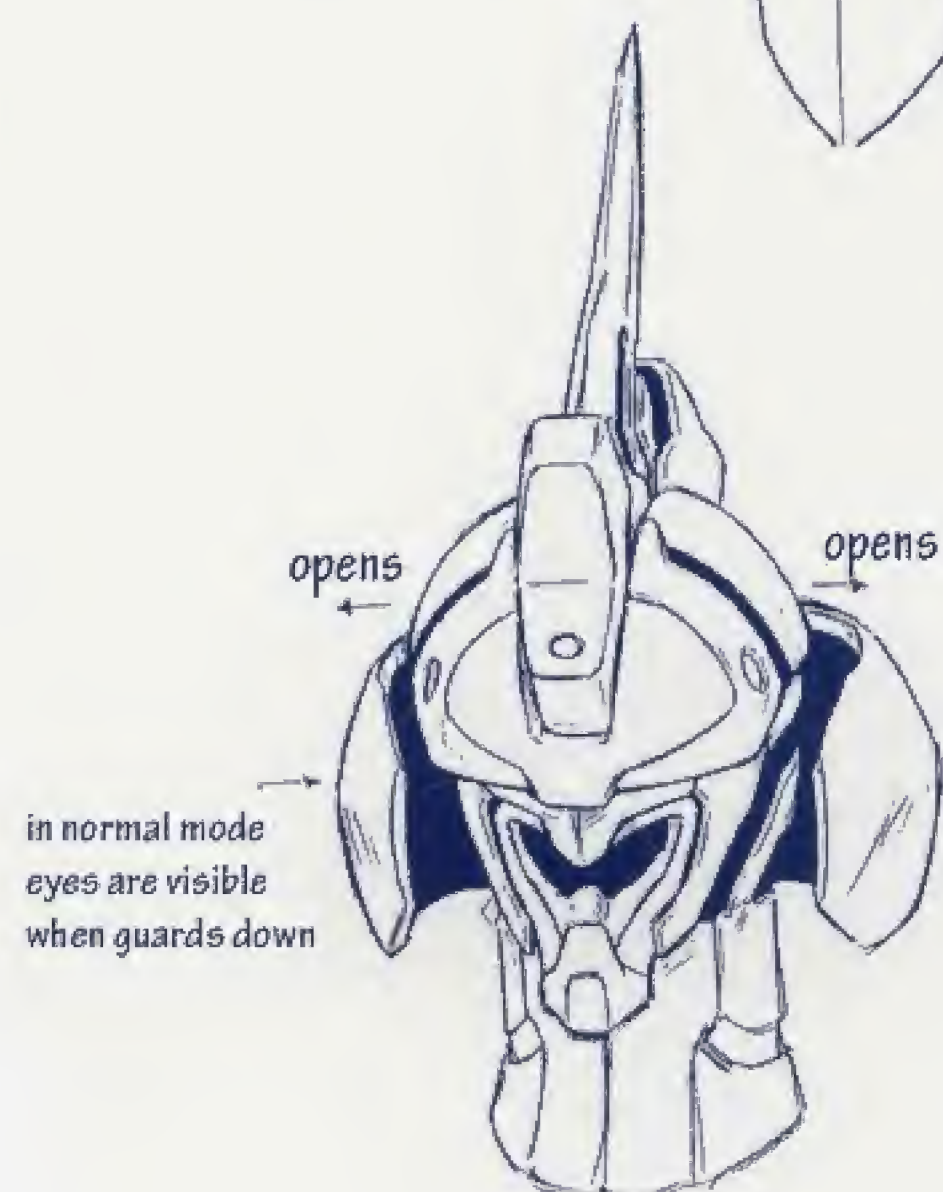
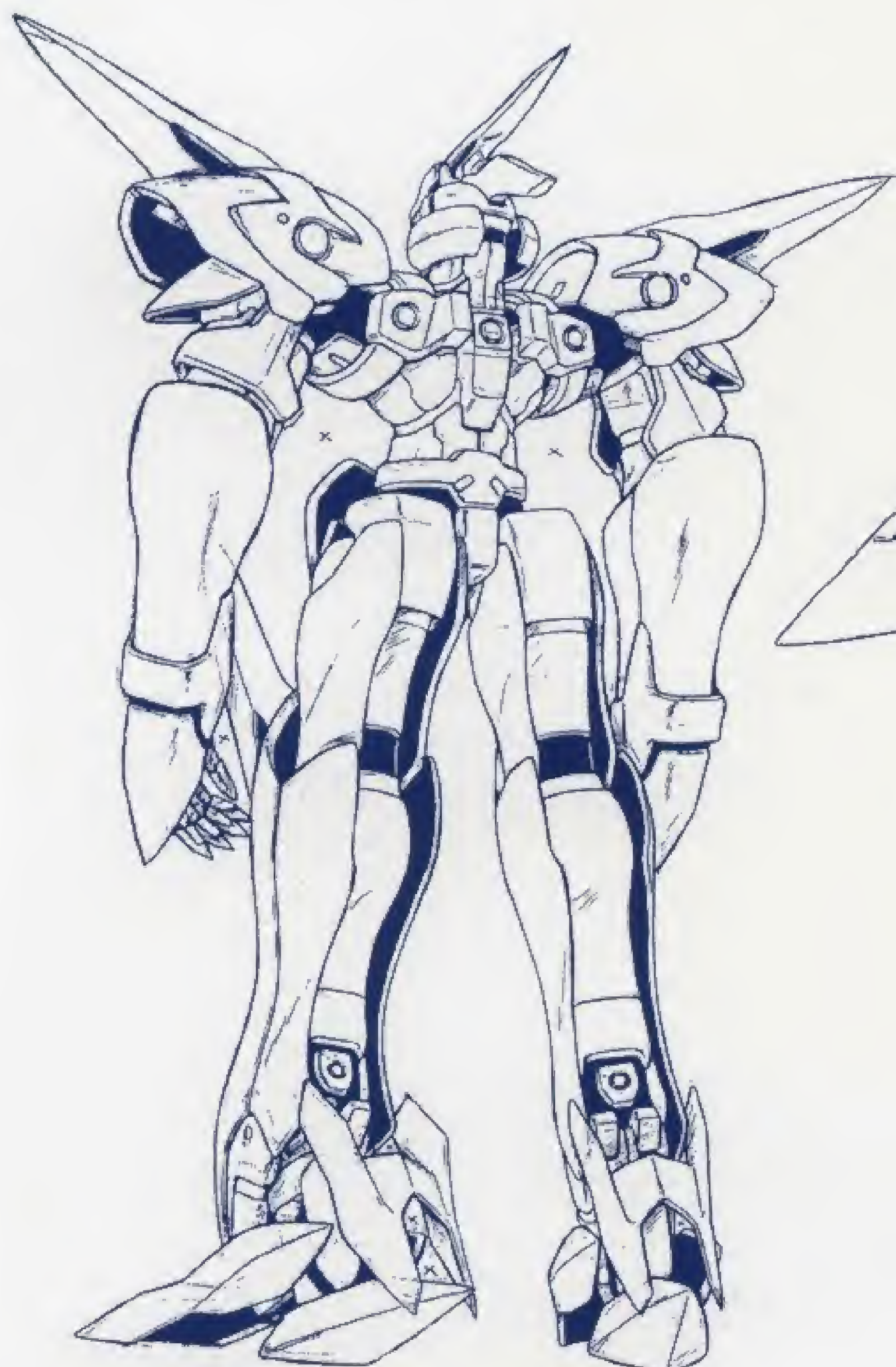
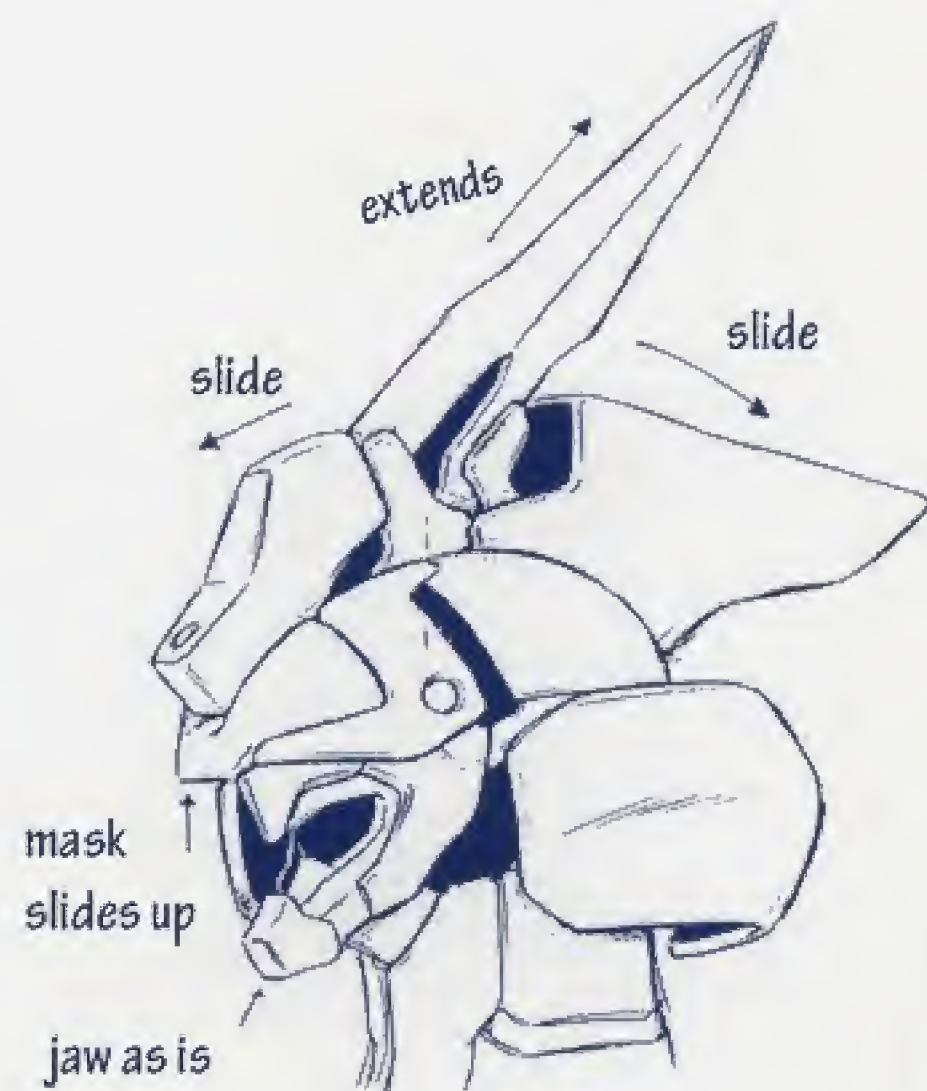
#### Designer's Comment

And so, the very first designed Gear. This one went through draft after draft. According to previous orders from Square-San, only the hero would change from a state of "weakness" to one of "evil" . . . at least that was the thought, anyway. We worried this one around a bit, but it doesn't appear all that bad.

The hardest part of the whole design, was the unit along the back. Everyone was greatly relieved that it could be made to look like wings. Having revealed the gimmick of transformation, the scene depicting it went more or less as expected.



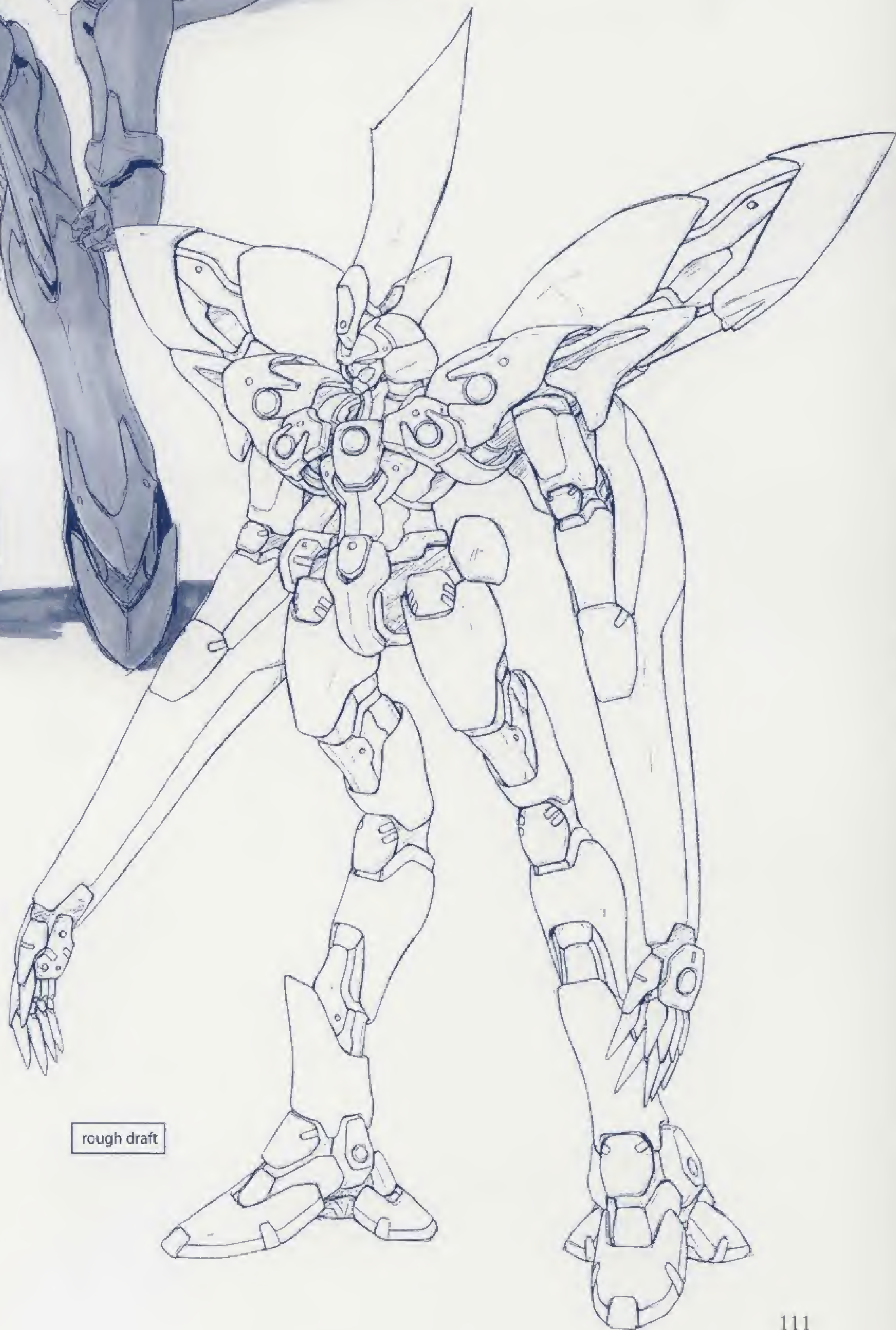
# Weltall·Id





### Designer's Comment

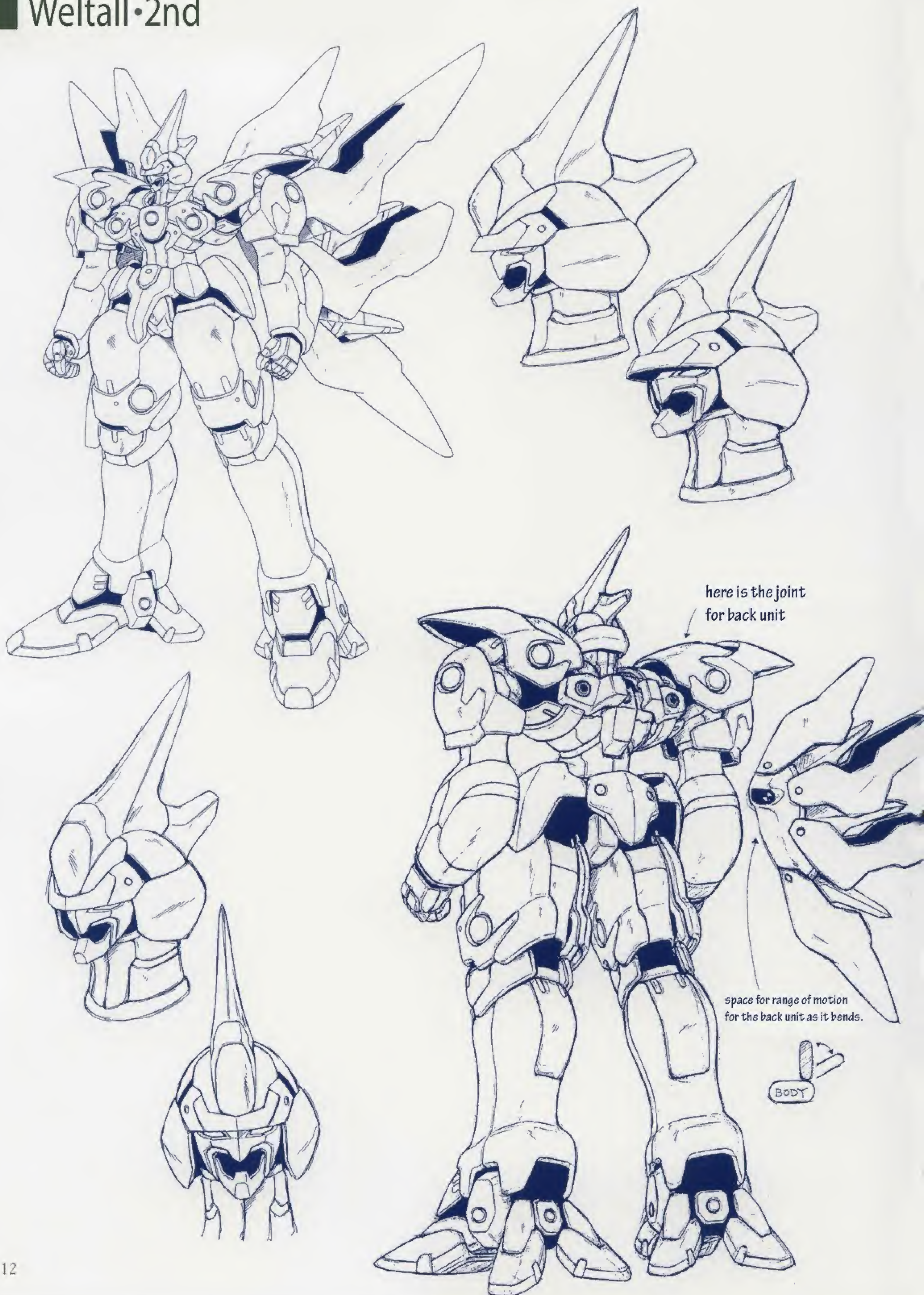
*In the process of normal mode, the shape and silhouette of the Gear reflect it's cloaked heart. It doesn't change much throughout the game. We were really worried that too much could be revealed to the user, so steps were taken to keep core design a secret. (ha, ha!) The difference in color probably changes the impression it makes . . . Maybe it should have been a little more threatening. But, I think the Id Mode carries it off pretty well, don't you think so?*



rough draft



## Weltall•2nd





refer to images below for placement of  
back unit structure

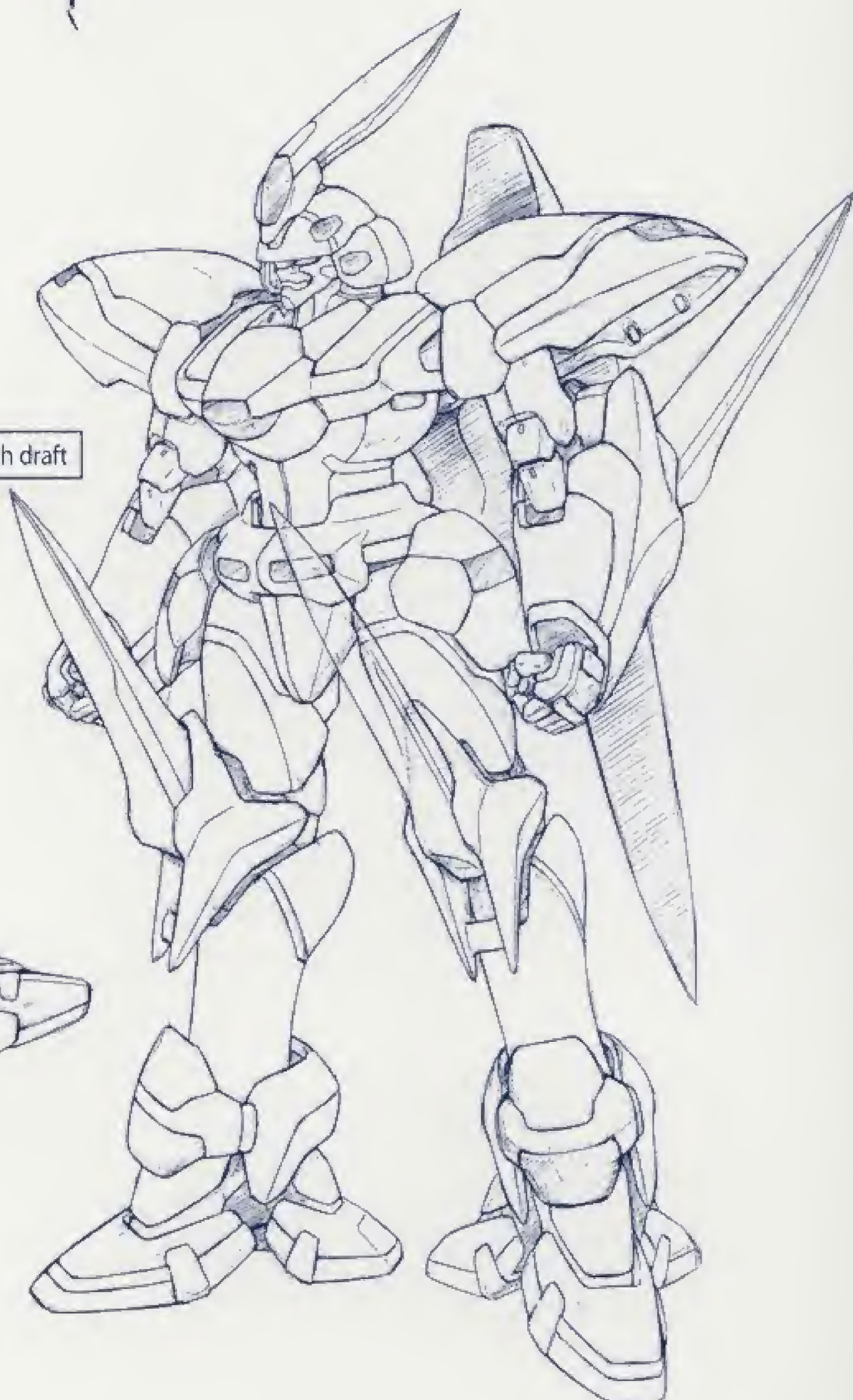
back unit - normal mode



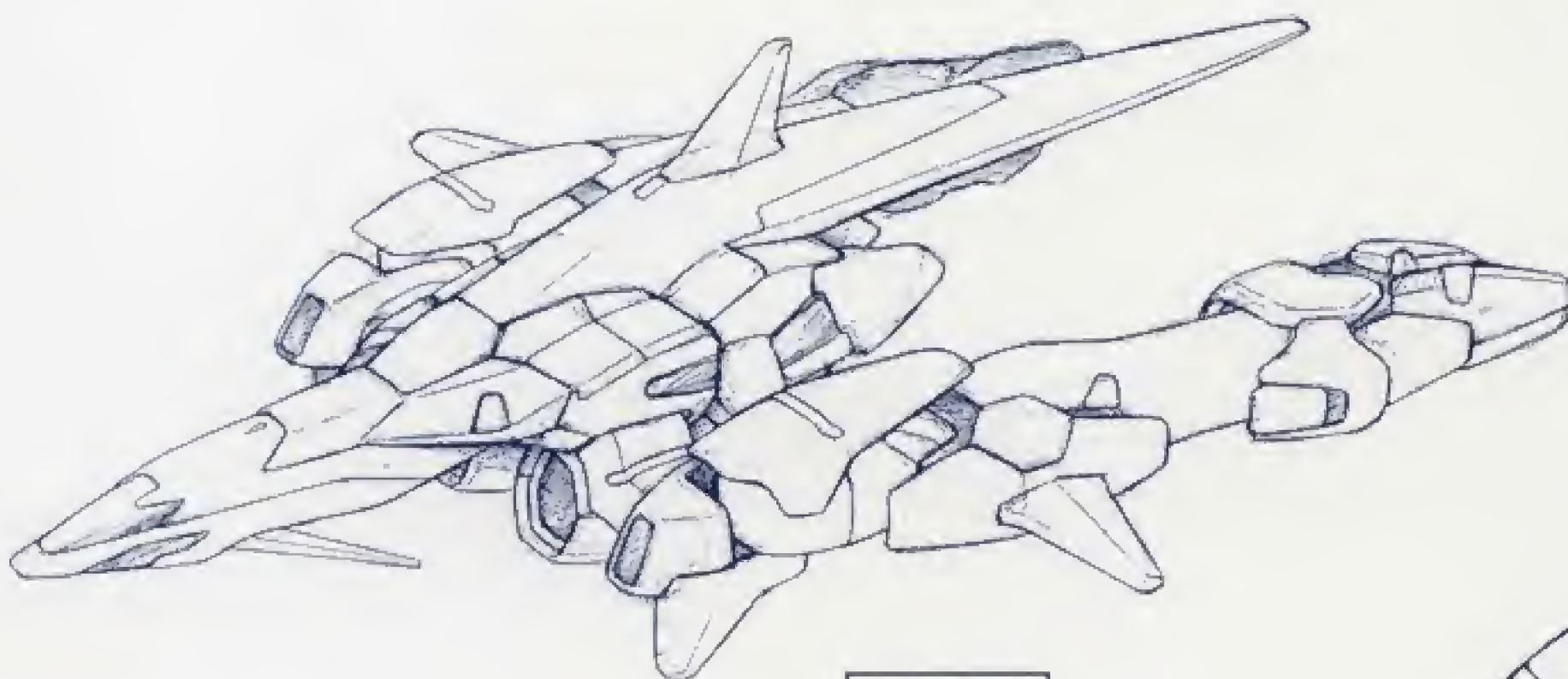
### Designer's Comment

This Weltall gives the image of having many different functions all bundled in. However, when looking behind the legs and shoulders, it appears more like the first Weltall. Also, the fundamental design of Weltall is visibly apparent in its attacks, the transformation lies in the details. With this in mind, the design doesn't appear to have been all that difficult. Specifically, I like the design around the knee joints. And also, not only the head unit, but even the design of the face piece is pretty much to my liking. (smile)

rough draft

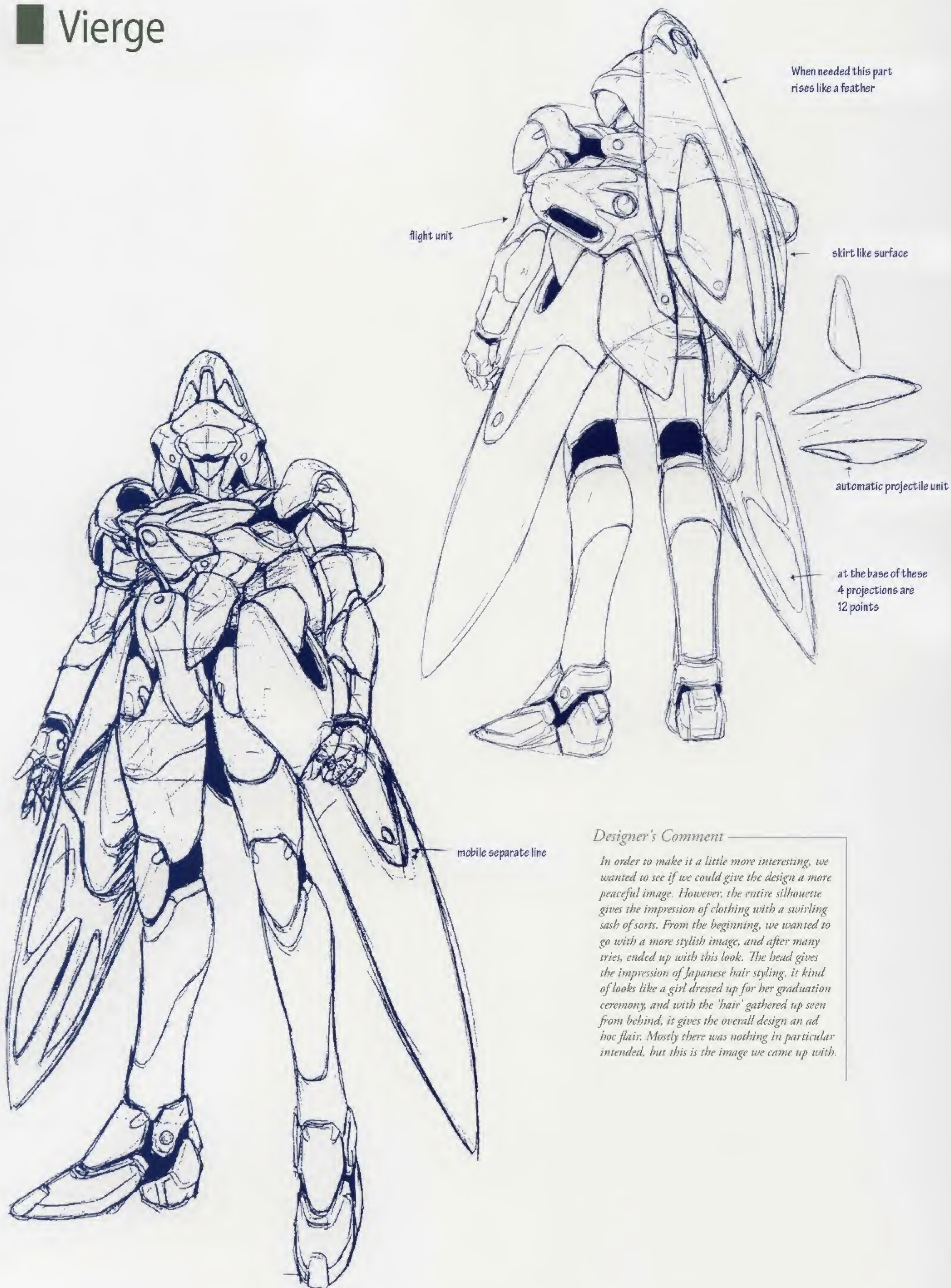


rough draft





# Vierge



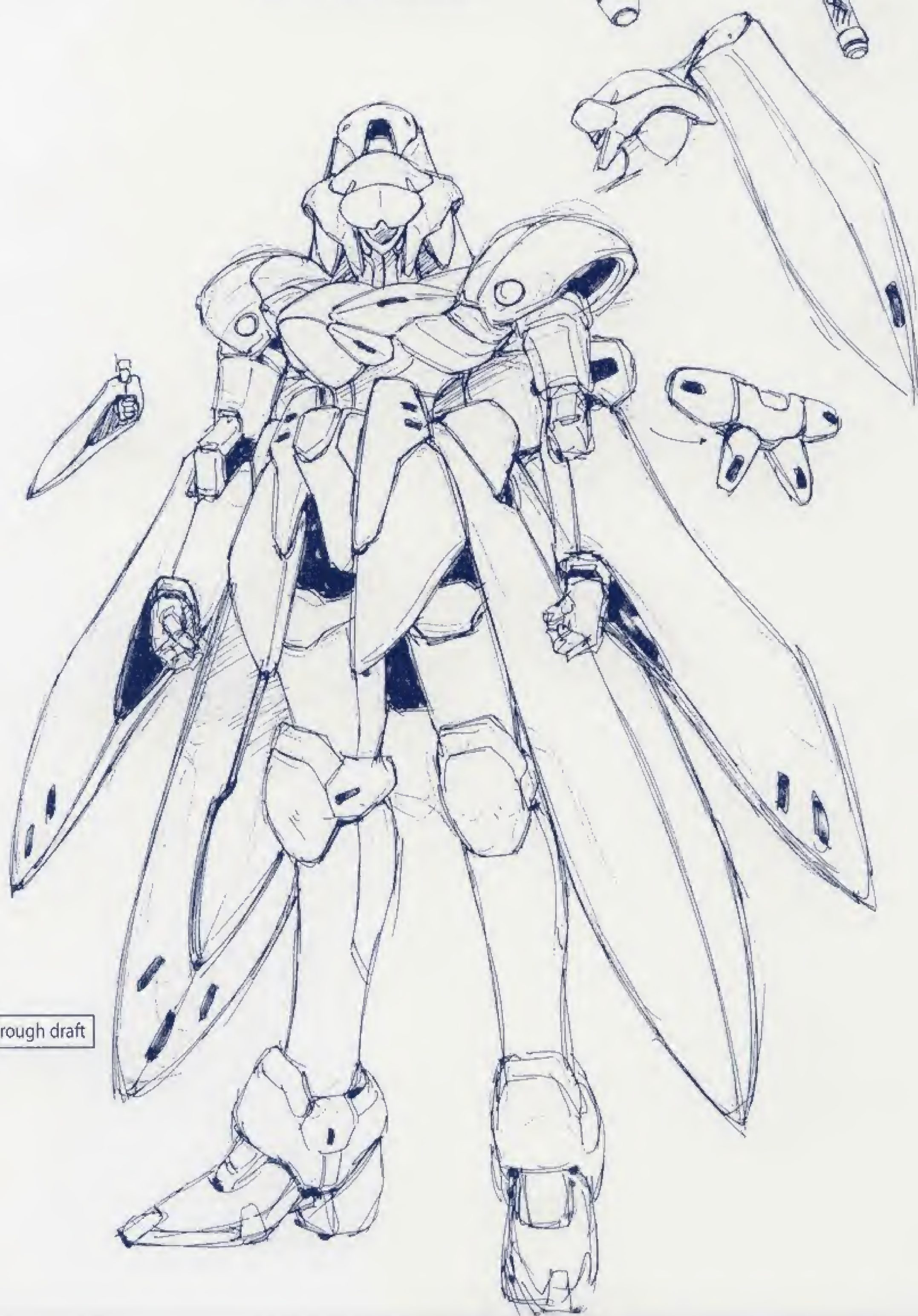
## Designer's Comment

In order to make it a little more interesting, we wanted to see if we could give the design a more peaceful image. However, the entire silhouette gives the impression of clothing with a swirling sash of sorts. From the beginning, we wanted to go with a more stylish image, and after many tries, ended up with this look. The head gives the impression of Japanese hair styling, it kind of looks like a girl dressed up for her graduation ceremony, and with the 'hair' gathered up seen from behind, it gives the overall design an ad hoc flair. Mostly there was nothing in particular intended, but this is the image we came up with.





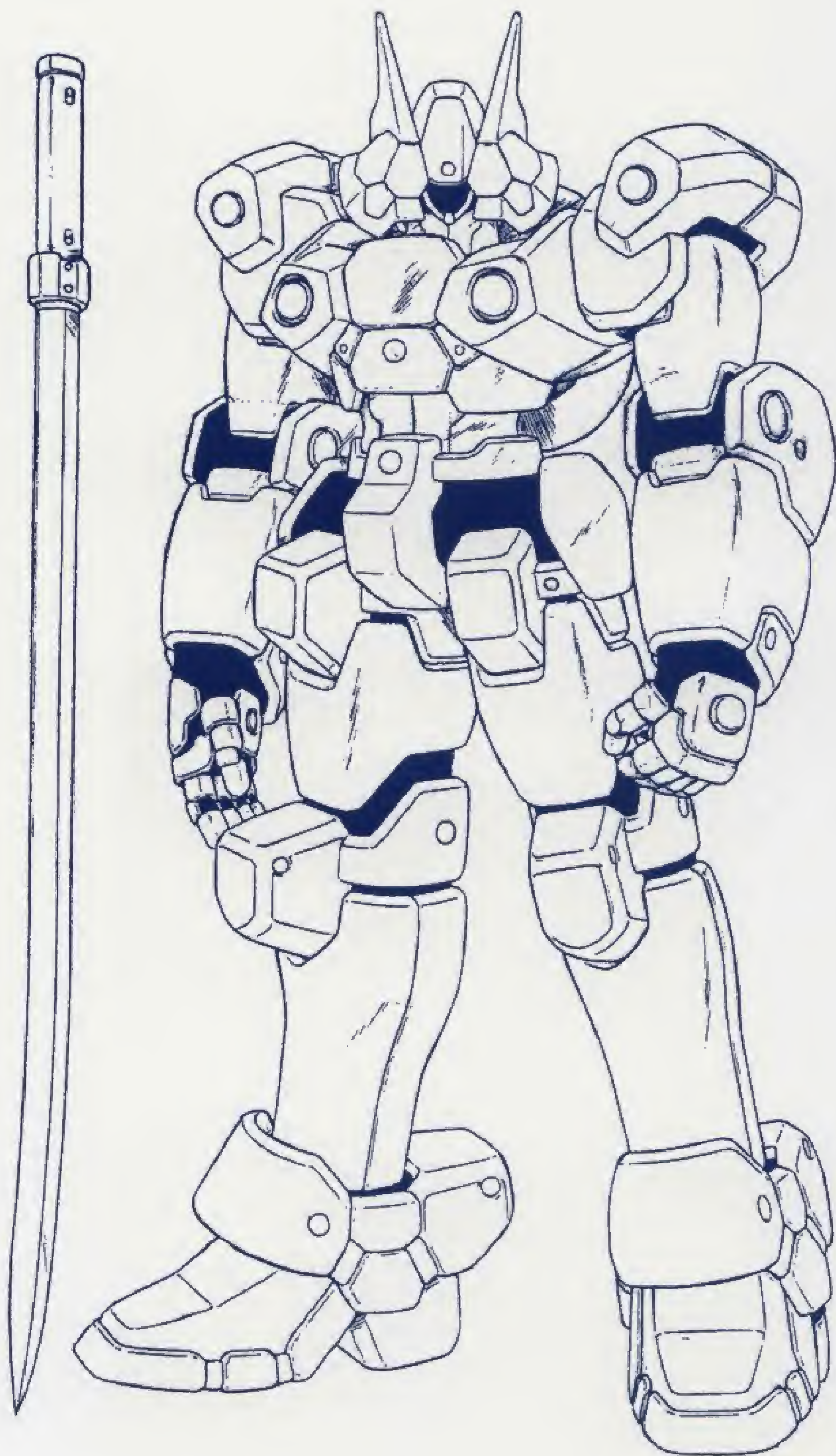
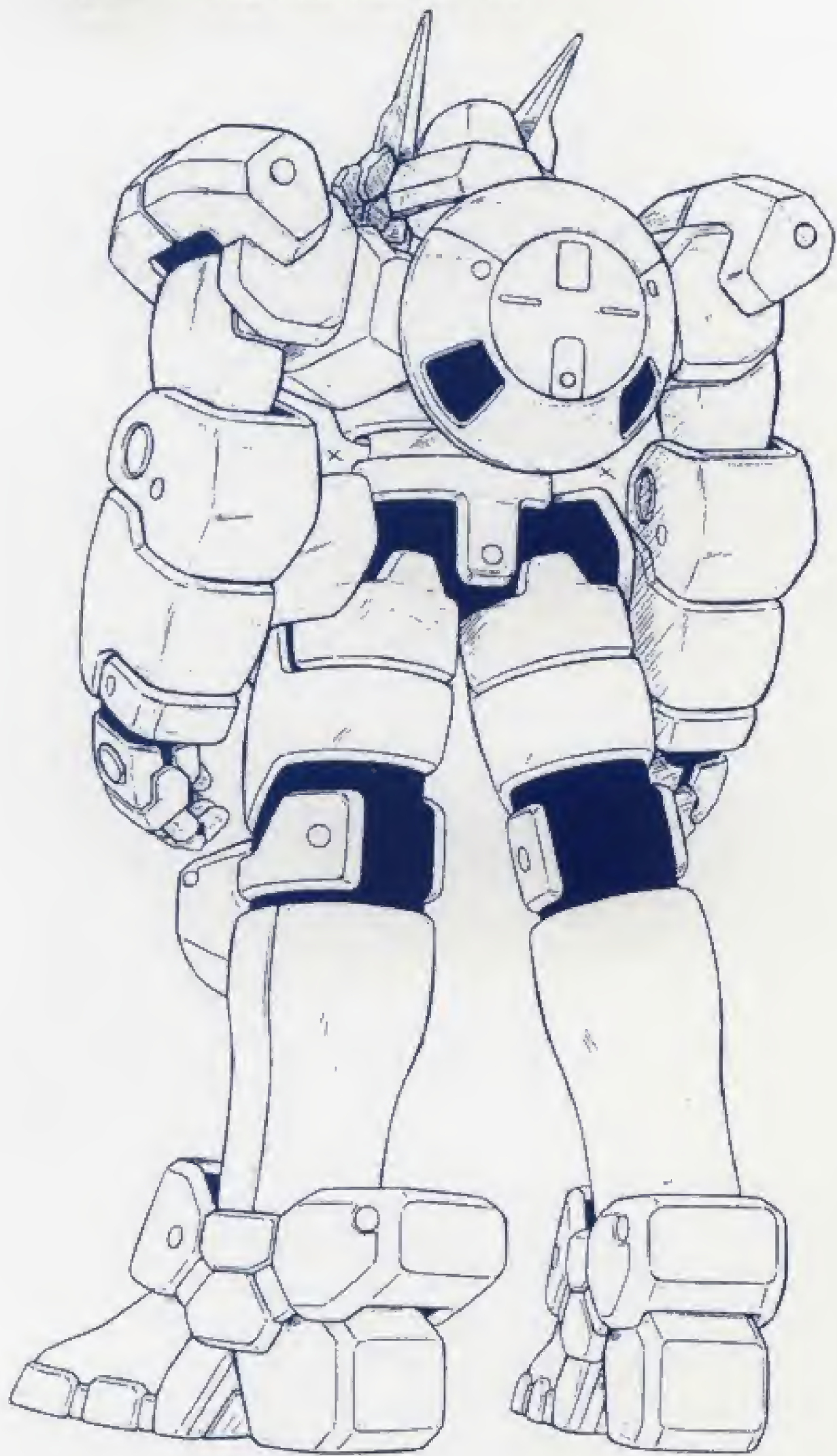
Vierge's weapons



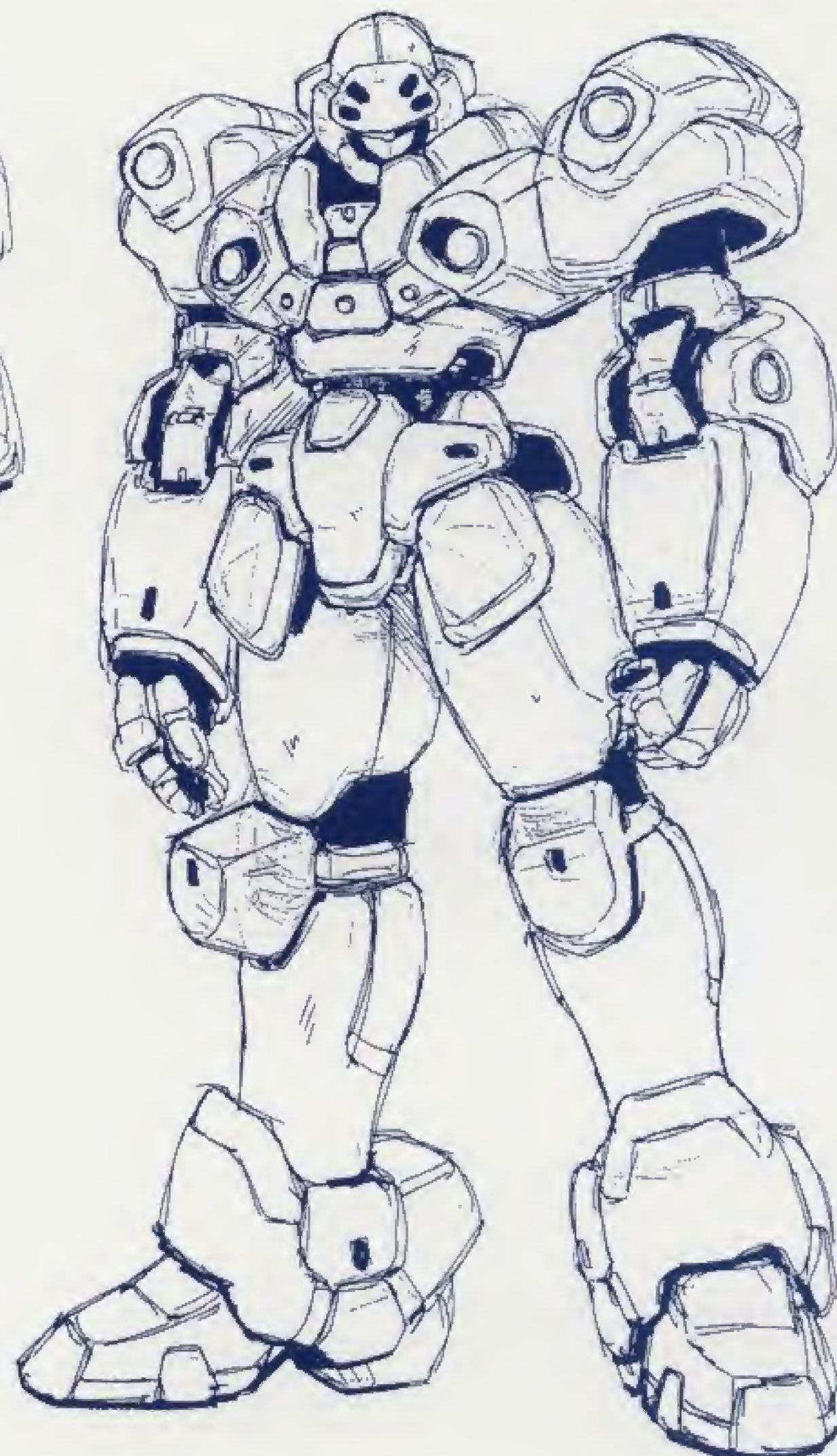
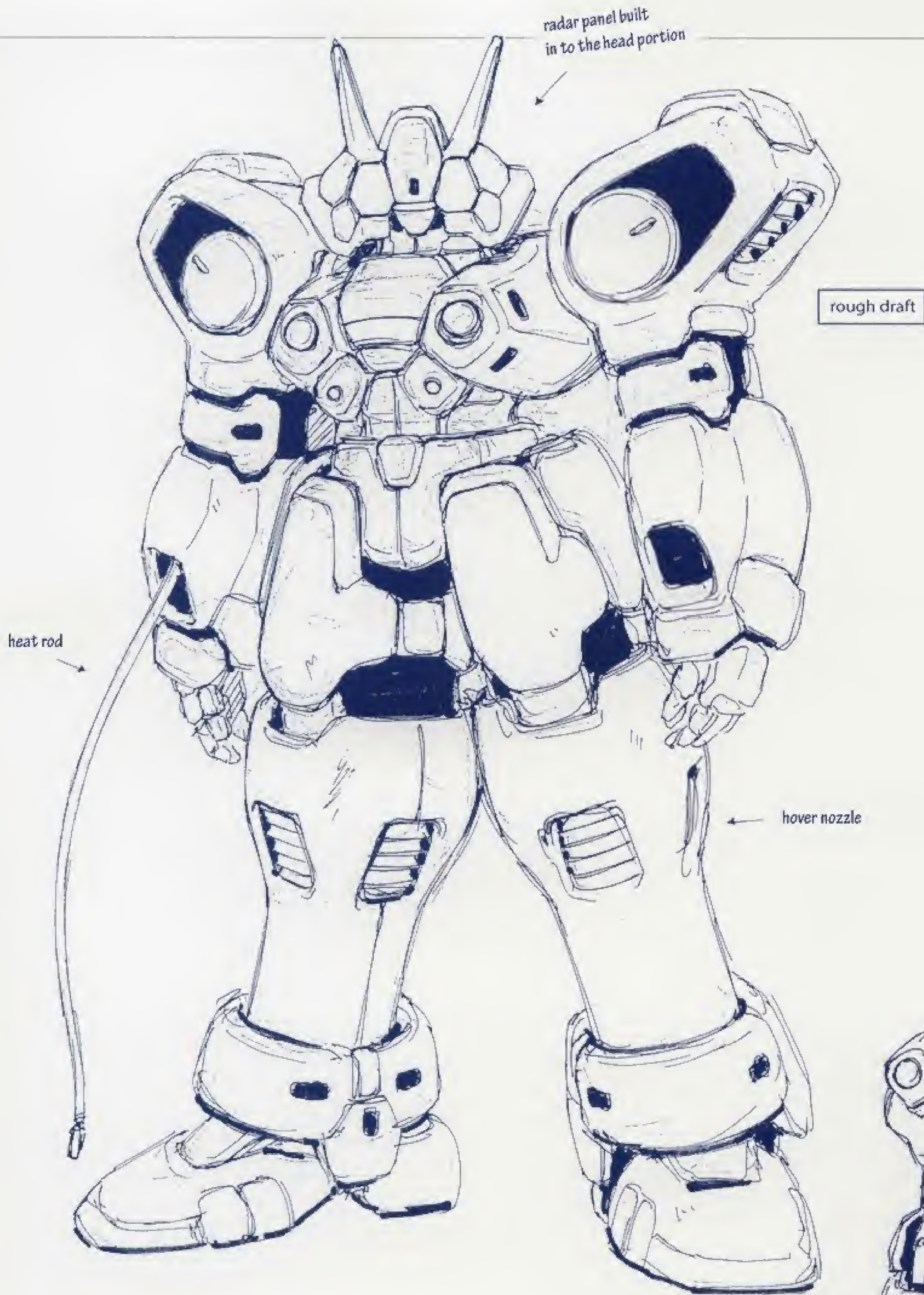
rough draft



## ■ Heimdahl





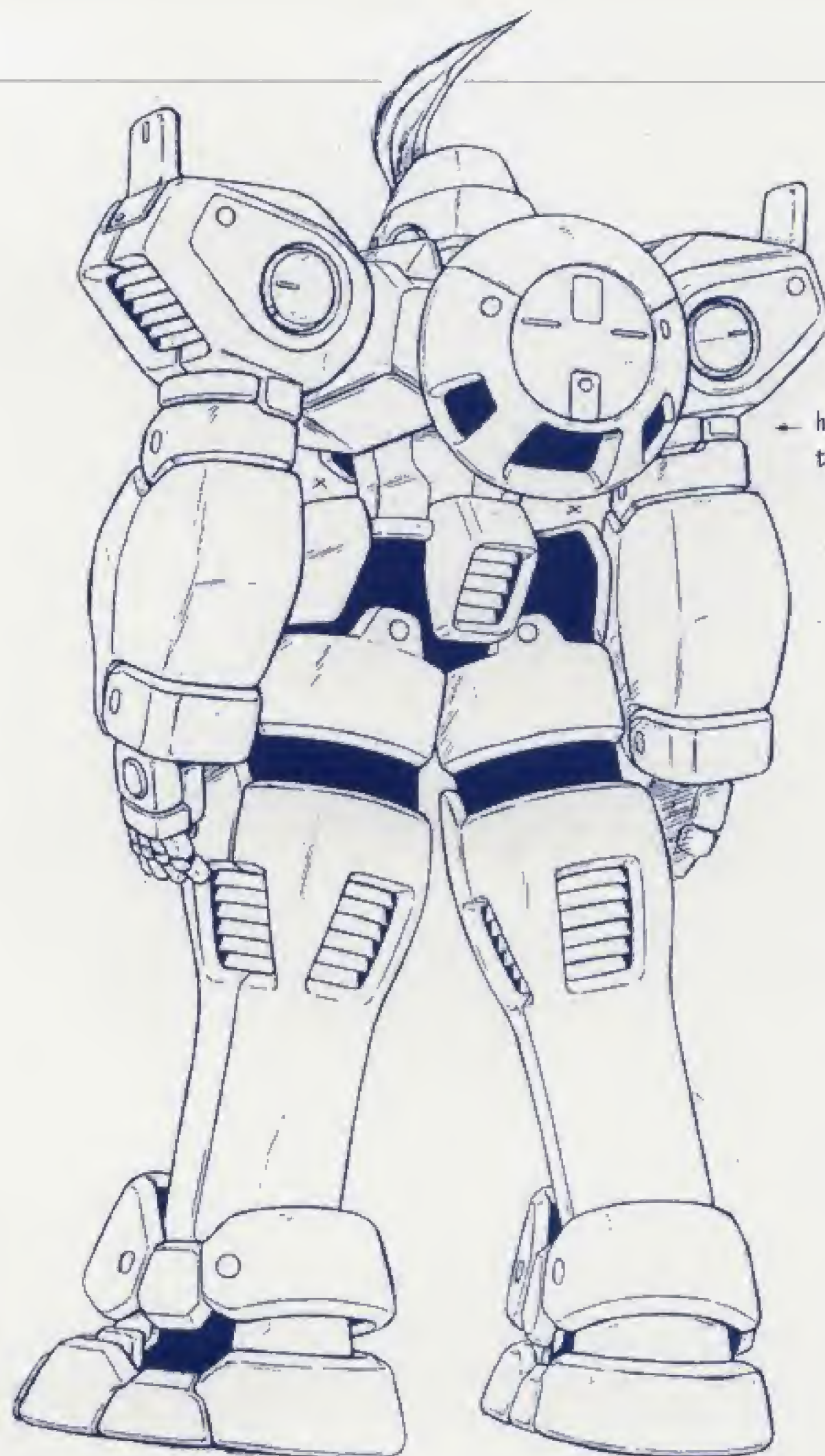
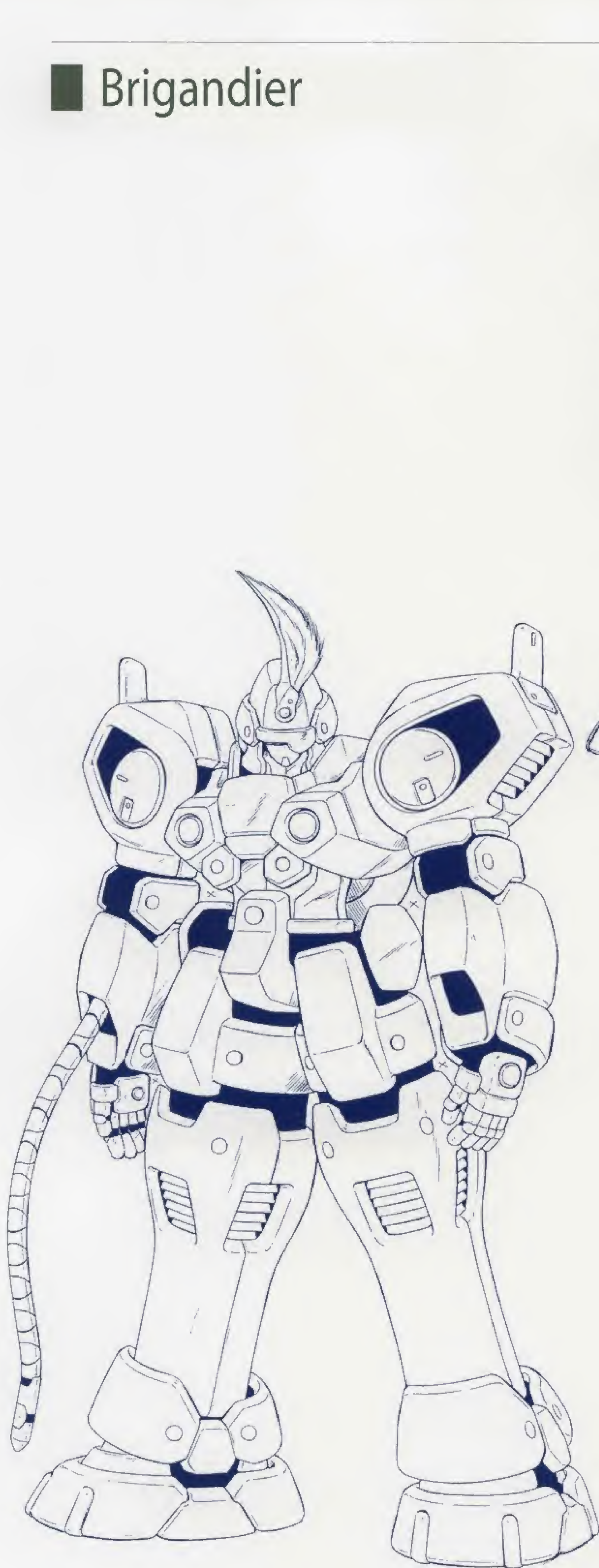


#### Designer's Comment

Discovered in the same place as Brigandier, it is for this reason that Heimdahl and Brigandier bear some resemblance. While these two are different from a machine such as Weltall, the design is more in line with the average person's idea of a "robot". The designs of the Gears in *Xenogears* have many advantages, if only some of them had been easier, heh. However, for all that we're kind of drained, but in any event, it's all in a day's work.



# ■ Brigandier



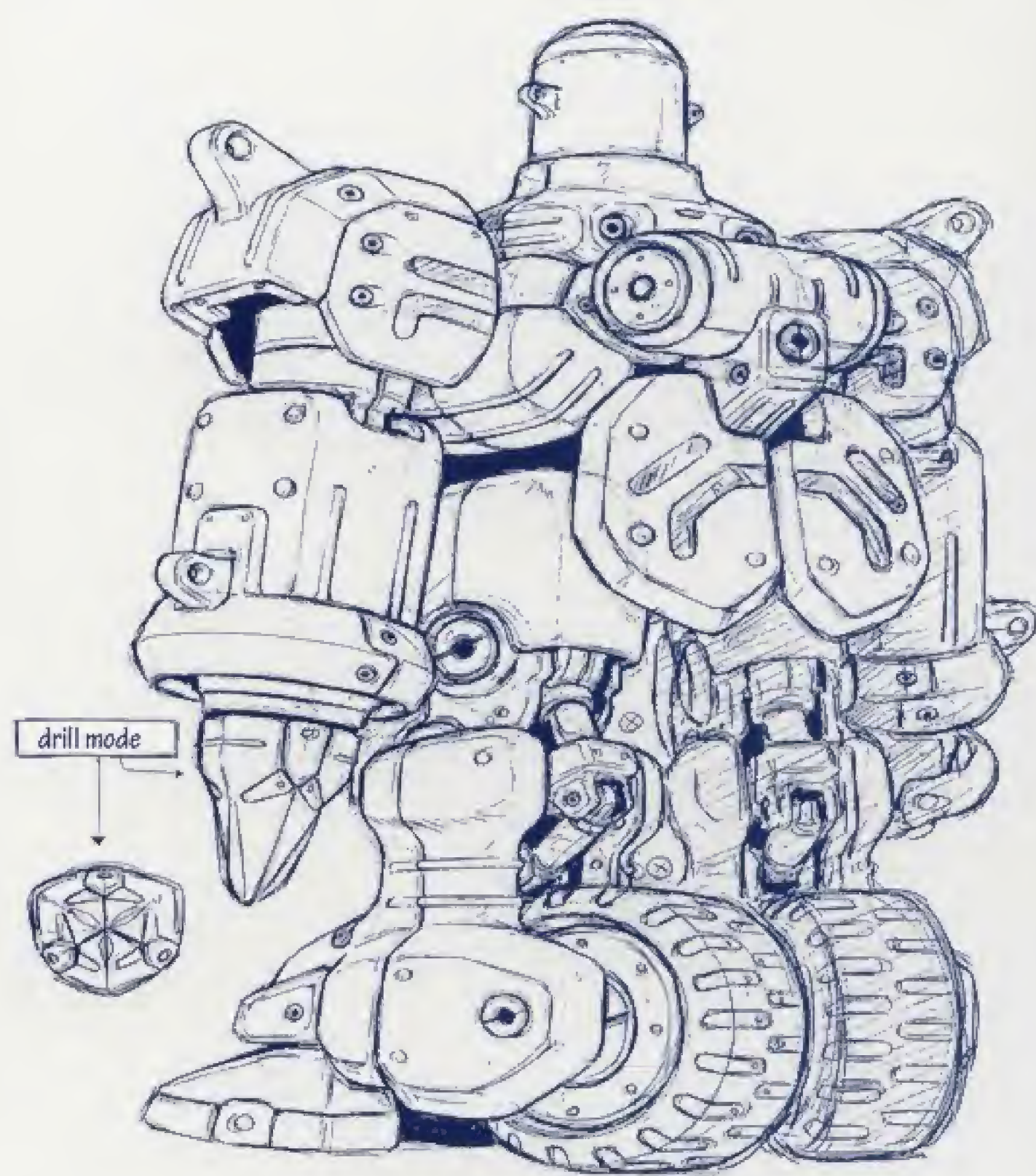
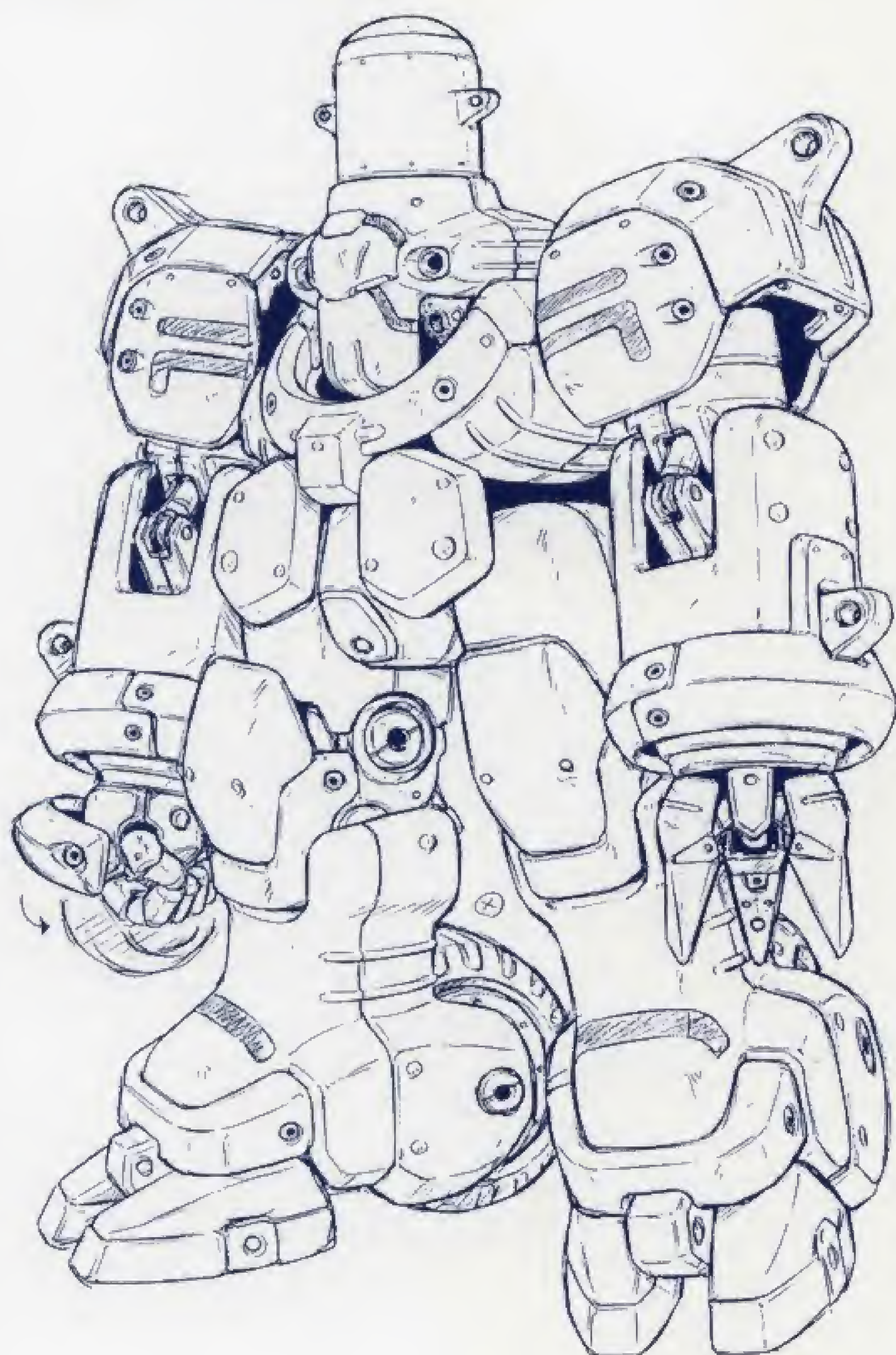
← heat emitted from holes  
to the left and right

## Designer's Comment

As one part of the order of a Gear's entirety, the "pilot's overall image" is reflected in its design. As a major point is Brigandier's eye-patch. When it was time to assign decoration in the initial designs of the head portion, I happened to throw this in to the illustration to see how it would work. It seemed to glide right in, and I liked it a great deal. In terms of desert travel, I thought "why not have it hover?" and the design was made from there.

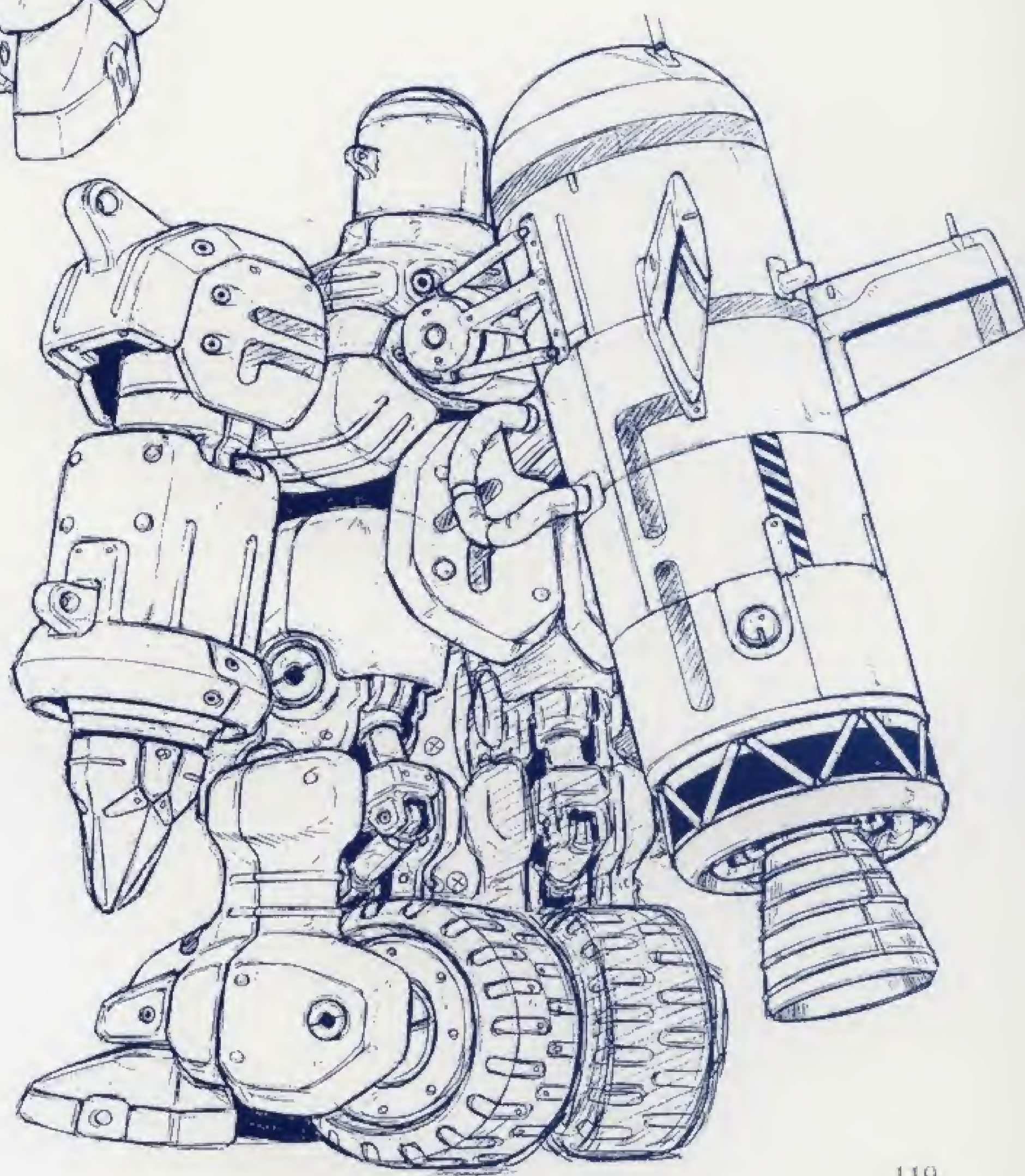


# ■ Stier



## Designer's Comment

*This gives an overall impression of heaviness, the same as Rico's image and the shape fell together this way. In looking at the neck and arm rings, this goes along with the motif of Rico's surface appearance. Even the shoulders look a little like Rico in their outline, and this idea was added in. The tire and drill portions were from Square-San's original orders. It was thought from the start to make this give the impression of a powerful character and, in mine and my colleagues' opinion, it works.*



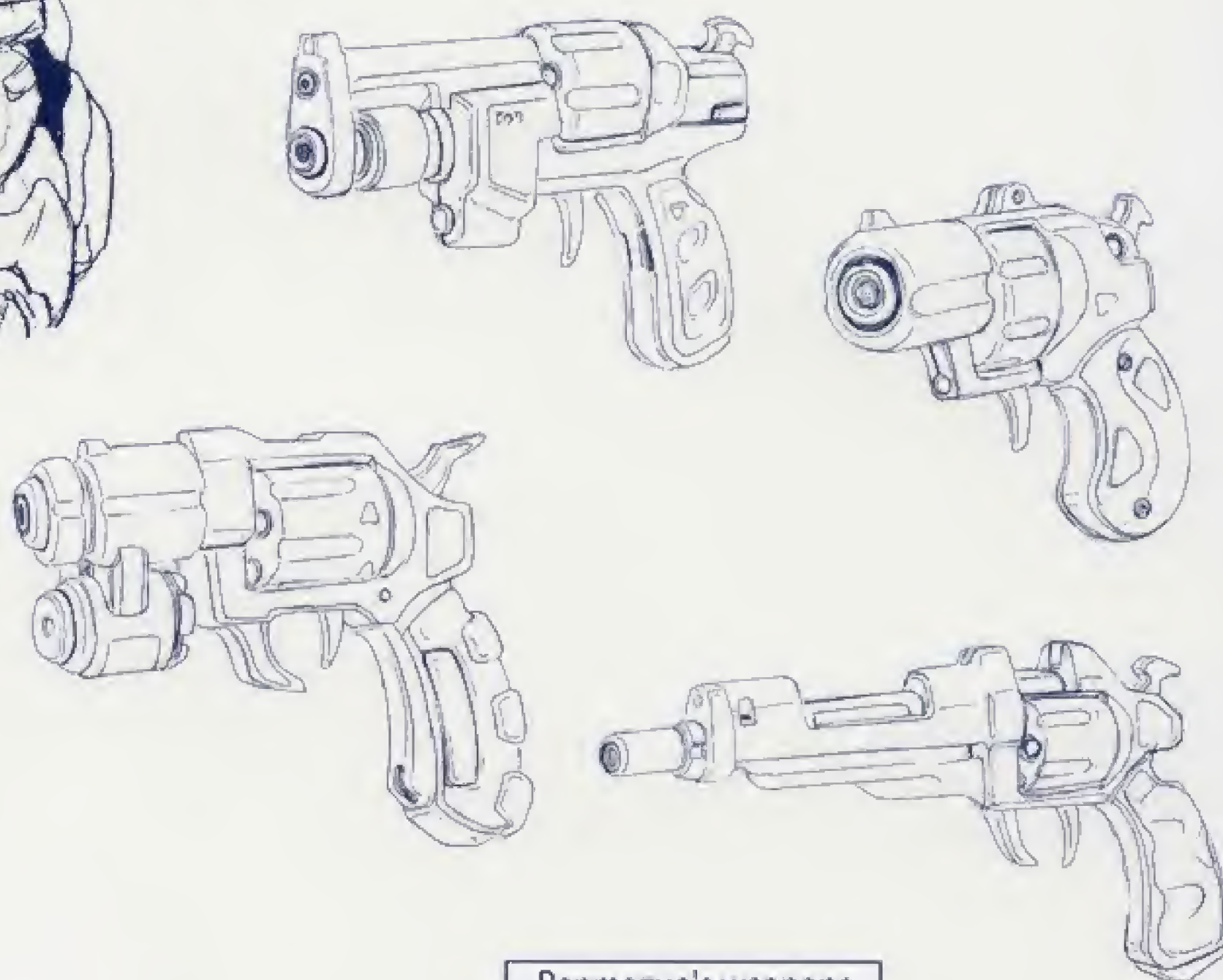


# Renmazuo



## Designer's Comment

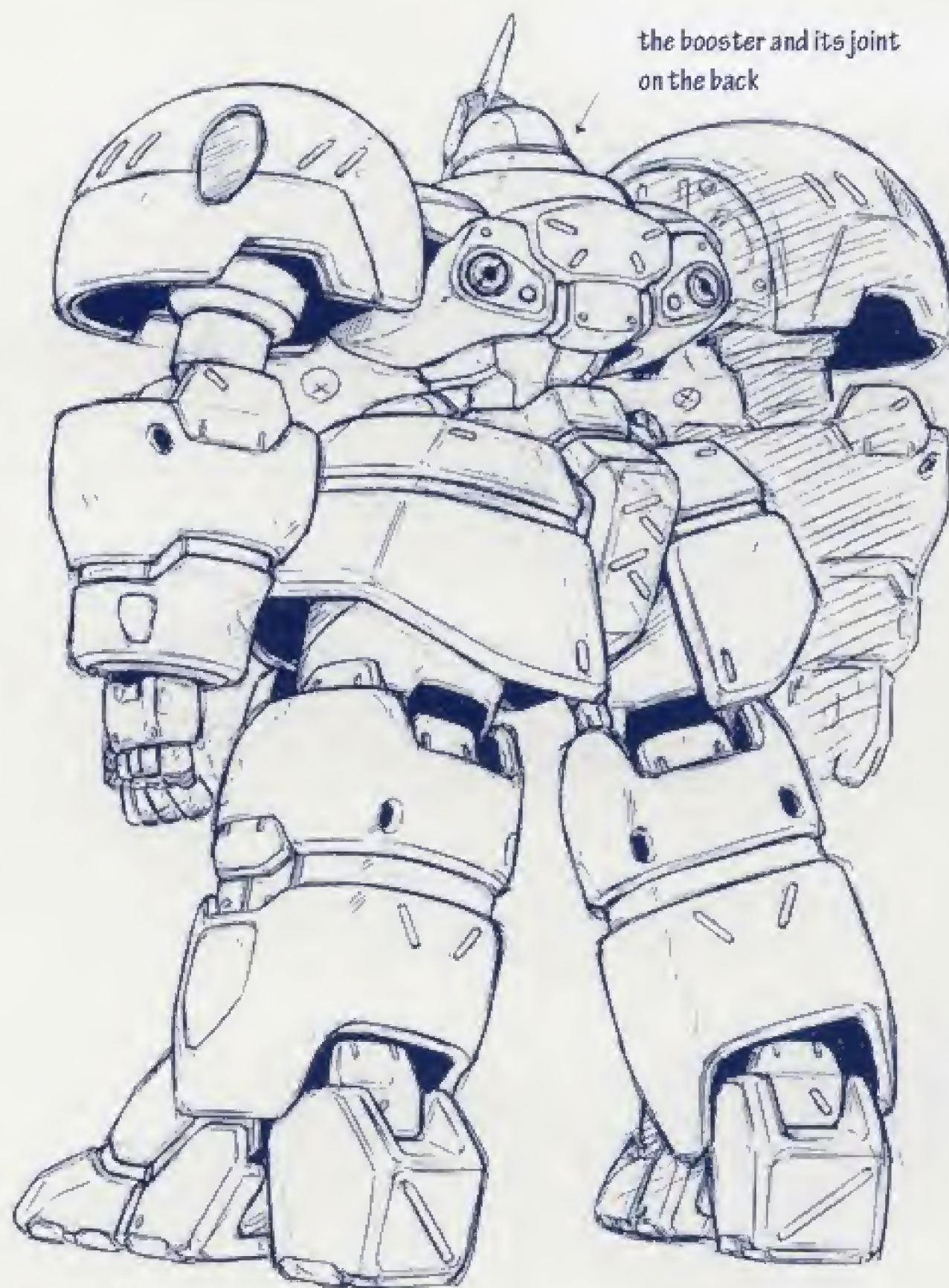
As Square-San's interior design, it already possessed a silhouette indicating a 'Church' Gear. Thinking to incorporate all the designs in the game, it's image mostly derives from Weltall. It was never specifically intended to have a cape, but we were told to update it a bit and thought, "That's great, let's do that!" or at least that's how we felt. (ha, ha!) We weren't sure how the polygon mapping would work out, but were convinced it would be a moving sight!



Renmazuo's weapons



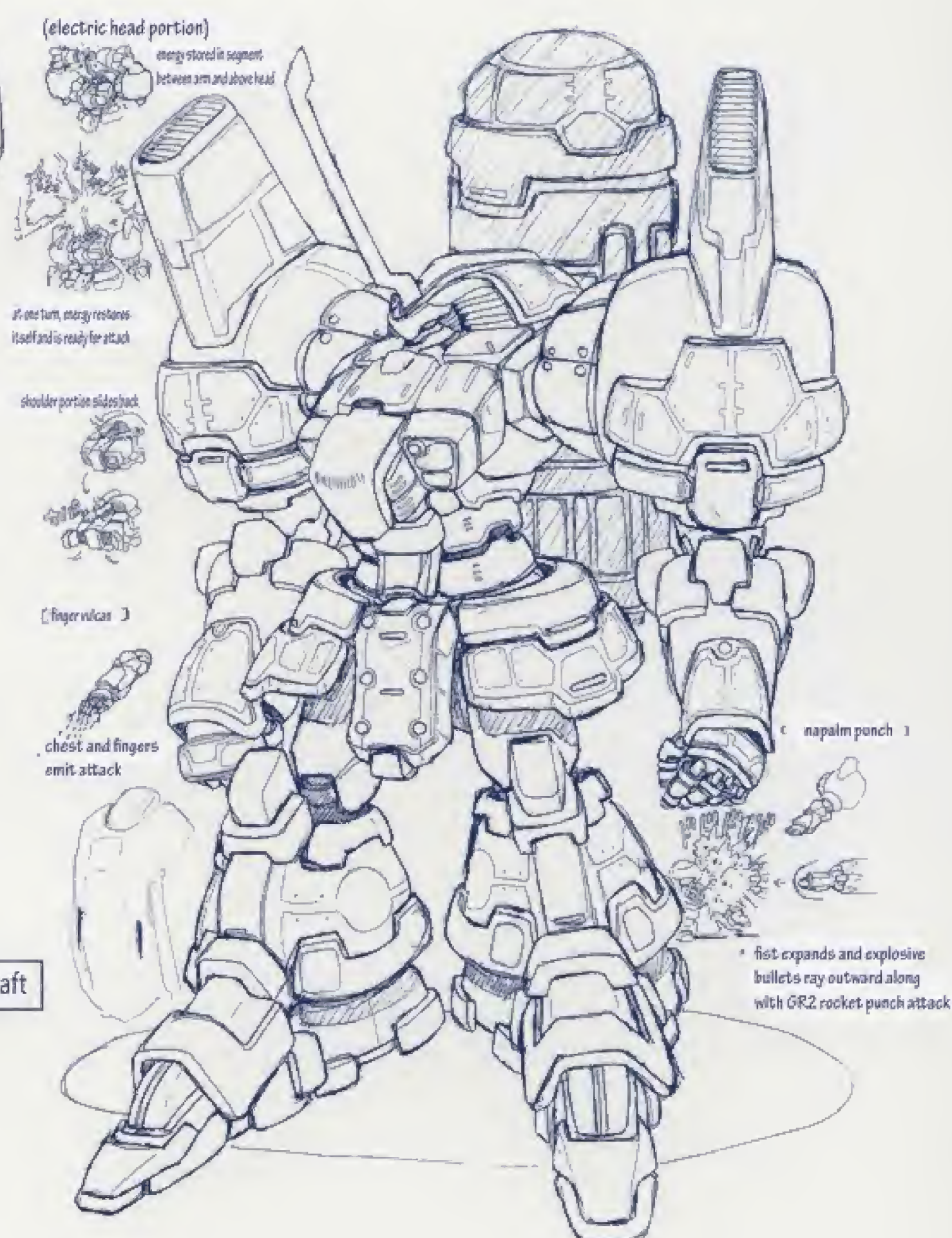
# Seibzehn



the booster and its joint  
on the back

## Designer's Comment

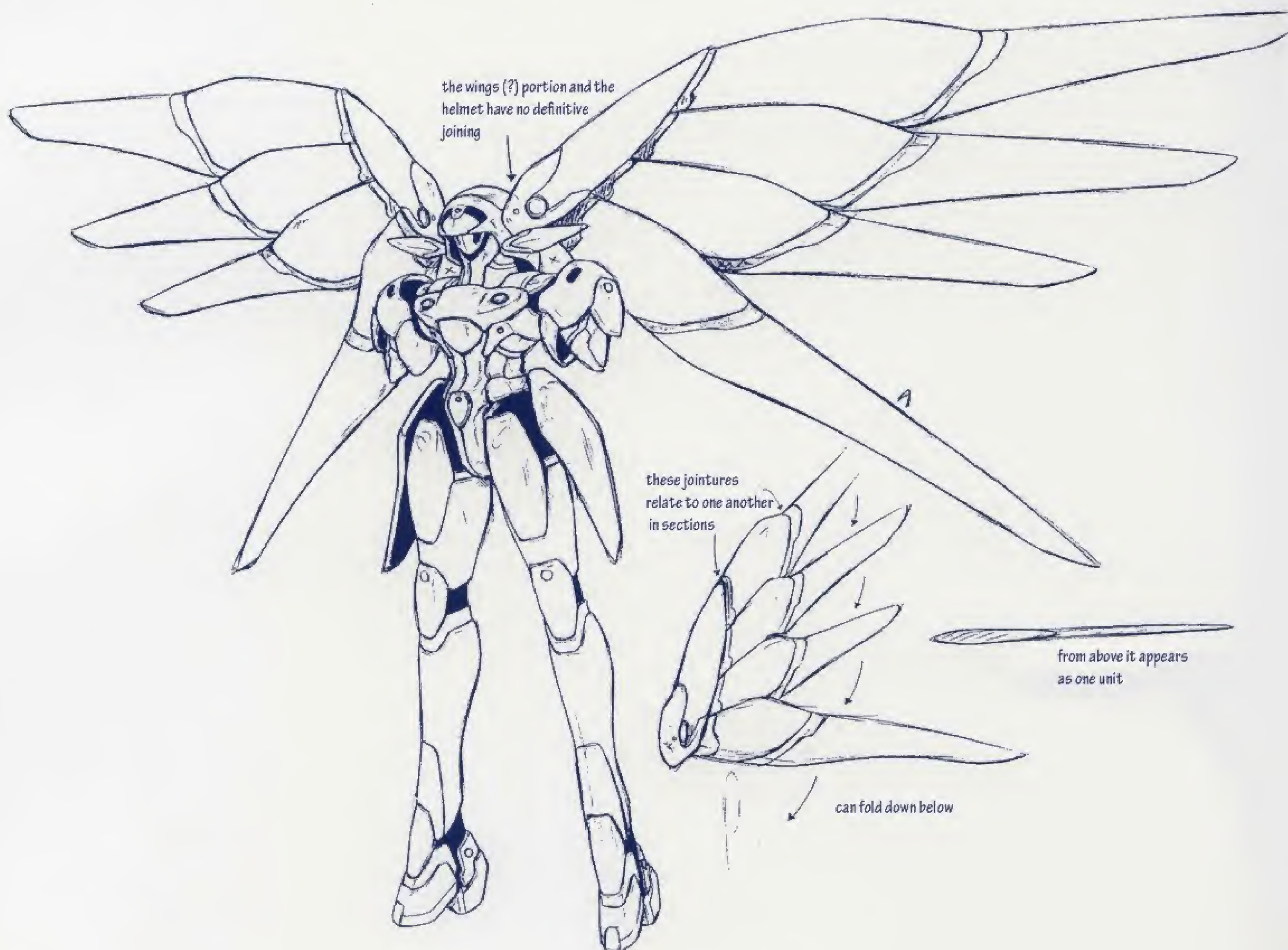
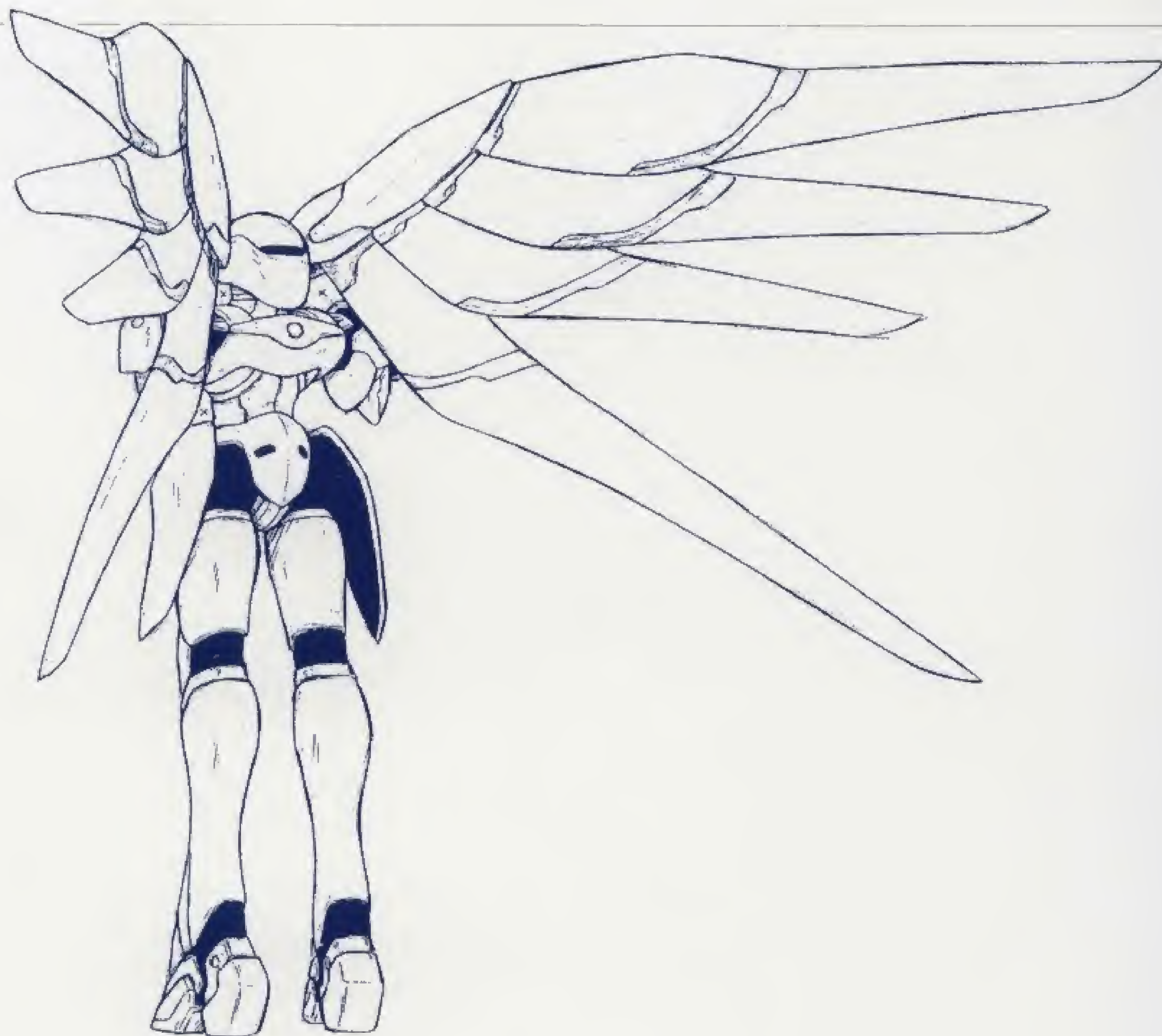
Due to the large size of this Gear, it was fairly complicated to include in the first designs all the parts. Slowly by degrees we came to the current form in the established drawings. Originally, the prototype design concept for Seibzehn having come from Square-San in the form of Calamity resulted in this "expansive type." On our side, we knew the drama would include Achtzehn as well and we had to incorporate that also, it being another expansive type Gear that we designed. This one was quite enjoyable to come up with.



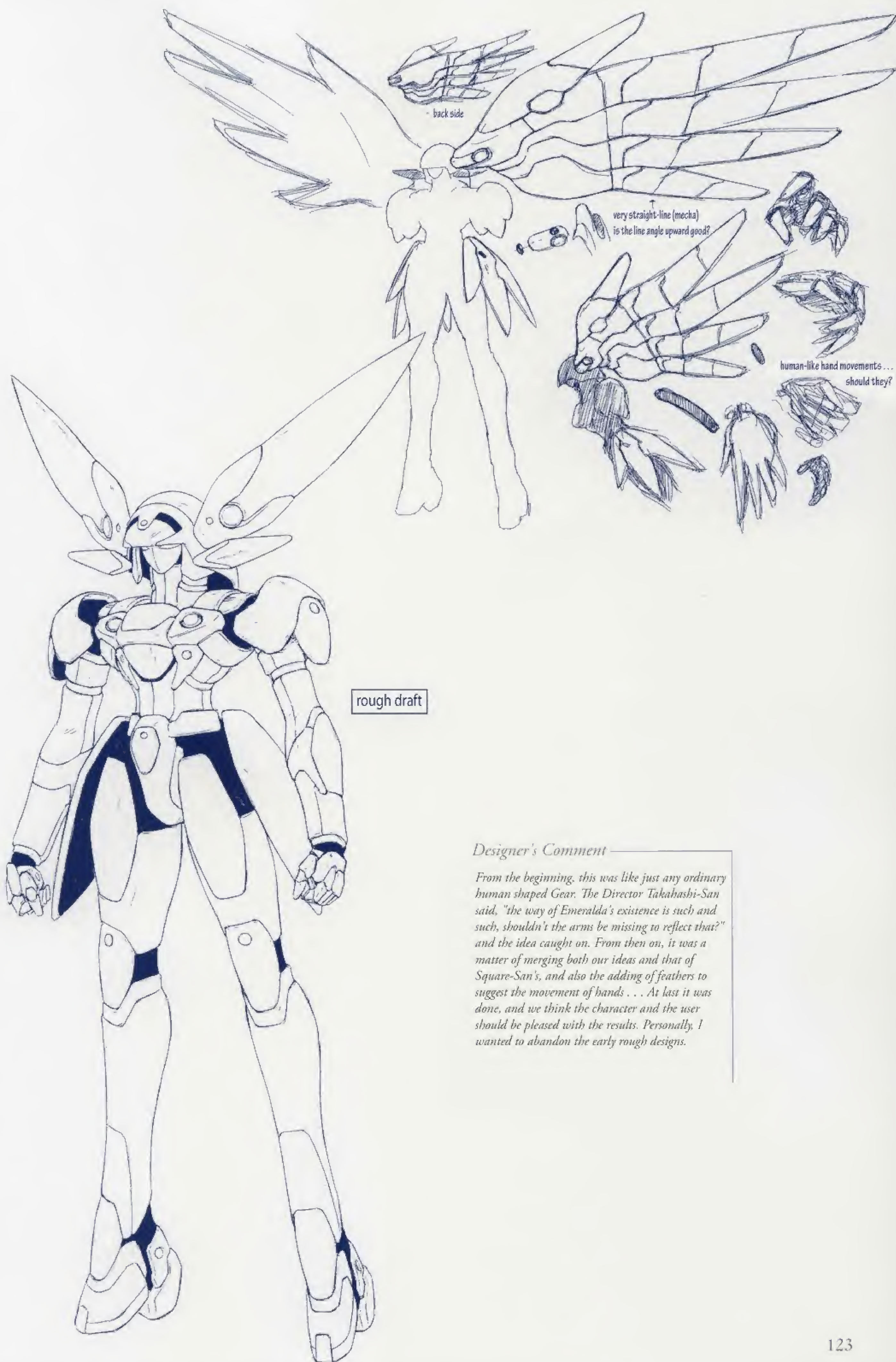
rough draft



# Crescens





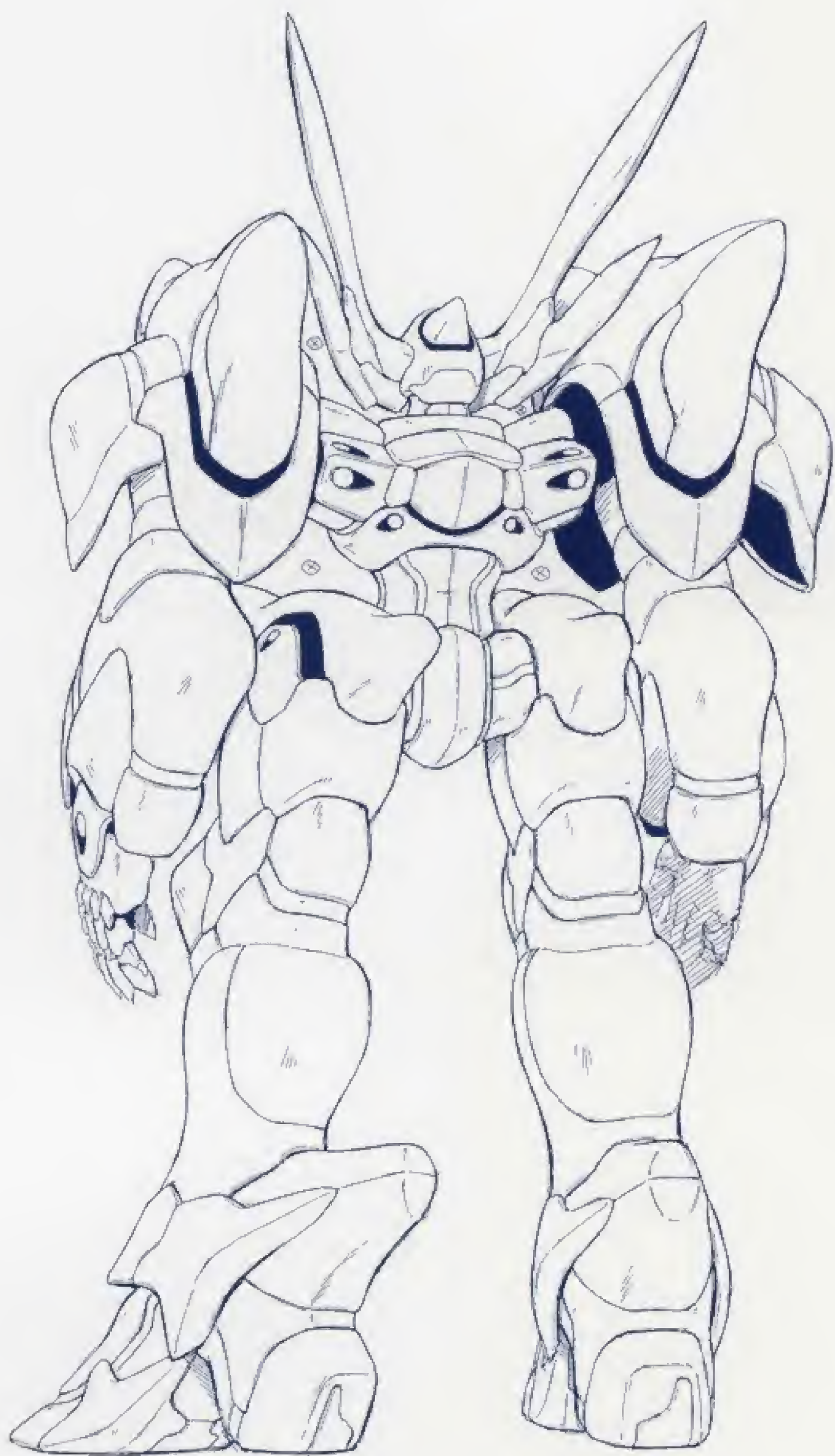


### Designer's Comment

From the beginning, this was like just any ordinary human shaped Gear. The Director Takahashi-San said, "the way of Emerald's existence is such and such, shouldn't the arms be missing to reflect that?" and the idea caught on. From then on, it was a matter of merging both our ideas and that of Square-San's, and also the adding of feathers to suggest the movement of hands . . . At last it was done, and we think the character and the user should be pleased with the results. Personally, I wanted to abandon the early rough designs.

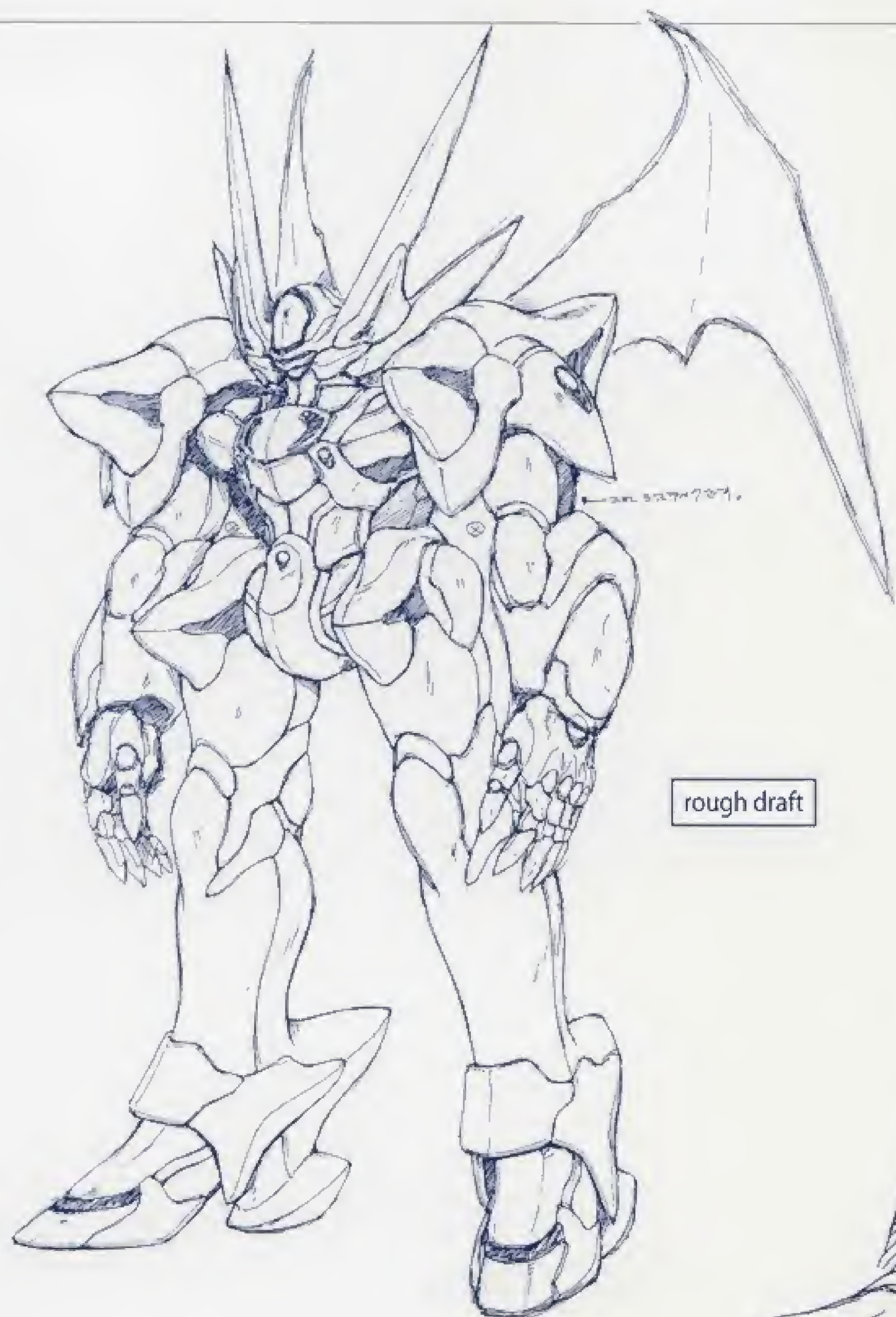


# ■ El • Fenrir



El • Fenrir's weapons

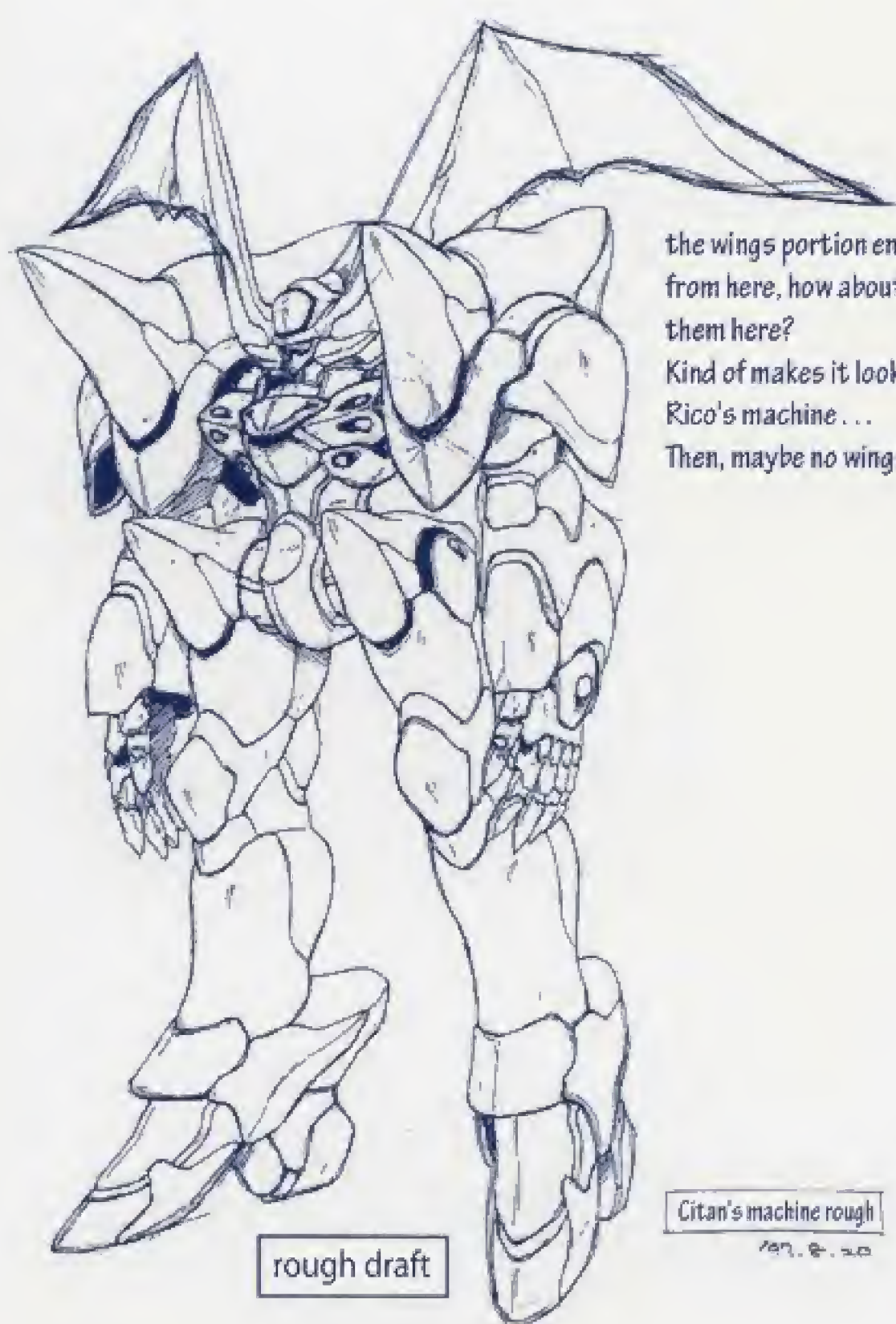




rough draft

### Designer's Comment

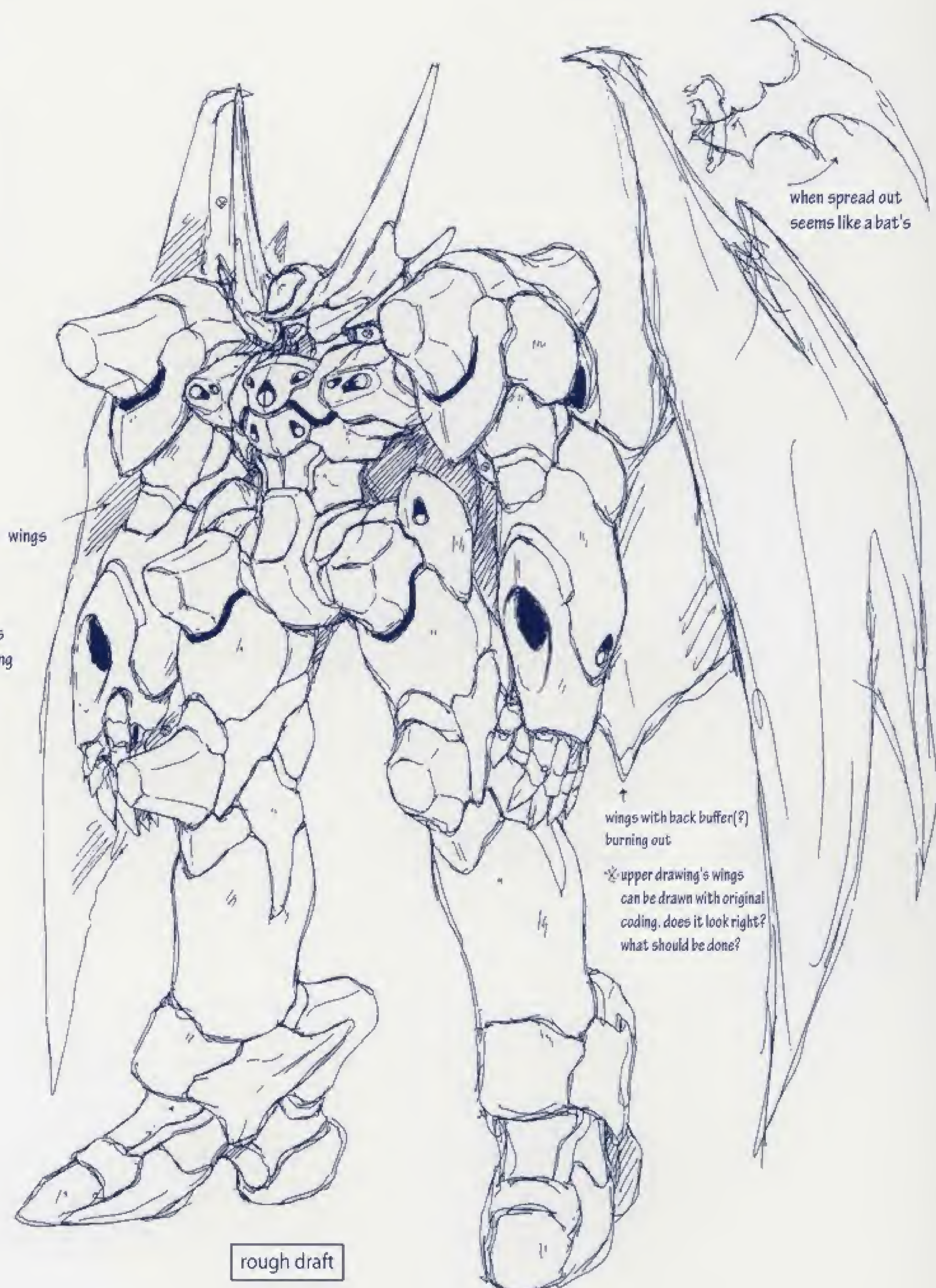
*This Gear was a tougher design to hash out because we didn't have much envisioned beforehand . . . A large part of the reason was it wasn't any particular one type. Upon looking at all the roughs nearby, it can be understood. Originally expected to have wings similar to OR Weltall's, when looking over it, it became clear that the wings didn't go well with the shoulders. We tried joining them to the head instead, but that was no good . . . Ultimately because we didn't want to change the design of the shoulders too much, we decided to do away with the wings altogether.*



rough draft

the wings portion emerges from here, how about joining them here?  
Kind of makes it look like Rico's machine . . .  
Then, maybe no wings . . .

Citan's machine rough  
7/27. 8. 20



rough draft

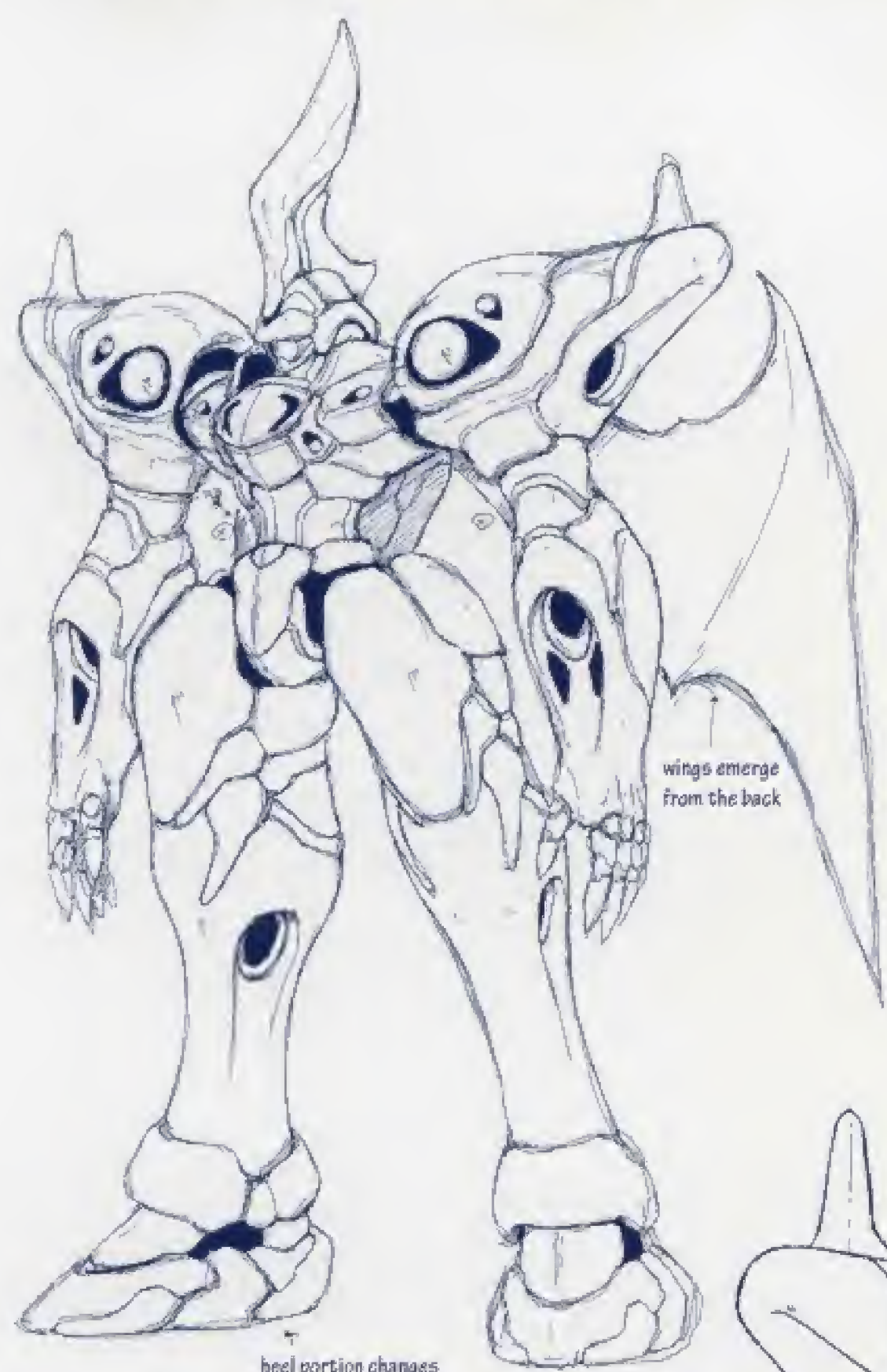
when spread out  
seems like a bat's

wings with back buffer(?)  
burning out

\*upper drawing's wings  
can be drawn with original  
coding. does it look right?  
what should be done?

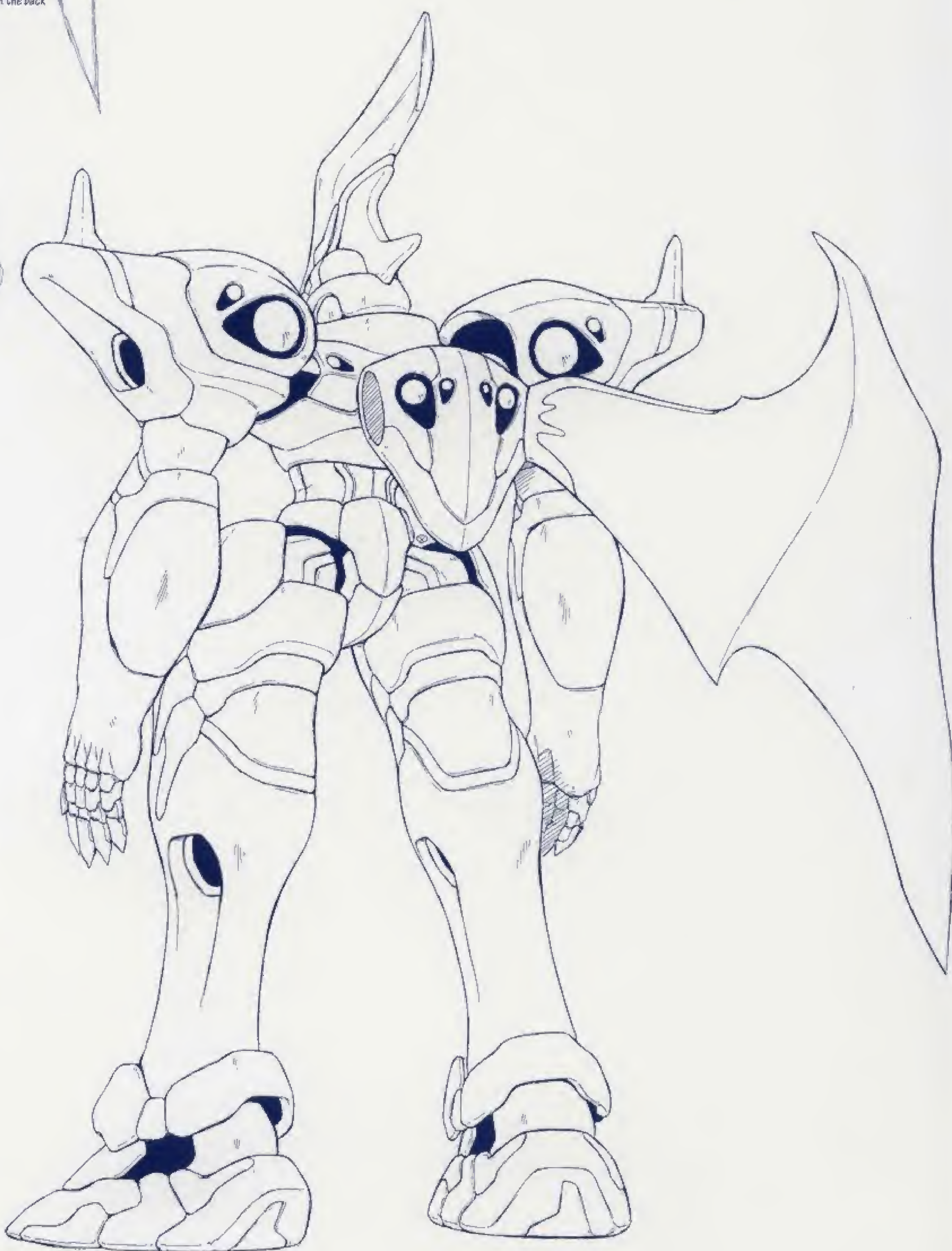


# ■ El • Andvari



## Designer's Comment

*This time, we didn't know that this Gear was different from Brigandier! We really thought it would just be an upgrade. The whip rod was the same, the holes on the Gear's body where the whip emerged was the same, even the machine's color. However, we thought we might change the wing attachments to horns . . . From the first, we thought it would follow similar lines to OR Weltall in terms of the total image, as in "what if Brigandier had an Id Mode?", the addition of wings merely added style to the overall look.*





# ■ El • Stier



Rico's machine  
rear pt. rough  
12/7/97

## Designer's Comment

Overall, the impression given by Stier is one of vitality, but it was designed with the idea of making it a "badass Gear". It stays in the mind a little. But the changes in Stier's planned design went beyond just the head portion to the extent of adding wings . . . Now the rocket pack on the back has disappeared. Originally, it was intended that Stier lose the rockets along the way, but in the process of becoming an Omnigear, it progressed to a point where there was nothing on the back altogether. Upon review by all of us on the design team, it was decided to forgo any more changes and leave the back as it is.



## ■ El • Renmazuo



### Designer's Comment

At the point of turning this into an Omnigear, we really gave the horn on the head portion some thought. We didn't want it to come out seeming ridiculous, we were looking for a hardened sleek look. What would have been the cape was changed into wings for a better image. The globe shaped designs on the chest come straight from the command Materia in -FFVII- as a reference point. (heh, heh.) So this is how Renmaazuo was changed into an Omnigear. It goes without saying that we are pleased with the design.



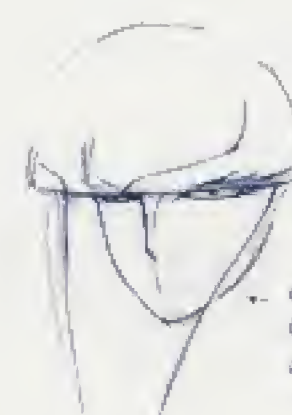
# Sophia's Omnigear

## Designer's Comment

A Gear that hardly ever appeared, but was originally designed from the beginning as the Omnigear form of Vierge. Very picturesque, but like the other Omnigears it is loaded with weapons. We gave thought to putting Aerods under the skirt and intended to do so. Also, as a look at the rough draft will make clear, the first version didn't have any legs. We really liked the design without legs, but after many revisions, decided to stick with the version in which legs were included after all.



side skirt reference  
(Elly's Gear)



on looking at the faces of Elly's and Miang's Gears, the similarity becomes apparent, but almost no one sees it.



the face has eyes  
and side feathers

feather like things should  
be more on a straight line  
with the roots of it.

rough draft



## Seibzehn • Omnigear rough draft



### Designer's Comment

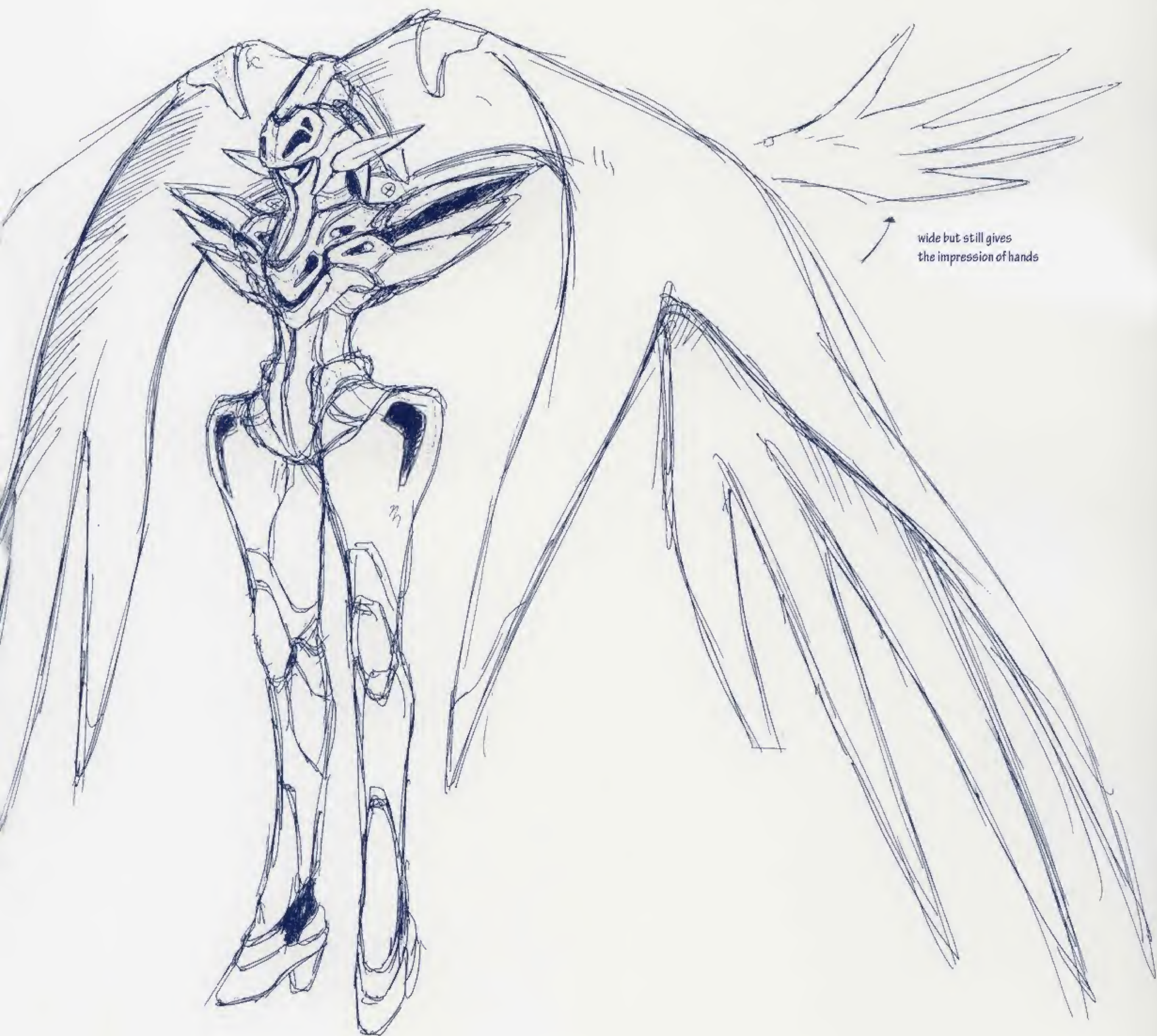
At first, it was expected that all the playable Gears would become Omnigears, so of course there was a design for Seibzehn as well. And at last a design was settled on that suggested the previous machine. And the flaring breadth of the shoulders gave the impression that something else should be added along the lines of horns or wings, but not either of those . . . I think we came really close to "badass" here! Afterwards, large scale rockets were designed to go on the back, but of course developed into unnatural wing like projections.



## ■ Crescens • Omnigear rough draft

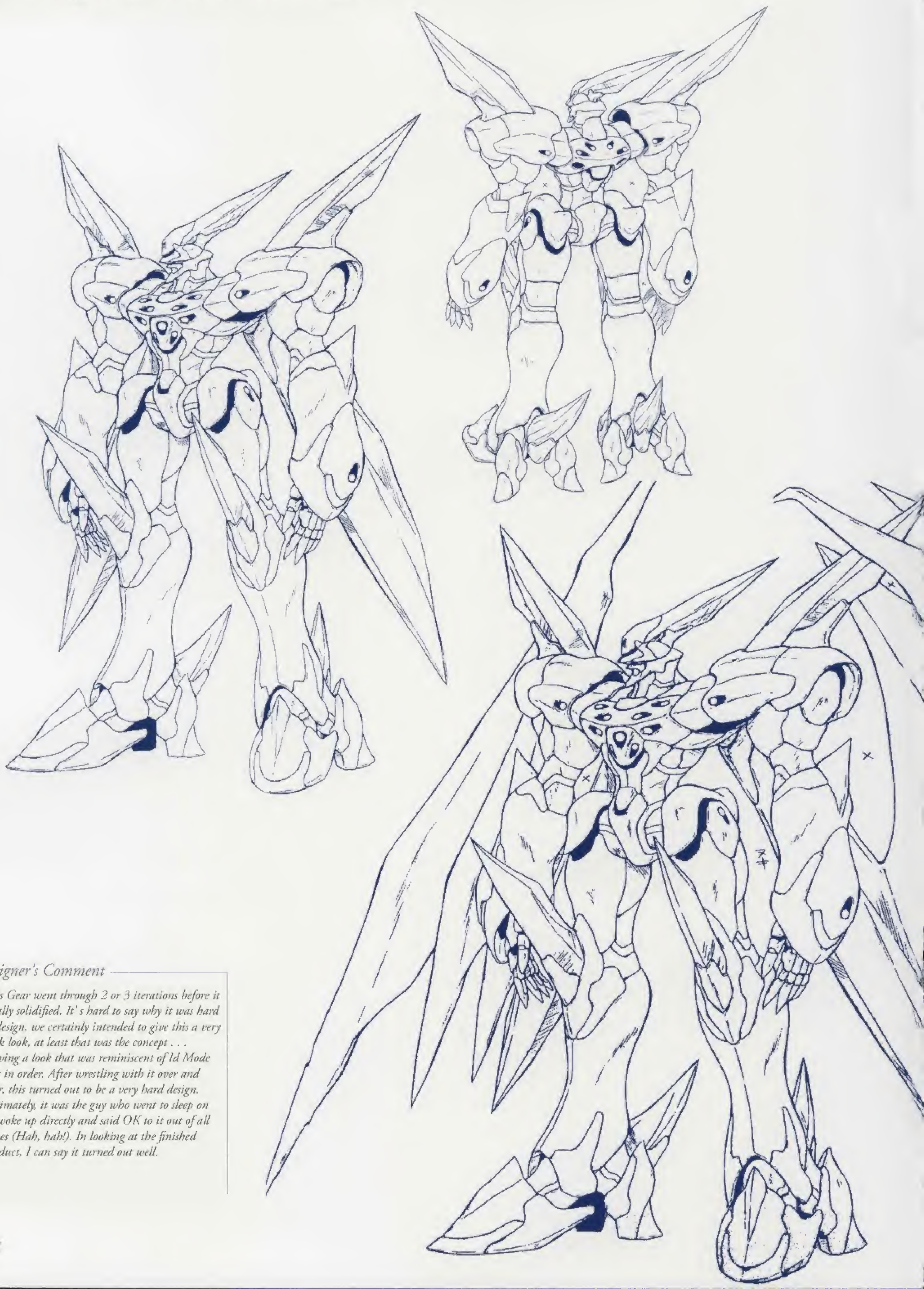
### *Designer's Comment*

*Like Seibzehn, this one didn't become an Omnigear either, but this was one of the more difficult to design into one. We wanted to go for a really sleek look for this machine, and the wings were there from the first. If arms could be said to indicate vitality, then the "no arms" thing would suggest an inner sort of collapse. But the wings would come to symbolize an inner awakening and rebirth, spreading outwards . . . Later, in order to go for a really "wicked" look, the area where arms would be had a piercing type weapon.*





## ■ Original (OR) Weltall



### Designer's Comment

*This Gear went through 2 or 3 iterations before it finally solidified. It's hard to say why it was hard to design, we certainly intended to give this a very sleek look, at least that was the concept . . . Having a look that was reminiscent of Id Mode was in order. After wrestling with it over and over, this turned out to be a very hard design. Ultimately, it was the guy who went to sleep on it, woke up directly and said OK to it out of all hopes (Hah, hah!). In looking at the finished product, I can say it turned out well.*

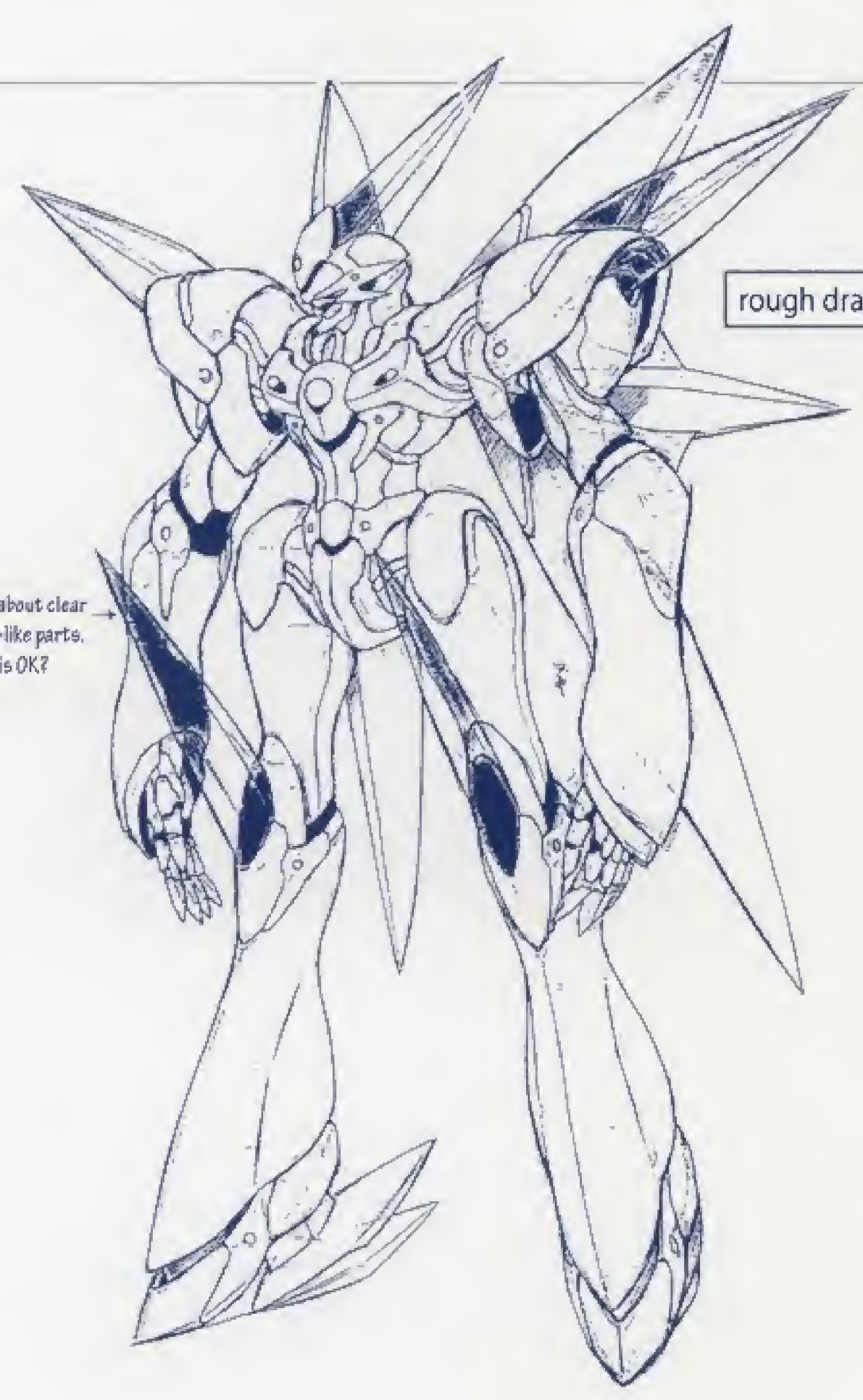


rough draft



rough draft

how about clear  
horn-like parts.  
is this OK?

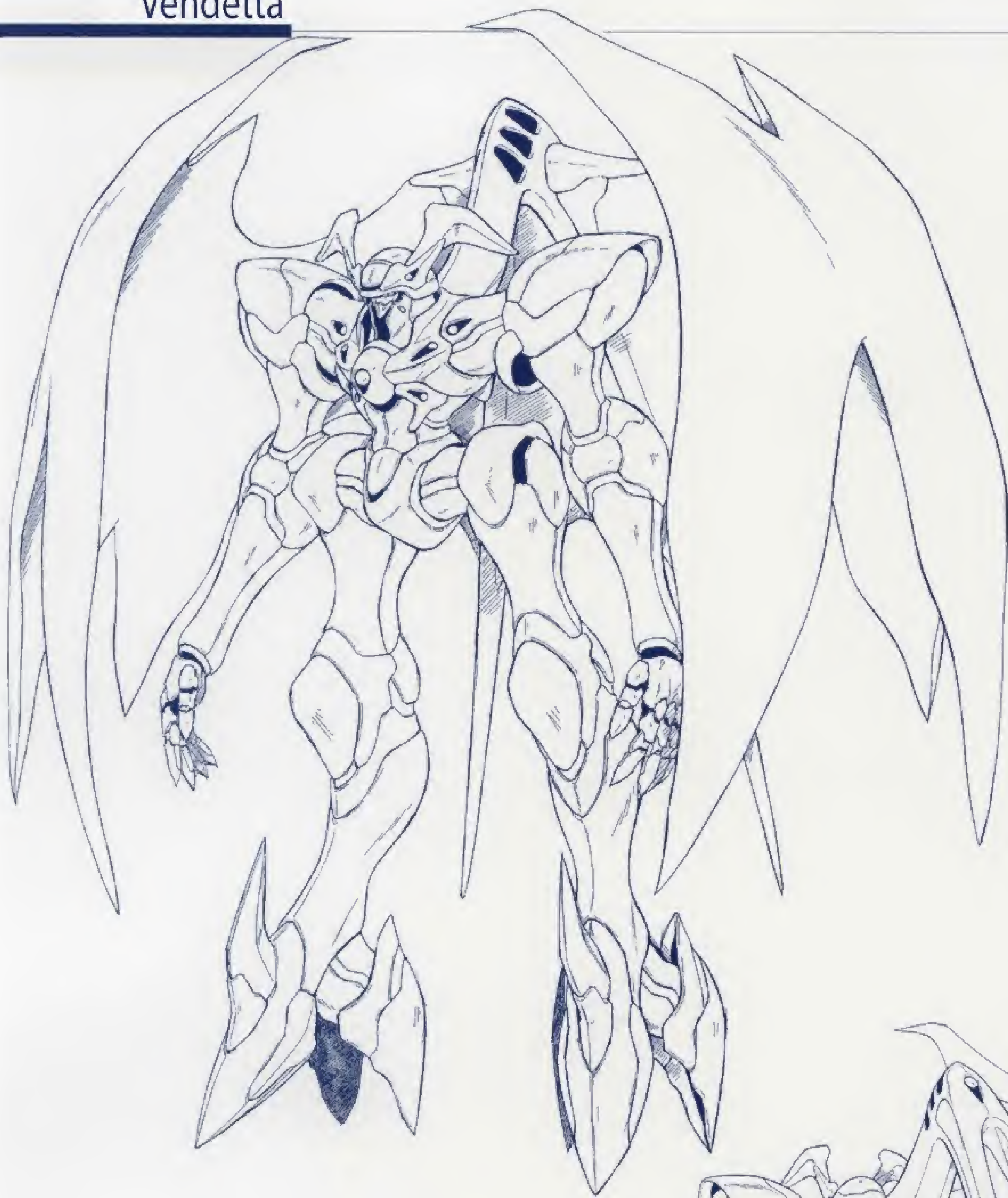


rough draft





## Vendetta

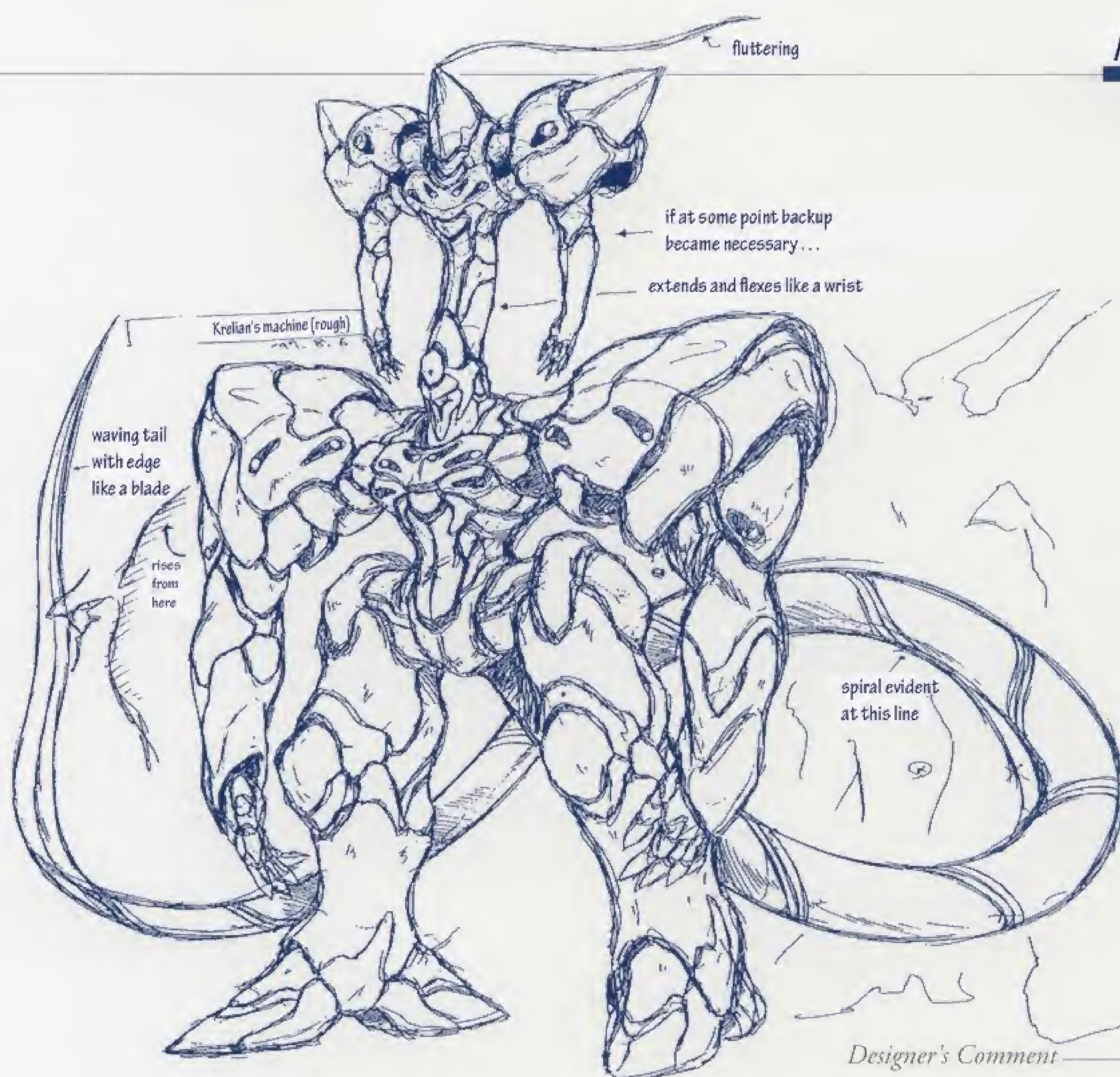


### Designer's Comment

This machine was developed rather quickly. In truth, it was given the OK faster than Weltall. In terms of the design for changing Wyvern into an Omnigear, Wyvern wasn't my design originally, so I thought about how the other Gears were powered up when becoming Omnigears . . . thinking an idea might float up to the surface. In regards to specializing the machines themselves, it always came back to the winged look. In looking at the shapes of the other Gears, I got the feeling that maybe there had been quite a few wings sprouting from Gears' backs?

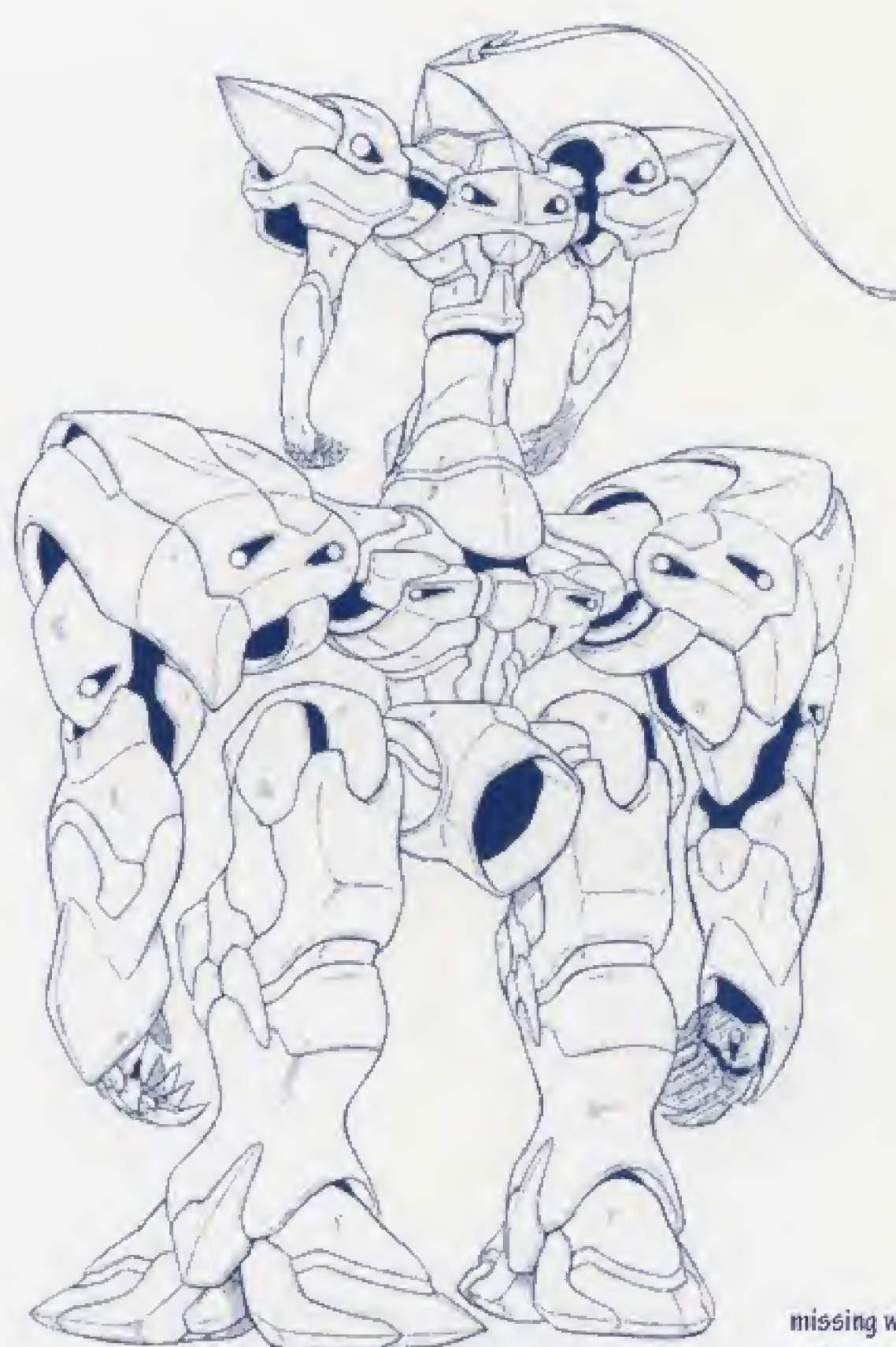






## Designer's Comment

Because an enemy character, especially a boss must have a smart image, many designs were brought out, with this one as the result. Originally it did not have a tail, but was added in because when finished, it looked like El Stier and needed to be differentiated. As for myself, I had designed it with the end of the tail as a sharp edged sword as illustrated. Also, the extra set of arms was to set it apart from the other machines as something altogether different.



missing whip-like tail in this view





# Opiomorph







### Designer's Comment

Drawing this as a Gear that captures the image of the woman pilot as lost in thought, it had two legs right from the beginning, and in order to separate it from other female Gears it was designed with the lower half as that of a snake. The original design was meant to give the impression of a Naga version of Sophia's Omnigear. However, given the Gear's demeanor, the Valkyrie like helmet and the overall feminine look while riddled with thorns, it becomes a standout image in its own right.





# ■ Deus

Deus (complete form)

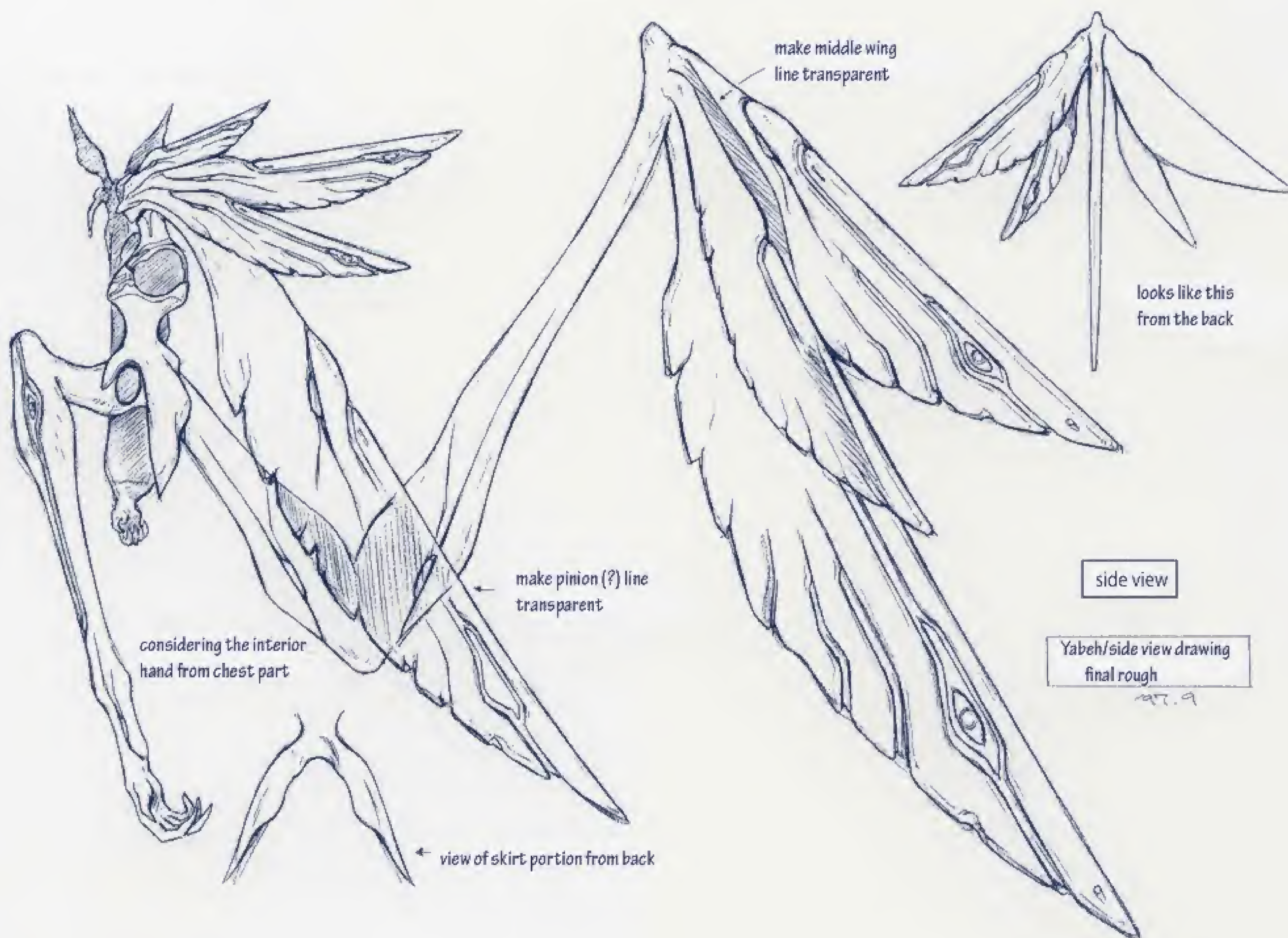
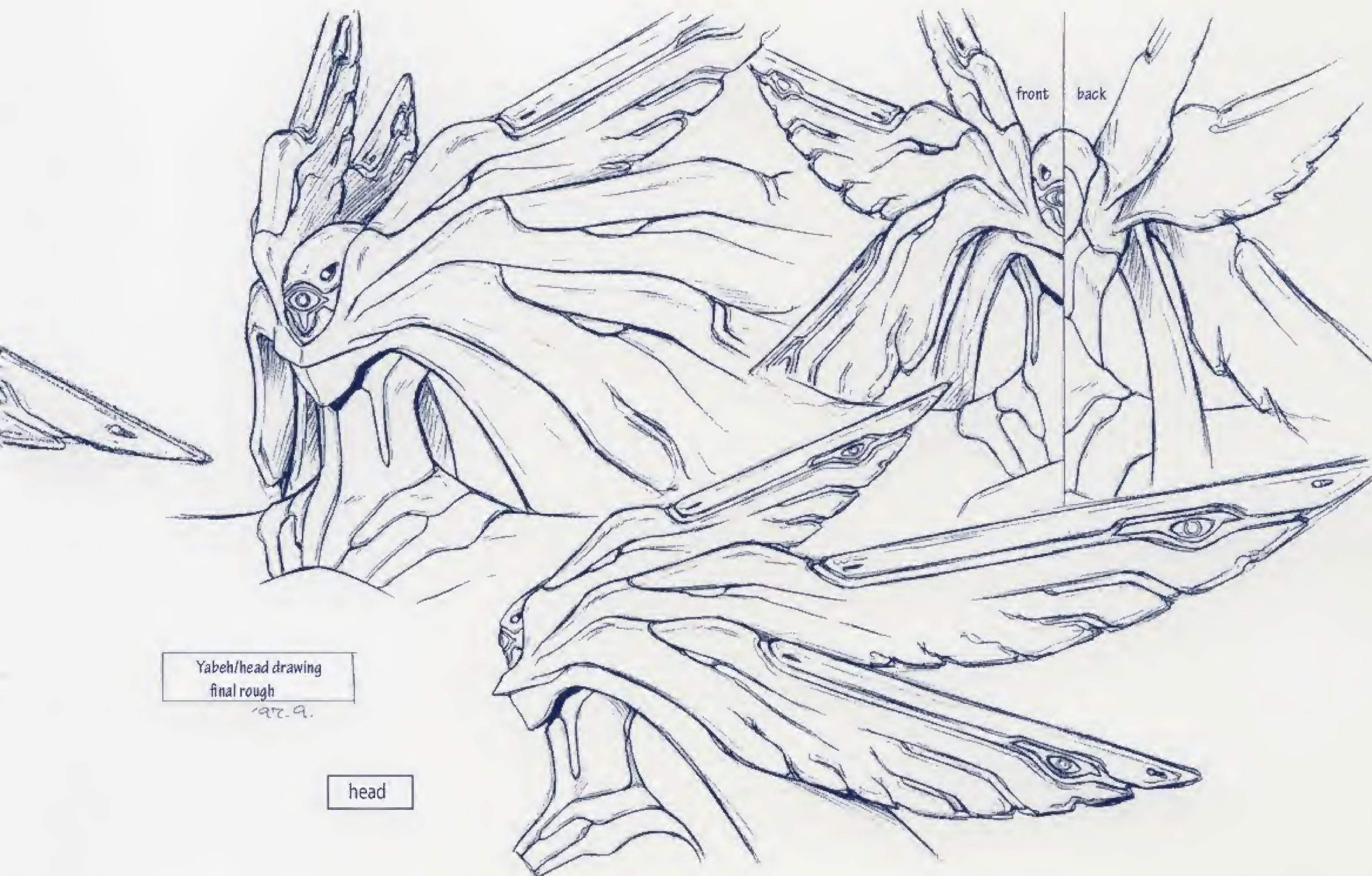


Arm Angels

Yabeh/arm figures

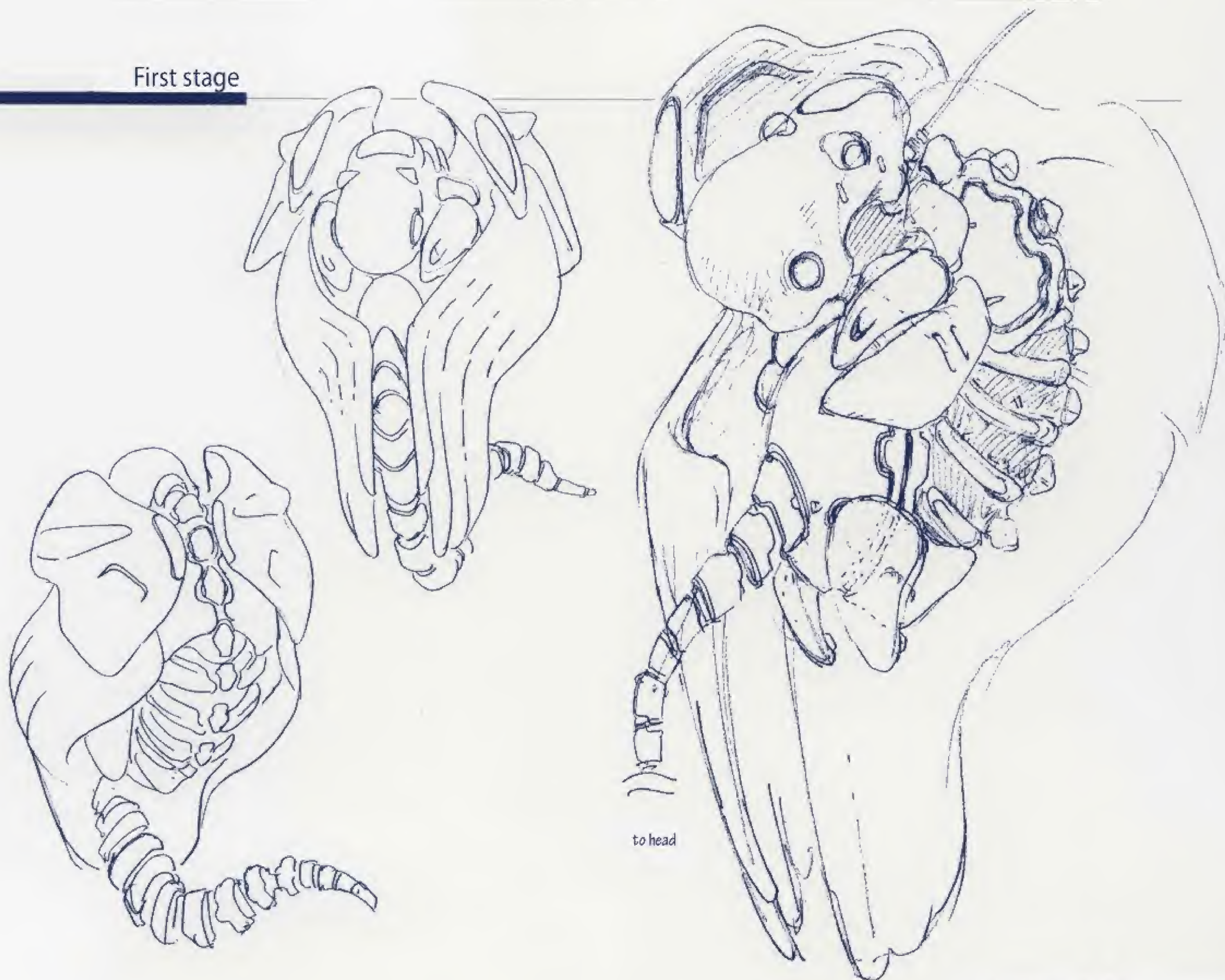
197.9







First stage

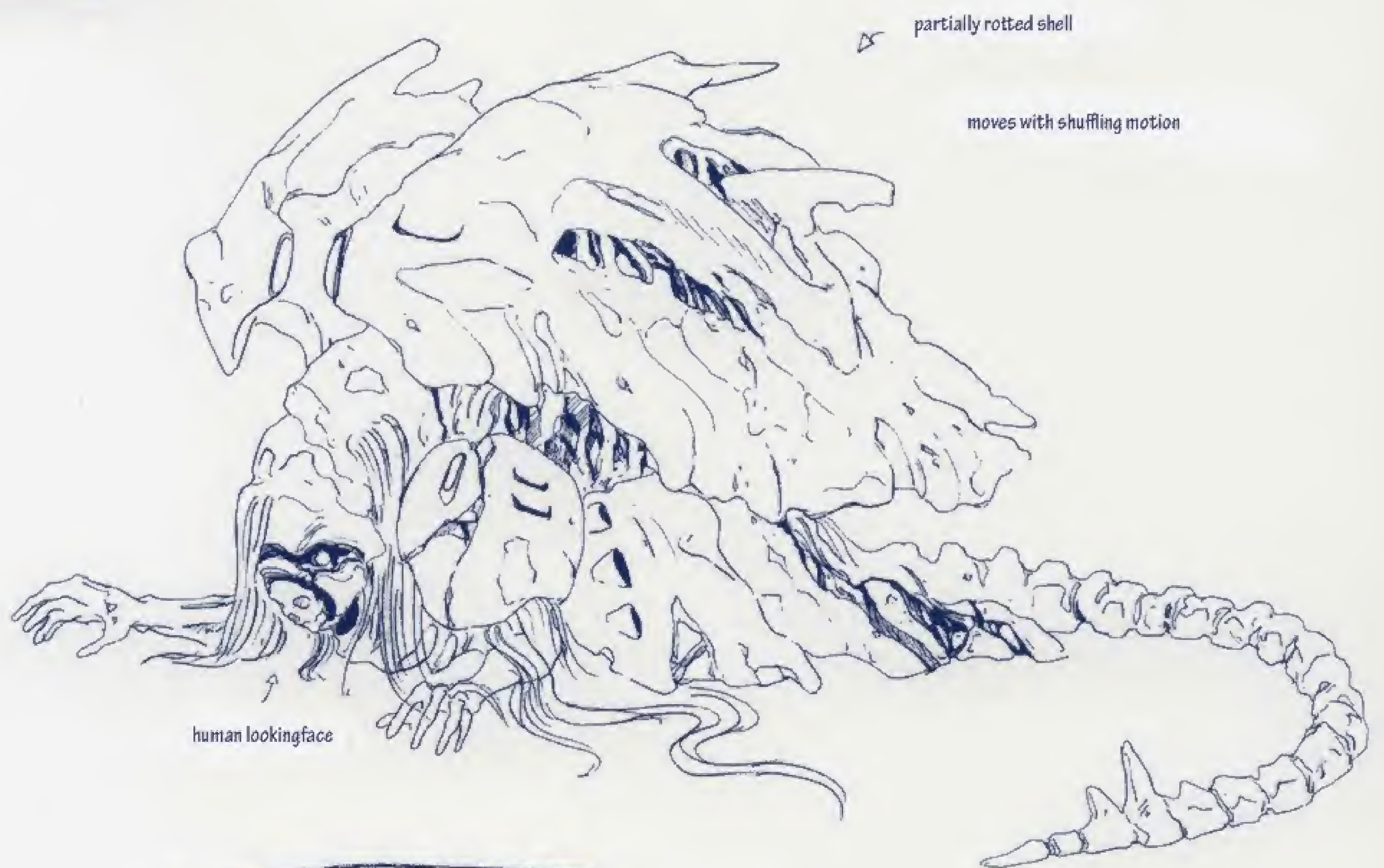


Second stage

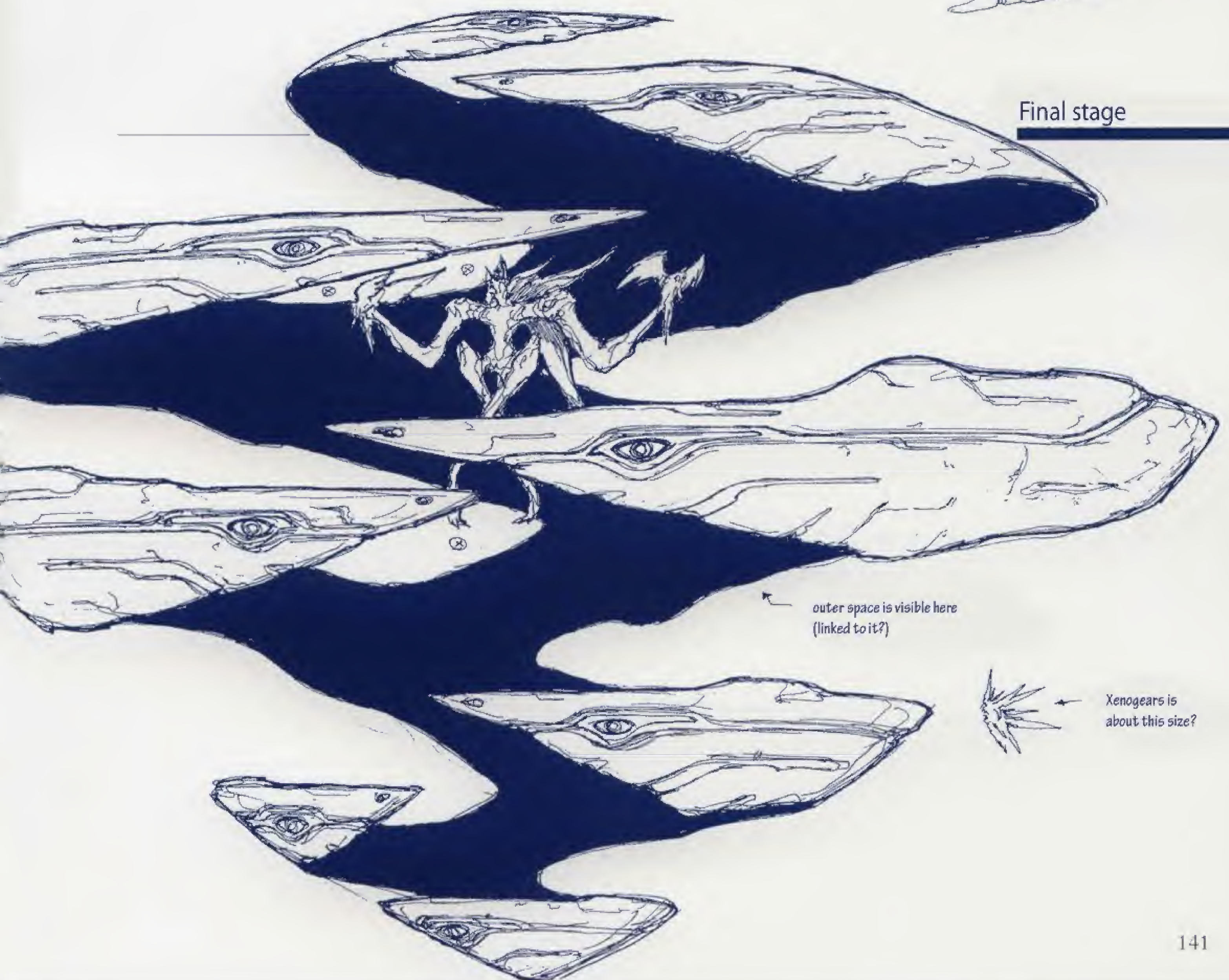




## Third stage



## Final stage





# Deus rough draft

all Omnigears are gathered in here

the face and arms within the ring shaped part are unable to show coming attack...

maybe it should shine with light...

what about the part between arms and cape portion showing outer space?

Yabeh 1st draft

body color should be pale



## Designer's Comment

From the first, it was decided that whatever the design was, it should give an impression of a holy female god. It was a very disturbing image overall that was filled with surprises, and incorporated Square San's original directive to include wings in its design. However, in the nebulous process of hashing out the form of it, a great deal of thought was given to its evolution from the young version, and no matter what design we came up with, it just didn't work until the current one. In order to design something special, we decided to see if we could change the legs into arms.







## Xenogears







← when walking only this part will move in back



#### Designer's Comment

In terms of image, this is Weltall's transformation into an Omnigear. For the design itself, I went from a machine look, to a smart form that would leave an uber "badass" impression! I liked the projecting horns on Weltall ID's back, so I lengthened them and adjusted the face to come together with the rest of the entire form so that it would flow along into one image. But I meant to leave the face as it was as a reminder of Weltall. This design came together fairly quickly, and was used for reference in drawing the images of the other Omnigears.

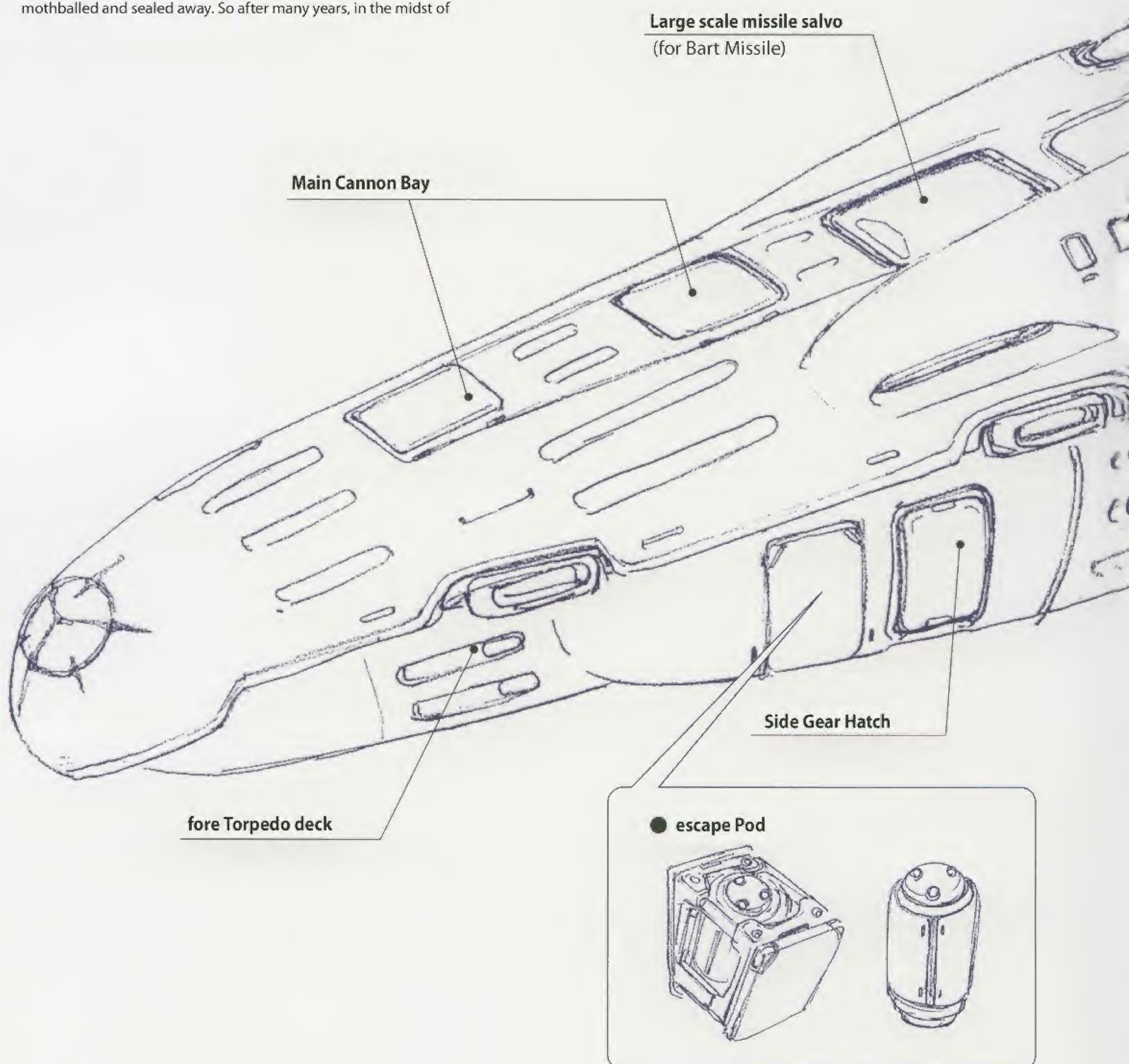


### Yggdrasil

The ship's predecessor was designed by the former Fatima Dynasty of Aveh's first King, Raganbart I, the flagship of the planned fleet of 3 in the Ehrholz line. The tentative name for the ship was [C=Kaiser]. At the time of this designation by alphabet, these letters were often used as a simple label. In the case of German lettering, -A=Anton, B=Berta-, and continues on to -C=Kaiser, D=Dora-, etc. Since then on through to present day vessels, it has been rumored that there were 2 prototype vessels.

The official name of this type of vessel was -Sigrid- as expected, after Raganbart's betrothed, but in Edbart IV's day, this had been changed to aid in the ongoing mutual peace negotiations with Kislev as both countries adopted more military stances. At this time it was drydocked along with the second ship, both had been mothballed and sealed away. So after many years, in the midst of

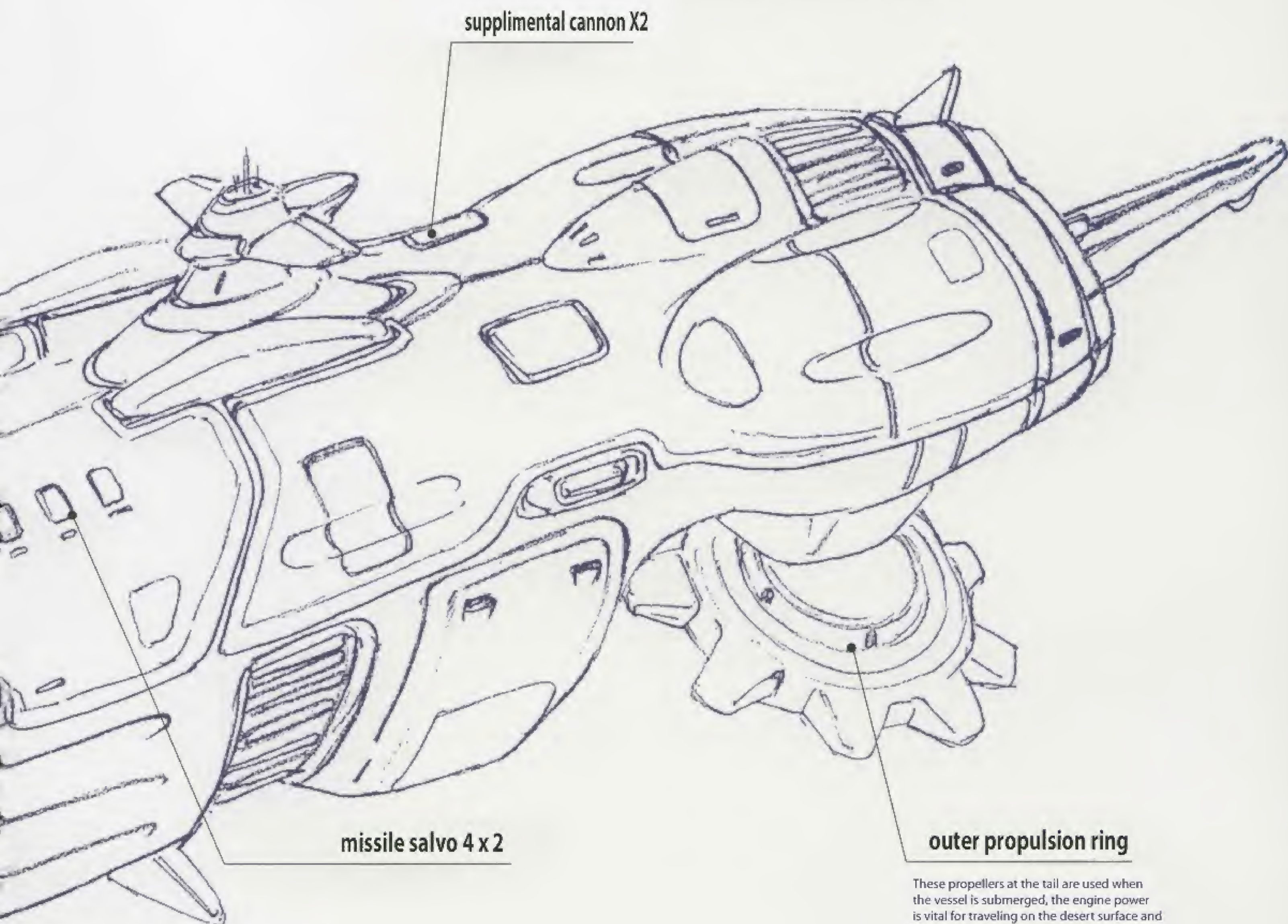
the chaos from the coup d'etat by Shakhan, both ships went missing. In truth, the 1st ship was stolen by Sigurd and the others during the raid to rescue Bart, and became the rebel guerilla forces' lead ship in the nearby desert area, taking on new life as the -Yggdrasil-. This first ship was destroyed afterwards by Weltall Id, and by following a fated path, Bart and the others managed to get a hold of the second ship. While it has not been stated, this was the missing 2nd ship in the Sigrid class. This ship was equipped identically and had the same form as the other and so was named the -Yggdrasil 2-.



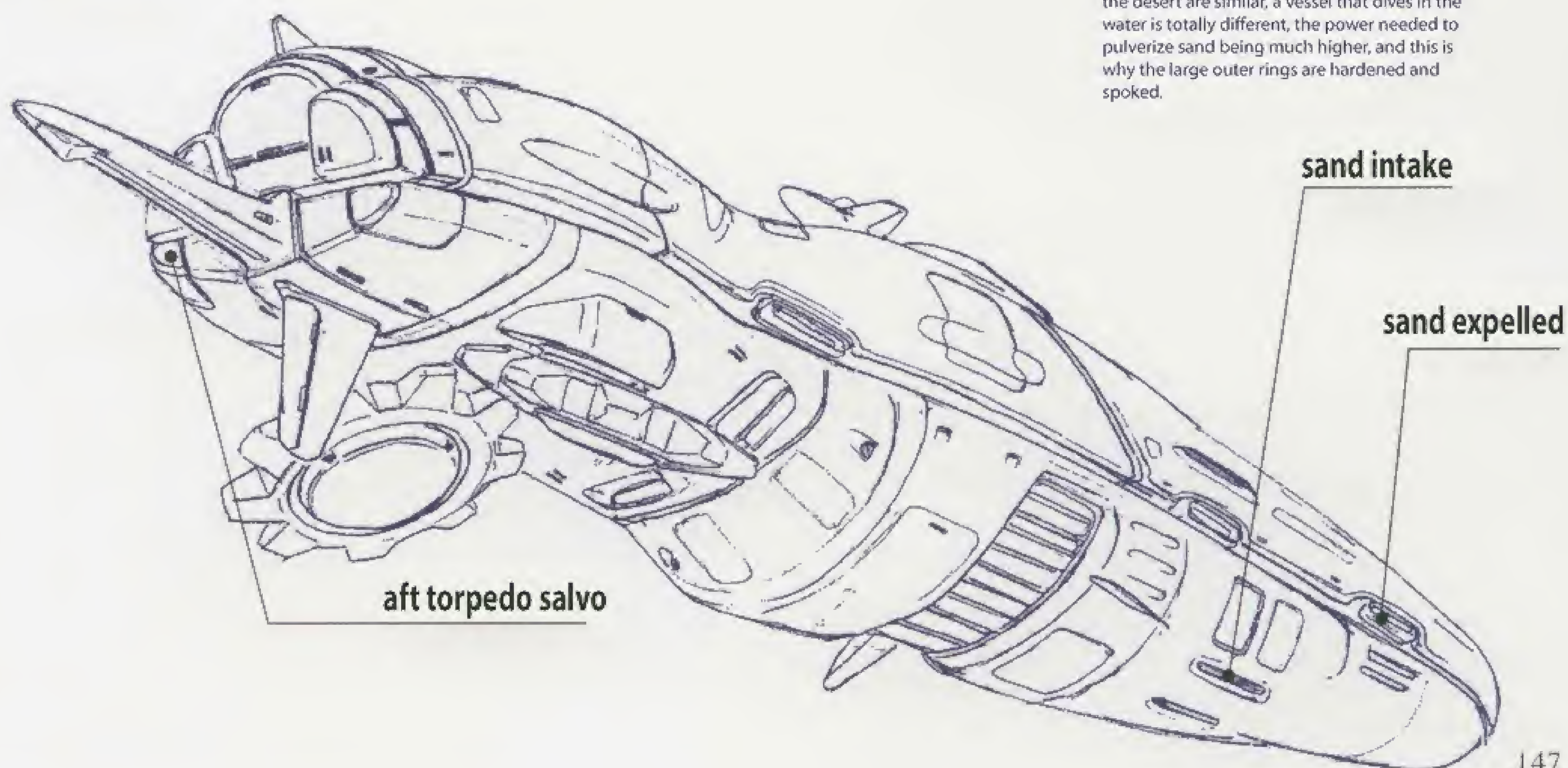


## SPEC DATA

longest point	377 sharls	weaponry	400 sem cannon- 2 bases
breadth	68 sharls		130 sem 45 gauge cannon
normal weight	96,800 kahns		12 40 sem 3rd link serial rifle cannons
in desert weight	128,900 kahns		6 decks of 800 sem torpedoes
main engine	excavated 25th Fatima model	crew memers	258 persons
	Slave generator base 1, 2 axis		
output	1,368,000 kahns/oolia		
surface speed	72 repsol		
in desert speed	95 repsol		



These propellers at the tail are used when the vessel is submerged, the engine power is vital for traveling on the desert surface and in the sand. While the concepts of diving into the desert are similar, a vessel that dives in the water is totally different, the power needed to pulverize sand being much higher, and this is why the large outer rings are hardened and spoked.

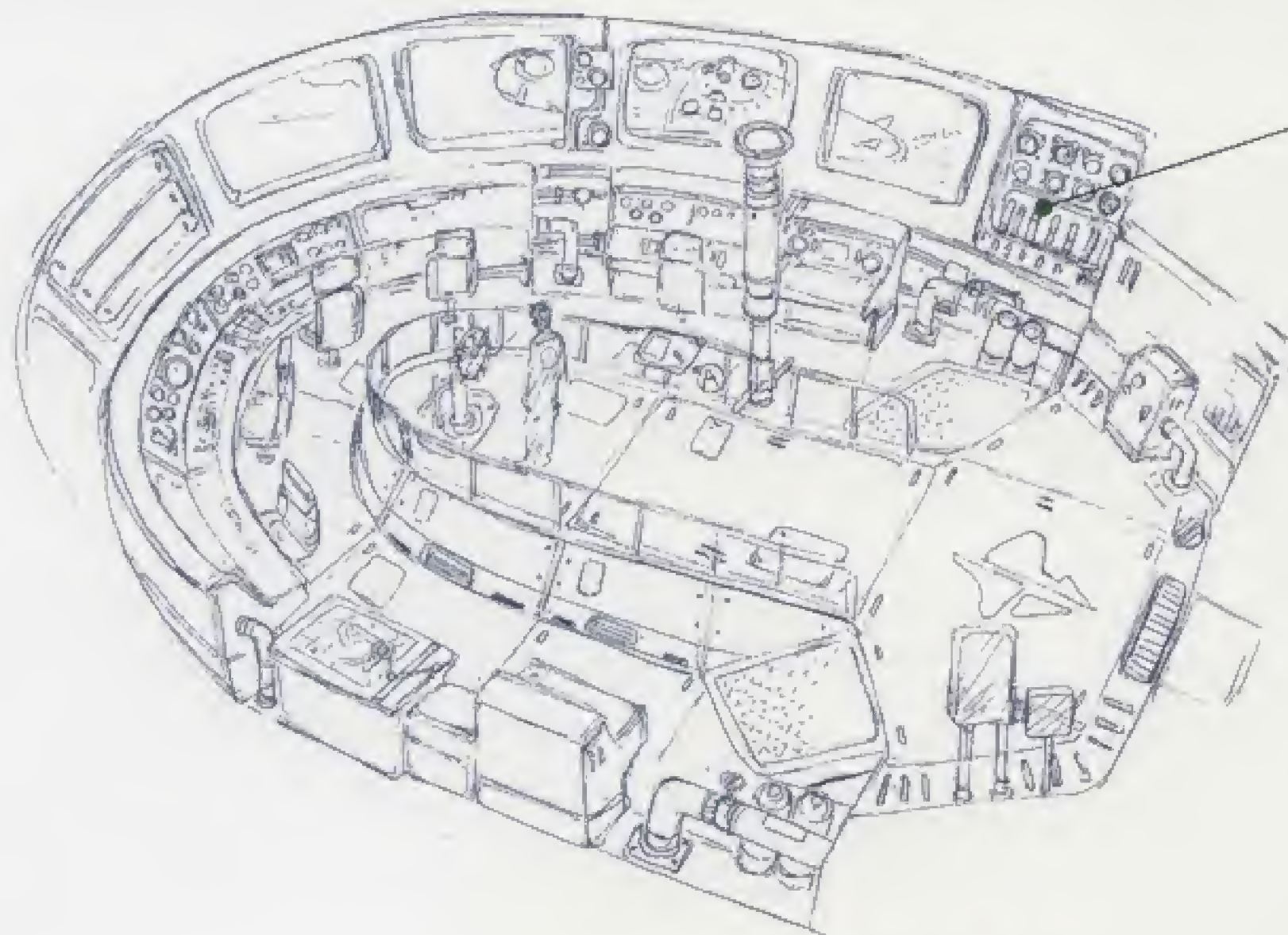




## — Yggdrasil interior structure —

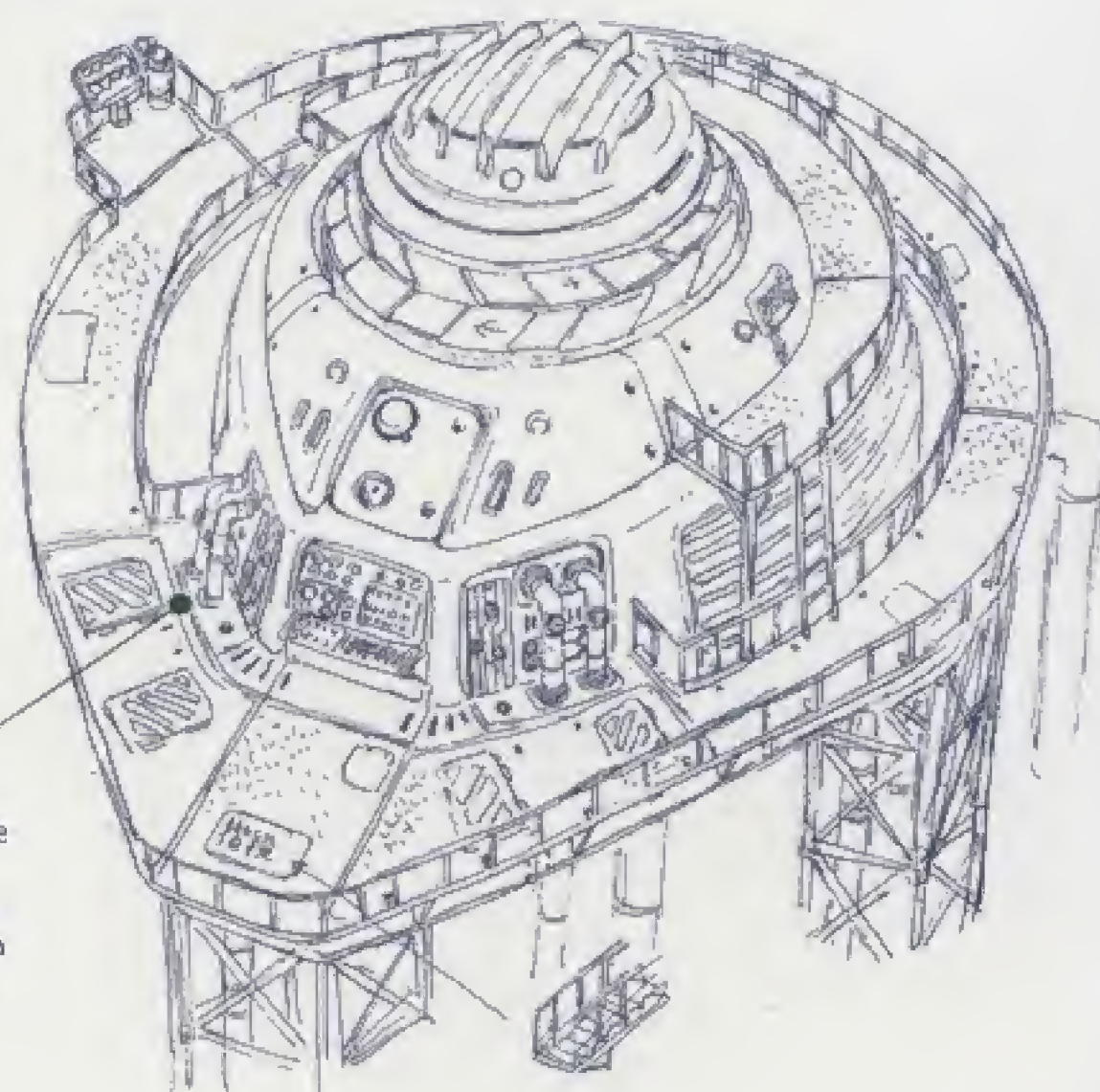
A special characteristic of the Yggdrasil lies in the operation of the smaller interior modules (each separate portion acts independently). The entire ship being constructed of 5 modules, they are respectively the command center (Bridge), engine section (ship's center), weapons division (ship's upper level), supply division (lower fore decks), sand granulators and flow pumps, outer ring propulsion along with other sundry machinery (aft section). Each module

is capable of independent function, and even though the Command section and the weapons division lack support facilities, they can separate themselves. This is the advantage in the modules, able to convert individually and renew in some cases, this is used for damage control (immediate placement in times of damage to machines) and the vessel can continue smoothly in normal operations.



**Bridge (Cmd. Center)**

Each part of the ship can be worked with remote control, but needs a base of operations. At its center, like a water submarine, the state of the sand layers can be gauged by the naked eye. Control (direct operation) is mostly like today's submarines, Bart would probably be surprised to find he runs an old 'classic'.



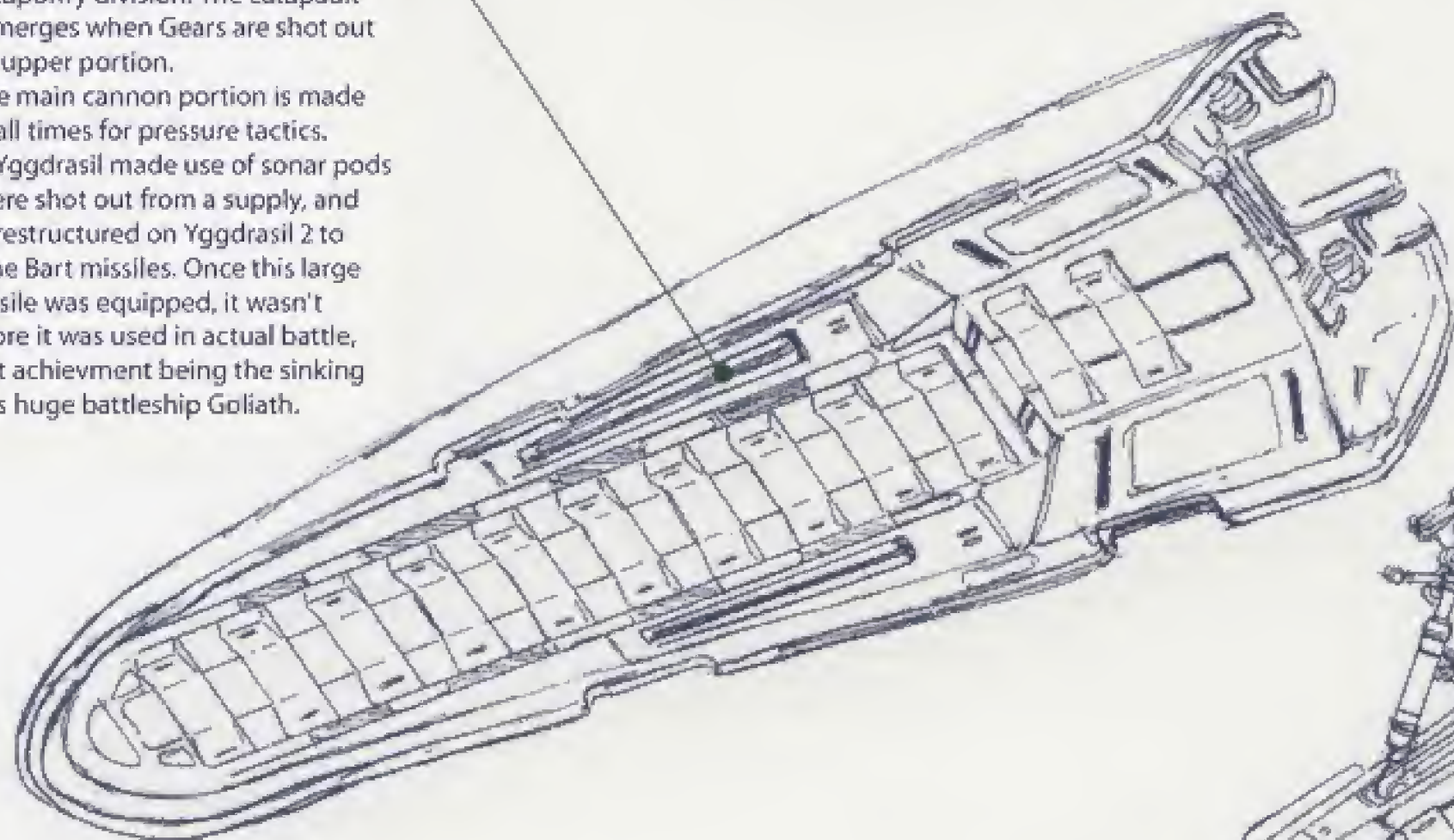
**Engine Room**

With a slave generator as its core, this module governs the ship's propulsion. Overseen by the "ol' man" engineer, he keeps all of the interlocked sections in working order. Even though this type of slave generator is one excavated in a far corner of Aveh, is a large scale Fatima 25th era excavated model.

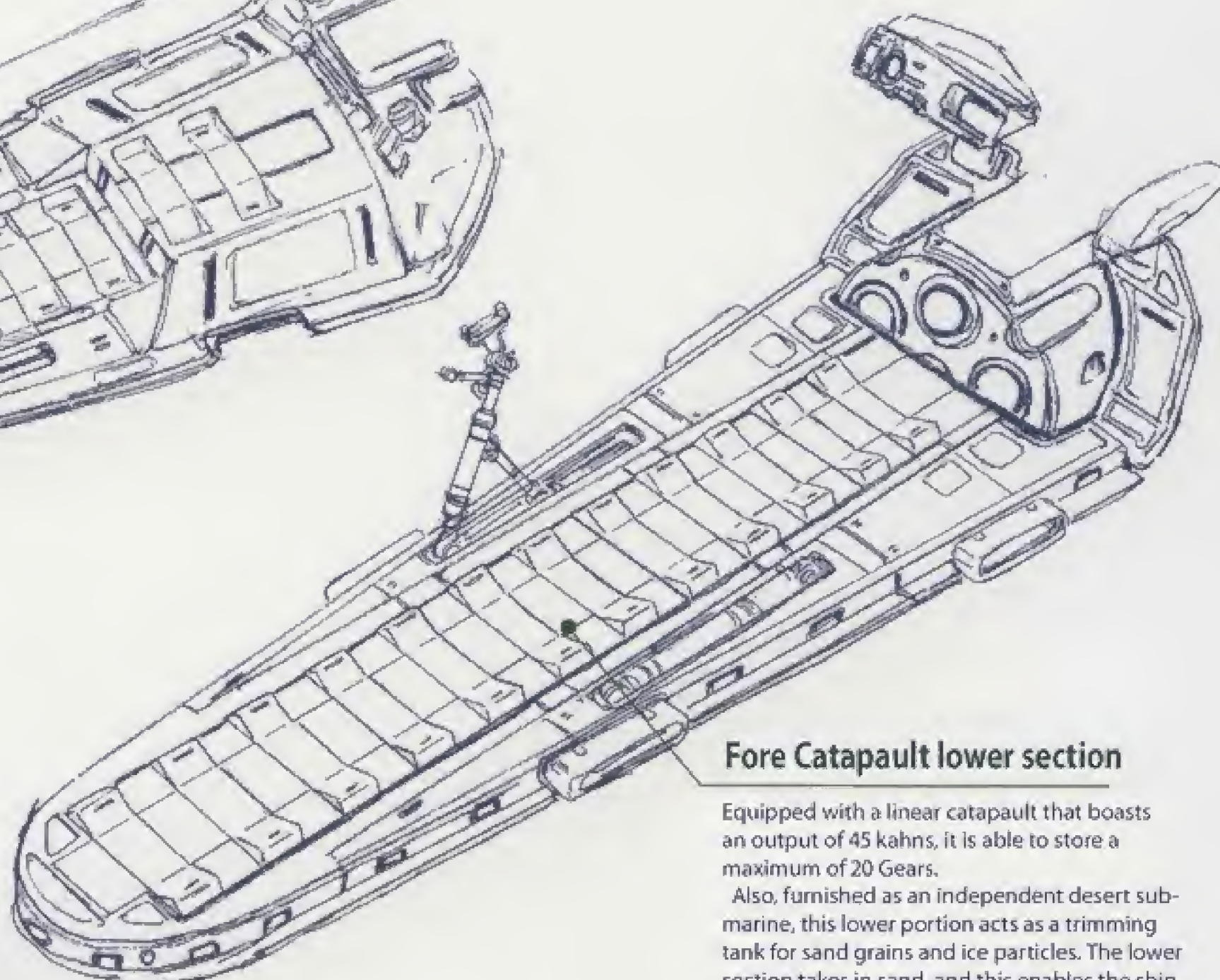
**Fore Catapult upper section**

Having 25 1.2 sorhl cannons, 2 hidden cannon towers are based in the center of the weaponry division. The catapult bridge emerges when Gears are shot out from the upper portion.

Now, the main cannon portion is made ready at all times for pressure tactics. The first Yggdrasil made use of sonar pods which were shot out from a supply, and this was restructured on Yggdrasil 2 to launch the Bart missiles. Once this large scale missile was equipped, it wasn't long before it was used in actual battle, one great achievement being the sinking of Kislev's huge battleship Goliath.



**Catapult expanded view**



**Fore Catapult lower section**

Equipped with a linear catapult that boasts an output of 45 kahns, it is able to store a maximum of 20 Gears.

Also, furnished as an independent desert submarine, this lower portion acts as a trimming tank for sand grains and ice particles. The lower section takes in sand, and this enables the ship to execute sharp turns by increasing the fore speed, it also has the effect of using the ship's own weight to increase velocity. Also, with the pulverizing wings, (moves sand, achieving a steady stream for movement, equipped this way enables sand navigation) and given the outer propulsion rings, the sand vessel gains mobility.



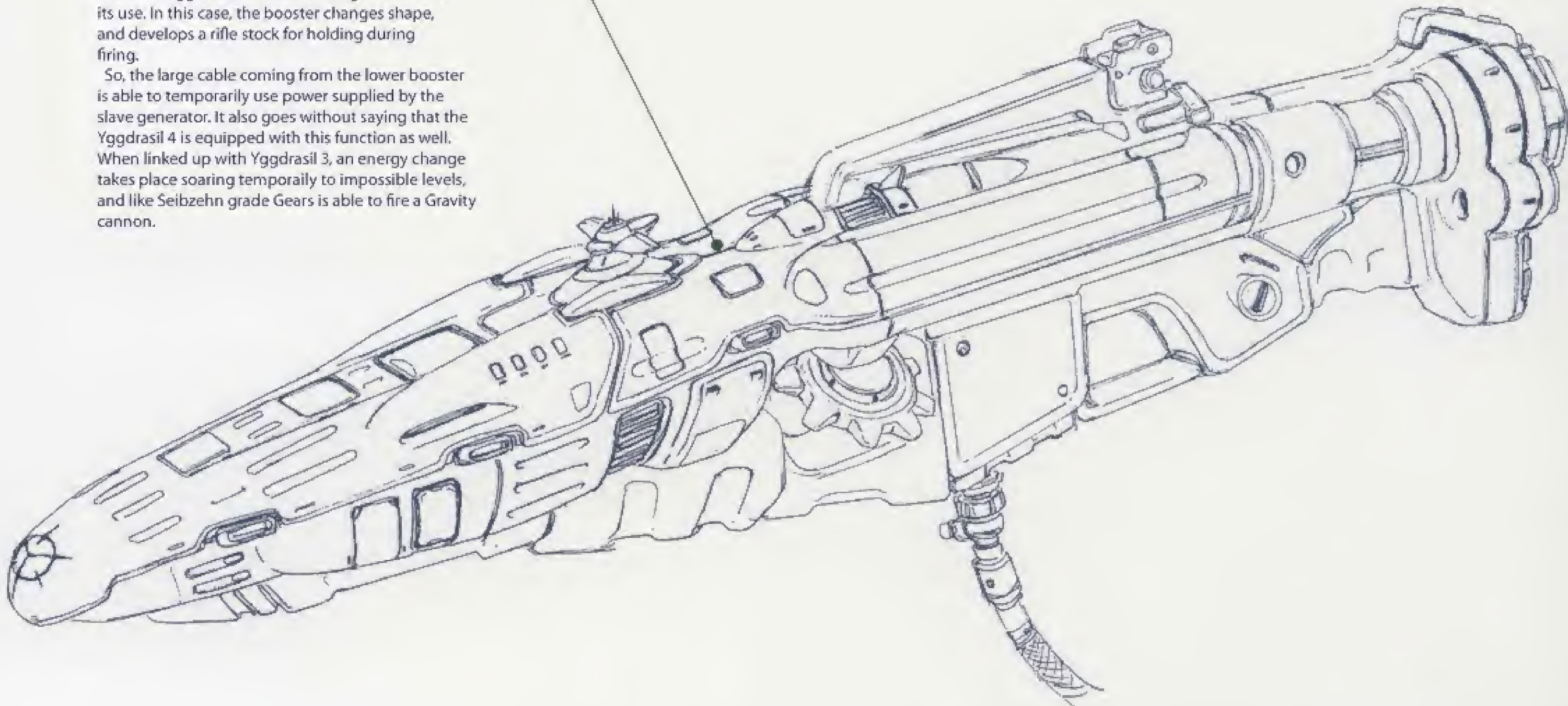
# Yggdrasil 3

With Yggdrasil 2 as the base, Shevat expanded and restructured it. Equipping a series of giant boosters at the tail, large scale propulsion wings (it is determined by the picture, that during the story they act together with the ship,) are added in, and a vessel is born with the ability to fly at great speeds. The booster is unable to activate during flight, but when Yggdrasil 4 is in Gear form, the Yggdrasil 3 becomes a huge cannon for its use. In this case, the booster changes shape, and develops a rifle stock for holding during firing.

So, the large cable coming from the lower booster is able to temporarily use power supplied by the slave generator. It also goes without saying that the Yggdrasil 4 is equipped with this function as well. When linked up with Yggdrasil 3, an energy change takes place soaring temporarily to impossible levels, and like Seibzehn grade Gears is able to fire a Gravity cannon.

## SPEC DATA

longest point	745 sharls	weaponry	400 25 sem cannon- 2 bases
breadth	115 sharls		130 sem 45 gauge cannon
normal weight	195, 000 kahns		18 40 sem 3rd link serial rifle cannons
in desert weight	258, 000 kahns		1 deck Bart missiles
main engine	excavated 25th Fatima model		6 decks of 800 sem torpedoes
	Slave generator base 1, 2 axis	crew memers	258 persons
output	1,556,000 kahns/oolia		
surface speed	80 repsol		
water/air speed	490 repsol		

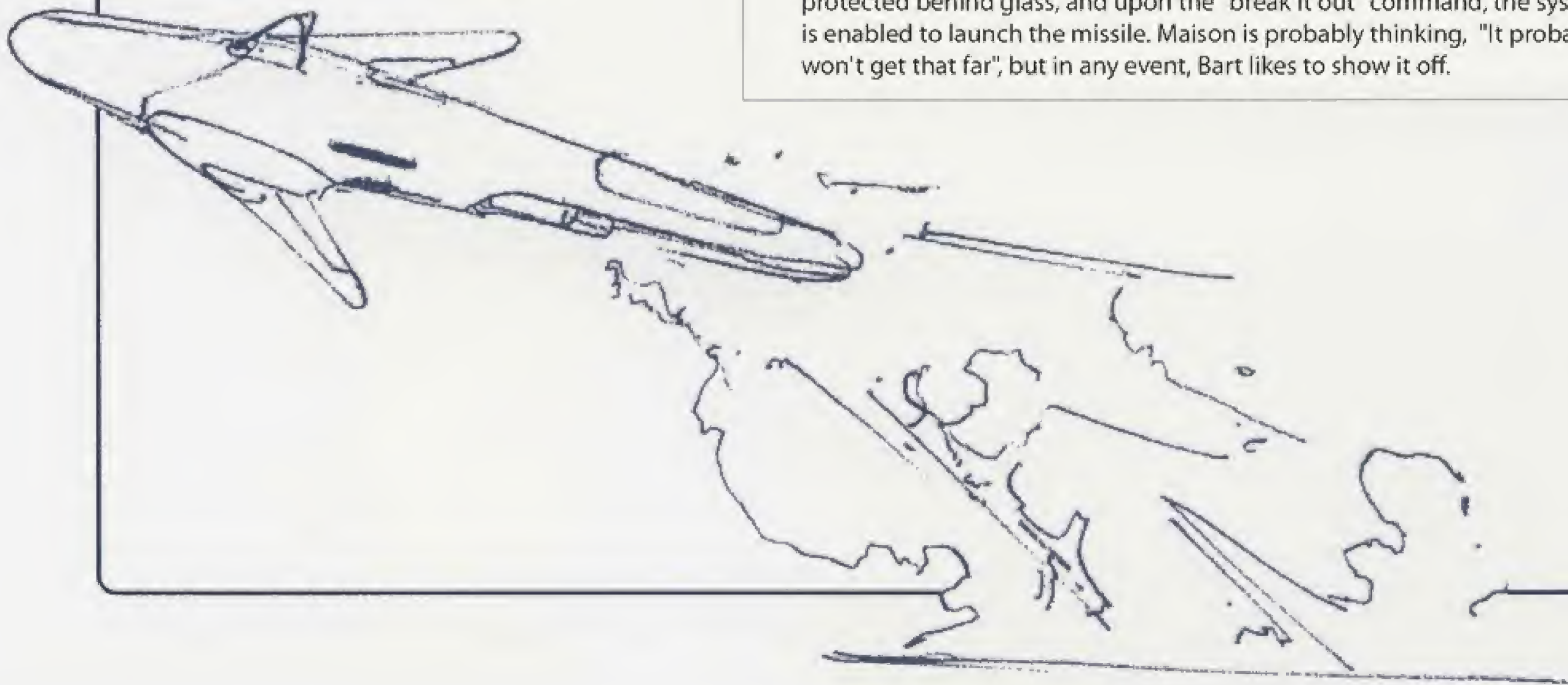


## ■ Bart Missile

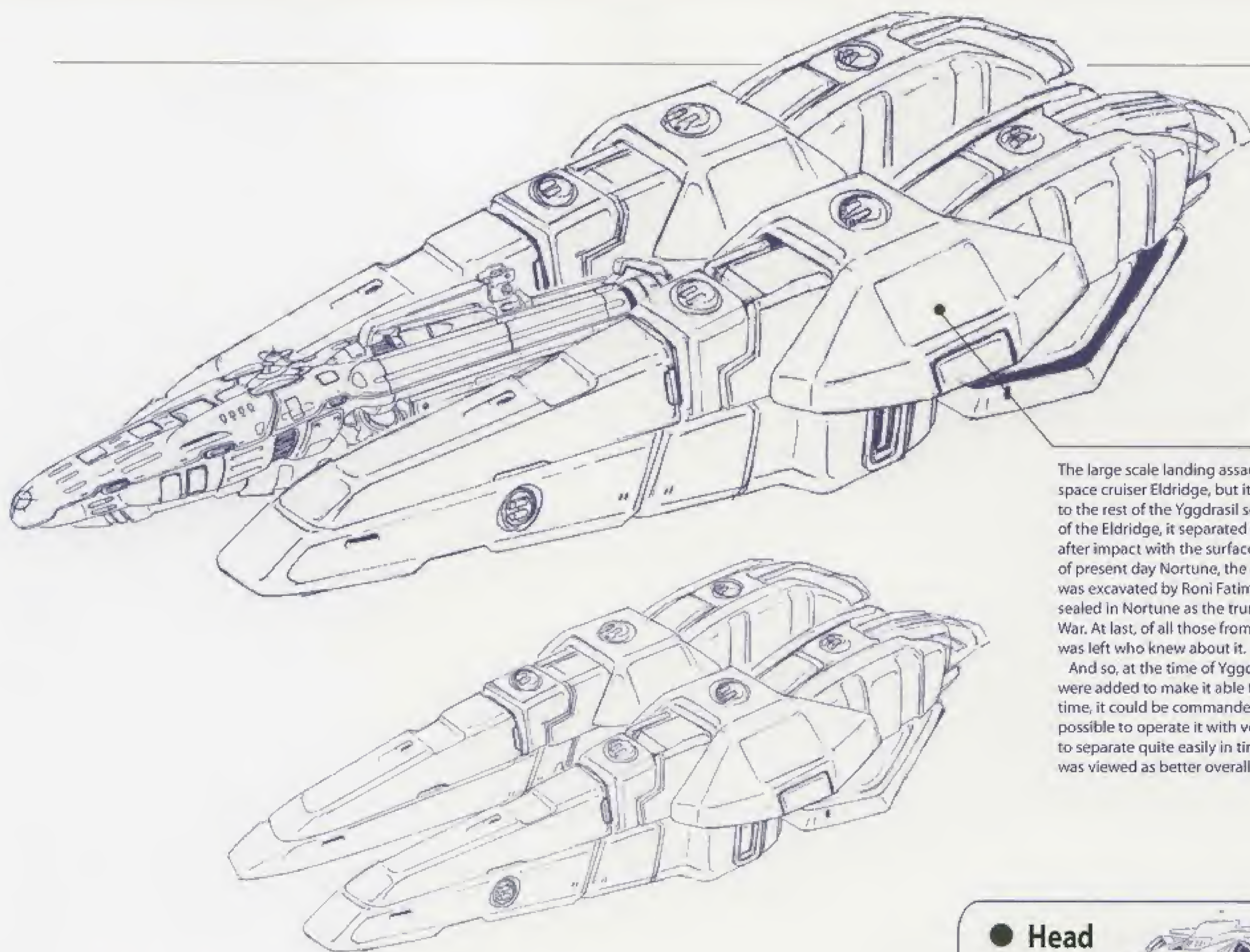
Equipped from the days of the Yggdrasil 2, this is a large scale anti aircraft assault weapon. It is prepared for use during both air and sea battles. It's immediate predecessor was the Aveh artillery, Melru Jott's privately manufactured, (Gunngle Missile) however it wasn't necessarily tweaked by Bart and the others. It's just that when it was excavated, Bart liked the menacing feel to the missiles and named them after himself.

Because of its great destructive power the command to fire must be issued with 2 of 3 commanding officers in agreement. The scene during the story when Bart issues an order by himself to fire, must have mostly been due to the famous unreal system there . . .

Incidentally, Bart shows great interest in the ignition process of the Bart Missile. At the center of the fore console (operations), a fairly large switch is protected behind glass, and upon the "break it out" command, the system is enabled to launch the missile. Maison is probably thinking, "It probably won't get that far", but in any event, Bart likes to show it off.







## Yggdrasil 4

The large scale landing assault vessel loaded onto the space cruiser Eldridge, but it is fundamentally unrelated to the rest of the Yggdrasil series. At the time of the crash of the Eldridge, it separated from its storage block right after impact with the surface, and it was buried in the area of present day Nortune, the capital of Kislev. Afterwards, it was excavated by Roni Fatima and refurbished, and then sealed in Nortune as the trump card in the coming great War. At last, of all those from the beginning, only Zephyr was left who knew about it.

And so, at the time of Yggdrasil 3's restructuring, things were added to make it able to merge with the 4th. At this time, it could be commanded by 3 personnel, so that it was possible to operate it with very few people on board. Able to separate quite easily in times of emergency, the result was viewed as better overall.

### SPEC DATA

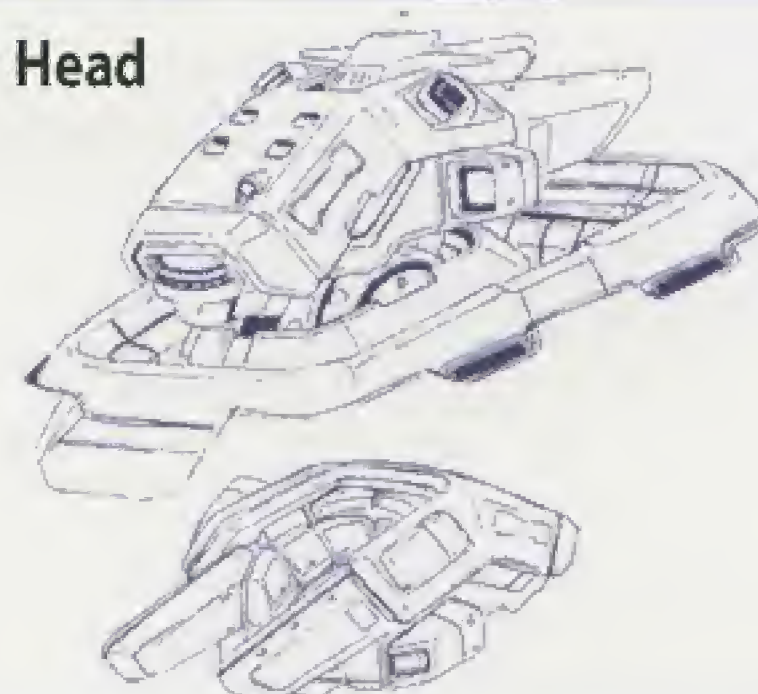
longest point	1,370 sharls (1,560 sharls)
breadth	440 sharls
normal weight	1,260,000 kahns
main engine	excavated 1st generation slave generator base 1,4 axis
output	14,300,000 kahns/oolia
surface speed	80 repsol
air speed	930 repsol
weapons	dual 200 sem cannon 8 base 400 sem rail gun 4 base 1,200 sem 3 series air missiles 2 base floatmain shooting pods 16 base
crew	512 persons

\*inside transformed shape interior measurement. Either before or after transformation, there are many places left for Yggdrasil 3.

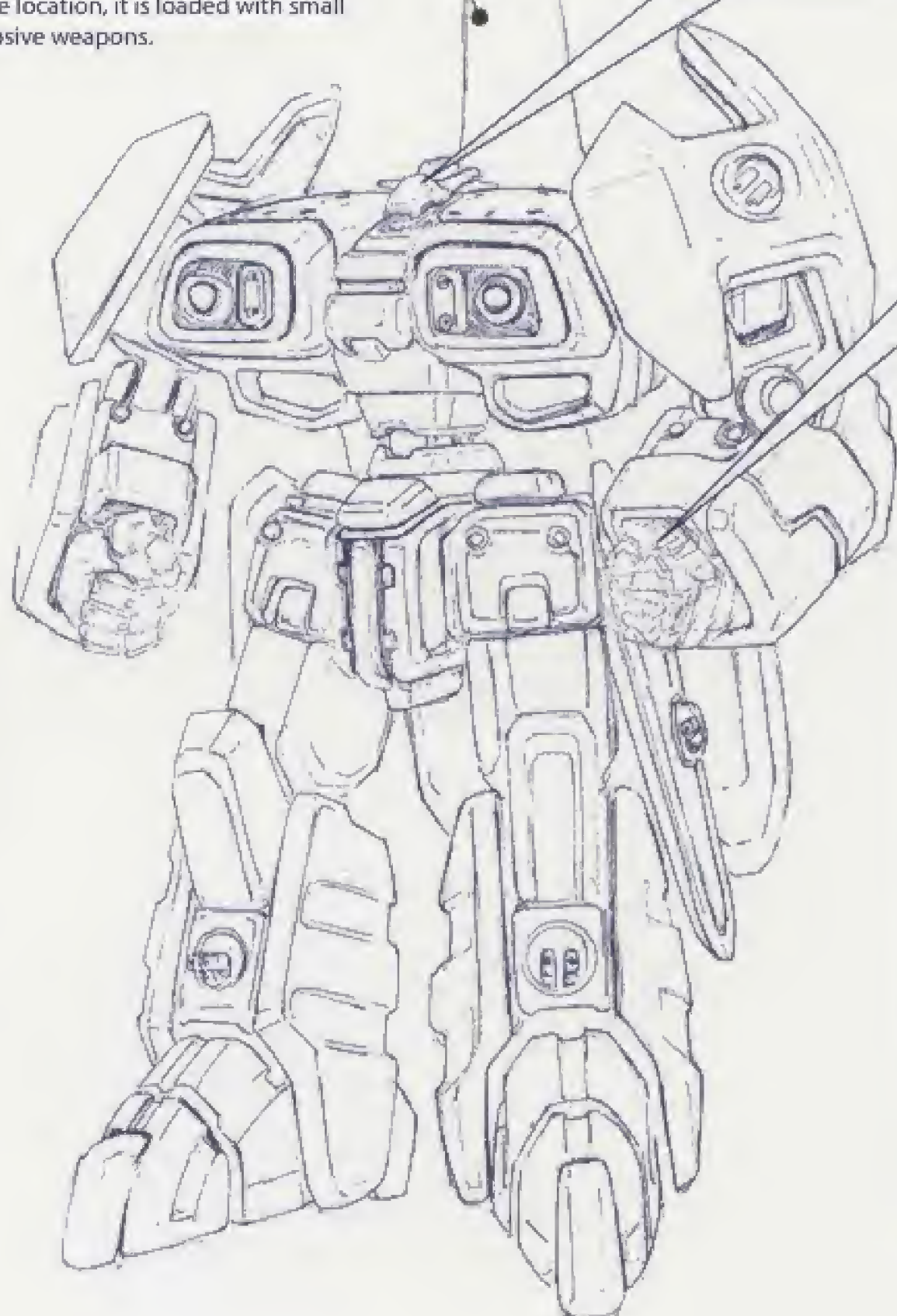
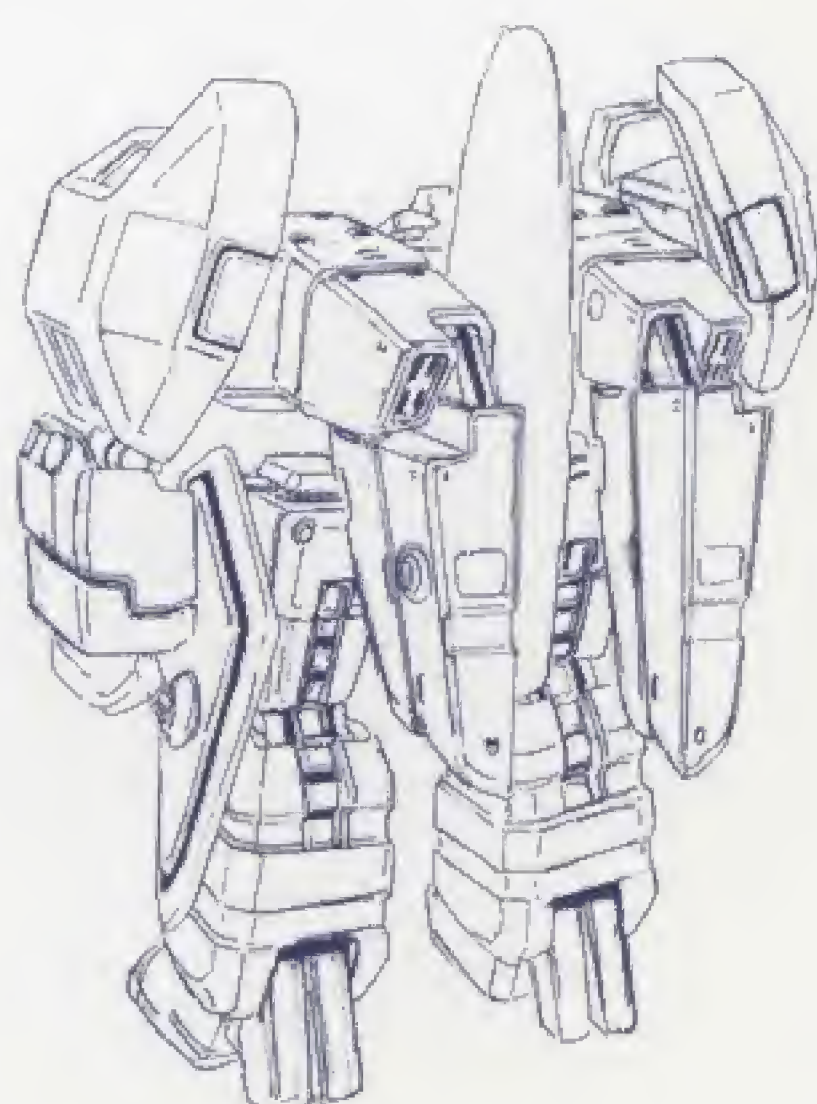
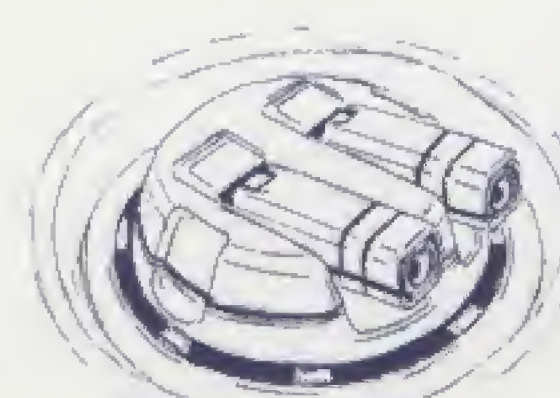
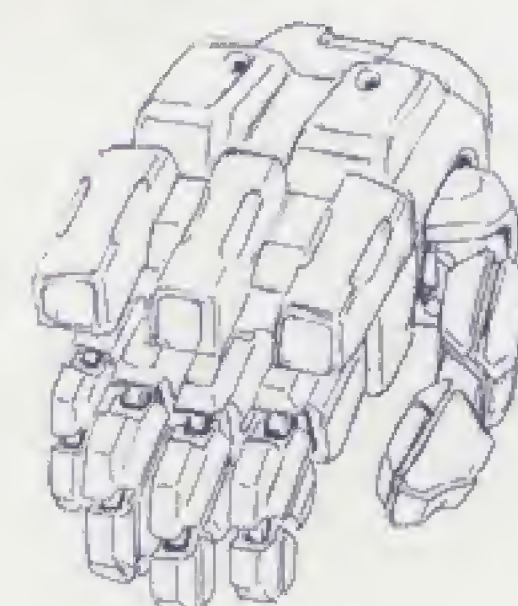
### After transformation

Originally meant as a vessel for surface operations, it was decided from the first to give the Yggdrasil the ability to change into a Gear to be used for smooth tactical land maneuvers. While one aspect of this is the switch from land assaults to the ability to change into a Gear, it is also known to be the size of Gear used on the main planet the Eldridge embarked from. Because it is a naval vessel, one of its characteristics is that depending on the location, it is loaded with small scale explosive weapons.

#### ● Head



#### ● Cannon salvo





## Excalibur

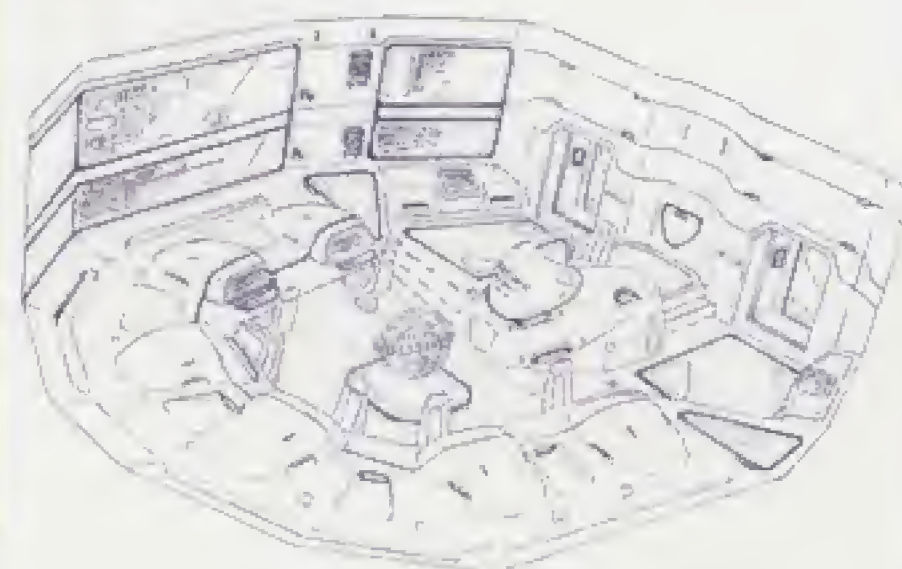
A Prayer Star Class mobile reconnaissance vessel loaded onto the Eldridge. Being one of two of that type on board, the one Sigurd operated was the second ship. It was excavated by Shevat and refurbished for the Anti-Solaris War. The first ship was taken by Sophia during the Great War 500 years ago and used in a suicide mission. It is a little known fact that the remaining records show that like the second ship, this one had been excavated by Shevat and refurbished as well.

Fundamentally, both ships were made along the same lines, their one point of difference being the inability to use an impact fore shaft (ram). The second ship was able to handle the addition of a nearly 2000 sharl length battering ram. During the story, its abilities were hardly shown, but originally the ram was able to become a sword for the Gear form of Yggdrasil 4 as a weapon. So, all the vehicles loaded onto the Eldridge, from the landing assault vehicle (Yggdrasil 4) in Gear form, to the mobile reconnaissance vessel (=Excalibur) could achieve total coordination when used as weapons.

### ● Cannon salvo



### ● Bridge



### SPEC DATA

longest point	2,045 sharls (4, 080 sharls)
breadth	570 sharls (610 sharls)
normal weight	2, 668, 000 kahns (5, 437, 000 kahns)
main engine	1st generation slave generator base 2, 4 axis
output	30,800,000 kahns/oolia
air speed	1, 800 repsol (1, 400 repsol)
weapons	2, 600 200 3 sem cannon 2 base highest output laser cannon 2 base 25 sem microlaser cannon 8 base
crew	860 persons
*numbers determined in the event of the equipping of the ram	

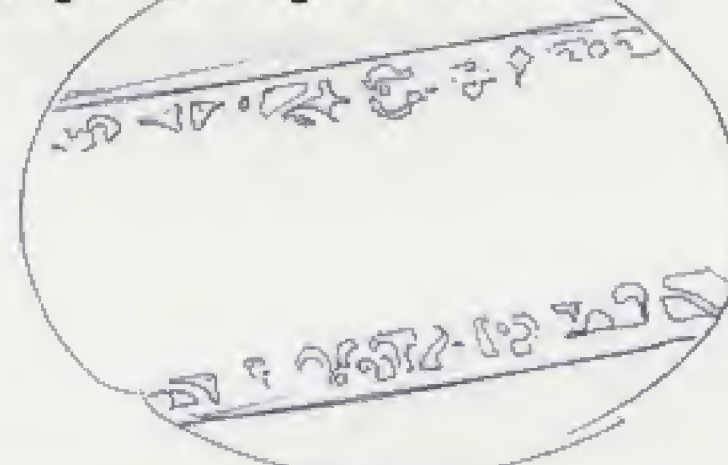
### During fusion

This is the 2nd Excalibur with the ram equipped. When it was excavated, the ram was already attached, but because there were many features in the "black box" the engineers of Shevat overlooked the fact that it could be removed.

More importantly, in the story when discovering the energy from the Yggdrasil 4's slave generator could be used, of course even the few remaining parts from the 2 vessels could be combined. Even though at first glance Bart's strategy seemed futile, the hard outer structure of the vessels enabled it to be carried through.

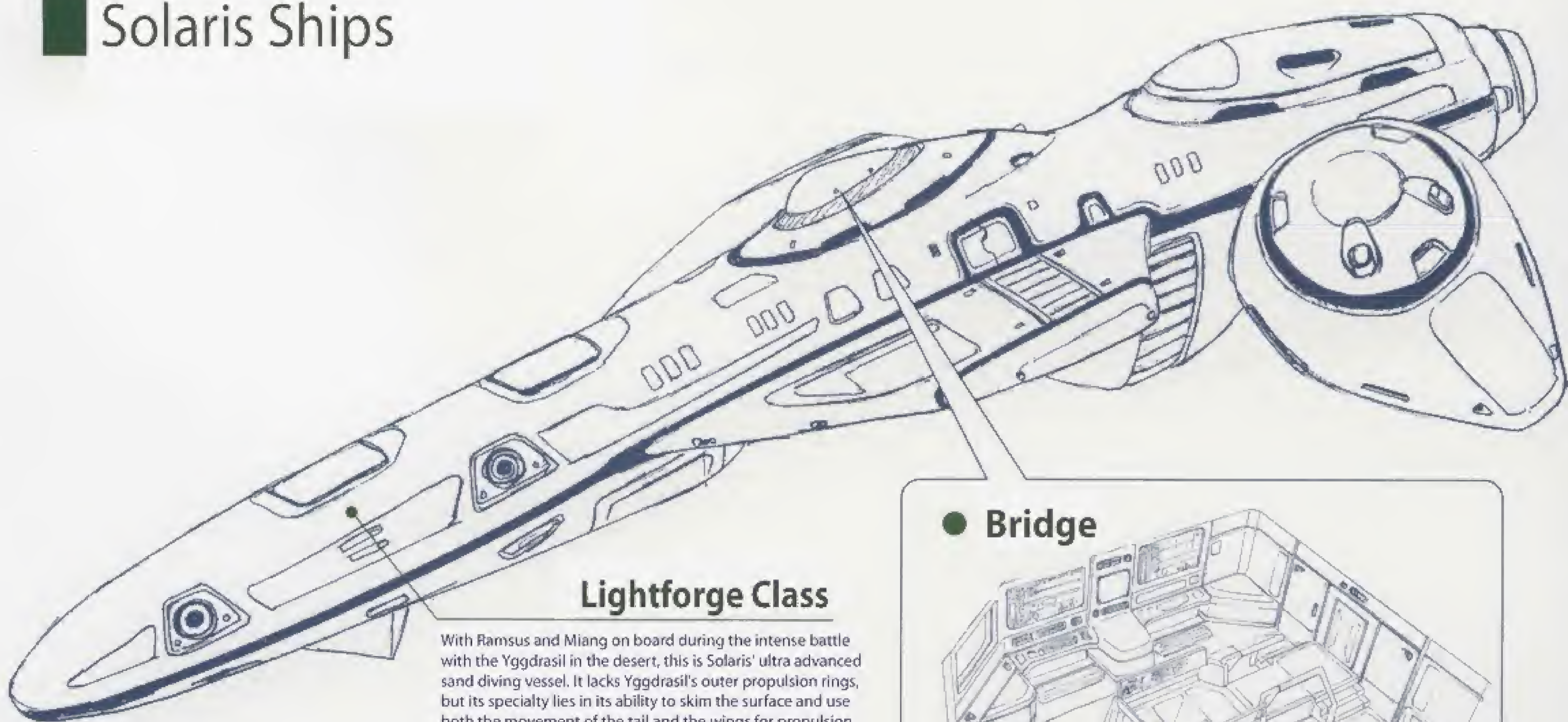
separates and shifts forward

### ● magnified image of relief





# Solaris Ships



## Lightforge Class

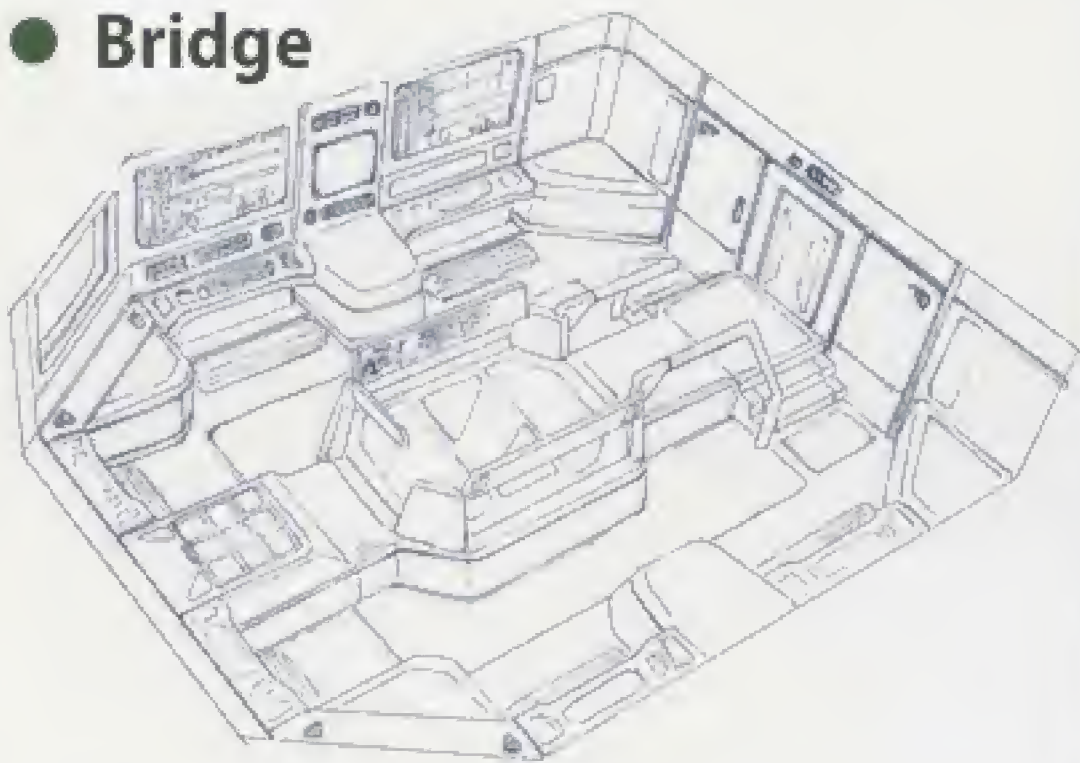
With Ramsus and Miang on board during the intense battle with the Yggdrasil in the desert, this is Solaris' ultra advanced sand diving vessel. It lacks Yggdrasil's outer propulsion rings, but its specialty lies in its ability to skim the surface and use both the movement of the tail and the wings for propulsion and tactical movements in battle. Because of this, the hull presents an ultra hard barrier that makes an outer ring drive shaft unnecessary, the ship is loaded with many extras making it more powerful than other ships of its type.

Also, the slave generator behind the propulsion weapons was not excavated, but developed independently by Solaris, and used for a trial period on board the vessel. Due to the new mechanism, the ship is able to dive faster and more quietly than any other vessel in its class.

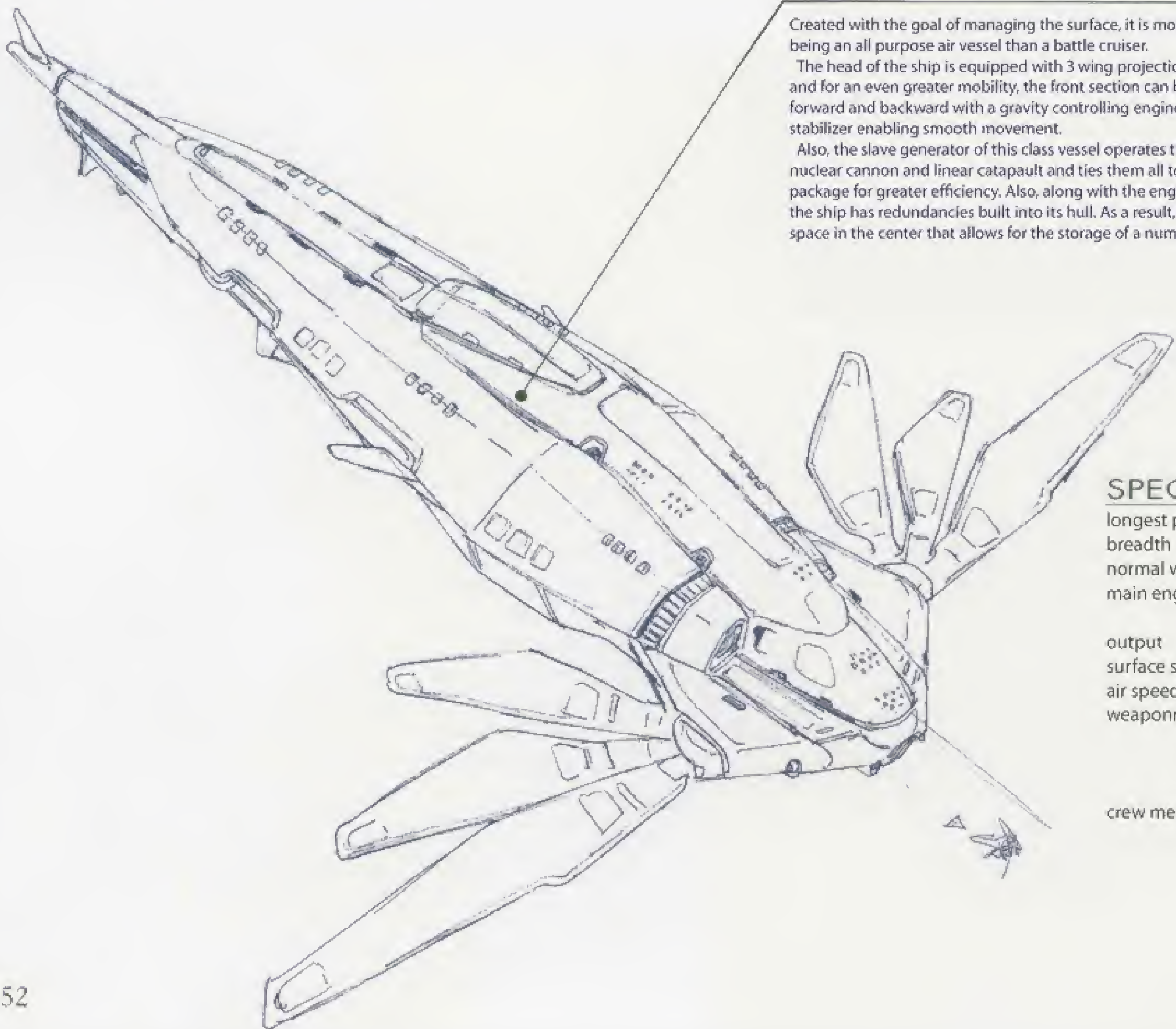
### SPEC DATA

longest point	440 sharls	weaponry	900 sem cannon- 2 bases
breadth	120 sharls		300 sem serial cannon
normal weight	123, 000 kahns		40 sem 3rd link serial rifle cannons
desert weight	132, 000 kahns		1, 400 sem desert torpedoes 8 bases
main engine	Solaris Norune B type	crew members	336 persons
	slave generator 1 base 2 axis		
output	1, 560, 000 kahnsns/oolia		
surface speed	120 repsol		
desert speed	135 repsol		

## ● Bridge



## Solaris Aerial Cruiser



Created with the goal of managing the surface, it is more noted for being an all purpose air vessel than a battle cruiser.

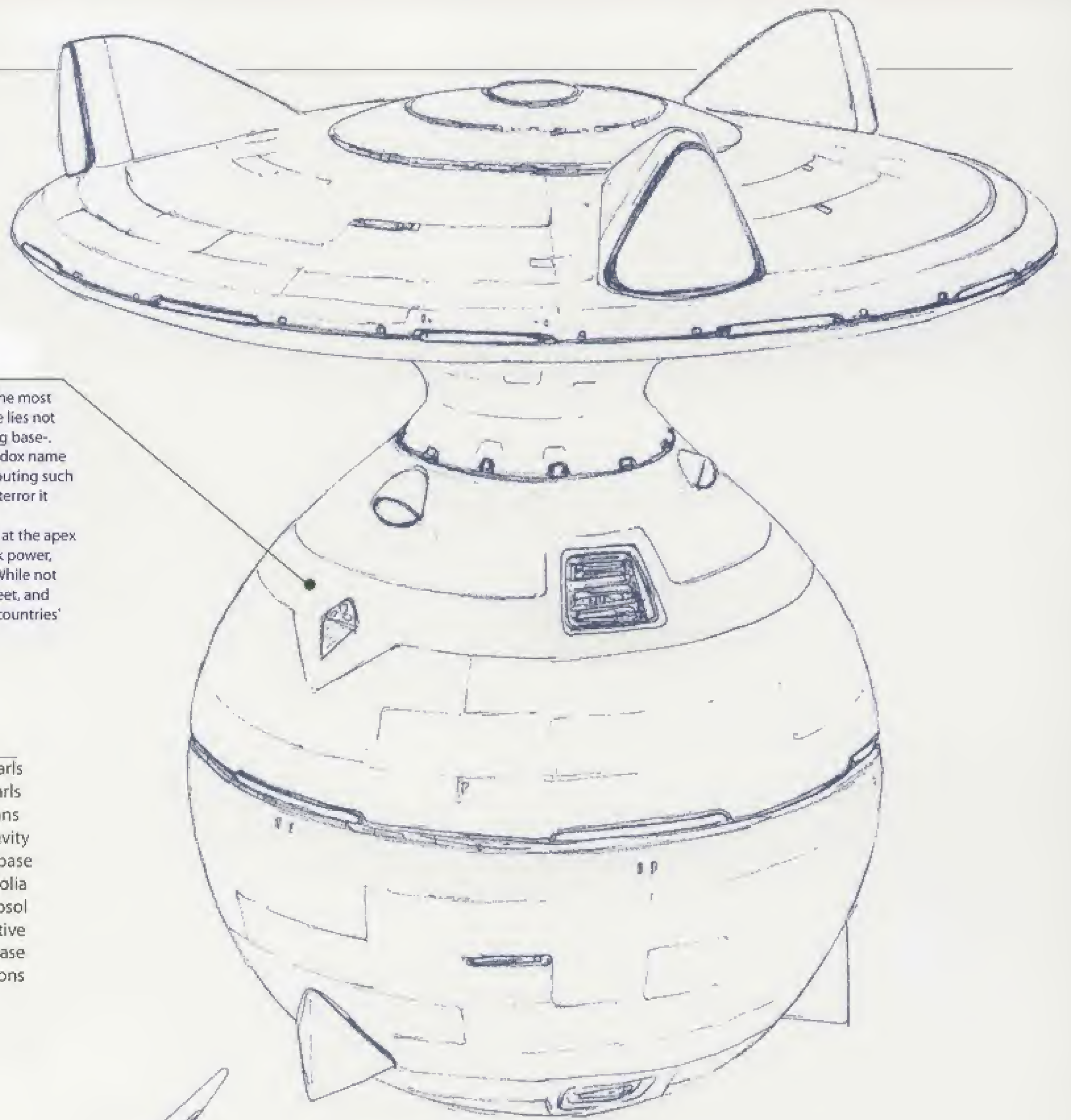
The head of the ship is equipped with 3 wing projections for control, and for an even greater mobility, the front section can be moved forward and backward with a gravity controlling engine air propulsion stabilizer enabling smooth movement.

Also, the slave generator of this class vessel operates the gravity engine, nuclear cannon and linear catapult and ties them all together in one package for greater efficiency. Also, along with the engine, the rest of the ship has redundancies built into its hull. As a result, there is a large space in the center that allows for the storage of a number of Gears.

### SPEC DATA

longest point	414 sharls
breadth	408 sharls (drng. wing expansion)
normal weight	98, 000 kahns
main engine	Solaris 18th era excavated
	slave generator 1 base 2 axis
output	1, 500, 000 kahnsns/oolia
surface speed	70 repsol
air speed	820 repsol
weaponry	800 sem nuclear cannon 2 bases
	400 sem aerial fire cannon
	40 sem 3rd link serial rifle cannons
	surface assault MLRS 12 bases
crew members	220 persons





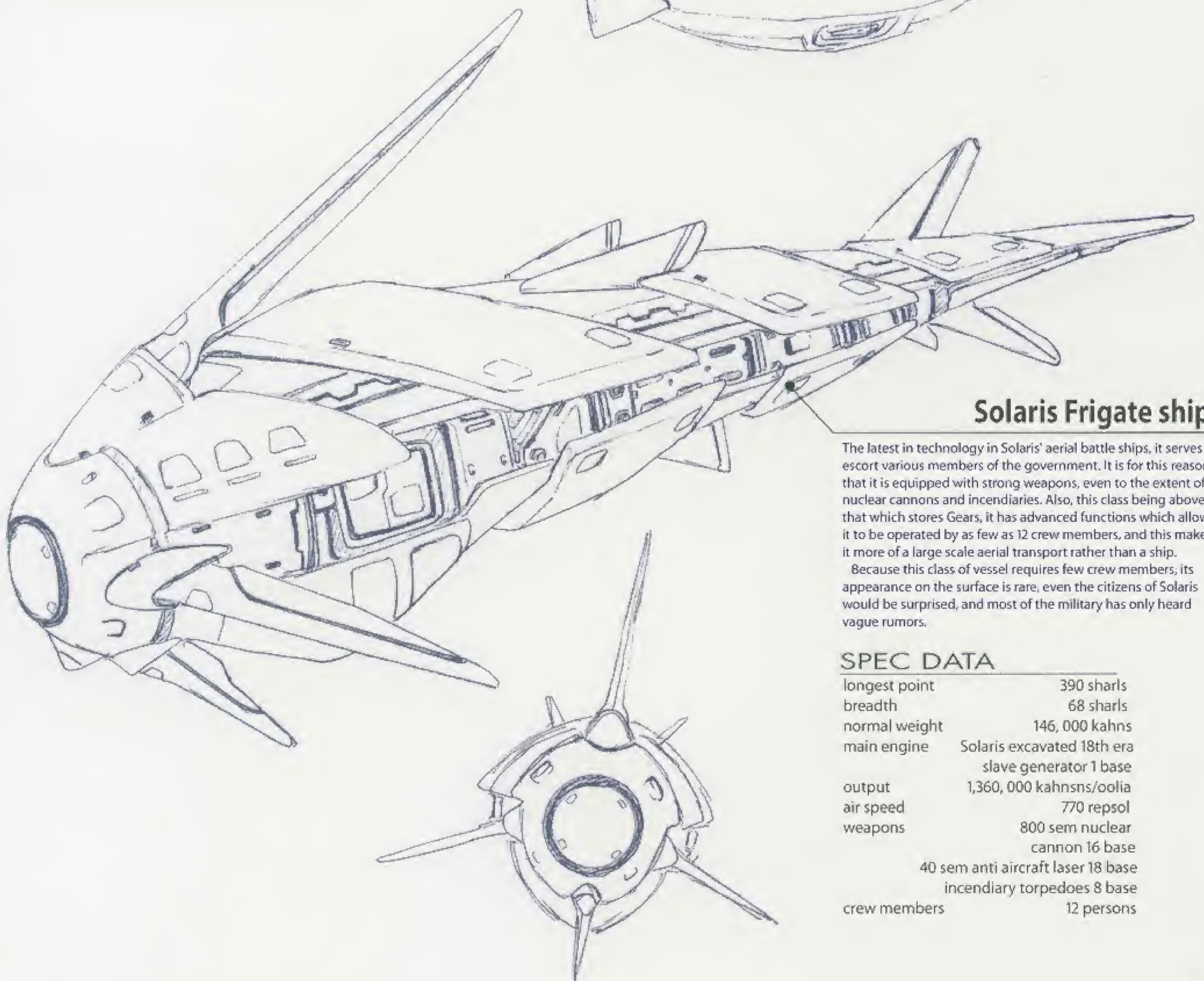
## Ezekiel Class Battleship

Out of the entire fleet of ships in Solaris, this boasts the most power, an Excelsior Class Aerial Battleship. Its menace lies not in its being a vessel but it is said to be more a -moving base-. Known by the Captain of the Thames by the unorthodox name 'the fishbowl thing', but even with those like him spouting such foul mouthing, it will always be remembered for the terror it inspires in the heart as an Ezekiel Class vessel.

As the flagship of Solaris' fleet with Krelian onboard at the apex of command, it has a corresponding incredible attack power, endurance power along with outstanding mobility. While not used in battle very often, it is revered in the Solaris fleet, and without a doubt capable of posing a threat to other countries' influence by its presence alone.

### SPEC DATA

longest point	2,300 sharls
breadth	2,050 sharls
normal weight	167,000 kahns
main engine	Jumiel class anti-gravity slave generator 1 base
output	11,000,000 kahnsns/oolia
air speed	455 repsol
weapons	22,000 sem active cannon shell 16 base
crew members	1024 persons



## Solaris Frigate ship

The latest in technology in Solaris' aerial battle ships, it serves to escort various members of the government. It is for this reason that it is equipped with strong weapons, even to the extent of nuclear cannons and incendiaries. Also, this class being above that which stores Gears, it has advanced functions which allow it to be operated by as few as 12 crew members, and this makes it more of a large scale aerial transport rather than a ship.

Because this class of vessel requires few crew members, its appearance on the surface is rare, even the citizens of Solaris would be surprised, and most of the military has only heard vague rumors.

### SPEC DATA

longest point	390 sharls
breadth	68 sharls
normal weight	146,000 kahns
main engine	Solaris excavated 18th era slave generator 1 base
output	1,360,000 kahnsns/oolia
air speed	770 repsol
weapons	800 sem nuclear cannon 16 base 40 sem anti aircraft laser 18 base incendiary torpedoes 8 base
crew members	12 persons



## Aveh Military Vessels



### SPEC DATA

longest point	366 sharls
breadth	114 sharls
normal weight	108,000 kahns
main engine	excavated 35th Aveh model
	Slave generator 1 base
output	1,488,000 kahns/oolia
surface speed	60 repsol
weapons	8000 sem serial cannon 1 base
	400 sem armor piercing 6 base
	220 sem dual use cannon 4 base
	40 sem 3 rifles set 12 base
crew members	450 persons

### Kefeinzel Class

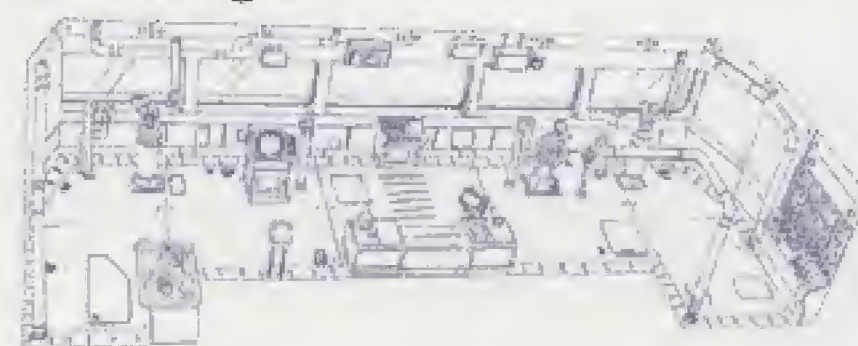
Aveh patrol Cruiser flagship at the frontier. Commanded by General Vanderkaum. A vehicle customized for movement on the desert surface, lacks an engine for navigating on plains or in the air, but is equipped with advanced propulsion rings which give it the edge in power on the desert sands.

Also, the discerning eye picks out it is bristling with guns in front of the bridge section, it is possible to fight off enemies packing 7200 kahns from 4 directions, it even brandishes enough power to threaten towns. It is supplemented with a battery of 10 guns along the hull, and if attacked can issue Solaris ships' grade polycarbonate rounds, as well as the new Crestar bullets -Tripleshot- it can knock aircraft right out of the sky.

However, there are many great questions surrounding the carrying of this many cannons and guns, the ship slows down when employing these, and the gun turrets themselves weigh it down to more than 3 times its natural weight, taking away its advantage, it loses speed which makes it vulnerable to air attack by Gears. It is unable to react fast enough at this close range.

In regards to the names of the ships, Kefeinzel, Zankretenzel, Bruschke, and a fourth ship (unnamed) these were built together with a plan in mind, and with the loss of the first ship, the rest get cancelled.

### ● Bridge



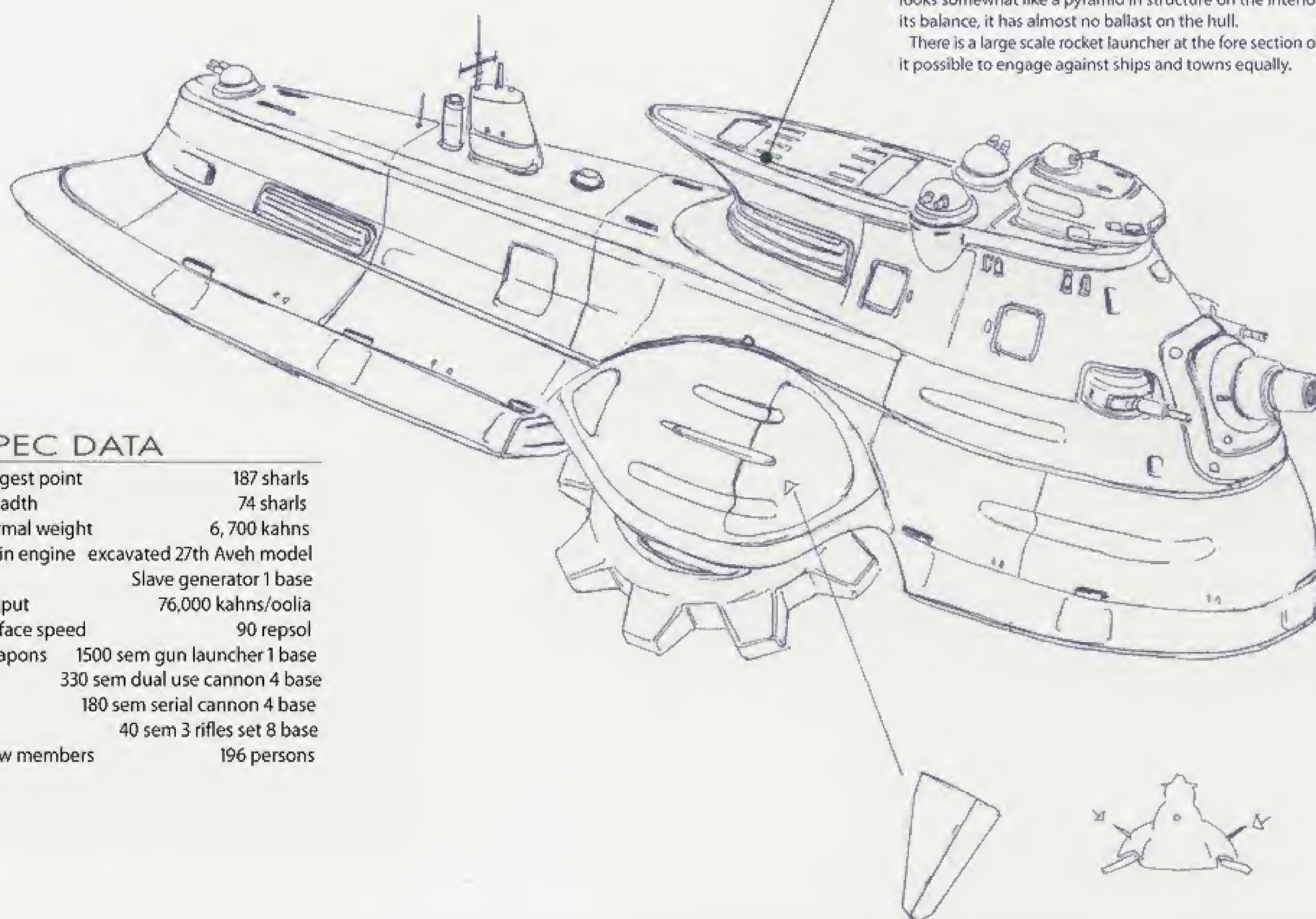
### Aveh Sand Cruiser (Alterehy Class)

Like the Kefeinzel, this is an independent Aveh Tanbelholm Class escort vessel. For use in general operations, it is the Aveh military's work horse, and originally many were built. In order to take advantage of its propulsion power, all the mass is concentrated in the center, and the resulting design looks somewhat like a pyramid in structure on the interior so as to maintain its balance, it has almost no ballast on the hull.

There is a large scale rocket launcher at the fore section of the ship, it makes it possible to engage against ships and towns equally.

### SPEC DATA

longest point	187 sharls
breadth	74 sharls
normal weight	6,700 kahns
main engine	excavated 27th Aveh model
	Slave generator 1 base
output	76,000 kahns/oolia
surface speed	90 repsol
weapons	1500 sem gun launcher 1 base
	330 sem dual use cannon 4 base
	180 sem serial cannon 4 base
	40 sem 3 rifles set 8 base
crew members	196 persons





# Kislev Military Vessel

## Goliath

Kislev's pride, a new aerial battleship. During it's development, it was tentatively named -Gigantos-. Due to the actions of one aspect of Solaris' Guardian Angel, the Executioner, (=Miang), it the first surface vessel to be equipped with a Gatekeeper, and after Fei and the others steal it, it crashes after being hit with a Bart Missile. It disappears forever in the murk of the ocean.

The name of the Goliath derived from the name of a warrior who appeared in the Old Testament. In the story, Goliath was a 4 meter giant inspiring fear and terror. However, he was brought down by the genius youth named David who toppled him with a stone.

## Front view

## Under section

### SPEC DATA

longest point	325 sharls
breadth	570 sharls
normal weight	8,800 kahns
main engine	excavated 49th Kislev model
output	Slave generator 1 base
air speed	2,030,000 kahns/oolia
weapons	400 sem serial cannon 4 base
	300 sem cannon 12 base
	Gatekeeper 1 base
	40 sem 3 rifles set 12 base
crew members	320 persons



## Character - *Character*

The explanation of the episodes before the characters appearance in the game, their thoughts, actions, and other official details

The characters appearing in -Xenogears- are born under many circumstances, raised differently, what do they think? How has it come about? Here everything concerning the characters that was unmentioned in the story and episodes is officially introduced and explained.



## Kelvena

Usually, her eyes were closed during the story, The Elements' Kelvena. She closes her eyes to better control her exceptionally strong Ether Ability, and as this official illustration shows, she likely has times when she opens her eyes. In the case of each character, there are many instances like this of things that are official that were never shown.







# Fei•Fong•Wong

Wong Fei Fong

## History

18 years ago	Is born as the child of his father Khan Wong and mother, Karen.
14 years ago (4 years old)	His mother Karen awakes as Miang. She starts experiments on Fei's soul fusion. 10 months after that, Grahf attacks, due to Fei's power running berserk, Karen is killed. Fei is taken away by Grahf.
6 years ago (12 years old)	Elru is quelled by Solaris. Id runs berserk, and is called afterwards -The Demon of Elru-.
3 years ago (15 years old)	His father Kahn battles Grahf once more. Id is sealed away. He carries the wounded Fei to Lahan Village.
Present (18 yrs)	Lives at Chief Lee's house.

Brought to Chief Lee 3 years ago by a -masked stranger-, he has lived in Chief Lee's home ever since. When he was brought in, his heart had sustained great damage and he lingered on the edge of death for many days. Afterwards, he regained consciousness and his body recovered, but he had lost almost all his memory from before his recovery. Engaging in painting and martial arts he was able to put aside his blank memory.

In Lahan Village, he became light hearted and a kind youth who loved animals, and was also popular among the villagers. He was especially revered by the very young, and would play with them often. He made friends with Alice and Timothy, and came to view their approaching wedding with strange stirrings in his heart.

It is thought that Citan first appeared to live in the area near the village 3 years ago, during Fei's recovery. Later on, he went to live as a doctor with his family beyond the mountain pass, and Fei also visited his home often.

The opening event of the attack on Lahan Village caused the awakening of a destructive force within Fei, -Id-. Also, his meeting with the Solarian, Elehaym caused a fragmentary memory of a reincarnation from the far past to be brought back to life.

## The Contact — The one who freed the Wave Existence

The one who contacted the Wave Existence 10,000 years ago and became the origin of Fei's reincarnation. The boy called Abel made contact with the Wave Existence which had been captured by Zohar, the phase transfer engine that was a part of the Deus System. Zohar caused the incredible energy of the Wave Existence to pour into Abel. Because of this, Abel was destined to be reborn as the Contact over and over again.

The Contact is the one who is meant to destroy Deus and thus free the Wave Existence to return to the higher dimension. The Wave Existence incorporated both Abel's human nature and the Mother's Will in the present dimension, and in order to return to its own dimension, it must achieve a reversal of this. It determines its own self and the nature fused with it returns to the original source and fuses with it, setting it free as it desires.

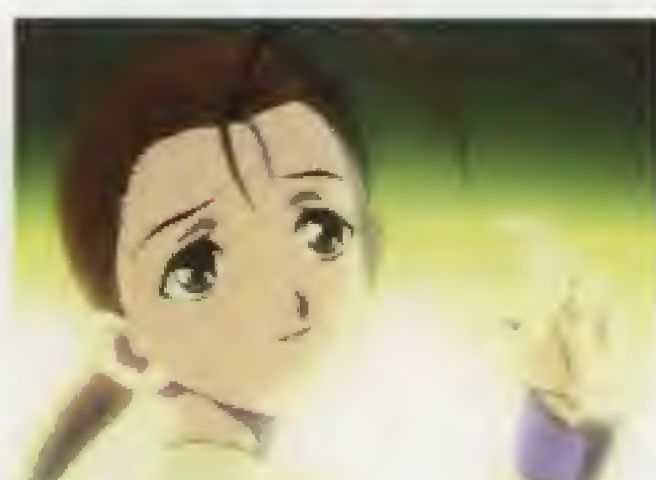


## Abel

The boy who made contact with the Wave Existence that advented into Zohar during serial mobile experiments with Deus and Zohar. Afterwards, he was a passenger on the Eldridge. He was the lone survivor at the time of its crash. His origin and the reason for his being near Zohar during the serial experiments are unknown.



## Reincarnation—a memory flashback



### Abel

At the time of the Eldridge's crash, the boy escaped death because he was the Contact. He met Original Elehaym and lived with her from then on.

Abel rebelled against the people's revered God on earth, Cain (The Emperor). Cain planned the destruction of Abel, carried it out, and in protecting Abel, Elehaym died in his place shielding his body.



### Lacan

Born in a frontier village, Lacan was separated from his parents by death when he was 6 years old, and even though he was young he lived by himself. When he was about 8 years old, he met Elehaym who was returning to the Ashura Monastery to recover from illness. At the time of their parting, he gave Elehaym one sketch he had drawn of her.

After this he left his native village, and at the end of his travels got involved with the rebellion against the government of Solaris. In the midst of this, he met Krelan. And so, 3 years later, he was reunited at the Ashura Monastery with the Holy Mother of Nisan, Sophia. That year, war breaks out with Solaris. In the height of battle, he meets caravan leaders, the brothers Roni and Rene. From the start of the fighting until 3 years after, Nisan joins in. At Krelan's suggestion, Lacan begins Sophia's portrait. Next year, Sophia is killed. Lacan frees Miang who is imprisoned in Shevat and heads towards Zohar.

10,000 years ago  
Origin

4000 years ago  
Zeboim Era

500 years ago  
Solaris Great War

Present day  
Story

Due to the influence of the Wave Existence, the Contact Fei carried memories from previous lives after being reincarnated. None of them were very clear, but would take the form of fragmentary flashbacks, and behind these were many wills. Starting with the origin of the reincarnated Contact Abel, and on through Kim of Zeboim, Lacan of the Solaris War, and continuing on to present day Fei. For every person on this world, all of these eras were times of great change. While the fundamental role of the Contact is never realized in order to prevent the resurrection of Deus on into the present day, in regards to that individual's existence, the world of each era has great meaning.



### Kim

Entering the Federal Medical school at 16, he took his exams, entered the Biological Sciences Department 3 years later. He starts molecular machine research. Afterwards, he graduates and receives his Doctorate. Announcing -A method to Restructure genetics with Molecular machines-, he proposes to create an artificial life form constructed of nanomachines. However, the academic community saw this as blasphemy against God, and to ignore this heresy, Kim was expelled. Kim returned to the Medical Department, aiming once again to be a doctor.

2 years later, having become a federal Doctor, he met Elehaym who was working at the hospital. Along with his work as a doctor, he took funds and an offered facility from Miang and recommenced research into molecular machines. 3 years after that, on Thanksgiving Day, the nanomachine colony -Emeralda- was formed. Afterwards, a raid by the military caused Elehaym's death. After sealing away the facility and Emeralda for all eternity, his whereabouts become unknown.

### Fei

After his mother awakens as Miang, due to cruel experiments, his personality separates into another entity, Id. During Grahf's attack, Karen dies. Fei is taken away by Grahf, and afterwards during the quelling of Elru, Id appears. Elru and the Gebler Corps are annihilated.

3 years before, the wounded Fei is brought into Lahan Village where he lives for 3 years. Afterwards, due to Citan's maneuverings and the meeting with modern day Elehaym, slowly his will as the Contact begins to awaken.



## Lacan — already another divided human will

Out of all of Fei's reincarnations, the one that is the most important is that of Lacan from 500 years ago. The shock of the reality of Sophia's death caused him to desire contact with Zohar, and as a result the existence known as Grahf was born. Afterwards, when Lacan lost his body at death, Grahf divided himself and remained as a separate will. Desiring again to become the Contact, he possessed the wills of others over and over again, waiting all along for the birth (reincarnation) of the next Contact.

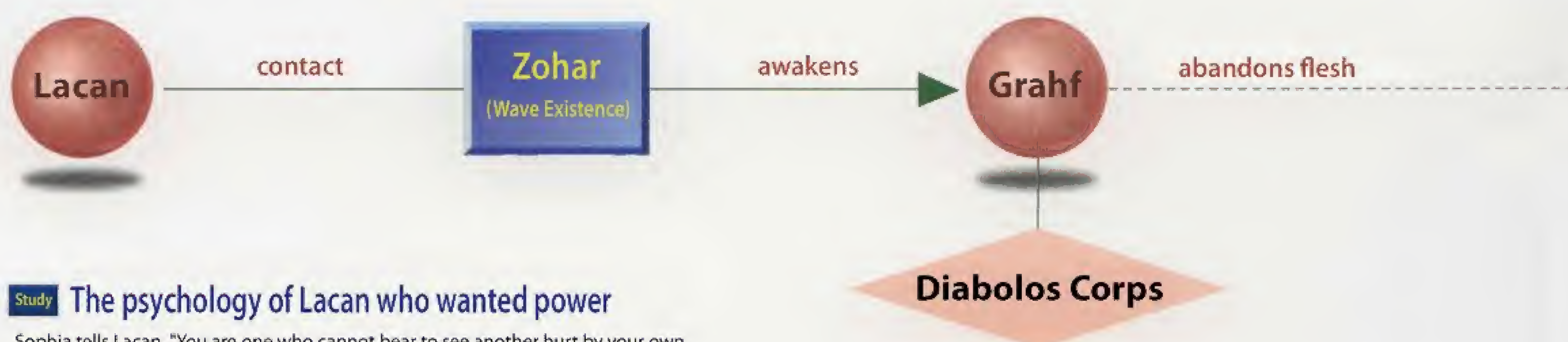
500 years ago, Grahf in the form of the Contact Lacan brought forth the Diabolos Corps who destroyed the world, he was probably able to realize this using a part of the power as Contact.

### ● The incomplete contact with Zohar

In regards to contact with Zohar, there is one vital element in addition to the Contact itself, but Elehaym (Sophia) was already dead at the time when Lacan turned his steps towards Zohar. It was clear that it would be impossible to achieve ultimate fusion with Zohar, even though he didn't know that he himself was the Contact. For this reason, he helped Miang escape who was imprisoned in Shevat, wanting only her power, and headed from there to contact Zohar.

In addition to the lack of Elehaym, spiritually Lacan as the Contact (as paternal figure) was incomplete. For this reason the power from the contact with Zohar went out of control. As a separate personality, Grahf, he destroyed almost all of Solaris as well as the surface.

## Relationship of Lacan and Grahf 500 years ago



### Study The psychology of Lacan who wanted power

Sophia tells Lacan, "You are one who cannot bear to see another hurt by your own actions." Even while he is in love and aware of his special love for her as herself, he realizes he can't have her love to himself alone as she is the "Holy Mother" that the people venerate, and he adopts a false front of "nonchalance" even on the inside in order to lie to himself and escape her love.

And so, even though she is able to provide a peaceful refuge to others, she feels inferior and without hope at being powerless to do anything on her own. Sophia's death becomes a refutation of that despair, and her former hopelessness and inferiority at her lack of power transforms itself into the hope of achieving enormous power. It is likely that in order to realize this desire, that Lacan decides to transform into a destructive personality.

### ● Diabolos Corps ~ the Day of Collapse

The Diabolos Corps were stored on board the Eldridge and were Deus' prototype mobile terminal interfaces. Due to the interference of Lacan become Grahf, they proceeded according to his rage without discriminating to not only destroy both Solaris and the surface, but were on the way to destroying the entire world. The Surface Army and the Solarian Army both resisted and combined their strength fighting extremely hard warfare, the young ones, Roni and the others took over the Omnigears that belonged to the Gazel Ministers who fell in battle, and toppled the origin, Grahf, also destroying the Diabolos Corps. However, by this time 98% of the human population was already annihilated.

Due to the great destruction the continuance of fighting lost all meaning for the people and after that, Solaris, Shevat and the surface world separated and began the process of restoration.

### ● Miang's calculations

As a part of the resurrection of Deus, Miang determines that the people of this era are also defective. She plans to reset human beings and civilization. The result of the Contact Lacan coming into contact with Zohar without the Elehaym existence, causes the power to go berserk, transforming Lacan into Grahf, and leading to the path of destruction for the world. Also, this is meant to analyze the difference in ability between the -Diabolos- and human beings. Diabolos were constructed according to plan starting from a distant 10,000 years before, for it was calculated that after the resurrection of Deus, strong enemies would threaten (as in the continuance of the Stellar War) and they were placed with this possibility. Miang took note of those human beings marked for Deus, those with (Ether) ability, and attempted to play both sides in the struggle, seeking only to side with the victor. Human beings could come out the winners even with very few survivors. And in particular those humans excelling with the mark of ability.

In order to awaken the complete Deus as 'weapon', Miang wanted an "intermediary" of human beings. As a result of this, the "Angels" were born due to the resurrection of Deus and the use of humans marked with high ability as parts. It becomes clear when looking deeply into all this that Lacan took the unconscious path as inheritor of the role of Contact, and his inward emptiness made him incapable of complete contact, causing him to adopt the destructive personality.



A personality separated from Lacan due to the contact with Zohar, he is the possessor of great power who destroyed the world. After abandoning his fleshly body, he continued his own consciousness by taking possession of others.

Originally, Grahf was the personality created from the manifestation of the Contact's power. Grahf can only yearn as he is himself an incomplete part of the Contact, and desiring to merge with the present day Contact Fei, he possessed Khan and planned for the merging with Zohar and the gaining of ultimate power.

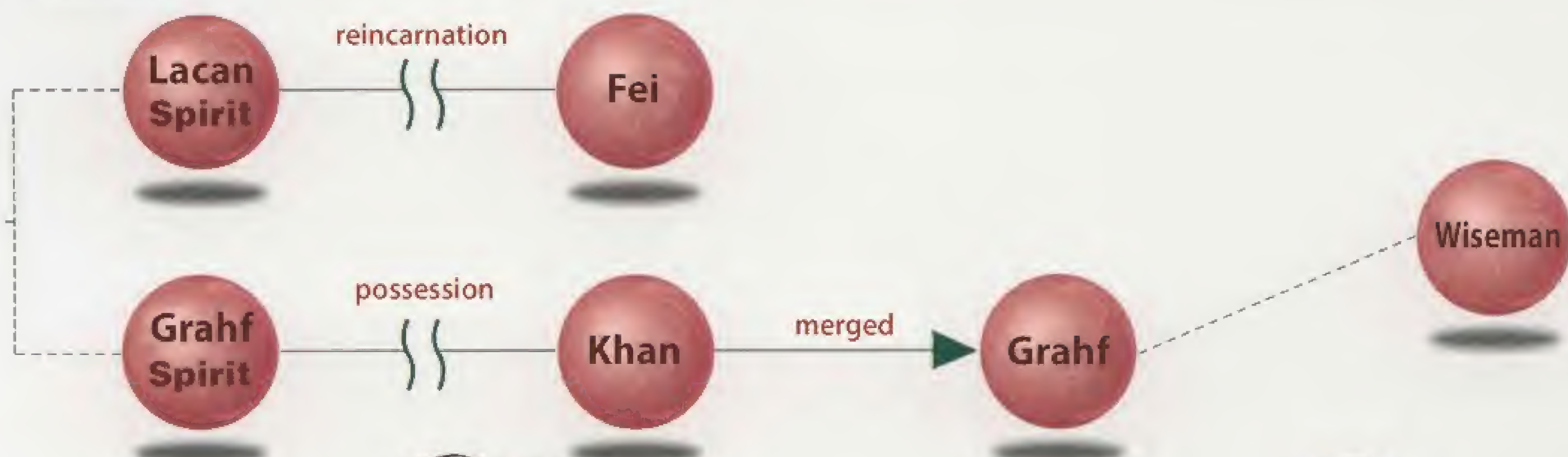
As one who desired power, the menace of Grahf's normal wish for power was probably a result of the will of Lacan who felt powerless at losing Sophia.



# Grahf

Graf

## Present



## Khan Wong

Wong Karn

At the time when he worked as a lieutenant in Shevat, he met the Nisan Orthodox postulant, Karen and they were married. The next year, Fei was born. Receiving a directive from Zephyr, they returned for a time to the surface. 4 years later, Grahf attacked. Because of this, and his defeat in battle, Karen died due to Fei's 'berserk.' Grahf took away Fei who had awakened as Id. Afterwards, he went to search for Grahf's whereabouts, and three years before the present battled with him once again. This time, he was possessed by Grahf.



## Wiseman

Wizeman

After the fusion with Grahf, he is another form of Khan. In contrast to Grahf who is a bodily manifestation of Lacan's will, Wiseman is closer to Khan's true personality. During Grahf's activities, for brief moments, Wiseman can come to the fore. Unlike Grahf who wants destruction, when in Wiseman form, he wants to save the world.



## Id - cause of the growth of the personality and spiritual condition

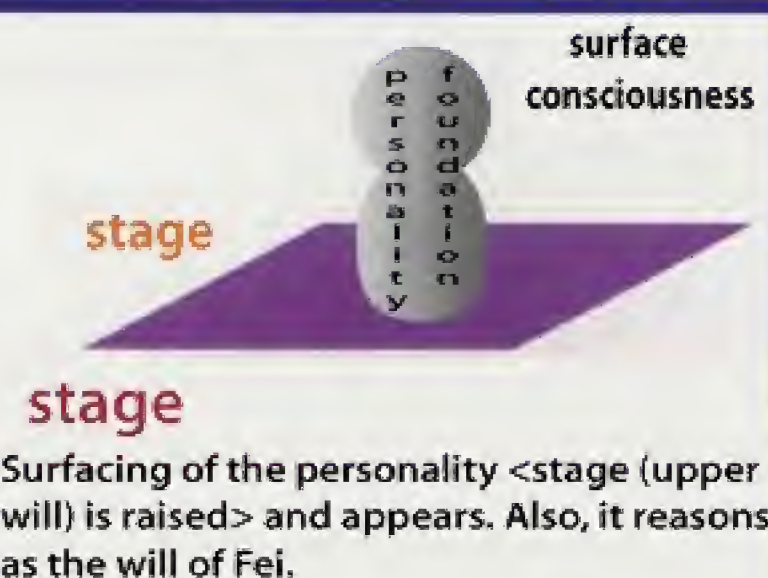
Originally there were other personalities inside Fei, and at times would appear. Citan diagnosed it as disassociative multiple personality disorder.

In particular, the destructive personality of Id developed, acquired in childhood due to hidden exterior damage (negative trauma: due to rearing by parent, the lack of love, etc. slowly pierces the soul until it damages the spirit.) And so, upon the death of his mother, Karen, the bruised personality went like a turtle into its "shell" and Id was sealed away into his deep subconscious by Khan. In its place was the constructed artificial personality of Fei that emerged upon awakening in Lahan Village. Also, in the story, in order to escape from reality, he created a fourth personality that felt and thought nothing.

0 ~ 3 years

### original Fei

From his birth to 3 years old, Fei had a normal home and was raised as a typical child. Of course, the separation of his personality hadn't occurred. At this stage only the original Fei personality existed.

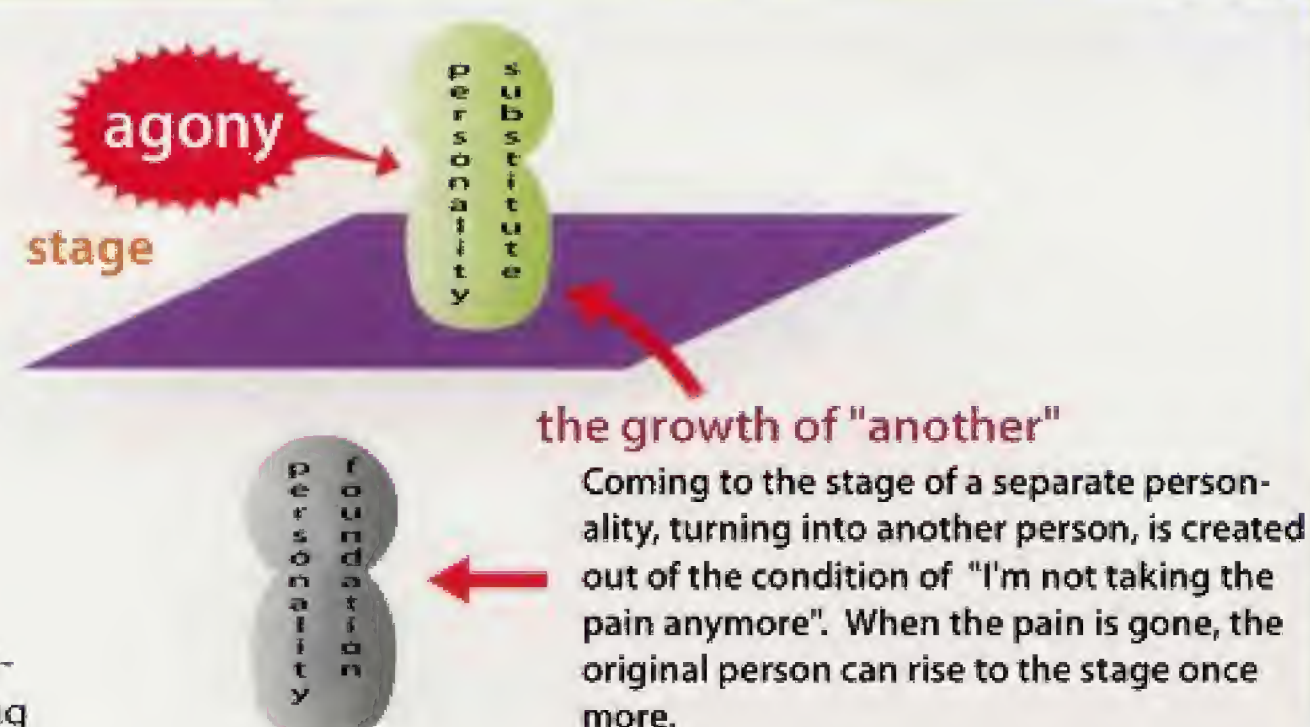


4 years

### the fusion experiments by his mother Karen

Around the time when Fei was 4 years old, his mother Karen awakened as the inheritor of Miang. Karen having noticed that Fei had other reincarnated wills, determined he was the Contact. In order to awaken Fei, spiritual fusion experiments were conducted over and over. For the sake of fusion, people (those with high potential for fusion with Anima Relics) were gathered, and by forcing out the Contact's power were killed one by one in a blaze of light, giving much spiritual agony to Fei.

Even when the transformation of Karen and the experiments became known to him, Fei's father continued in his work and did not put a stop to it. For this reason, Fei developed a substitute personality who could shoulder all of the spiritual pain. It was separated from the original personality. A separate person for dealing with the pain, and the original escaping those things it couldn't cope with.



4 years(10 mos. later)

### mother Karen's death (attack of Grahf)

Grahf attacks in order to fuse with the Contact Fei. He battles with his father, Khan. Khan absorbs the immense power of Grahf and goes down heavily wounded. Fei wants his mother to help, but she only stands silently watching. Not able to stand this, his strong feelings unleash his power and Karen is killed.

The original personality, unable to bear the reality that "You killed mother" sends the substitute personality onto the stage, making it bear the responsibility. The original personality remembers his mother, bathes in her love, wrapped in memories of the time of paradise, hiding its will deep inside a "shell" like a turtle. It is for this that the substitute personality Id is sent to the stage. At this time, the original personality takes the truth that at the last, Karen had shielded his body with her own, and hides it deep within his shell, not showing it to Id.







The personality developed from his childhood to escape pain. Right after Karen's death, it completely separated from the original personality. Afterwards, along with Grahf, it wielded destructive power augmented by hatred as it destroyed Elru and others. Sealed away in the subconscious will temporarily by his father Khan, it was reawakened during the attack on Lahan village. After that, every so often in certain circumstances, Fei manifests it.

Its growth is related to the mother-child relationship, as well as the pain caused by the experiences lived in each era as the Contact, the painful experiments and the contact with Zohar in Lacan's time, all of which have a huge effect.

# Id

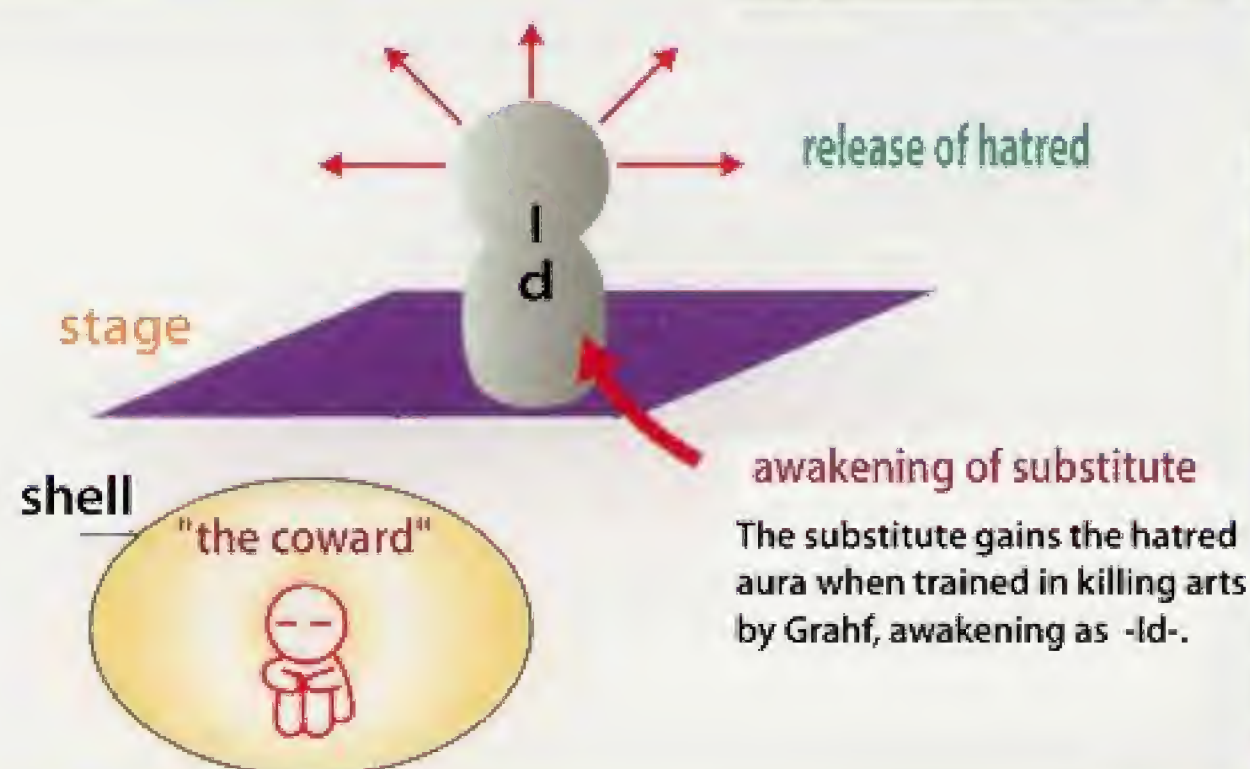
Id

4 ~ 14 years

## The demon of Elru (emergence with Grahf)

Fei (Id) who had been taken away by Grahf, was trained as an assassin by him. He manifested huge power during the quelling of Elru by Solaris, annihilating it. He also destroyed the Solaris army.

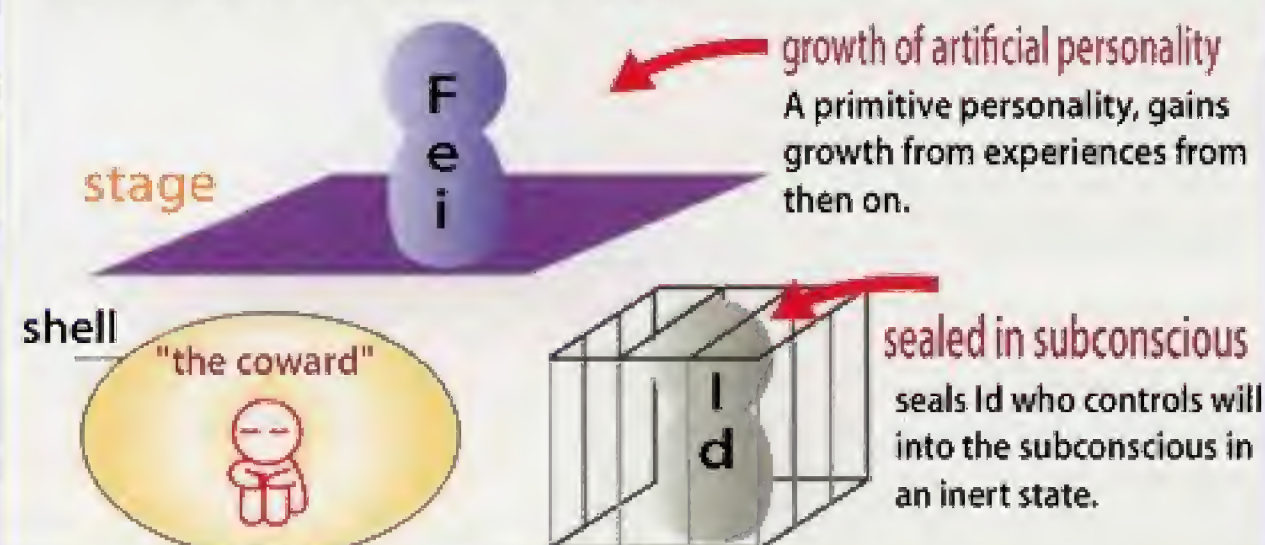
The substitute personality formed to take the burden of the pain, is the one who gives pain . . . the experiments by his mother over and over, the father who didn't help, the hatred is borne by the one shouldering the burden for the original personality. Also, the piles of destroyed bodies, the light of death, all these things he can't reject. The "coward" hiding in his shell like a turtle, the substitute that is rising to the stage is the support of a complete "Fei". And the means of killing that he learns is another step in spreading out hatred.



15 years

## Id sealed away by Khan (re battles Grahf)

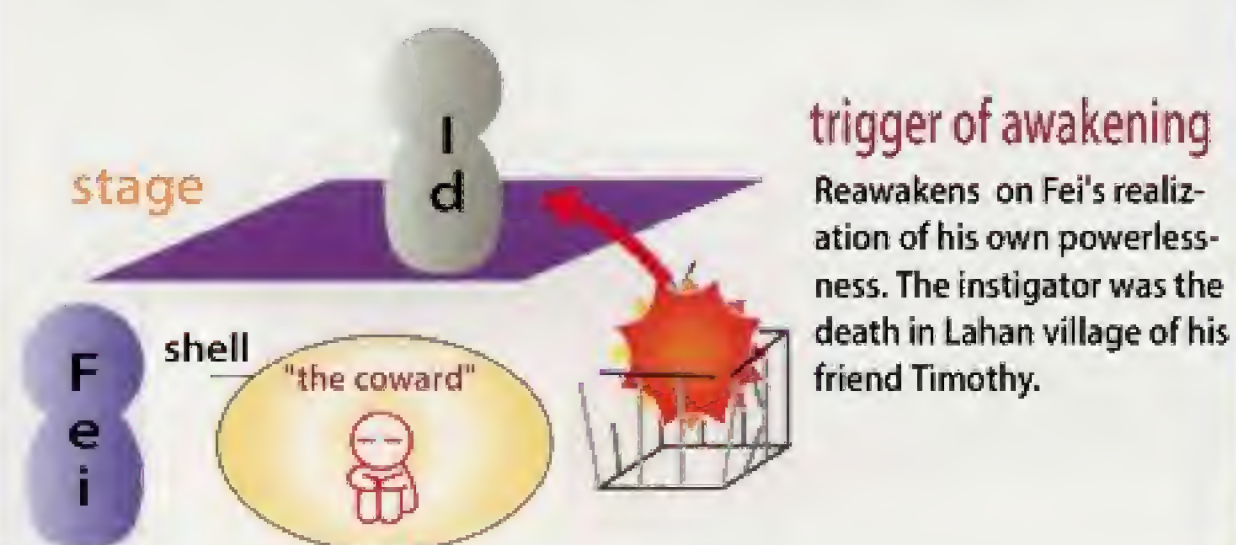
Khan has a showdown with Grahf once more. At this time, Khan seals Id away into Fei's deep subconscious. Due to this, Fei develops a new personality. From this point on it is an artificial personality based on his experiences. This personality is unable to control memories even when on the surface.



18 years

## Id sealed away by Khan (re battles Grahf)

When Lahan village is attacked, and his friend Timothy killed, the sealed Id wakes again from inside Fei, releasing his power. From then on, Id takes over Fei from time to time, "who can do nothing, just watch powerless" and can manifest at will.







# Elehaym•Van•Houten

Elehayym Van Houten

## History

18 years ago	Is born in Solaris' First Class level as daughter to father, Erich Van Houten and mother, Medina.
5 years ago (13 years old)	Enters the school at Jugend.
1 years ago (17 years old)	Due to the adverse effects of Drive, severely wounds her classmates. Her father Erich is promoted to SS Comander.
Present (18 years old)	Graduates from Jugend. Is sent to the Ignas Area as a Gebler commander. Steals the new prototype Gear from Kislev.

## ● The -Drive- accident

When Elly was 17 years old, there was an incident when she heavily wounded her classmates (2 fatally, 3 were revived). The matter of her treatment by the military [Case 102] was the result of an overdose of -Drive-, and the disaster resulted when she lost control. However, this was the power of Elly as the Antitype and it was unleashed temporarily as a result of the drugs.

Inside Jugend, there are those who show adverse effects from the drug. Elly had a normal does of -Drive- and rejected it. This time it was a strong reaction as well with the resulting in her strength going out of control



Elehaym, born in the First Class citizen level (afterwards Elly), until she entered the school at Jugend at 13 years old, was raised in a normal family, and naturally as a Solaris citizen received her education.

From the time when she was a toddler, she had a very impressionable personality, and after the accident from adverse effects when she was 17 years old, this only grew stronger. Also, after this incident, she was expelled from entering the Elements group. After her graduation from Jugend, she accepted a post in Gebler as a 3rd weapons division officer. She became second lieutenant.

## ● Complex

While both parents are upper class type Solarians, Elly closely resembles a surface dweller. Noticing from a very young age that she was different, she began to have doubts about her birth. This may have been due to the influence of the presence at that time of her wet nurse. After the death of the child of the wet nurse who was a surface dweller in the Third Class citizen level, Elly's father sheltered her.

However, things like her own looks' similarity, combined with the fact that her father didn't drive out the wet nurse, caused her to begin to wonder if she might not be her real mother.

Elly is without a doubt the true daughter of her father Erich and her mother Medina. The difference in her looks is attributed to her being reincarnated the -Antitype- of the Contact. Like Fei, she has memories remaining from the very beginning as one reincarnated, but she has hardly realized it yet.

Elly has a strong sense of self sacrifice, and as an existence born from Original Elehaym, she has inherited this naturally.



Erich  
Van Houten

Eylit

Originally working as the commanding officer of the Soylen System, he was engaged in research with Doctor Nikolai and the others on the M Project. However, upon finding out the truth of the living experiments, he resigned his post. He works now as Special Affairs Minister at the Bureau.



Medina  
Van Houten

Medeena

As Elly's mother, she has nothing to do with the military and such. Upon hearing that Elly was missing, she lived her days in despair and listlessness. In the story, she protects Elly from Hammer's gun and dies.



The Antitype - rebirth and death with the Contact

Elly, starting with the Original Elehaym, is usually born as Elehaym's reincarnation in the same era as the Contact. As such, Elehaym is the opposing existence to the Contact = the Antitype. To trace it to its source, she is the result of the Wave Existence going along Abel's image, in particular adding in the Mother's will. Usually, the Contact is male (paternal) and therefore its opposite, the Mother, (maternal) must be female.

Elehaym has always been reincarnated along with the Contact, and in order to protect him she dies. Originally, the relationship between them in the beginning was that of mother and child, from then on they met as lovers, taking on that relationship. Whatever the form of death for Elehaym, it causes great agony to the Contact. A major factor in Fei's natural tendency to torture himself, is the result of Elehaym's repeated dying in order to protect him, resulting in an added burden over time of "it's my fault" as his most precious woman is killed.

Elly is self sacrificing, and that combined with her nature as a woman results in the growth of her aspect as the Mother, which is directly from Original Elehaym.



Contact **Abel** **Elehaym** Antitype

Original Elehaym meets the Contact Abel, and from that point on, they are together. Abel rebels against Cain who seeks to take control of the thoughts and actions of the people. Cain plans to kill Abel who has become an interference. In order to protect Abel, Elehaym persuades Cain (even in regards to Cain, Elehaym is the <Mother> existence) and Cain sets in motion a plan to counteract this. At this time, Elehaym loses her life shielding Abel.



Contact **Kim** **Elehaym** Antitype

She is a nurse at the college hospital in the capital Zeboim (Federal Medical Bureau). She falls in love with Kim who is working as a doctor at the same hospital. Kim's research facility is surrounded by the military who want to take over his constructed nanotechnolougy. In order to help Kim escape into the central isolated room, Elly brings the military invasion to a stop herself. She dies when the research center's hazard safety system is triggered, releasing high amounts of radiation.



Contact **Lacan** **Sophia (Elehaym)** Antitype

The first Mother of the Nisan Orthodox. When a small child, she met Lacan while recovering from illness. From then on, she was engulfed as a candidate in the struggle for the selection of Mother, and went missing for a time. After she returned, she reorganized and re named the Nisan Orthodox as Holy Mother, meeting Lacan once more after a period of 13 years.

Upon the outbreak of the Solaris War, refugees poured into Nisan. With Sophia at the head of the healing Corps, she became revered as "Holy Mother". After that, when Nisan entered battle, Sophia's will stood as a symbol for the surface dwellers' army.



Sophia and Lacan fell in love during the war. However, due to a secret plot by Shevat, the surface army was surrounded by the Solaris army, and Sophia used the aerial battleship Excalibur to mount an attack on the enemy flagship, Merkava. It was scattered in the upper stratosphere above present day Kislev. And so, it was her thought as the Nisan Mother to rescue the people from battle, and as a single woman she gave her last wish to her beloved ... to Lacan, " Live!"



Sophia Sophia

Born as the third daughter of the Bishop of the Nisan teaching's Ashura Monastery. Around the time she was 7 years old, she manifested a rare talent (Ether Ability) and was sent as adopted daughter to Cardinal Penuel as a future candidate for Holy Mother. (the selection of Mother by the head bishopric of the Church). At 13 years old, she was selected as a candidate for the position of Mother, changing her name to Sophia. However, this was in the midst of a battle between the factions for the selection of Mother and as it intensified, the Penuel Monastery was attacked, and from the Cardinal on down, more than half of Sophia's faction were killed. Sophia went to a place unknown. 7 years later, she returned to current day Nisan. Due to the schism, the Nisan teaching was on the wane, and with Sophia as Mother, she reorganized its teachings and re named it as the Nisan Orthodox.

The fighting among the Church factions was a bloody battle for the choosing of the Mother based on heredity within the Church. The Penuel faction also was not immune from this, and in the middle of the struggle, gradually Sophia began to feel more strongly, "If I weren't here", thus longing for her own death. At the time of the attack on the Monastery, when facing Kelian who had come to kill her, she merely said with a small smile, "... thank you." Having been charmed by her pure smile, Krelan took her away to protect her. Afterwards, for the 7 years until their return to Nisan, it is not certain what happened to the two of them.





# Miang•Hawwa [Miang 0998]

Myah Hawwa

As Ramsus' chief lieutenant, she is the woman who normally accompanies him. She met Ramsus during their time at Jugend, and since then, even when he was an individualistic rebel, she supported him as his lover. In truth, she had secret ties with the actual ruler of Solaris, Krelian, and was his assistant in the facilitating of the M Plan. Also, as a Guardian Angel another name was added to her as well, the punisher (Executioner).

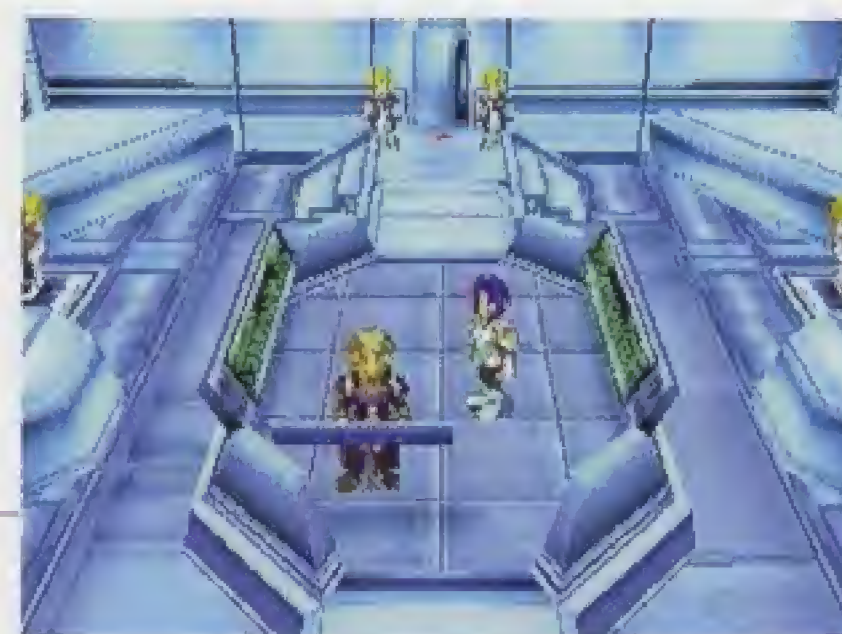
Wielding extraordinary power from the time she was in Jugend, after Jesiah escaped from Solaris, she was added to the Elements for a short time. After that, Ramsus gave her a position as a Guardian Angel, and she was selected personally as his supporting officer.

Miang also has lived as a special existence from the beginning until the present. In contrast to the reincarnation of the Contact and his Antitype, Elehaym, Miang has awakened many times due to the inherited Miang factor in all women. Beginning with the original Miang, through the twins of Zeboim, Fei's mother Karen and on to the present day Miang, she has awakened 998 times over a period of 10,000 years.

## ● Miang as Gebler

Her rank is sub-lieutenant. As support for Commander Ramsus, she appears imperturbable, a calming presence who gives advice to the mercurial Ramsus and Dominia (Elements). Having a Gear for her exclusive use, she has great battle power, even though she rarely participates in fighting.

At the time of battle, if Ramsus is wounded or such, she is granted temporary power to issue commands in his place.



## Miang's lineage

10,000 years ago - beginning

4000 years ago - Zeboim civilization

500 years ago - Solaris Great War

Miang  
0000

Miang  
0661  
(twins)

Miang  
0970

## Supplement— Miang's inherited awakening as the "weapon"

Like Elehaym, Miang was also differentiated from Original Elehaym after her awakening as Miang Hawwa. She acted as manager of the founders of human beings, Cain and the others.

In regards to Elehaym's main body, Miang took on the role of supplement. The goal was the completion of humans as parts for the resurrection of Deus. In the case that humans were defective as parts, the advancement of evolution and culture was halted at that stage and that civilization was wiped out. From this was desired higher evolution. At this stage, Miang wielded her power as "weapon." This was not direct military power, but was recognized as a power able to destroy civilization. Also, for the

complete resurrection of Deus, one goal was the preservation of the Contact and the Antitype alongside the completion of human beings.

The gene for the supplemental Miang is in all women. When the body of the one who has awakened as Miang is destroyed (death), the next Miang's genes awaken. While the ratio of strong genetics of those who awaken as Miang is high, it is unknown what kind of woman will awaken next. Those women who awaken as Miang inherit all her memories and experience up to now, sealing away completely the original woman's personality. The present day Miang (0998) also was a normal woman who had lived in Solaris' Second Class citizen level before she awakened.





## Karen [Miang 0997]

Karen

Fei's mother. 14 years ago, (when Fei was 4) the Miang gene awakened. Noticing that her child was the Contact, at the end of the cruel experiments, she summoned Grahf who wanted to merge with the Contact. Because of Fei's power running out of control, in the instant before he would have been harmed, Karen returned to her true self and shielded Fei, losing her life. However, because the "coward" had hidden this truth away, Karen's true will was not known until Fei's personality was brought back together.

Karen was originally from the Nisan Orthodox's Aquvy parish. Because of the reading of a heretical treatise a part of the -Church- 's influence caused the occurrence of an incident (details unknown) and she met at that time Shevat's military Commander Khan. Later, Fei was born in Shevat and they went down to the surface with Khan.

## Zeboim's Miang

While it's not unusual for duplicate Miang genes to awaken at the same time, this era's twins awakening is an unusual case.

The level of human knowledge had reached its peak, and as for the flesh there was genetic abnormality causing a shortened lifespan. Miang at last determined this kind was defective. Due to the effects of radiation, she expected sudden mutations spurring on evolution to happen, and thus instigated the President to begin the outbreak of nuclear war.

Also, she had read Kim's research thesis. Using this to advance the species evolution, she proposed to grant Kim a research facility (different from the one where Emeraldal was created). Having realized Miang's true nature, Kim moved the nano-machine colony <Emeralda> to a separate facility. This ended in failure upon the invasion by the special Military Corps who intended to steal it.

Afterwards, nuclear war broke out according to plan. Except for a part of humanity that escaped to shelters, and a remnant of living creatures on the surface, all were annihilated.

## Solaris War

With Miang managing the Gazel Ministry, she was the hidden ruler of Solaris. With the resistance from the surface with Shevat as axis growing more heated, the Gazel Ministry planned energetically for the resurrection of Deus. However, Miang had determined that the humans of this era were insufficient, and she opposed the Ministry against reviving Deus.

Finding her presence to be a hindrance, the Ministry secretly arranged with the Elders of Shevat to exchange Miang with Sophia. Because of this, Miang was imprisoned in Shevat, and Sophia died in a special attack. In Shevat, Miang met Lacan who was in despair having lost Sophia, and this led to the path to Zohar. Due to the incomplete union of the Contact who had lost the Antitype, Lacan was changed into Grahf, who in turn caused -The Day of Collapse-.

40 years ago

Miang  
0996

14 years ago

Miang  
0997  
(Karen)

14 years ago

Miang  
0998



## Executioner

Excusioner

As one of Solaris' Guardian Angels, she also bears the role as punisher. Having immeasurable battle power, she is regarded with terror by the people of Solaris. Her true form is Miang (0998) and the only ones who know this truth are Krelan and the Gazel Ministry.

In the story, she arrives at Kislev's Capital and hands over a mysterious container to Sigmund. Also, at the time of the escape from Solaris, she appears with Grahf, giving proof of her incredible fighting power. As a supplemental "weapon" type existence for Miang, it becomes an individual "weapon".

## Miang of 40 years ago

The Miang who awakened before Karen. She advanced the M Plan to its 5th stage together with Krelan. 14 years ago, her life reached its end due to her flesh wearing out from old age (death), and Karen was awakened. While not much is said concerning this in the story, in regards to the original owners of the women's bodies before awakening, who they were and where they came from is unknown.



Phenomenon shift machine Zohar



contact



8th generation  
biological computer  
Kadomony



Original Elehaym  
Elehayym

Eldridge  
crash

## ● Original Elehaym

When the imprisoned Wave Existence inside Zohar comes into contact with Abel, it gains a human nature (mother type). The Wave Existence having no form in the fourth dimension manifests a definitive nature inside Kadomony. In the protocol Persona, one of the formed living elements making up Kadomony it projects the image of the mother type it received from the boy Abel. This is the woman visible in Zohar's shield case (eye shaped portion). This is Persona . . . the Original Elehaym.

This nature born of the response of a mother to the boy's wish to go home, afterwards that Elehaym (reproduced : Main) inherits these characteristics. In particular, her sense of self sacrifice is strong, and she normally she continues to protect the life of (my child), the Contact.

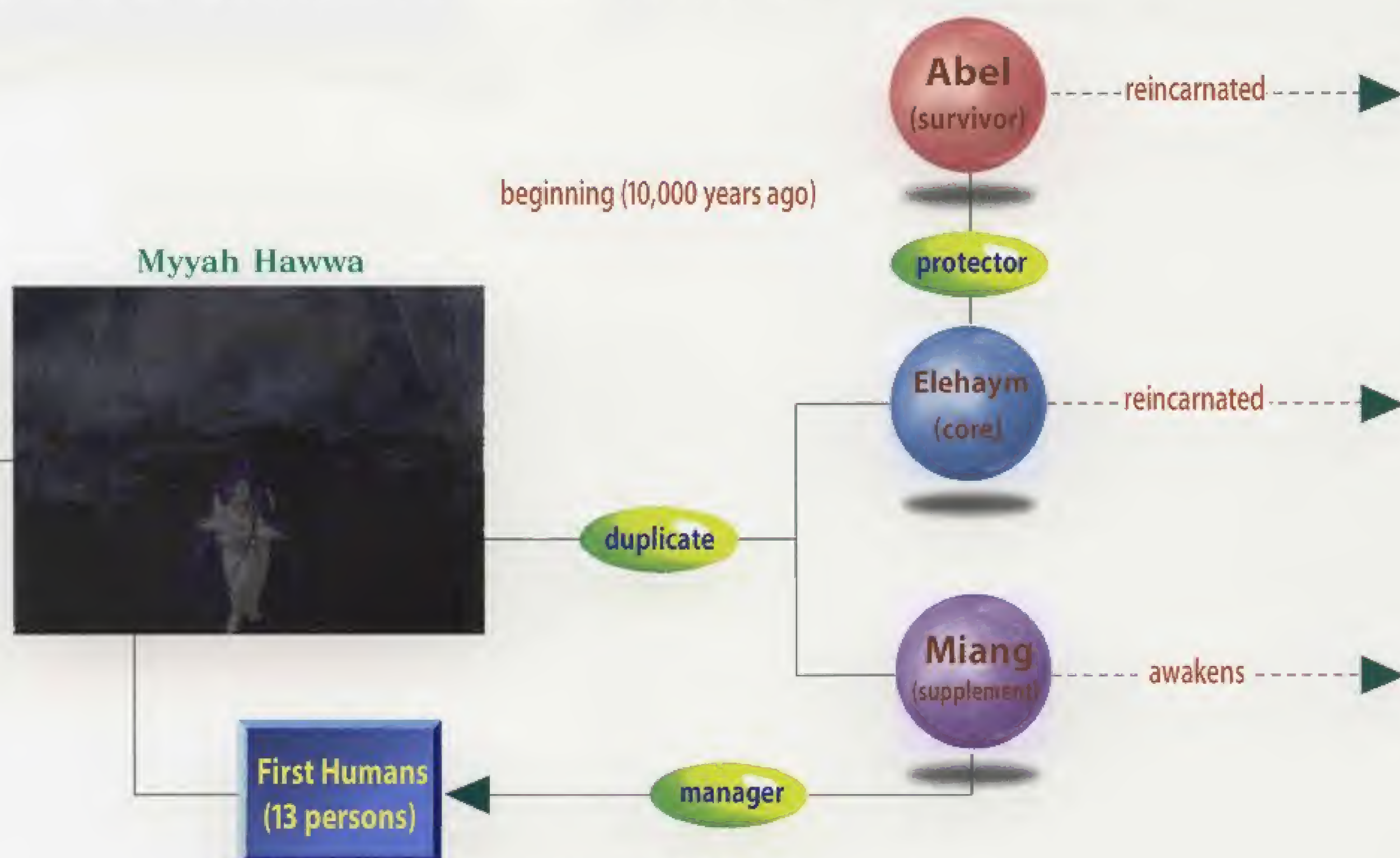


## ● Miang Hawwa ~ the 2 "duplicates"

Due to the crash of the Eldridge, the formed Elehaym within Kadomony (core protocol Persona) set in motion an automatic program for a system of control [System Hawwa]. Performing exon replacement (inside the genes, the act of the exchange of living information) it awakened as Miang (Myyah). This became the Original Miang Hawwa.

The central protocol Persona (original Miang) created the beginning Animus (humans) from a biological assembler plant, becoming the <Mother> of human beings. And to manage them were 2 duplicates of herself ... separated into Elehaym and Miang. With Elehaym as the one to direct this and actualize it as a special characteristic of Persona (Mother type), in this form she was the Subject of the Persona. The mother like aspect of Elehaym was not originally contained as a necessary part in the automatic program for the revival of Deus. For Persona,

it thought to contain within the separated Elehaym the role of "mother" for the Contact Abel. Also, from the special nature of Original Miang as the <Mother> of humans to the growth as protector of humans, began to take shape over time. However, that growth was along with the humans who proceeded from the level of selfless children to more self awareness as they began to build their own world, and this was not an essential part in the completion of humans as parts for the resurrection of Deus. For the managed evolution of humans beings, with the goal of completing them as parts, another <Mother> became necessary. This was Miang who bore the characteristics of weapon of the Deus System. With Miang as Persona's [Deus System Mode], the system of the automatic revival program was carried forward. It was a tool for the the compeltion of humans bodies (making them stronger). And as a part of Persona, only Elehaym could exist as the supplement (Subject).



## ● Original humans and Miang

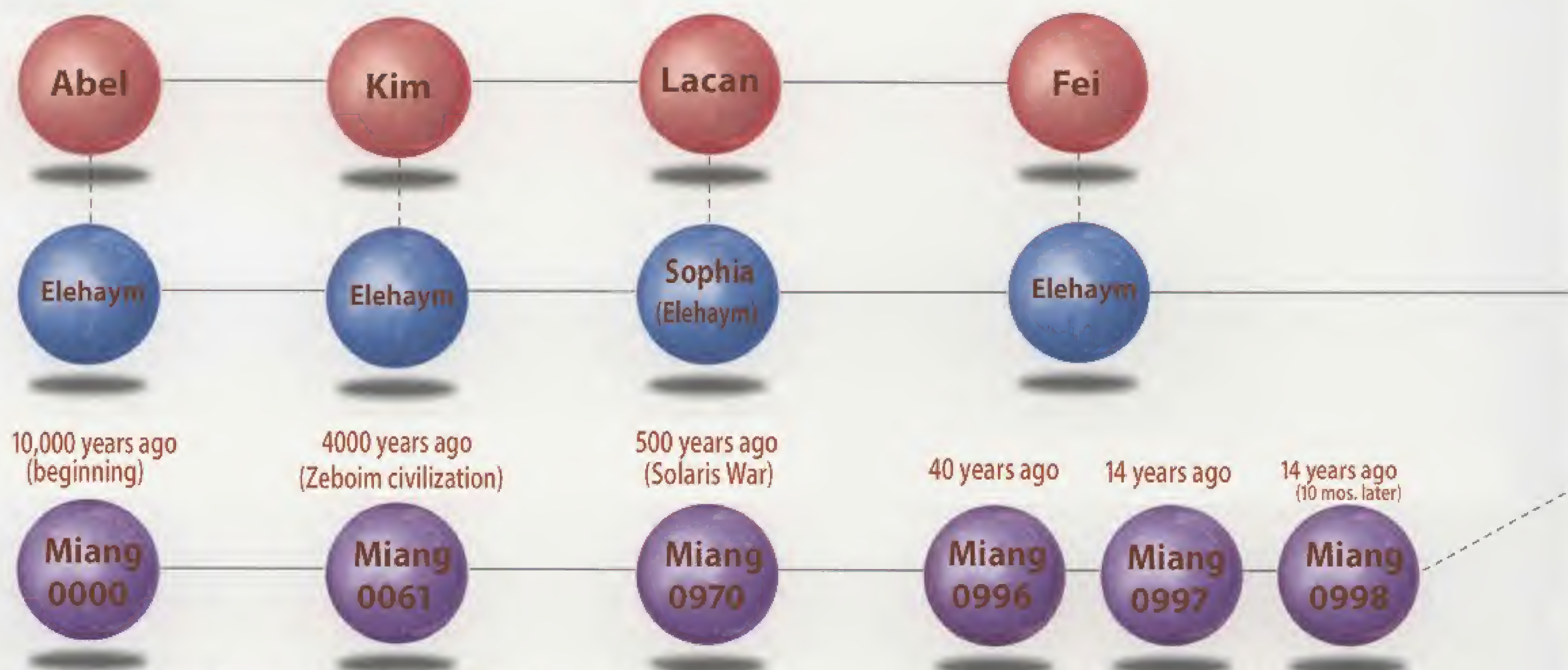
With Emperor Cain as the leader of the 13 persons of the Animus, he was called the -First Human-. Using the functions of Kadomony, they manufactured the original forms of many species (humans). From then on, those humans lived separate from Cain and the others, forming their own system. Cain governed as the First Human, making a system of government for those first human beings. Miang was differentiated for the managing of those first humans contained by Cain. In truth it was to advance the evolution of those humans as parts for Deus, and that stage was thought to have been instigated then. From that time on, even with all of Miang's machinations, the image leading to the desired path became stronger than her actions. Also, even though Miang might take on the role of protecting the Contact and Antitype, when it was unnecessary, there was no question of their death. For the first Miang, the murder of Abel by Cain (thus Elehayms' death), she just watched in silence.



## ● The Antitype Elehaym

While the Contact is reincarnated over and over again with a different name and position, Elehaym is usually born with the name -Elehaym- and is the Contact's lover. The reverse of 'Elehayym' is 'Myyah ele'm and means [Miang exists here]. In other words, the condition of 'Elehayym' is before the awakening of the Miang factor, and why in the story the awakened Elly said "I am Miang." Because the Miang factor is in all women, it could be said that before awakening all women are 'Elehayym', and only the Antitype ... as the main body of Persona, as the hyper aware <Last Miang>, could receive the name of Elehaym.

When the Antitype is born, this existence is usually the lover of the Contact, and as Abel's (the Contact) <Mother>, is bound to him so that when he makes contact, she inherits the sympathies with the Contact Abel who desired to return to the womb and they are joined by these ties. Afterwards, when both are reincarnated without any age difference, that sympathy becomes romantic love, following therefore a most natural course.



## ● Miang as Deus Control Mode

With Primary protocol Personal having the advantage of being able to shape its form due to exon replacement, it can shift to Deus Control Mode. When the separately sealed parts of Deus on the Eldridge start to go out of control, this mode shift takes place. This is the same phenomenon as that of the hyper aware 'Elehayym' awakening into 'Myyah'. This shift causes Original Elehaym to become Miang with the activation of System Hawwa, bringing about sentient life on the planet surface. Afterwards, the awakened Miang as supplement, takes on active duty as Deus Control Mode. And in this capacity of controlling the effort to bring about the resurrection of Deus, Miang becomes the manager with the aim of spurring on and hastening this program. When Deus is able to be completely resurrected, the role of Miang as supplement is finished. And so, the main body of Elehaym having awakened as Miang, and fused with Deus (returns as main protocol to Kadomony), proceeds to control the resurrected Deus.





## ● From Elehaym to Myyah . . . the last awakening

At the time of Deus' resurrection, Elehaym (Elly) as the Antitype who had continued to protect the Contact, awakened as <the Last Miang>. The separated portion of the Main protocol Personal had to return to Zohar, not as the supplement, but as the main body.

Inside the information of Elly's introns is drawn the Urobolus Ring. The hyper awareness is tied within this ring, and as the ring determines, Miang awakens. In regards to the Urobolus Ring in the process of self actualization, it is nearly in the state of the words describing -Great Mother-. With Miang as Great Mother, she facilitates the self growth of human beings. These humans growing in the world of consciousness (self), begin to move things according to their will. With Miang's goal of leading human beings to completion, there is nothing that stops it. And so, with Miang as Great Mother, she destroys civilizations that have overreached themselves (selfish humans).

While the Antitype Elly remains unawakened until she is the core of Deus' resurrection as <Mother>, she is concerned mainly with the growth of the Contact's will. When Deus is resurrected, she needs to understand what the Contact should do, what are her own judgments, and what should be done next. In contrast to this, for Miang, the Contact is the one who will destroy Deus. It is for this reason that she can't allow the Contact to grow self awareness.

The Contact is an essential piece of Deus, but is not necessary as <the destroyer of god>. And Miang becomes the Great Mother, manipulating the Contact's self and leading him.

—And so, when all things have been brought together,  
Elehaym also can grow again herself—

Miang  
0999  
(Elly)



### Urobolus Ring

The "urobolus" is a snake that eats its own tail. The self born from its own self, before psychological self awareness is in a state of hibernation, a gathering of unconscious will. Again, it cannot make judgments, unable to tell the difference between self awareness and reality, thus keeping it in a cocoon. With the growth of self, it develops from non consciousness to the need to escape from the ring and live. Here it creates a world of its own consciousness. When able to judge reality on a firm it starts to emerge from the cocoon as it surpasses it to enter reality.

In terms of -Great Mother- this refers to the word expressing the idea of a hampering mother in the process of deriving the child from the ring (growth of self).





# Krelian

Karellen

## History

approx. 500 years ago	Born as an illegitimate child. That year, his mother Elazaru dies.  Enters the Nimrod Empire's Laodicea Military Corps. Later becomes leader.
(23 years old)	The attack on Penuel Monastery. Disappears taking Elehaym (13 years old) with him.
(28 years old)	Meets Lacan.
(30 years old)	He and Sophia return to Nisan. Krelian takes a post as Monastery Corps leader. The next year, war with Solaris breaks out.
(35 years old)	Sophia dies. The next year, Grahf causes the -Day of Collapse-.
(41 years old)	Contacts Emperor Cain. Moves the Gazel Ministry's data into the SOL-9000.
(40 years ago)	Advances the 5th stage of the M Plan. Makes contact with Miang (996).
(24 years ago)	Creates a copy of Emperor Cain [0808191 Ramses].
(14 years ago)	Makes contact with Karen (Miang 0997). Abandons Ramses.
(8 years ago)	Plans the 3rd invasion of Shevat.
Present	Plans to excavate Zeboim's ruins.

## Life extension treatments

Krelian is not like Fei, Elly or Miang, those historically special persons who have continued through 10,000 years. Krelian is one of the human beings from 500 years ago who has continued to live into the present day due to [life extension treatments] he gave himself. Realizing that the resurrection of Deus would not take place for several hundred years, Krelian stopped the aging process in his body so as to make it to the day of resurrection. Also, he gave these same treatments to the wasted body of Cain, Shevat's Zephyr and on through its Elders. This is thought to be the extent of Solaris' use of nanotechnology.

The use of the treatments in Shevat's case is his personal revenge for their betrayal of Nisan during the Great War 500 years ago. Also, this was meant to isolate Shevat, which has the surface world's most advanced technology from the people of the surface.

As the true ruler of Solaris, he is the person who commands both Emperor Cain and the Gazel Ministry. Having researched nanotechnology, he has lived since 500 years ago using life extension treatments.

Having a grasp of the convoluted relationships between others (the Ministry and Miang, the Contact and Antitype and such) and the true form of Deus, he also knows the true objective of the imprisoned Wave Existence that advented into Zohar. Due to the tragedy of 500 years ago, he had the desire to "create god, reaching the place of god" and when he knew that the gods of the world were Deus and the Wave Existence, he ascended to Solaris to accelerate the plan for the revival of Deus. He contacted Miang, and acknowledged their mutual goal. At Miang's instruction, he proceeded to do such things as giving life extension treatments to Emperor Cain and turning the Gazel Ministry into data. Taking the Ministry in hand, he advanced the science of Solaris and accelerated the M Plan. He placed the Limiters and such into both the people of Shevat and the surface dwellers.

Krelian personally named the plan to resurrect Deus [Project Noah], and until the last seeks to bring this about. The heart of him who seeks the land of god is usually filled with thoughts of Sophia.

## Nanotechnology

500 years ago, when Krelian was the leader of the Nisan Monastery Corps, he learned nanotechnology from teacher Taura Melchior of Shevat. Nanotechnology had been analyzed and advanced to its highest point 4000 years ago by Zeboim from the Colony ship civilization, and at that time was built upon by the doctor, Kim at the Federal hospital. Melchior had obtained a part of Kim's thesis that was excavated from old ruins, and revived nanotechnology by analyzing this. Having learned this technology from Melchior, Krelian deeply pursued the advancement of Solaris' knowledge and science.

## Relationship with the Gazel Ministry

Almost all the members of the Gazel Ministry were killed in the war 500 years ago. Using a SOL-9000 computer, Krelian revived 8 members as data containing their memories. Due to the selfish goal of the Ministry, they planned actively for the resurrection of Deus. Krelian used the Ministry for his own ends in his solitary pursuit of Project Noah. It was for the purpose of limiting the Ministry that he activated the "Gaetia Key" needed for the resurrection of Deus. While on the surface, his goals appeared the same, this was part of a deeper plan of Krelian's.



## The tragedy 500 years ago that lead to "god"

Before the outbreak of the Solaris War, Krelan accepted the post as Mother Sophia's protector when he became leader of the Monastery Corps.

Like Lacan, Krelan also was deeply in love with Sophia. However, taking note of Sophia's feelings for Lacan, Krelan stood his ground and felt anger at Lacan who tried to escape from her love.

When Sophia died because of Shevat's betrayal, Krelan despaired of both "god (belief)" and human beings. The teaching of Sophia that [faith grows from within], changed in him to the belief that "if god doesn't exist, I'll create it with my own hands!"

### Krelan (500 years ago)

Born as an illegitimate child, with the death of his mother, Elazaru, he became solitary all his life. He joined the Military Corps of the Nimrod Empire, the main supporter of the Nisan Sect. Mastering many fighting weapons, at last he took the position of leader of the Corps. His cold and cruel demeanor caused terror in the ranks.

Krelan took on the job as leader of the team that would carry out the assassination at Penuel Monastery as planned by the Nimrod Emperor Kusel. Krelan met Sophia at the time of the attack on the Monastery, and he fled, taking her away with him. 7 years later, he returned to Nisan with Sophia, becoming the leader of a newly organized Monastery Corps.



### ● Contact with Miang

Krelan proceeds to abandon the return of the Wave Existence, once he knew the truth at Mahanon's [Tree of Razel], where he was likely lead by Miang. Might it not be possible that he came into contact with Miang when she was imprisoned in Shevat before he ascended to Solaris?



### ● [Wave Existence]

All can be known about the Deus System from the data of the [Tree of Razel]. When Fei and the others get this data from Razel during the story, they are unable to get any further information concerning Zohar because of interference by Krelan.

Most likely the data concerning Zohar, the entity of the [Wave Existence] must be contained there in some form. Krelan analyzes this information and wonders if contact with the will of a higher "god" than Deus might not be possible. The thought to 'create god' that resulted from the death of Sophia was realized in the plan to resurrect Deus. However, having discovered within it the presence of the [Wave Existence], Krelan's own god was not Deus, but the [Wave Existence] he had uncovered. And so, knowing he would need to resurrect Deus so as to enable the Wave Existence to return to its own higher dimension, he determined not to "resurrect god", but to "go to the place of god".

### ● M Plan

The M (Malakh) Plan being accelerated by the Gazel Ministry, the primary goal is the creation of an army of angels <Aeon> for the support of god on the coming day of Deus' resurrection. With the construction of Merkava, the main basis for the Angels is [created human types (Sufalidae), and many experiments are carried out in the Soylent Systems.

From the time Krelan entered Solaris 500 years ago, he planned the acceleration of the M Plan with Miang. Having continued on down through the ages, this present day sees the 5th stage of the plan (by this measure, Zeboim was the 3rd stage). The result of Krelan's research up until now, using his own devised nanotechnology are the Limiters (Seals) and the present Soylent facilities, memory cubes and humans fusing with Gears, all such systems as these were created by him.

### ● To the land of "god"

Krelan also was born 500 years ago as one of the [humans] who was one of descendants of the founders Animus. Researching nanotechnology, even though he is the only one that understands "the will of god", unlike Elly or Fei, he has not continued from the beginning tied up with a special "fate". When Krelan merges with Deus "Elly", he enters the higher dimension along with the Wave Existence, achieving all this by his powers alone. At last he analyzes and understands the "love" that Sophia had explained, and is the reason his will fades before her stubborn love.

At the time he sets out for the place of god, he leaves with the words, "I envy you two . . .". Krelan saw the original love of Fei and Elly that they desired on their own, and that this was human will.





The highest governing authority in Solaris. As head of the Gazel Ministry and one of the 13 persons of the first humans born from Kadomony, he is the only one to survive into the present day. The skull-like look of his head is only a mask, and during the story the mask was never lifted until the end.

He fears the high probability of humanity's destruction at the <Time of the Gospel> and desires to save them, but that anxiety is warped by the Ministry and they use his ability to bend the will of the populace. In order to determine the extent of the Contact's power, he sends Citan to watch over him.

# Emperor Cain

Providence kain



## The Original Sin — the Emperor's true will



10,000 years ago  
The beginning

### Study The "Founder" of the beginning era

From the beginning time period, the 13 members from Cain on down (Ministry) were born due to Miang as the original Animus and used Kadomony's assembler plant to produce the prototypes of human beings. Humanity formed themselves into groups and their numbers increased rapidly.

Cain as the 12 members' "founding human", systematically managed human beings. At last, he became venerated among them as an "advented god" (present human-god: the human advented as god) and the faith spread widely. Cain used this and took a religious veneration for himself in the populace. It is thought that Miang as the humans' <Mother> pushed this as well.

It is not certain that Cain, no matter how the philosophy was explained, actually managed the people, but that is perhaps the superstition that both he and Miang encouraged and the image was transmitted even into the present day, [the Legend of god].



Present

### ● Undying flesh

As the leader of the original Animus, in terms of humans, Cain has ultimate manipulative power, and is fated to live until the resurrection of god. He is not weakened by age nor is there anyone who can harm him. Because he is undying and has the wish to save humanity, he becomes a hindrance to Krelan and the Gazel Ministry, so Krelan creates the corresponding existence able to kill him, Ramsus, who is the one who murders him.

Cain wishing to change the fate of those manufactured humans who are parts by reforming their flesh, offers his own undying body as test subject for use in experiments, advancing research. For this reason, the nature of his flesh is somewhat altered, and reaches its limits. While hanging on because of Krelan's life extension treatments, at last Cain does not have the ultimate power to live eternally, and as the <Time of the Gospel> approaches, for Cain only the power to maintain his existence remains.

### Study Confrontation with Abel

As Cain became more venerated among the people, he used this to manipulate their will, and gradually the confrontation between his and Abel's ideals began to surface. While the details of this are not clear, in terms of Cain who was using the emotions of individuals to head towards the resurrection of Deus, Abel desired only the freedom of the people to live according to their own will. Also, Elehaym who worked with Abel may have had the same type of influence as Sophia.

Cain planned to murder Abel. Elehaym desperately admonished Cain, putting into motion a plan to counteract him. This resulted in Elehaym's death. Elehaym was at last, also humanity's <Mother> and the central Protocol Persona's main body. After this, Cain feared for the fate of human beings, wishing to change it, and having this time murdered <the Mother> Elehaym with his own hands, might this not have had a huge effect?

### ● The governing Emperor

From the time Solaris was built 600 years ago, Cain continued to be venerated absolutely and worshiped by the people. However, that is the result of the surface appearance that was warped by Krelan and the Gazel Ministry, and is at odds with the true will of Cain who is fearful about the fate of human beings.

With the power left behind by the dissolved Gazel Ministry, neither Krelan nor any other person is able to take his life. From the beginning Cain is not tied by anyone, and should have been able to rule at will indefinitely. However, it is likely he discovered that his power had waned to such an extent that, even with Krelan's life extension treatments, he was using all his will power just to stay alive, making it impossible to govern. And this might have been due to the one who committed the Original Sin having lost his will.



## The longing for humans — expectation of "Anonnelbe"

### ● Anonnelbe

The meaning of <Anonnelbe> is "the coming man of god who will lead the people born of this world to a new land". Cain recognizes the appearance of the Contact Fei as Anonnelbe, for having both the power to save as well as destroy human beings.

The humans fated to be parts making up the Deus System can only be freed from that curse by one person, Anonnelbe... the Contact. However, will he free them all by rescuing or by destruction? Cain probes the direction in which way the Contact's power shall go. If he comes to save all, he will entrust humanity to him, but if he comes to destroy the world, Cain will wipe him out and from the <Time of the Gospel> his fate will be destruction along with all of humanity. And according to Cain's will, this is "atonement".

### ● Secret command to Citan

In order to determine Fei's ability as the Contact, Cain directs one of the Guardian Angels, Hyuga (Citan) to stay close to Fei and watch over him. With Id sealed away, and Fei having lost his memory, this is the right opportunity to send Hyuga to the surface.

During the story, Citan meets with Cain on numerous occasions, reporting Fei's status. Citan determines that Fei as Anonnelbe will be able to rescue humanity. From this determination, Cain also decides to entrust all to the Contact.



## Gazel Ministry

Board of GAZERU

The original forms of Animus created in the very beginning, these 12 elders are the core of the governing machine of Solaris. 4 of them died during the Great War 500 years ago. And in the "Day of Collapse", all of them were killed, afterwards to be revived by Krelan as memory data in a computer. Their ambition is to extend their domain to other star systems with the resurrection of Deus. In order to obtain their own "bodies", they seek for those that fuse with Anima Relics.



### ● Time of the Gospel

As for the <Time of the Gospel> the Gazel Ministry wishes for, this is shown to be the final stage end time of the Deus self revival program.

The Ministry is able to use the system for activating the bodily transformation of humans [Gaetia Key], but this is held back by Emperor Cain. When all the Anima Relics are activated, Cain is killed by Ramsus, and the Ministry immediately activates the [Gaetia Key]. This is to meet the coming <Time of the Gospel>, and it means that all the components for resurrecting Deus are in place.

#### Ministry names

The names of the remaining 8 members of the Ministry. Their personalities and corresponding make up are unknown.

Enoch  
Irad  
Mefael  
Metshael  
Lamech  
Yabal  
Jubal  
Tubalcain

#### Anima Relic

Dan ..... fused with surface dweller.  
Joseph ..... fused with surface dweller.  
Gad ..... fused with surface dweller.  
Asher ..... fused with Hyuga.  
Zebulun ..... fused with Ramsus.  
Judah ..... 500 years ago, fused with Krelan.  
Dinah ..... 500 years ago, fused with Sophia.  
Reuben ..... 500 years ago, fused with Gazel Minister.  
Simeon ..... 500 years ago, fused with Gazel Minister.  
Levi ..... 500 years ago, fused with Gazel Minister.  
Isaachar ..... 500 years ago, fused with Gazel Minister.  
Naphtali ..... 500 years ago, fused with Grahf.





# Kahran•Ramsus [0808191 Ramses]

Carlin Ramsus

## History

24 years ago	Due to Krelian, he is born as a copy of Emperor Cain [0808191 Ramses]. For about 10 years, he is in a research facility.
14 years ago	Karen causes him to be abandoned. He kills 2nd Class citizen Kahran Bekker in a trash area, and fuses with him. He takes on Bekker's ID. Enters the school at Jugend. Meets Miang (0996). Meets Hyuga and Sigurd.
13 years ago	Along with Jesiah, he seeks out people to recruit into the <Elements>.
12 years ago	Sigurd rebels.
6 years ago	The quelling of Elru. He is gravely wounded by Id. He becomes sponsor of the orphan Dominia. After returning to Solaris, he enters Dominia into the school at Jugend.
Present	As Gebler Commander, heads to Aveh.

As one of the Guardian Angels, he is the highest commanding officer in Gebler. While somewhat stoic in nature, he is the inferior of no one on Solaris, and has many abilities, and even with all these advantages he feels a sense of inferiority, although he does not allow any to look down on him. It is for this reason that at the beginning the Elements are put in charge of inferiors. As Commander, he has extraordinary ability, and as an individual possesses immense battle power. However, from his Jugend days, he distrusted others greatly, and due to the rebellion by Jessie and Sigurd, it grew more fierce than ever.

Ramsus is an artificial lifeform created and planned for the beginning of the 5th stage of the M Plan as homunculus (man made human construct). In truth he was created by Krelian to oppose Emperor Cain as a copy of the Emperor. This is designated by the code [0808191 Ramses]. He was thrown into the trash area when Karen awakened as Miang called for his abandonment just before he had reached the second growth stage, (before human form). By chance, a boy was lost there, Kahran Bekker whom Ramsus murdered and then fused with. After that, using Bekker's ID, he entered the school at Jugend. His outside appearance resembles both Emperor Cain and the boy Bekker.

## ● Birth—the one who kills Emperor Cain

As a human, Emperor Cain wields extraordinary power, even more than Krelian and the Ministry. It is for this reason that he cannot be resisted with ordinary means. Krelian creates one who has comparable power to Cain, [the corresponding existence], a copy of Cain [0808191 Ramses]. However, having been abandoned at the first stage of development, Ramsus is obsessed with his own creation as an artificial lifeform that had been supplanted by the Contact. For this reason he develops an intense envy and hatred of Fei who was the cause of his being abandoned, and both Krelian and Miang skillfully use this to manipulate him.

## ● Relationship with Miang

He met the girl who afterward became Miang about a month before Karen was killed. For that small time of just a month until she awakened, something happened between that unnamed girl and Ramsus. . . . Also after she awakened, she was his lover and that relationship has continued into the present day.

The fact that he is a copy has caused Ramsus much internal unrest, and due to the incitement by his lover Miang who he feels understands his heart, slowly his soul begins to break down. The repeated defeats by Fei send him to a low ebb, and desiring more power, he comes to the point of murdering Emperor Cain.

## ● The Demon of Elru

The deciding factor in Ramsus' envy and hatred of Fei was due to the terrifying experience he had at the quelling of Elru at the hands of Id. Sent to Elru to quell the first stirrings of rebellion, Ramsus was gravely wounded and defeated by the 12 year old Id (Fei) at that time. After that terror, nightmares tormented Ramsus.

In the story, he meets Id again at the attack on the Yggdrasil. Attacking him in a fit of pride, he is utterly defeated. From then on, he has only the desire to conquer Id (Fei) to give meaning to his existence.





## ● Elements

Originally the Elements were founded by Jesiah and Ramsus during the Jugend days as a group of the best fighters. At that time, the group was made up of 4 members, Ramsus and Jesiah with the others being Hyuga and Sigurd. Ramsus rejected entry by social class, instead his ideal was to have only those who were strongest. The Elements were formed to realize this ideal, with Jesiah, Hyuga and Sigurd sharing the same will. However, due to Sigurd's rebellion and Jesiah's escape, the original goal of the Elements was lost. The Elements were not for the search for Guardian Angels or Gebler commanders, but for his close associates to be only the highest caliber of talent, and the Elements became a training ground for the ultra elite. The 4 members of the present day Elements were chosen by Ramsus. Also, when Elly was at Jugend she was also a candidate for entry into the Elements, being friends with both Dominia and Kelvena.



### Dominia

A user of earth magic. The sole survivor of destroyed Elru. While the possessor of enormous ability, she doesn't use it and has towards Elly hostility, envy, bullying and the like. Her emotions are complicated. She feeling of yearning is most strong for Ramsus.



### Kelvena

A water magic user. Ordinarily has a calm exterior and acts in the role of advisor. When using her strongest Ether, she closes her eyes. She was a classmate of Elly's at Jugend.



### Tolone

A wind magic user. With 90% of her entire body being cyborg, many weapons are loaded in each part. The reason for this and the purpose are unknown.



### Seraphita

A fire magic user. As a demi human, she was rescued by Ramsus from a waste area right before being taken into a Soylent facility. Among the 4 members, she was accepted the most swiftly and because of that is the leader.

## Solaris Group

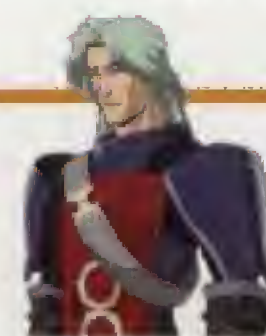
### Gebler Special Corps

A team formed for the purpose of invading an enemy post and using destructive tactics to subdue it. Lead by team leader Renk, it is a group of 5 unusual characters. At the attack on Kislev, Elly who had been the leader attacked the ship that was to have bombed the nuclear plant. Afterwards, when human beings began to change because of the activation of the [Gaetia Key], they escaped from Gebler and went to Nisan. They sought the protection of Elly, their one time leader.



### Renk

Leader of the special Corps. Having pride as a military man, he fights to prove it. He pilots Wandknight.



### Stratski

Appears to be lighthearted without many worries, but is a dangerous fighter. His attack arm is first class. He pilots Swordknight.



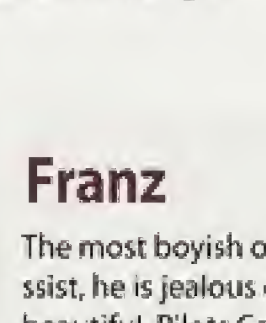
### Helmholtz

Cool, calm and collected, an expert judge of a situation, he is the adviser. Pilots Wandknight.



### Broyer

For all his large size he is not threatening, has a warm personality who is not very excitable. Pilots Shieldknight.



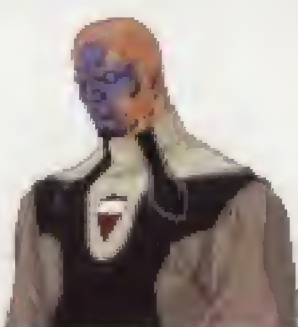
### Franz

The most boyish of the group. As a narcissist, he is jealous of anyone else who is beautiful. Pilots Capknight.

### Vanderkaum's squadron

When Vanderkaum was demoted from Commander of Aveh military base, he was re posted to the Kislev border where he leads a squadron. With the flagship Kefeinzel at the center, it has a complement of 4 cruisers and 6 attackers.

One part of the attack strategy on Aveh was the assault by Fei and the others on this ship. Because of Vanderkaums' reliance on cannons, he got to watch the ship get entirely destroyed.



### Vanderkaum

Originally commander at the Aveh base. When he was demoted, he was sent to command at the border. He loses many lives due to his over reliance on cannons.

### Vanderkaum's squadron

Kokusa ..... Navigator on Kefeinzel. When blasted by Vanderkaum, he leaves without listening.  
Hoche ..... Chief gunner on Kefeinzel.  
Von Hipper ..... Leader of second squadron.

### Others

#### ◆ Solarians

Samson ..... Boy who looks like Timothy. Dies trying to escape the 3rd class level with Fei.  
Kenren ..... Krelian's follower, one who fused with a Gear. Has the words of an idiot.  
DK 1200 ..... Krelian's follower, one who fused with a Gear. A little more sharp witted.

Kahran Bekker ..... A boy who lied in the 2nd Class level. Was killed when he was 15 years old by Ramsus, and his body taken.





# Citan•Uzuki [Hyuga Ricdeau]

Shitan Uzuki

## History

29 years ago	Is born in Solaris' 3rd Class citizen level as the 9th child [Hyuga] of father Shouki Ricdeau and mother Luli.
23 years ago (6 years old)	Learns martial arts from his master, grandfather Kikka. Learns the 2 sword techniques [white rostrum] and [black rostrum].
17 years ago (12 years old)	From germ experiments in the Soylent facility an epidemic invades the 3rd Class level. His entire family dies from this. Even though Hyuga is young, he shows genius ability and is suspected of toxic experiments.
14 years ago (15 years old)	Enters Jugend with Ramsus' sponsorship. Becomes a classmate of Sigurd. After that, he and Sigurd become candidates for the Elements.
9 years ago (20 years old)	Becomes a [Guardian Angel]
7 years ago (22 years old)	Directs the strategy for the 3rd invasion of Shevat. Has a showdown with Gaspar, meets his granddaughter Yui. Falls deeply in love with her.
5 years ago (24 years old)	Hyuga visits Yui often, receives teaching from Gaspar, his sword is sealed. His first daughter is born in Shevat.
3 years ago (26 years old)	Bound by the Emperor's secret orders, he goes to the surface. Takes the name [Citan Uzuki]. Afterwards, he reunites with his family, relocating with them to Lahan Village.
Present (29 years old)	Lives as the Doctor in the Mountain Pass.

He lives in the Mountain Pass outside Lahan Village with his family. Having a warm character, is his strength certain? He is able to handle many kinds of machines and is called [Doctor Citan] by the villagers, he is warmly loved. 3 years ago, he appeared and was seen after the time when Fei was brought into Chief Lee's house, and he healed Fei. Because of this, Fei also cares for Citan, and comes to visit his family for meals and such and to play with his daughter Midori. After the time of the attack on Lahan Village, Citan separates from his family and travels with Fei.

In reality he is one of Solaris' Guardian Angels sent down to the surface on a secret mission from Emperor Cain to observe the Contact Fei. His real name is Hyuga Ricdeau. Having genius ability since he was a child, being born in the 3rd Class citizen level, he was sponsored by Ramsus for entry into the school at Jugend. He becomes a member of the Elements. After graduating from Jugend, he becomes a Guardian Angel. He first met his present wife Yui Gaspar when he directed the 3rd invasion of Shevat.

After going to the surface on his secret mission from the Emperor, he fulfills his role as protector by monitoring Fei.

## ● Secret orders—Citan as watchman

The primary goal of superintending the Contact Fei according to the Emperor's secret orders is to determine if his <power> is suitable as that of Anonneibe. In addition, after the <Time of the Gospel> in which people can live without a manager and continue to grow thereafter, can people live in happiness? After the revival of god, can they live according to their own will? This is what he is investigating. From time to time, Citan appears before the Emperor to report. At these times, every so often he would meet his fellow classmate Ramsus from the Jugend days, also a Guardian Angel.

## Hyuga of the Solaris time

### ● Epidemic when he lost his family

When Hyuga was 13 years old, an epidemic swept through the 3rd Class citizen level. He lost his parents and 8 brothers (it's unlikely that all were his blood brothers) to it, and his grandfather who had trained him in sword arts, his entire family perished. At this time, his genius intelligence caused the people in the 3rd Class level to wonder if he might not have caused the epidemic with toxic experiments; doubt spread widely and he was driven out. This continued until he entered the school at Jugend.

### ● Ramsus' sponsorship

Because of the unreasonable widespread suspicion concerning the outbreak of the epidemic in the 3rd Class level, the one known as Hyuga caught the attention of Ramsus due to his rapid advancement at that time and was picked for entry into the Elements. Ramsus got Hyuga into the school at Jugend, entering him into the Elements. At that time Hyuga formed deep friendships with fellow classmate Sigurd and Senior, Jesiah.

### ● Friendship with Jesiah, Sigurd

When Hyuga entered the Elements, Jesiah was already married to Racquel and had Billy. Sigurd was staying at his home at that time, and Hyuga also visited Jesiah's home often. During the story when he speaks of the memory of [the three of us belly dancing when drunk] and such other stories come from the many visits with Jesiah at that time.



## ● Plans for many weapons

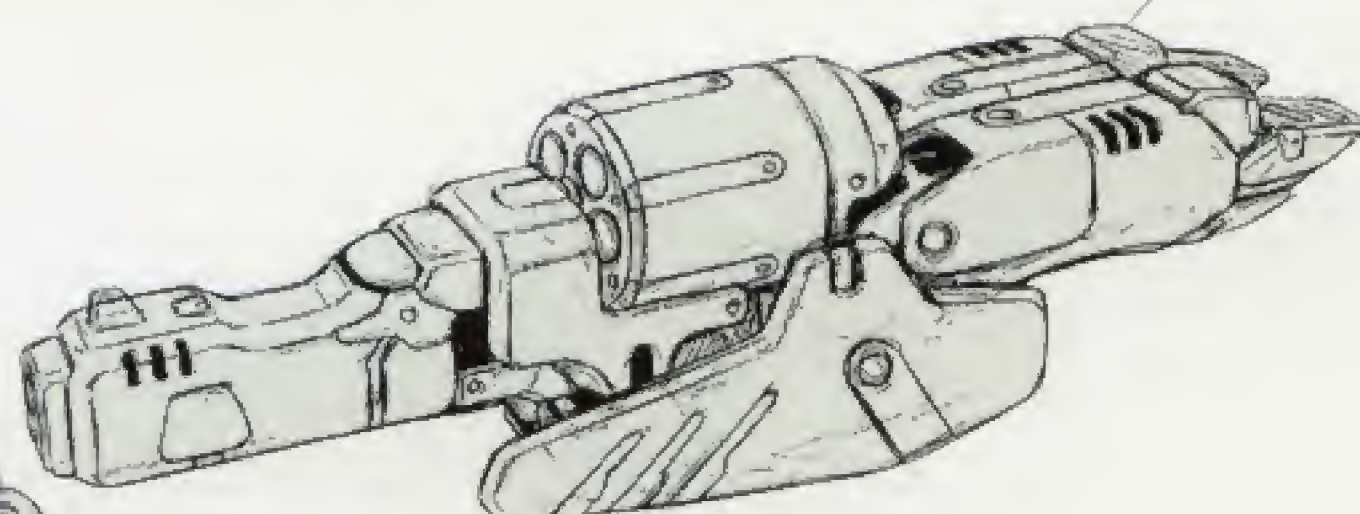
Hyuga, having been chosen as a Guardian Angel and with the sword arts he had learned as a child, has Master class ability in weapons invention, and this makes him very valuable as a designer. Particularly his incredible ability as a weapons inventor, and it is unknown how many he designed before coming down to the surface. Just for starters are Ramsus Wyvern, Vierge's Aerod System, Achtzehn's moveable frame, the Buntline, Alkanshel, and the machines (4 Gears) for the Elements exclusive use, just to name a few.



Aerod System



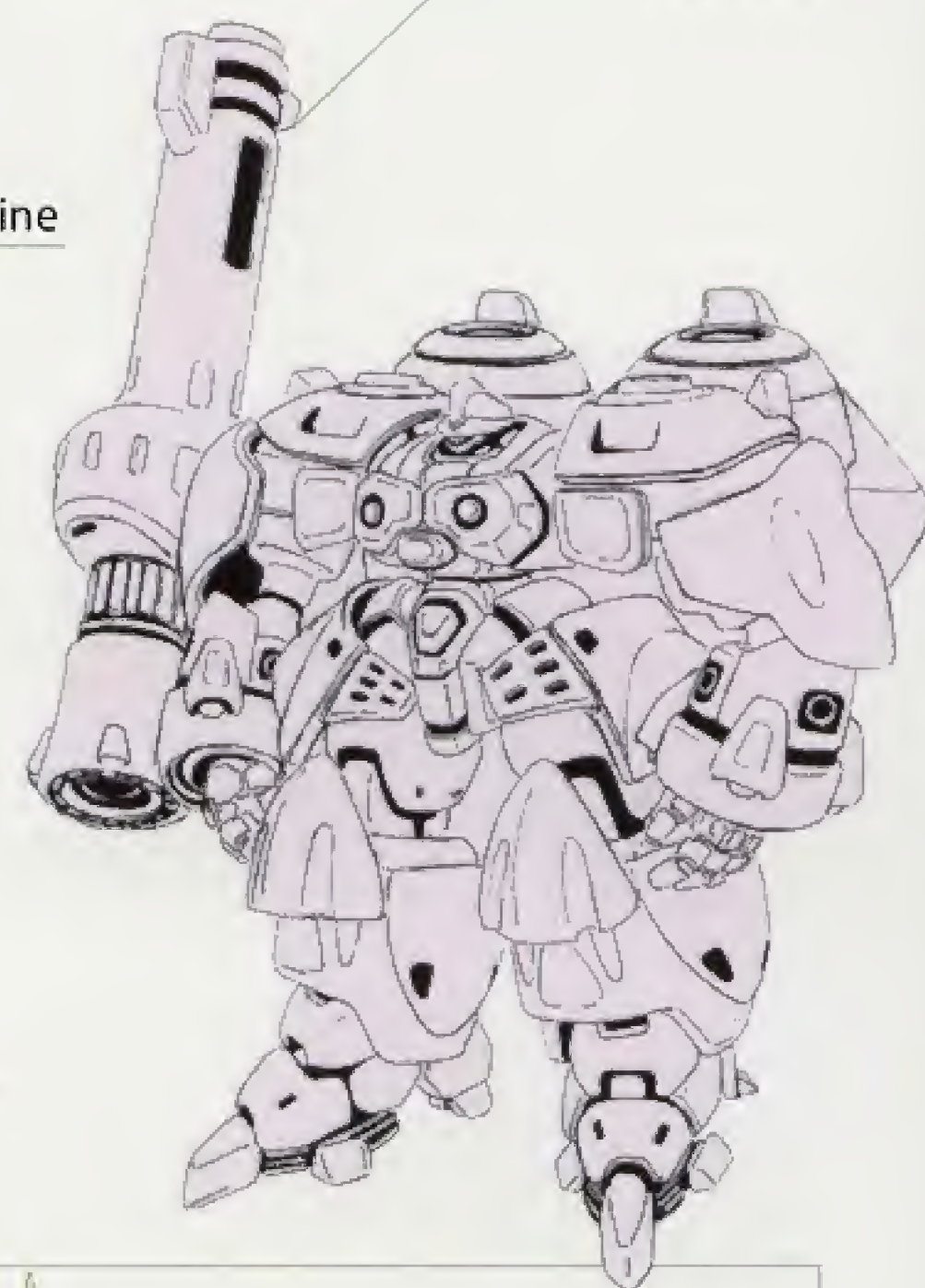
Elements' Gears



Buntline



Alkanshel



Achtzehn

Wyvern





## ● Strategy for the 3rd invasion of Shevat

The episode of Hyuga's time in Solaris is the story of his high value as a weapons designer and the strategy of the 3rd invasion of Shevat. Since the Solaris war of 500 years ago, Solaris had attempted to invade Shevat 2 previous times that came to nothing, and made the 3rd attempt about 300 years after the 2nd. Hyuga as a Guardian Angel at just 21 years of age directed the development for the strategy of the invasion for 2 years.

Hyuga had a showdown with one of the 3 Sages of Shevat, weapons master Gaspar. During the exchange of sword thrusts, it became apparent that neither would be the winner. At that time, Hyuga met Gaspar's granddaughter Yui and fell deeply in love with her.

Due to the desperate maneuverings of the 3 Sages of Shevat and the military, the two forces clashed together and Hyuga immediately accepted defeat. The entire military pulled out quickly. And with Shevat having escaped defeat, the enemy forces' power was entirely destroyed. His decision to order retreat may not just have been a tactic on his part, but his feelings for Yui as an individual might have had just a little influence.

## ● Sealing of his sword technique

Hyuga had received training from his grandfather Kikka in sword technique from the time he was 7 years old, learning the 2 true swords [white rostrum] and [black rostrum]. Not only was Hyuga an intellectual, but he had extraordinary fighting ability, especially sword arts, and was matched by none in Solaris.

From the time when Hyuga first saw Yui during his showdown with Gaspar in the 3rd invasion of Shevat, he made use of the escape route to return to Shevat every so often in secret. While trysting with Yui, he also had many opportunities to debate with her grandfather Gaspar. It was during these talks that Hyuga became conscious of his own motives in battle and that his sword craft should not be used for killing and he determined to seal away his sword ability. He entrusted the [white rostrum] and [black rostrum] to Yui and began training in spritual and physical control with Gaspar to learn martial arts.

After this, he received secret orders from the Emperor and moved with his family to the surface, and while he fought many battles with Fei as his guardian, he never unleashed his sword ability until the time that Fei and the other headed towards Solaris, against the possibility that Id who was lurking in Fei might emerge and it was this that dissolved his will to keep his sword sealed.

## Family — relationship with his daughter

2 years after the invasion of Shevat, Yui and Hyuga had Midori.

When Emperor Cain had heard of the incredible power shown by Id at the quelling of Elru the previous year, he called in Hyuga at this point, planning to search for the possibility that the Contact was Anonnelbe. After Hyuga notified Yui that he was nearby on the surface, over time he was held back from visiting Shevat. 2 years later, Hyuga took the name Citan Uzuki and took Yui and Midori down to Lahan village.

Yui knows Citan's origin, as well as the reason for living in Lahan village. For this reason she visits with Fei normally. Her daughter Midori was non verbal from the start, and in particular has hardly spoken with her father. Having the ability to understand animals' thoughts, in the story she is able to understand such things as the will of Nicola inside Seibzehn. Able to see that her father is guardian over Fei and sensing his ties to the Emperor and the Gazel Ministry are probably the reasons why she can't open her heart to him.



Yui Uzuki

Yui Uzuki

Gaspar's granddaughter. Met Hyuga (Citan) during the 3rd invasion of Shevat, becomes his wife. Is calm and kind, but her martial arts skills are her grandfather's pride.

After the destruction of Lahan village, she returns home to Shevat with her daughter Midori. She waits for Citan's return.



Midori Uzuki

Midori Uzuki

Citan's daughter. 5 years old. From the first she hardly speaks, especially to her father. She loves animals, and often feeds the birds with Fei. She can understand the thoughts of animals and people and this is her special skill.





## ● Life in Lahan Village

With the goal of watching over Fei, Citan meets Fei in Lahan Village who had lost consciousness due to heavy injuries. Visiting the village as a doctor, he treated Fei's injuries. When he had revived Fei with medical knowledge and technology from Solaris, he returned to the Mountain Pass to await Fei's recovery.

Having deep knowledge of medical skills as well as a wife of warm character, he became trusted by the villagers, and was often sought for his counsel. Also, with his knowledge of machines, he can repair and make function such things as cameras, dig claws and even bathtubs. He is in charge of the village's machines repairs and maintenance.

Because Fei's personality is locked away with the sealing of Id, even after his recovery he feels uneasy around others, and Citan takes him in hand, gradually enabling him to return to a calmer state. Because of this, Fei cares about Citan, and comes to visit his family often, eating meals with everyone and playing with Midori.



## Lahan Villagers

### Chief Lee

Chief of Lahan village. Takes in Fei who was brought in by Wiseman 3 years ago. Seems he was a real player in his youth. He dies in the attack on Lahan village.



### Alice

The idolized girl in the village. Is expected to marry Timothy really soon. Both parents dies when she was young, and is raised by her aunt and uncle. She's in Fei's thoughts a great deal.



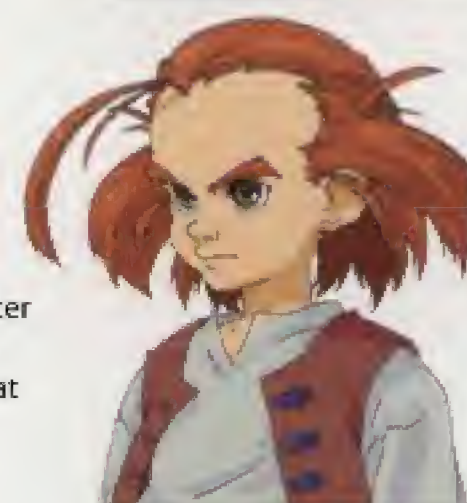
### Timothy

Alice's fiance. Fei's best friend. Is killed by a Kislev Gear when searching for Dan during the attack on Lahan village.



### Dan

Alice's younger brother. Loves Fei and after the village's destruction, follows Fei with single minded hatred. Reunites with Fei at the Aveh Tournament.



### Others

Alice's Uncle ..... Raises the children of his dead brother. Feels complicated emotions at Alice's coming wedding.  
 Alice's Auntie ..... The aunt who cares for Alice and Dan.  
 Timothy's Dad ..... Is happy about his son's marriage.  
 Miss Maid ..... The cleaning lady at the Chief's house. Takes care of things around Fei.

Master ..... Owner of the bar in Lahan village. The teacher of humanity, he is the terror of women.  
 Ellen ..... Server in the bar. Makes lewd suggestions to Fei when he visits.  
 Lucca ..... Explains the Memory Cube.





# Bartholomew • Fatima

Barthlomei Fatima

## History

18 years ago	Is born as heir to Aveh King, Edbart IV and Queen Mariel.
12 years ago (6 years old)	Minister Shakan causes a coup d'etat to break out. Is shut away with his younger cousin Marguerite, and severely tortured. Is rescued by Sigurd, Maison and the others and escapes Aveh. At that time, the vessel Yggdrasil is taken.
10 years ago (8 years old)	At the hidden royal base, boards the redesigned submarine Yggdrasil. Becomes a pirate in the hopes of increasing its battle strength. To cure his phobia, he is trained in the use of a whip.
4 years ago (14 years old)	His own Gear, [Brigandier] is completed. Pilots it for the first time.
2 years ago (16 years old)	His left eye is damaged from a slave generator accident. Wears an eye patch.
Present (18 years old)	As Captain of the Yggdrasil, carries out acts as a pirate.

Usually called Bart. Even though he is the leader of the desert pirates that appear every so often, he is in fact the legitimate successor to the rulership of Aveh as a lineal descendant of the Fatima dynasty. 12 years ago, the Fatima royal family was destroyed in the coup d'etat instigated by Minister Shakan. At that time Bart, who was 6 years old, was shut away with his cousin on his mother's side, Marguerite (successor to the Nisan Mother, 4 years old), and they were rescued by remaining members of the dynasty. Afterwards, he became Captain of the desert submarine Yggdrasil which has been stolen at the time of his escape, and he starts his life as a pirate.

Those who speak well of him say even though he has a fiery temper, he is honest, and those who speak ill of him say he's irresponsible and stubborn. He hates dissembling, and never walks past a person in need, he is a very warm hearted youth. Even though he vexes his elders with his tendency to use the Bart missile hastily against other vessels, he is regarded fondly among the crew and ministers as "young master". His immediate goal is to take back his home Aveh, and to rescue Nisan, and after this, cooperate with Fei and the others by flying in to fight Solaris.

## ● Imprisonment after the coup d'etat, torture

The secret backers of the coup d'etat were Gebler, in order to take the Omnigear that slumbered as a relic somewhere in the country of Aveh, and for this they needed the secret treasure of the royal family, the [Fatima Jasper]. However, the interrogation of the royal family resulted in failure due to suicides and sickness. Only Prince Bart and the Nisan Orthodox Mother Marguerite were left.

Because the people around Aveh had strong reverence for Nisan, they had to handle Marguerite more carefully and were prohibited from the beginning to be relatively light on her, while Bart was handled like a criminal. While Bart was severely tortured (whip lashing), he shielded Marguerite with his own body while the fierce whipping continued. Even today, the countless scars from this beating are clearly visible on Bart's back.

## ● Damage to his left eye

The reason Bart wears an eye patch on his left eye happened 2 years ago, when it was damaged in a slave generator accident on board the Yggdrasil. When the slave generator became temporarily unresponsive from damage during a battle, it went out of control and fire broke out, and in an attempt to stop the burning slave generator many people from the nearby area entered the engine room.

The damaged left eye is still weak today, but will revive gradually with a full recovery of eyesight in time. For now, it has a problem distinguishing distances, but Bart has no peer in his skill with his specialty, the whip, so it appears he doesn't notice it. It seems he likes his eye patch as a "pirate fashion".

## ● Whip training

When he was little and locked away, Bart received a severe beating by a whip, so not only his body but his heart was damaged, and after his rescue he had many nightmares. Both Sigurd and Maison took note of this and decided to turn it around as a form of healing by training Bart in handling the whip.

Because it is his hereditary weapon, Sigurd took on the role of instructor, and after many days of heavy training, Bart quickly gained strength. He became able by degrees to set aside his terror in handling the whip, and slowly was able to conquer the nightmares as well. After that, he continued to use it as his specialty.

Even today there remains on the wall of the Yggdrasil's Gear Hangar signs of his former days of fierce training.





## Desert pirates — Yggdrasil's crew

After his rescue out of Aveh, Bart comes to the Royal family's base (present day Hideout) to heal his wounds of both heart and body. During that time in preparation for the revolt that will put Bart as rightful King back on the throne, the family retainers Sigurd, Maison and the others carry out renovations on the stolen Yggdrasil, giving it a complete overhaul and strengthening its weapons.

Bart travels on board the Yggdrasil two years after his escape from Aveh. Like Kislev and Aveh, their purpose is the excavation of Gears and other weapons from ruins so as to maintain battle strength, with the goal of not being overpowered by others. In order to have power comparable to the Kislev and Aveh vessels that attack them, Bart makes plans for the strengthening of the Yggdrasil's attack power, and they begin life as pirates (taking excavated relics). The pirate ship Yggdrasil makes use of its peerless navigation and rapidly becomes known to both countries.

The unerring ability of the Yggdrasil to find its target is reputed to be due to the genius ability of Bart.

### ● Yggdrasil

Originally the Yggdrasil was a vessel loaded onto the Eldridge. The Yggdrasil as the flagship of the desert pirates was excavated in the era at the end of the Fatima Dynasty, during Raganbart I (Bart's grandfather) and was the 1st ship to be renovated. At that time, a 2nd ship in the same class was built, but both were sealed away in the hopes of solving the conflict with Kislev and taking a step towards peace. After that, in the midst of the chaos from the coup d'etat, both ships went missing. The 1st was the one stolen by Maison and the others at the time of Bart's rescue.

### ● First Battle ~ Brigandier

When Bart was 14 years old, his exclusive use Gear Brigandier which had been excavated and refurbished was completed. Bart was decorated at his first battle. He was fearless in his first Gear battle, and wielded such power as to astound the Gear Corp leader, Miloch.

When his left eye was damaged in the slave generator accident, he added a head patch as an eye patch-like accessory to Brigandier. He also has as decoration the feather of a large bird on its head section, and in this fashion it's 'dressed up' pirate style.

### Yggdrasil crew members

## Baron Lawrence Maison



Lawrence Mason

Once long ago he was a member of the Knights Protectors, a noble who served Edbart IV (Bart's father). After rescuing Bart and Margie from imprisonment, he served as mechanical director on board the Yggdrasil. Usually a very gentle man, apparently he was quite a strong individual during his young years.

Ralton ..... Gunner.  
Marseilles ..... Communications.  
Jericho ..... Navigator.  
Bingo ..... Navigator in training.  
Banana ..... Chief navigator. Operates ship's map.

Miloch ..... Gear Corps Chief. A brave military man. His 16 year old daughter Jean is also in the Gear Corps.

Folke ..... Gear Corps member.  
Farrant ..... Gear Corps member.  
Binde ..... Gear Corps member.

### ● Story of Bart's rescue

When Sigurd found out that both Bart and Margie had been locked away, he returned from Solaris. He coordinated with Maison and the others in the escape from Fatima Castle. With a single will, the two invaded Fatima Castle. During the heated battle, they rescued Bart and Margie. At that time, when Sigurd realized the extent of Bart's torture, he was enraged and would have killed Shakan out of hand, had Maison's fierce scolding not brought him back to his senses.



### Franz

A dolphin like demi-human, works at Yggdrasil's sonar station. Is able to tell between subtle sounds, and can hear many things even in a deep dove. He records and collects various sounds.

Pops ..... Chief of Gear equipment.  
Mister ..... Chief Engineer.  
Granny ..... Prepares food. Wife of Chief Engineer. Takes care of children.  
Nurse ..... Nurse. Loves surgery, is bad at giving shots.

Martle ..... Chief Engineer's beloved dog.  
Francois ..... The dog in the Hideout. Was once an Aveh soldier's loved pet.





# Sigurd • Harcourt

Sigurd Harcourt

## History

29 years ago	Is born in Noln in the east of Aveh at the castle Uruzabulun, as child to Aveh King Edbart IV and Shalimar Harcourt. Is taken on as his uncle Mimil's adopted son.
20 years ago (9 years old)	His cousin Jordegarde is born. Raised in the family as his adopted sister.
18 years ago (11 years old)	Death of his mother Shalimar. Meets his true father for the first time at her funeral. Enters Aveh Castle to serve as the personal Knight of the Crown Prince.
16 years ago (13 years old)	When visiting Noln, is kidnapped by Solaris as a human sample.
14 years ago (15 years old)	Nearly dies because of the cruel experiments. Is sponsored by Ramsus for entry into Jugend. To cure him of drug dependence, he stays at Jesiah's home for a while.
12 years ago (17 years old)	Escapes Solaris. Rescues Bart and Margie.
2 years ago (27 years old)	Right eye is wounded in slave generator accident. At Bart's urging, he wears a similar eye patch.
Present (29 years old)	Supports Bart as the Yggdrasil's First Mate.

As Bart's trusted retainer, he serves as the First Mate of the Yggdrasil. Usually he is a pretty calm person, but is capable along with Maison of scolding Bart on numerous occasions. Entering the Aveh Castle when he was 11 years old, he became the Crown Prince's (Bart's) personal Knight Protector. Having been temporarily kidnapped by Solaris and imprisoned as a test subject, Ramsus caused him to be selected for the Elements. After that, hearing of the coup d'etat in Aveh, he escaped from Solaris. He went to rescue Bart.

Unlike his rather strong appearance, his low blood sugar levels give him a sweet tooth and it's possible that a long term side effect of the drugs administered made him have no tolerance for alcohol.

## ● Birth — Mother from Noln family

Sigurd's home town was the pagan colony on the Aveh border, [Noln]. His mother Shalimar was the younger sister of the Chief. From long ago, Aveh and Noln had had friendly ties and from the time when he was a boy, King Edbart would spend time there in the summer palace, so that he and Shalimar were old friends. And so, Shalimar became pregnant with Sigurd. Because the incidences of ATL white blood cell sickness being high in her family (probably derived from cancer hidden in white blood cells transmitted in the mother's milk) at that time Shalimar also became ill. Knowing that she was terminal and thinking of Edbart IV's future, she broke off all contact. Edbart IV returned to Bledavik wounded in the heart, and many years later married Mariel, the woman who became Bart's mother. Shalimar died 11 years after giving birth to Sigurd.

At the funeral, Sigurd met Edbart IV for the first time, and he was aware that this was his own child. Ordinarily Sigurd would have been taken into the Knights Protectors at age 14 having been trained. Edbart IV handled Sigurd exactly the same as his legitimate son Bart, and respecting Shalimar's last wishes, did not publicize the fact of his true heritage. Also, because his position towards the throne was nonexistent, only feelings of love and loyalty were born in him towards his brother by a different mother, Bart.

The dark tone of Sigurd's skin is a characteristic of the family in Noln, and the silver hair and blue eyes are inherited from his father, Edbart IV.

## ● Solaris time— from test subject to entry into the Elements

2 years after entering Aveh Castle, he was kidnapped during a return visit to Noln by Solaris. Because his response levels towards Omnigears was high in the emulators, Sigurd was made into a test subject. For countless days, cruel experiments were conducted over and over, and due to the continual administration of drugs to increase spiritual control, after 3 years he was an nearly dead.

Ramsus looked out for those with the qualities to enter into the Elements, and he brought him back to the brink of life, enabling him to go from addiction to drugs to achieving actual spiritual control. At that time, by chance Sigurd read data on the fall of Aveh from the Jugend data files. Amid his feverish retrieval of this information, he passed the brink from a semi coma into full awareness as the feelings for his family freed him, and he achieved full independence from the drugs. After that, he escaped Solaris, racing towards Aveh to rescue Bart.

In Sigurd's body are 4 piercings (both nipples, navel, privates) that were left open. These are the scars from his time as a test subject, when because of repeated attempts to escape, he was tagged like livestock with embedded metal for tracking.

## ● Wounded right eye

Sigurd wears an eye patch, which resulted from the generator accident that injured Bart's left eye, and when he sped into the Engine room to help Bart, his right eye was injured in the same way. However, it was not really wounded in the accident, but he offered his right cornea at the time of Bart's injury. Because of this, there is hope that Bart's eye will have full recovery.

In order for Bart not to know the truth about Sigurd's right eye, he had a white glass eye inserted.





# Marguerite • Fatima

Margrete Fatima

## History

16 years ago	Is born as daughter in Nisan to Great Mother Elvira Fatima and Marquis Francis Ravane.
12 years ago (4 years old)	Her family is killed in the coup d'etat. She is sealed away and after interrogation, is rescued by Sigurd, Maison and the others, and escapes from Aveh.
10 years ago (6 years old)	Passenger on the Yggdrasil
6 years ago (10 years old)	Returns to Nisan. Her survival is announced, and she becomes the Great Mother of Nisan.
Present (16 years old)	Enters Bledavik alone based on false information.

The present day Great Mother who governs the Cathedral and the church. Because she was raised by all, she has only thoughts of how she can serve, and has a very mother like aspect that she is unaware is very like the stories told about the first Great Mother, Sophia.

A girl uninterested in adorning herself and very stubborn, she even maintains her self control and a calm exterior when captured by enemies. Also she would have no problem sacrificing her life itself in order to protect Bart.

## ● Margie locked away

The reason Margie refers to herself in the masculine sense, is a result of the wounds to her heart during the time she was imprisoned. Feeling a heavy sense of responsibility for Bart having shielded her from torture, she locked away out of sight any of her personal characteristics (babyishness, femininity) showing none of those 'shameful' things. However even against her own will without her realizing it, she is slowly transforming into the next stage from little girl to a woman.

## ● Meeting with Chu chu

Mislead by false information, she sneaked alone into Bledavik and there amidst the teeming crowd of things in the shopping area, she saw Chu chu. She wanted it right then and there and she went about getting it single mindedly. However, she was discovered by a subordinate of Shakan's, and the misfortune of Chu chu's weight slowed her down so she couldn't escape.

A girl of the aboriginal species of this world, the Ooki tribe. Whoever gives her food gains her love. Also her extraordinary ability to fall in love makes the ideal man weak in the knees.

For Chu chu, the liveliest in her tribe, she remembers a time of unrest, when her more bestial nature emerged, and it was then she determined to leave the tribe. Wanting romance with her ideal man, she headed to the humans' towns. Because she had heard of cruel experiments conducted on a family member of her tribe in Solaris, she chooses to operate at night when it's the least dangerous. When she came into the Aveh area in Bledavik, she saw the decorations for the festival of Aveh's founding, and snuck in disguised as a stuffed animal.



# Chu chu

Chuchu



## ● Chu chu's family

The Ooki tribe being aboriginal lifeforms, they have possessed high intelligence since the Zeboim era. The surviving animals escaped after the total nuclear war from laboratories and genetic research facilities across the ruined surface. The founding mother of demi-humans was born. The sudden mutation of many aboriginals advanced the Ooki tribe as well. At that time, they had gigantic bodies, but Limiters placed by Solaris keeps them at a determined small size.



## Fatima Dynasty – Nisan Orthodox

7 years after the attack on the Monastery, along with the return of Sophia to the Nisan Church was Bishop Penuel's niece, Jacqueline. She had felt warmly towards Sophia since their Monastery days, and after the attack Sophia had disappeared along with Krelian. After she returned to Nisan, as hereditary member of the diocese and leader of the convent, Jacqueline sponsored Sophia for Mother. After that she continued to support Sophia as candidate for Mother.

During the Great War, she formed a bond with the leader of the desert caravan Rene Fatima. Losing Rene in <The Day of Collapse>, she spent the rest of her days gathering survivors into Nisan and rebuilding. She gave birth to Rene's keepsake, Isolde, and raised her as the future Mother. And as the 2nd Great Mother, Isolde worked tirelessly with her mother to rebuild the Nisan Orthodox.



**Roni  
Fatima**

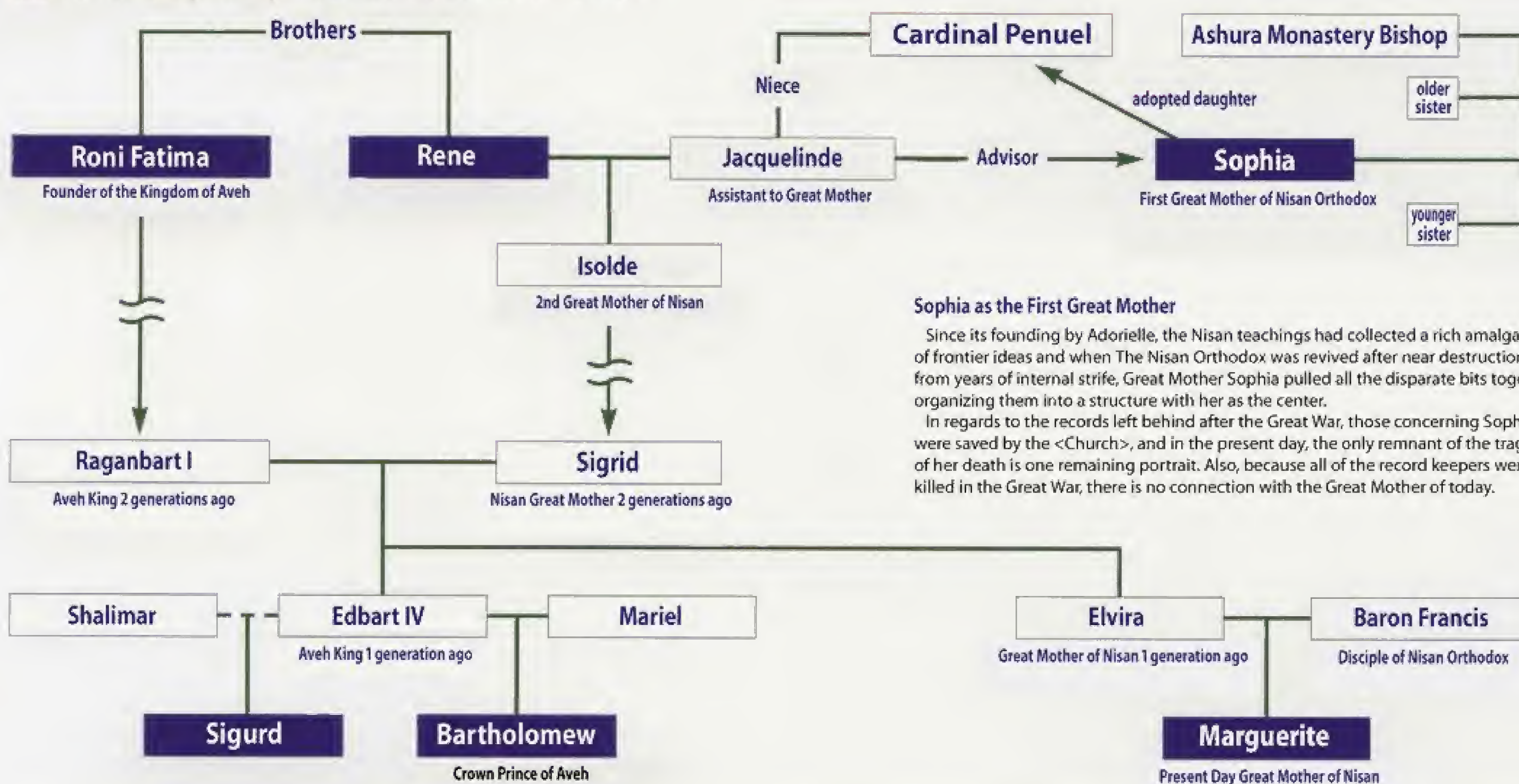
The founder of Aveh. He was the leader of a large scale caravan at the time of the Solaris War. He piloted the Omnigear, beating back the Diabolos Corps lead by Grahf. Afterwards, desiring the power to oppose Solaris, he founded Aveh.



**Rene  
Fatima**

Roni's younger brother. Both brothers were leaders of the caravan during the Great War and cooperated with Nisan. He formed ties to Mother Assistant Jacqueline, and died shielding his older brother having fought to the very end during the final battle of the <Day of Collapse>. His daughter Isolde became the 2nd Nisan Mother.

■ Fatima Dynasty · Nisan Orthodox Chart



**Fatima Jasper**

Roni went all over the world looking for survivors to gather together in the building of Aveh, and there buried in the earth, discovered the "Jasper Fortress". After investigation, he knew about the security system that used retinal patterns, and recorded his own. He stored the Omnigear here and sealed it. After this, he founded Aveh and strengthened its ties with Nisan, burying the "Jasper Fortress" in the vicinity of the Great Cathedral, and left it as the Royal Mausoleum for Nisan to supervise.

When the memories of people with Limiters placed in them by Solaris disappeared, the records pertaining to the Royal Family were also lost, and only the name of Roni as founder of Aveh and the legend of his building it were handed down. In the Fatima Dynasty was the key to unlocking the "Jasper Fortress", the inherited retinal patterns of the topaz blue pupils called [the Fatima Jasper] and the use of it was transmitted down through

each generation. However, the information concerning the sealed Omnigear was lost, and the truth of the [treasure] hidden in the Mausoleum was not even known among those in the royal family.

At the time of the revolution caused by Gebler (Shakan), the family was interrogated about their knowledge of the [Jasper] and the [secret treasure]. With Gebler intending to use truth serum to get the information by force, before that both King Edbart IV and Great Mother Elvira took their own lives. Baron Francis died from severe torture. Queen Mariel died of the shock when she learned that all her family were dead. Bart and Margie were able to resist afterwards using a strong hypnotism technique handed down through the generations in the family, so that they would not remember for 13 years, and because the memories were locked away for a set time, could submit to the truth serum. They were locked away until the memory block should wear off.





## People of Aveh • Nisan



### Shakan

Sharkhan

Once a Minister serving the previous King, Edbart IV, he caused a coup d'etat, and took over the government, killing the royal family.

Originally a Bishop of the Ignas sector branch of the [Church], he used that position selfishly to advance himself in the Aveh government, and became a Minister. With Gebler as Shakan's backer, Edbart had always distrusted both Gebler and the [Church] and was non cooperative. Gebler planned for the removal of Edbart IV and the coup d'etat was carried out by the [Church].

Shakan desiring authority acquired great military power by means of cooperating with Gebler. The long stalemate with Kislev reignited into warfare. Also, with Gebler making top secret plans to obtain the [Fatima Jasper], as soon as the mind block neared its time to end, lured the Great Mother Marguerite and once again imprisoned her.

#### Others

##### • Aveh (royal family)

Raganbart	Aveh King 2 generations ago. Bart, Margie and Sigurd's grandfather.
Edbart IV	Previous Aveh King. Bart and Sigurd's father.
Mariel	Queen of the previous King. Bart's Mother.

##### • Aveh (Tournament)

Gonzales	The 1st opponent at the Aveh Great Tournament. Shoots flesh bullets.
Scudd	The 2nd opponent at the Aveh Great Tournament. Specialty in poisons.

##### • Aveh (The others)

Armor shop kid	Liked to hide. Until he got lost in the waterways a long time ago.
boy attack squad	Kids that walk around singing.
water Chief	Old guy watching the gate. Has the key.
Granny	An old lady that has been doing wash at the well for 60 years.
Gramps	Old man that manages the water gate under the palace.

##### • Nisan

Sigrid	Great Mother 2 generations ago and Aveh Queen. Bart's Grandmother.
Elvira	Previous Great Mother. Margie's mother.
Baron Francis	Disciple 1 generation ago. Margie's father.
Agnes	Woman who holds the Sisters together. Helped to raise Margie.

##### • Noln

Shalimar	Sigurd's mother.
Mimil	Shalimar's brother. Took in Sigurd and raised him. Called Sigurd [Gurd].
Guzrun	Mimil's wife. She called Sigurd [Sig].
Jordegarde	Mimil's daughter. Raised along with Sigurd as his younger sister. (by 9 years) Called Sigurd [Brother Gur (Guru-Niisan)].

※ Sigurd was right away referred to by the folk of Nol as [Young Master].



### Big Joe

Big joe

Original name was [The Stone Joker]. He was a hero to the people during the Zeboim era. He is a man of many talents, winner of prizes, king of fighting techniques, as well as quite a caresser...his is a full life with many abilities. Is almost as popular as the idol rock band [Ravine], his name is highly revered. Also he is very rich, has influence everywhere in the world, but he doesn't use his wealth for charity, he spends it on remodeling his mansion, (interior amusement park, fast food shops, etc.) and rare animals, a movie block, and a submarine equal to those in the military. Next year, (but before his 30th birthday) in order to resurrect himself and extend his life, preserved his body to make numerous clones, cryonic facilities, and invested in research into frozen hibernation. One day, he decided to enter the cold sleep facility. In the process of being put into the cold sleep reactor, a weird thing happened. The scientists made a mistake in freezing him too fast. Because their thawing techniques could not revive him successfully, he was left there for a future day which turned out to be almost eternity. The people were sad at losing their hero, and even in the midst of war, the funeral (?) was a great affair. After that, the Zeboim civilization died out, and Joe slumbered in an eternal frozen sleep. Now, the path of his refrigeration container changed locations many times, receiving damage along the way, and it is said to have begun to deteriorate at about this time.

4000 years later, while the [Church] was excavating ruins of the Zeboim civilization, there was Joe's cryonic reactor. However, not knowing what it was and judging it to be some kind of trash, it was thrown into the sea. The reactor floated on the waves, at last reaching the coast of the island in the Aquvy area where the Orphanage was. There he was discovered by the Davy boys (8 years old then) that lived there, and who by sheer happenstance, released the lock on the reactor when they began playing with it.

Joe emerged onto the beach in a frozen condition. During the sleep for Joe who had yearned for the day of his release, at last after an eternity, a miracle happened. What a surprise, that the sands' heat naturally awakened Joe from his 4000 year frozen suspension. At first it was all a great shock to the frozen sleeper from a bygone age, he scared the Davy boys and they scattered. However, what must Joe have thought, when before the Davy boys' eyes he dived into the ocean. And in this way, he swam the long distance to the far off Ignas continent.

Afterwards, Joe wandered around, and today in an attempt to recover his former glory, he started earning money, running a shop in the ruins of Zeboim. This business has no other meaning for him. Whether legal or not, he deals in all kinds of goods. Notwithstanding, this gains him a sort of fame as well.

Big Joe is currently 36 years old (+4000 years). Even though he is one of the Zeboim people who had a lifespan of around 30 years, what is the difference causing his longer lifespan? Kim's research was supposed to have ended in futility...or did it?





## Ricardo • Banderas

Richardo Banderas

### History

30 years ago	Is born in Kislev to father Sigmund (ruler of Kislev) and mother, Anna.
20 years ago (10 years old)	His mother Anna dies.
16 years ago (14 years old)	Forms a criminal gang for boys. Begins to plot against the government in the center of the capital, Nortune.
12 years ago (18 years old)	Assassination plot against the Ruler fails. Is imprisoned and monitored in D Block.
8 years ago (22 years old)	Becomes Battling King.
Present (30 years old)	Reigning Battling King in D Block.

### ● Birth as a demi-human and his mother Anna's death

Rico's father is Kaiser Sigmund. His mother Anna was the Empress. Her primary physician was sent specially from the [Church], who in reality was a minion of Krelian's, an experimenter in gene manipulation. When she was expecting Rico's birth, the 4th stage of the M Plan proceeded from a mutant distribution plan to expectation of the initiation of the 5th stage of the M Plan. The primary physician took advantage of this time to administer drugs to Anna in an experiment, and Rico was born as the result.

At that time, a faction of the [Church] secretly worked to overthrow the government, spreading the overall hatred of demi-humans on a wide scale. At the time of Rico's birth, Sigmund was out along the front lines on the opposite of Aveh, and during this time, the associates of the [Church] faction drove Anna and Rico out of the district. Sigmund was told his wife and child were dead, and he never knew that his own child was a demi-human.

They both went to live in a street far from the Capital, the plan to discriminate against demi-humans had spread everywhere, and they could not escape this. As Rico grew, he took this oppression personally. And Anna, unable to bear her heart's pain grew weaker than before Rico's birth and took to her sickbed, eventually dying. Rico developed an intense hatred for the country of Kislev that oppressed demi-humans and for the father who had driven him and his mother away.

The D Block of Kislev Capital Nortune (criminal oversight ward) is where the demi-humans are kept. Because of the criminals, [Battling] is the popular way of choosing the Champion, and their voices raised high are invincible. For the sake of keeping the peace, the D Block prisoners are entrusted with naming the [King].

When Rico was little, his mother died and he became solitary all his life. Also, as a demi-human he had been ridiculed and his hot temper flared, going all the way to the Kaiser, Sigmund in a plan to assassinate him.

### ● As Battling King

The [Battling] is perpetuated by the B (Battling) Committee, a very competitive sport with the hope of managing the masses by inspiring them. On the surface it is Gear versus Gear. When the winner is labeled "King", he gets a warm bed, high quality food, plenty of beautiful women and even though still a prisoner, has a life better than royalty. Also, those who win when the Kaiser is in attendance, may ask for his mercy and be set free from D Block. Even though Rico has won 3 years in a row, he has stayed in D Block by his own will.



## Hammer

Hamer

In the Capital of Kislev, D Block is where demi-humans are gathered. In the bar [Latina's Bar] he collects information and looks around for various kinds of materials as his livelihood. While he is somewhat hardhearted, he is fairly skilled at mechanics and gathering information. With a head halfway like a camel's he is quick to serve up Amazonesses to the Battling King Rico, and takes care of things that way. Hammer is a wily and crafty character, and in being wise in the ways of the world, he wields a <power> most high compared to other people. He does Rico's laundry, calls the guy pointed out to him by the B Committee "bro" and goes along with him.



● Relationship with the [Church]

From before, Kislev had been backed by the [Church], with the [Committee] overseeing various portions, and the center was favored at the cost of the satellite towns and village people who were usually cruelly oppressed. Sigmund who had become [Kaiser] revolted against the [Committee]. He mobilized the army and drove the [Committee] out, taking over all government.

Having overturned the [Committee], Sigmund was not able to drive all of them away. And these were the [Committee] for the sake of handling and managing Battling. Battling was needed by Kislev to lull the masses and manipulate them as well, and Sigmund permitted a small branch to remain, the B Committee, to oversee it.

Kislev desired to drive out the [Church] by their own power, but in the very inner circles, there are those sent in who are a secret faction of the [Church]. And so, they plan to resist Sigmund by being uncooperative.



The Kaiser of present day Kislev. His origins were as an officer in the Kislev military, but his fine tuned tactical abilities and good judgment in a situation led to him leading the army with miraculous rapid advancement. So, at the age of 30, he ascended all the way to Kaiser (highest rank in the army). Sigmund carried out a complete reorganization of the military's system. He went from the army to total mastery of the government, taking over the power from the ruling [Committee] in Kislev, and driving them out. Sigmund's birthplace was the later quelled Elru which had turned her loyalties against Solaris. For his rapid rise to rulership of Kislev derived from his unusual powers as an Elru born kind, and his wielding of immense Ether ability probably enabled him to do all this. His thoughts were [I want ALL the power], and this usage of power was the specialty of him who had the heightened sensibilities of the Elru. Using military instinct to directly shape the world, he saw Shakan's invasion of Nisan as a positive defense of his own borders.

Kislev people

- Battlers, Amazoness
  - Heinrich ..... Rico's henchman. Put the bomb in Weltall.
  - Leonardo ..... Rico's henchman. Put the bomb in Weltall.
  - Valgas ..... Rico's henchman.
  - Suzarn ..... Rico's henchman.
  - Latina ..... The pretty mama who runs the bar [Latina' Bar].
- B Committee
  - Rue Cohen ..... The woman who invited Fei to Battling.

- Others
  - Diana ..... D Block doctor.
  - Ticket girl ..... Battling ticket seller.
  - Rules girl ..... Girl who explains Battling rules.
  - Guild informer ..... Girl who explains system in eastern guild.
  - Guild operator ..... Girl who exchanges kills for money in eastern guild.
  - Old watchman..... Old man who watches for the train in D Block.
  - Tool guy ..... Runs the tool shop in A Block.
  - Weapons lady ..... Runs the weapons shop in A Block.
  - Grandpa ..... Lives in the sewers, a green demi-human.
  - Josephine ..... The cat in the [Wildcat] Bar.





# Billy•Lee•Black

Billy Lee Black

## History

16 years ago	Born in Solaris as eldest child to father, Jesiah Blanche and mother, Racquel.
13 years ago (3 years old)	Grows attached to Sigurd staying at his home to recuperate.
9 years ago (7 years old)	Escapes Solaris with both parents. Goes to the Aquvy area.
7 years ago (9 years old)	His younger sister Primera is born.
6 years ago (10 years old)	His father Jessie disappears.
4 years ago (12 years old)	His mother Racquel dies in an attack by Wels. Enters the [Church] Monastery on Bishop Stone's recommendation.
2 years ago (14 years old)	His father Jessie returns.
1 years ago (15 years old)	Takes a post as an official <Etone>. Opens the orphanage.
Present (16 years old)	Along with the duties as an Etone, he manages the Orphanage.

## ● Mother Racquel

Racquel was also once a candidate for entry into Jugend in Solaris, and in her teens gave birth to Billy. She also knew Jesiah's student wards, Hyuga and Sigurd. She specialized in recovery from Drive, and expected to succeed to a position in the Department in charge of the healing of those dependent on the Drive and those who had failed Gear fusion. When Sigurd lived in the Blanche household for a while, she tried her restorative techniques on him to heal him of dependence on the drug. As an artist of refined tastes, she also had interest in body painting and such.

Billy's middle name [Lee] was the result of her pet name for the girl she had thought to deliver, [Ashley]. And even though he was born a boy, from the time his girlish looks began to emerge, she called him by the girls' name, [Lee].

After Jesiah's disappearance, Bishop Stone paid money to the Wels who attacked her family. Racquel hid Billy and Primera behind the grandfather clock, and taking her gun, resisted the Wels, but she died unable to stop them. Billy felt that, [All I could do was stay hidden watching and do nothing.] and even now this fills him with great pain, and Prim was rendered mute with the shock of watching her mother die in the attack.

As a Grand Inquisitor (Etone) of the [Church], he is a son of god who destroys Wels. His father's pride is in Billy's skill with firearms, and typically he carries a set of two revolvers. Originally born in Solaris, his father was a candidate for the next Gebler High Commander. Upon descending to the surface, his father vanished and his mother died after an attack by Wels. At his benefactor, Bishop Stone's urging, he entrusted Primera to a [Church] facility, and proceeded to the Monastery to study to be an Etone. His life at that time was harsh, and in order to provide for his younger sister was about to offer himself for sale for 3000 G (this would be about 300,000 yen).

Because he has been mistaken for a young girl, he feels a complex about this and usually keeps his hair short.

## ● Job as Etone—The Orphanage

At the end of 3 years of training, he becomes an official Etone, and returning to his own home, opens the Orphanage, working to raise all the orphans from around the world who have been brought in to him.

The Orphanage is Billy's own occupation, so as not to have direct dealings with the [Church], and the entire operation is funded by Billy. Even though he is an official Etone, he doesn't make all that much, and is unable to hire anyone for help. When Jessie comes back, his appearance is entirely changed, and Billy doesn't believe this man is his father, but Primera pines for him, and since her life has been at last not very pleasant with her growing weary, Billy allows the contact with the man he feels has taken on his father's name and identity, viewing him with suspicion and dislike.



Primera

Plimela

Billy's younger sister (7 years old). She lost the ability to speak at her mother's death. However, her face is very expressive, and she gravitates towards [good people]. It is for her own sake that she watches over her brother Billy with all her heart, yet because she is a young child, the first word to return to her was [Papa]. She stubbornly rejects Bishop Stone, but her love for the returned Jesiah indicates her pure child's intuition.

Billy recalls the night in which his sister lost the ability to speak, when they both stood hidden behind the grandfather clock and to keep her from realizing it was Wels, telling Prim continually "Don't cry." without being aware of his own heart's growing sickness.





## Jessie B. Black [Jesiah Blanche]

Jesse B. Black

Says he's Billy's father, a man with horrible scars from fire on both cheeks. Has secreted about his body many guns (at least 10 or more!), and has god-like talent in shooting. From the time he returned to Billy a year ago, his tendencies to stretch the truth somewhat have caused Billy no end of trouble.

Billy's father's true name is Jesiah Blanche. Born in Solaris, he was the son of ordinary parents. When he entered the school at Jugend he achieved excellent results, and was honored as the next Gebler High Commander. However, being rebellious by nature, as he got closer to the truth at the center, he began to have doubts about Solaris. While enrolled in Jugend, he and fellow classmate Racquel had Billy, and were married. After that, in order to get closer to the truth about the M Plan, he investigated on his own, and upon seeing it's core, he took his family and escaped Solaris.



整形前のジェサイア

### History

34 years ago	Born in Solaris as child to father, Abram Blanche and mother, Mariah.
21 years ago (13 years old)	Entered the school at Jugend.
16 years ago (18 years old)	Entered into matrimony with fellow classmate, Racquel Bennetnashe. Billy was born right after.
9 years ago (25 years old)	Escaped from Solaris before taking the post of Gebler High Commander. Settled in as guardian on a remote island near the frontier of the Aquvy islands area.
7 years ago (27 years old)	Meets Gaspar. Joins the guerilla fighting Corps headed by Gaspar at the 3rd invasion of Shevat. Steals Buntline from Gebler Headquarters.
6 years ago (28 years old)	Leaves his family.
5 years ago (29 years old)	Meets Shevat Engineer, Joshua Black. After his death, has plastic surgery.
2 years ago (32 years old)	Returns to Billy's Orphanage.
Present (34 years old)	Wants to contact Shevat to collect information.

### Time in Solaris

At Jugend he shared the rebellion against the central portion's plan for government with classmate Ramsus, forms the Elements. Stands as director for Hyuga and Sigurd. He develops doubts about the discrimination among classes in Solaris up until now and rebels against it. One of the means of the rebellion was influenced by Racquel saying, [You should feel the truth of the world's discrimination]. Afterwards, when learning the truth about the M Plan, he escapes Solaris. He started his own investigation on the surface and that is the origin of all the information collected up to now. One part of it, was the knowledge of Maria and Siebzehn's escape from Solaris.

#### [Church] Orphanage

His real name is Stein. As a Bishop of the [Church], he seems to be a kind priest. As a classmate of Jesiah's at Jugend, he was enamored of Racquel, and enraged when she and Jessie got married, using the Wels to kill Racquel.



## Bishop Stone

Storn

#### • Church

Belrane ..... An Etone. In reality a member of an assassin squad from Solaris.  
High Bishop ..... The one who rules the [Church]. Shakan was also High Bishop.

#### • Orphanage

Davy ..... The boy who loves flying saucers.  
Bubby ..... The boy running around the shelves.

### Real reason for disappearance

The sudden disappearance of Jesiah for Billy and his family, was prearranged in secrecy between him and his wife Racquel. He went into the surface guerilla Corps lead by Gaspar during the 3rd invasion of Shevat. Driving back the Gebler with the Buntline he had stolen from the Gebler Headquarters on the surface, he lost contact with Shevat.

The next year, fearful that Solaris' counterattack would extend as far as his family, he made plans to disappear.

In order that his children could not be interrogated, he made his disappearance quite sudden. From then on, wishing to establish contact with Shevat, he roamed the earth.

### Plastic surgery ~ return

He met and cooperated with the Shevat engineer Joshua Black who had come to the surface. Joshua knew the true will of Jesiah, and he lead him towards Shevat. He was killed by pursuers from Solaris. At that time, Joshua requested he take his own fingerprints and appearance and have plastic surgery to use them. Jesiah received this favor, and had large scale plastic surgery.

3 years later, he returned to Billy. From his appearance to his wild personality, Billy distrusted his changed father, but from the very first, Prim knew it was her father and loved him.





# Maria•Balthasar

Maria Balthasar

## History

13 years ago	Is born in the Terrane area as daughter to father, Nikolai Balthasar and mother, Claudia. Half a year later, Nikolai is captured by Solaris.
12 years ago (1 years old)	She is captured along with her mother Claudia and taken to Solaris.
9 years ago (4 years old)	Her mother Claudia dies. Riding Seibzehn, she escapes Solaris. She is taken in by her great-grandfather Balthasar.
3 years ago (10 years old)	She goes with Balthasar to Shevat.
Present (13 years old)	Riding Seibzehn, she works to guard Shevat.

She is the daughter of Doctor Nikolai, who is a genius in Gear mechanics and the great-granddaughter of one of the 3 Sages of Shevat, Isaac Balthasar. She rides the ultra-advanced Gear left behind by her father Nikolai [Seibzehn], and protects Shevat as guardian.

Krelian kidnapped her father Nikolai half a year after Maria's birth to use his technology in the M Plan. After that, in order to force him to submit, his wife Claudia and daughter Maria were taken as hostages.

3 years later, her mother Claudia died. The cause was unknown, but likely an accident during an experiment. 4 years after that, Seibzehn was completed. When Nikolai spotted an opportunity, he sent Maria out on Seibzehn, entrusting her to her great-grandfather Balthasar in an escape from Solaris. When she reached the surface, she lived for 2 years with Balthasar. During this time, Balthasar healed the wounds to Maria's heart, teaching her as well how to operate Seibzehn.

After that, Balthasar took her to Shevat. Both pitying Maria's circumstances and being amazed by the nature of Seibzehn, Queen Zephyr spoke with Maria and appointed her as her trump card, Shevat's Guardian.

## ● Escape from Solaris

With Nikolai at the 1st stage of his invented plan to fuse humans with Gears as part of the M Plan, he needed to research the direct communication of the human brain with a Gear's nervous system, and at first resisted this adamantly. Wishing the business to be done, Solaris kidnapped his wife and daughter as hostages. The doctor started his research having been unable to stop it.

When the Doctor's wife understood the nature of his research, and that they were the cause of it, she despaired. When she knew that he was near the final stage of his research, she wondered if she might not take both the trial machine and Maria and escape and proposed this to him. However, to activate the trial machine for Maria, Maria's brain must be synchronized with the nervous system and brain wave pattern as operator. Claudia greatly desired that her own brain be used, and amidst great anguish, the Doctor resolved to do this. Claudia was secretly fused with the trial machine Seibzehn, and an accident was caused on purpose, creating the circumstances of her death.

After this, when Seibzehn was completed, the Doctor hid the M Plan inside it's base program with great skill, entrusting Seibzehn to take Maria and escape.

He secretly contacted his Grandfather Balthasar, entrusting him to be Maria's guardian after the escape. Maria headed down to the surface with Seibzehn, and was recovered there by Balthasar.

Because Claudia had wanted to protect Maria as her mother, she desired fusion with Seibzehn. Maria continues to think her mother died in an accident. However, from time to time, she can almost feel something inside Seibzehn different from her father, perhaps it is her mother's will.



## Nikolai•Balthasar

Nicora Balthasar

Maria's father. He is the authority on Gear engineering, as well neurological machine fusion, and he strongly desires to experiment making the human brain connect directly with Gears.

When his family is taken hostage, he makes without respite both the trial machine Seibzehn and its successor, Achtzehn. After Maria's escape, he fuses with Achtzehn's nervous system.



## Isaac•Balthasar

Balthasar

One of the 3 Sages of Shevat who has lived for 500 years. Being a genius in Gear mechanics, he built and repaired Gears for the surface Army during the Solaris War. Today he lives in a cave in the vicinity of Aveh, and while excavating rocks, lives a hermit's existence.

He built the automatic large scale Gear [Calamity].



The Queen of Shevat. Having lived since the Solaris War 500 years ago, this girl has lived until the present because of life extension treatments (actual age is 22 years). Her entire family was killed in the Great War 500 years ago, and since then because she never married nor had children, she has no relatives.

She is one of those few who know the truth about the world, and in the present directs Wiseman to seek out Fei's activity.



Queen Zephyr

## Queen Zephyr

### ● Zephyr 500 years ago

At that time, even though there was an Emperor in Shevat, the true rulers were its conclave of Elders. Zephyr was born as the third Queen of Shevat. During the Great War, Nisan's influence was expanded because of the influx of refugees, and the Elders sent Zephyr (at that time, 13 years old) to Nisan as Ambassador. Zephyr stayed only a short time in Nisan, but in her time together with Mother Sophia, dealt with her as a person of great influence on the surface of the world.

At the time of the Great War, Shevat was suddenly attacked by Solaris which had built Merkava. The entire Imperial family were killed. And after that, due to a secret plot devised by the Elders and The Gazel Ministry, Nisan's main fighting force was lured out and annihilated. And so Zephyr, accompanied by the survivors Lacan and Roni and the others returned to her country in all haste. The group of Elders were overthrown, and with Roni's and the 3 Sages nomination, she acceded to the throne as Queen.



## Gaspar

Gasparl

One of the 3 Sages, a Martial arts master. In the Great War 500 years ago, he led the soldiers and fought on the front lines. When he was 560, he had his eldest son (Yui's father). In the present, he is in hiding on the surface, and at the time of Solaris' 3rd invasion of Shevat, he lead a guerilla Corps on the surface. He crossed swords with the enemy Commander, Hyuga. After that, when Hyuga and Yui were married, he directed Hyuga in martial arts.



## Taura Melchior

Melkiorl

One of the 3 Sages, the scientist who resurrected nanotechnology. Discovering in the ruins of Zeboim a part of Kim's thesis, he revived that technology and added to it in independent research. While teaching his student Krelan, the leader of the Monastery Corps, he taught him this nanotechnology. Today, while living on the surface in hiding, he follows up on the secret hidden inside the bodies of human beings.

### ● Life extension treatments from Krelan

When Krelan went forward in giving life extension treatments to the Shevat Elders, Zephyr also wished for and was given the treatments. At the time of the Great War, she had stayed on the surface for a short time, and had no knowledge of the secret plans between the Elders and Solaris. However, as a member of the royal family of Shevat, she felt responsible for having been unable to stop the Elders' plot, and in order to atone for this sin, she meekly took her "punishment" from Krelan.

### ● The roles of the 3 Sages of Shevat and afterwards

From before the Solaris war, the Shevat ruler would send out 3 persons everywhere, and the origins of those 3 is unknown. It is thought that Balthasar came from the Terrane Area. From the first, they were aloof, not getting involved in any government, and usually kept an eye on Solaris' activities. The betrayal by the Elders during the Great War caused them to despair of Shevat, and when Shevat separated from the surface, the three of them pledged to go into a life of hiding.

### Shevat people



## Joshua Black

Shevat engineer. While living on the surface, he meets Jesiah who desires contact with Shevat, and throws his lot in with him. Before long they act in concert, and getting tangled up in Solaris' counterattack, Joshua dies. At this time, at his urging, Jesiah uses his appearance and fingerprints to make a false identity.





# Emeralda

Emerada

A remnant from the high point of civilization 4000 years ago. Built by the Doctor, Kim in the Capital Zeboim, she is the artificial lifeform created from nanotechnology. Her entire body is composed of nanomachines, and has been equipped with the mechanical equivalent of real brain cells for memory and thought. When awakened, she had the mental level of about 3 or 4 years old, and in terms of her own thoughts and emotions, she was very direct. Kim (Fei) responded to that love, turning it in some way from Elly and without realizing it, he excluded her. Also, her body is different to that of other little girls, and this gives her a slight complex.

Emeralda can change her body at will. Usually, she takes the form of a girl, perhaps in response to Kim and Elly's wish for descendants . . . and as for her own will (expecting the form of a child), it is very important to Emeraldalda.

## Life sample

At that time, humans had a very short lifespan, average around 30 years, and there were many genetic anomalies. Kim analyzed both his and his beloved Elly's genetic patterns, determining that it had to be restructured at the atomic level. He used nanomachines to reconstruct the patterns in experiments. At the outer growth stage, Emeraldalda's hair color resulted in her name, [Emeralda]. After that, having begun finally to form her nervous system and brain cells, this resulted in a memory being formed in the heart of Emeraldalda.

Miang manipulating the government, had a plan to reset civilization, and due to Kim's published thesis, took note of the possibility that humans' genetics could be reformed using nanotechnology. Lying about her origins to Kim, she contacted him, but he had already seen through to her true purpose and transferred Emeraldalda to a research facility belonging to the anti government organization. At the time of the attack by the military commanded by Miang, Emeraldalda's nanomachines' movement had been temporarily stopped and dissolved. She was frozen with a rebuilding program.



## Nanomachine colony

Krelian studied nanotechnology on his own, making use of it so that possibly it could make Deus subordinate, and desiring to expand it. Due to the investigation of the thesis by Kim that his teacher Melchior had handed off to him, he determined in the ruins of Zeboim the location of the nanomachine colony formed by Kim, desiring to get it and its power.

Before getting Emeraldalda, Krelian had also created his own nanomachines, and because they were many times larger than Emeraldalda's, had reached their limit, their possibilities were exhausted.

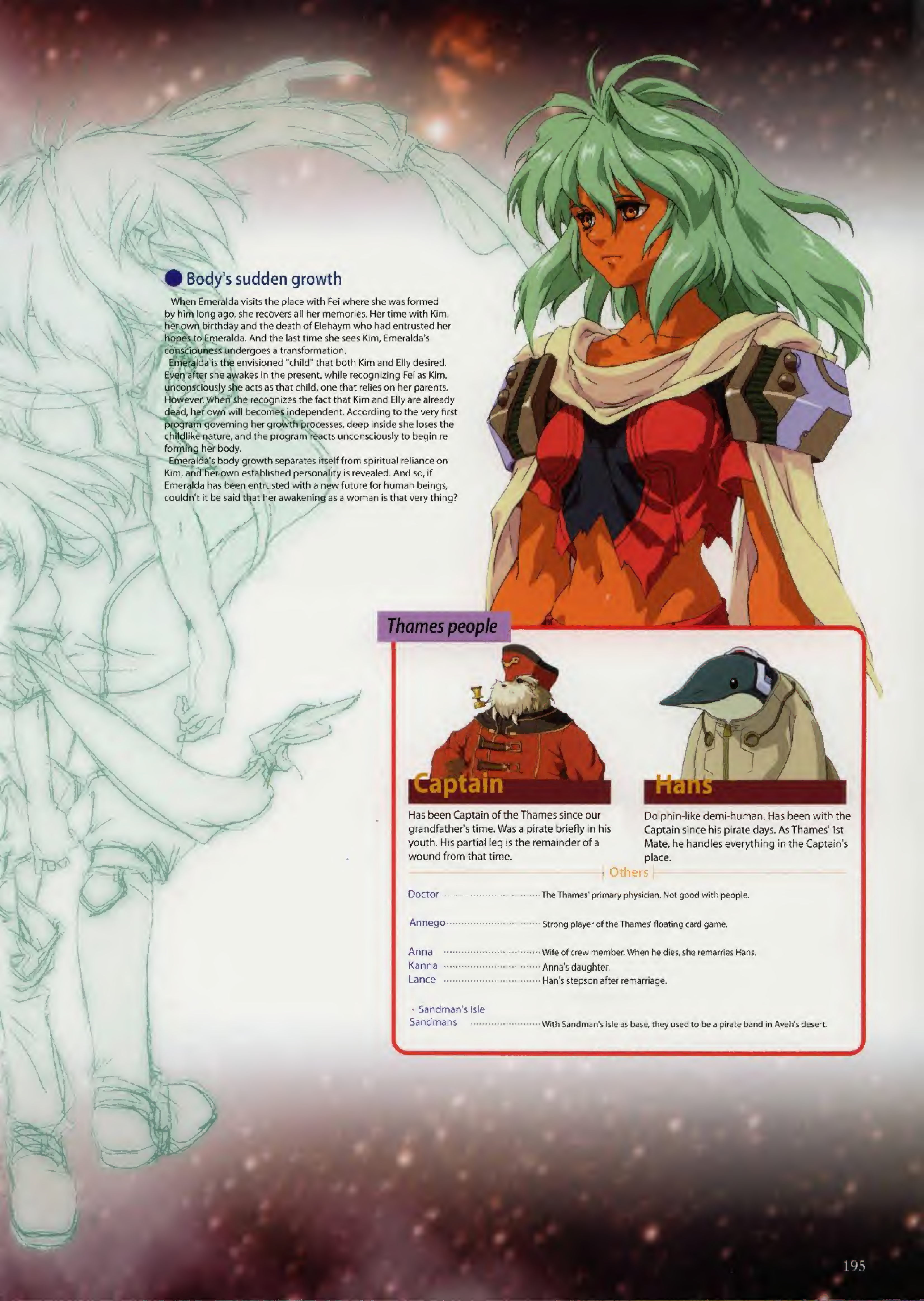
## Awakening in Solaris

Krelian awakened Emeraldalda who had been brought to Solaris by Stone. Krelian analyzed the nanomachines making up Emeraldalda, with the goal of expanding his own nanotechnology. Also, in order to determine the extent of the nanomachine colony's power, its individual spiritual manipulative power, and Ether response, as well as the strength of its response when piloting a Gear, he carried out numerous experiments. At this time, Emeraldalda had changed her body into a weapon for battle, and he directly placed in her the instructions for using Ether ability in an attack, training her in this, and after freeing her from the spiritual manipulations, she was able to use all this unconsciously.

## Emeralda's memory

Having been formed with both brain cells and a nervous system, when Emeraldalda felt light against her eyes in the reactor, she began to remember words she had heard. However, after Kim had frozen her in the facility, she had slept for a long span of 4000 years, and during that time, the information in her memories slowly fragmented, becoming rather vague. Right after she awakened, she thought the memories were "dreams", and having been inert for a blank 4000 years, she recognizes Fei as Kim, because he looks exactly like him. At that time, she had also met Kim's lover Elly, but in the present day, when she meets Elly she doesn't remember her, but that could be because compared to her memories of Kim, there's just not that much information.





## ● Body's sudden growth

When Emerald visits the place with Fei where she was formed by him long ago, she recovers all her memories. Her time with Kim, her own birthday and the death of Elehaym who had entrusted her hopes to Emerald. And the last time she sees Kim, Emerald's consciousness undergoes a transformation.

Emeralda is the envisioned "child" that both Kim and Elly desired. Even after she awakes in the present, while recognizing Fei as Kim, unconsciously she acts as that child, one that relies on her parents. However, when she recognizes the fact that Kim and Elly are already dead, her own will becomes independent. According to the very first program governing her growth processes, deep inside she loses the childlike nature, and the program reacts unconsciously to begin re-forming her body.

Emeralda's body growth separates itself from spiritual reliance on Kim, and her own established personality is revealed. And so, if Emerald has been entrusted with a new future for human beings, couldn't it be said that her awakening as a woman is that very thing?

## Thames people



### Captain

Has been Captain of the Thames since our grandfather's time. Was a pirate briefly in his youth. His partial leg is the remainder of a wound from that time.



### Hans

Dolphin-like demi-human. Has been with the Captain since his pirate days. As Thames' 1st Mate, he handles everything in the Captain's place.

### Others

Doctor ..... The Thames' primary physician. Not good with people.

Annego ..... Strong player of the Thames' floating card game.

Anna ..... Wife of crew member. When he dies, she remarries Hans.

Kanna ..... Anna's daughter.

Lance ..... Han's stepson after remarriage.

• Sandman's Isle

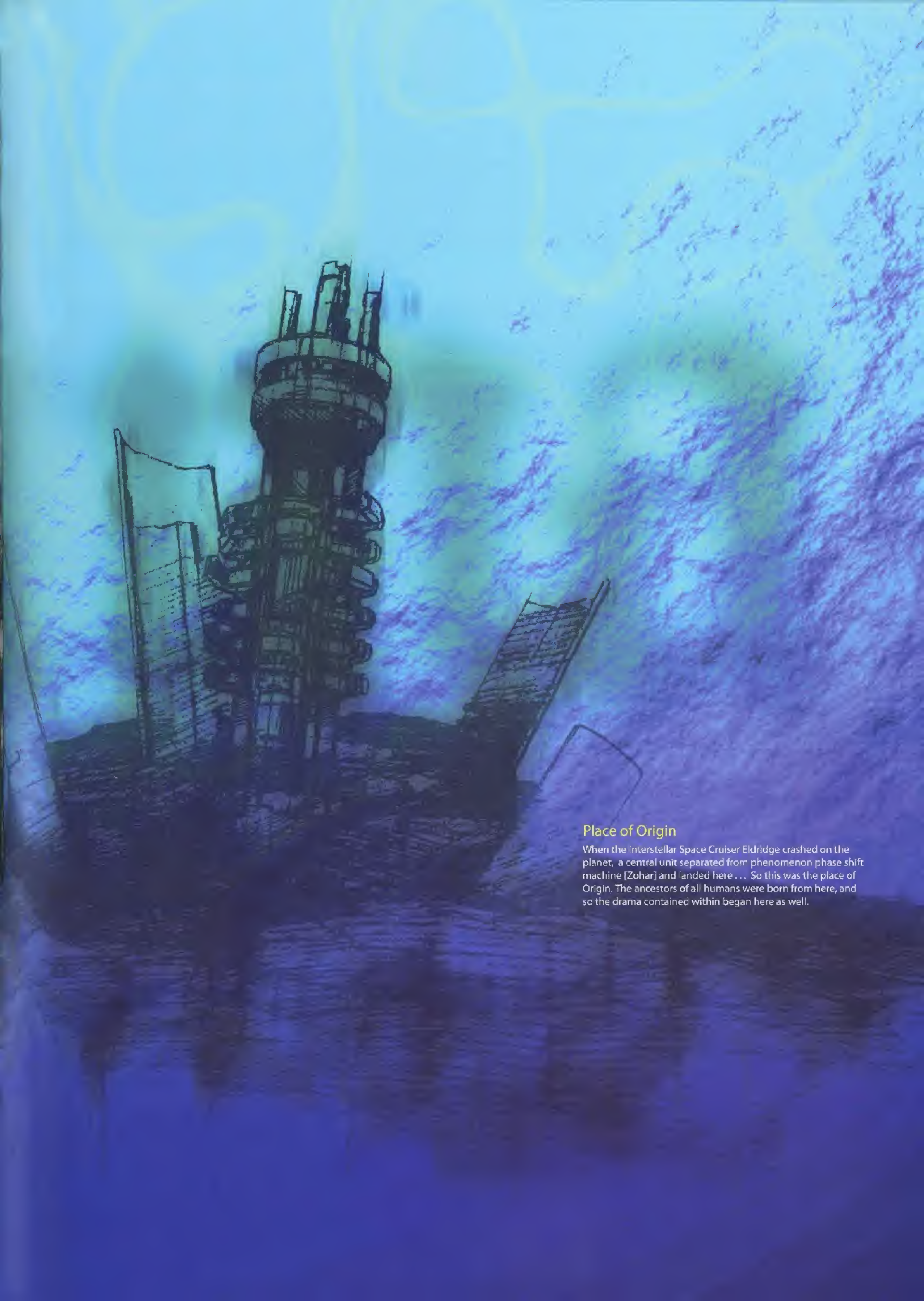
Sandmans ..... With Sandman's Isle as base, they used to be a pirate band in Aveh's desert.



## **Constructing the [Xenogears] story, Study of many dramas**

Those people directly affected by fate, receiving it, having it overturned. Meeting, parting, love, hate . . . A reference of a line by line survey of the drama taking place and weaving the characters together in a story, will touch on the emotions. From Lahan Village to the Last Battle, an introduction of a timeline of the many dramas, and a study of them.





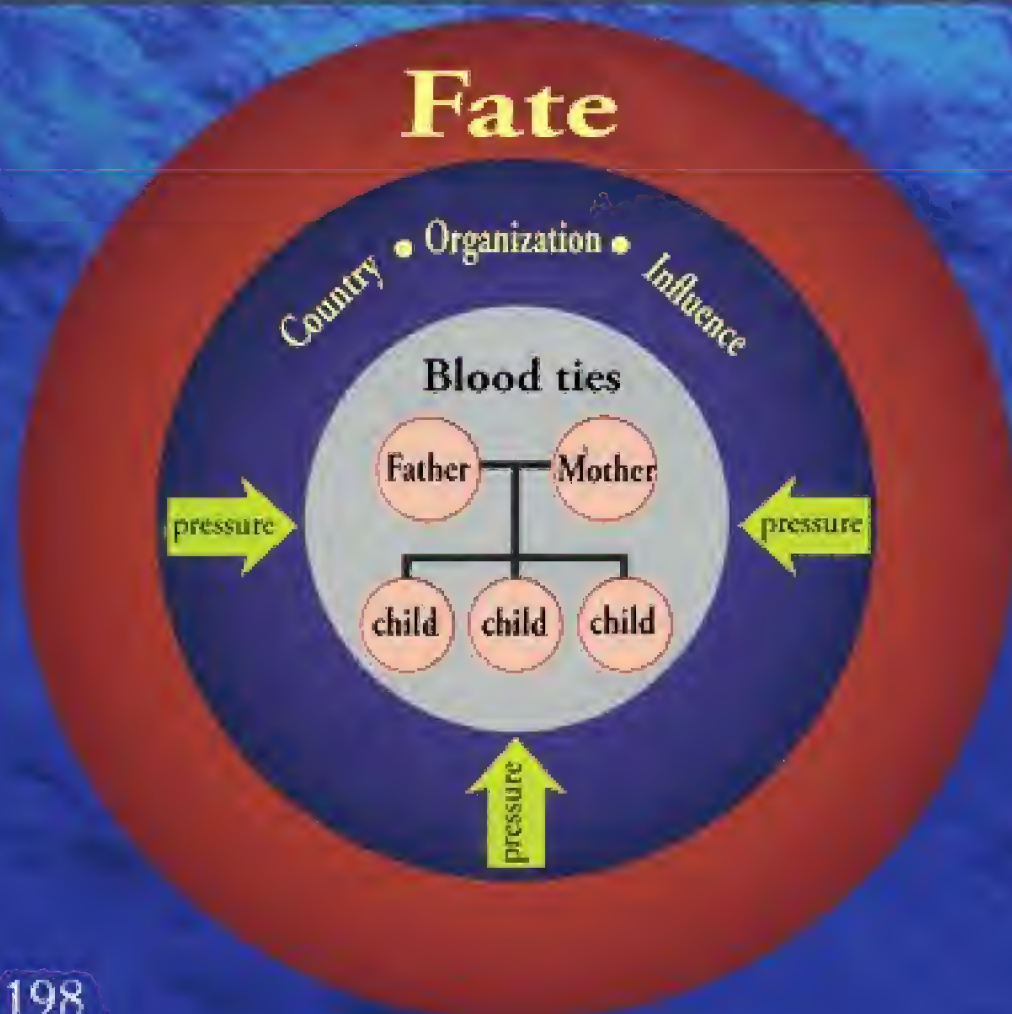
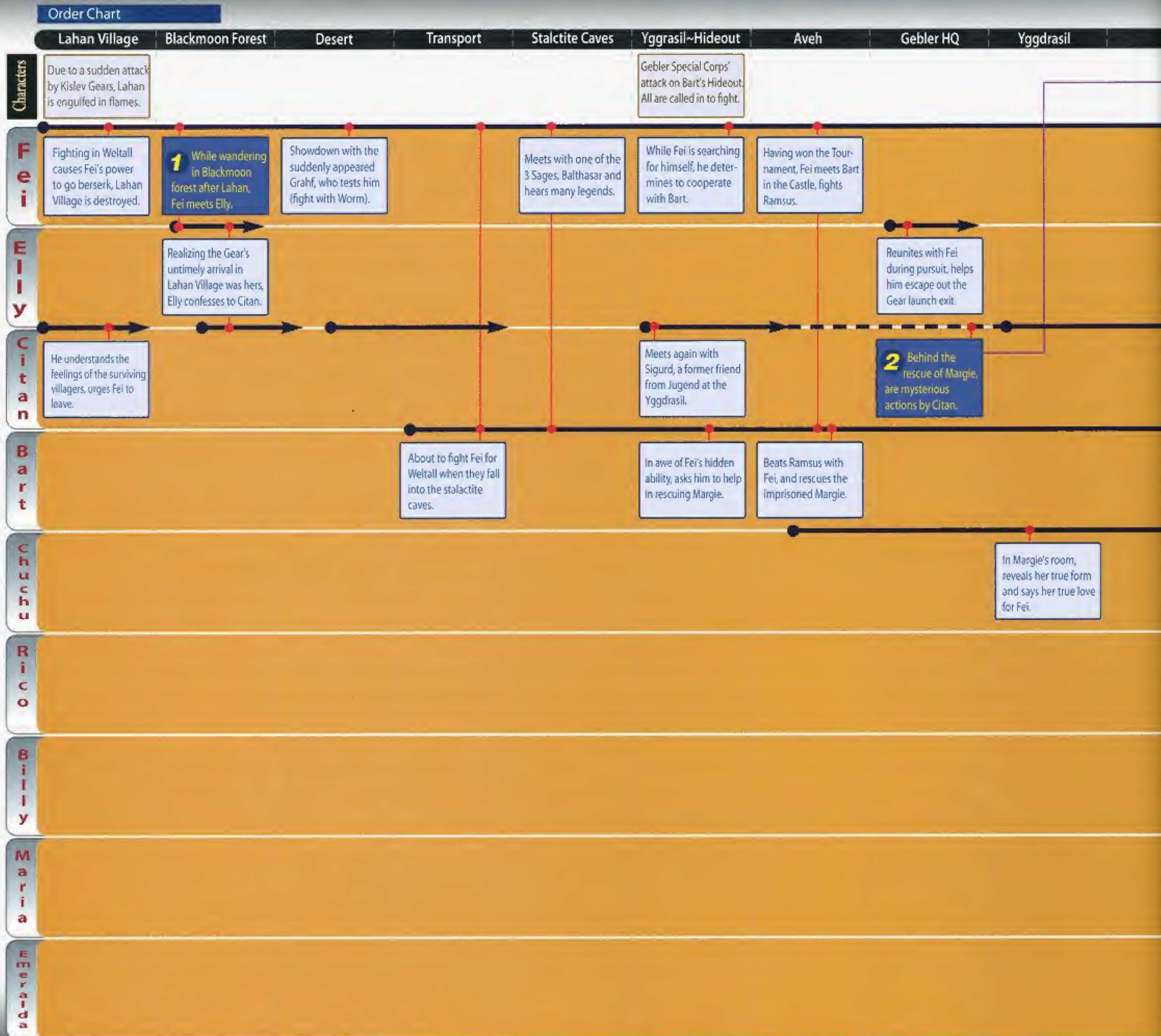
### Place of Origin

When the Interstellar Space Cruiser Eldridge crashed on the planet, a central unit separated from phenomenon phase shift machine [Zohar] and landed here . . . So this was the place of Origin. The ancestors of all humans were born from here, and so the drama contained within began here as well.



# Fate's Diagram

The diagram shows the scenes in which Fei first met the other characters, and follows their place along the timeline. In particular are references in the corners in which pick up points on scenes are introduced and explained. For the background on their fates, starting at the outset of their footsteps, and the complex relationships among the people, it is hoped that more will be gleaned from this than a mere line by line accounting.



## The sanctity of the "blood" spoken of in Xenogears

The story of Xenogears is drawn on a fairly large scale, and in this sense is like a merry go round in which several paths lead to the same place, and for this reason gives the impression of complexity. However, when taking a look at the individual actions by the people in the story one by one, the common theme running through all of it and at its base is the concept of "blood". The blood between parent and child, the blood between brothers, even that of fellow disciples . . . Fate itself acts on a plane beyond size and as above a table the nations and their structures circle. The pressures from these result in a solidifying those strong ties of blood that hold together individuals, and allows them to bear up sturdily in the era in which they live. This is "the true power of holding ties of blood" and this theme has many cases for study.



## 1 The promised fated meeting

While Fei is lost in Blackmoon Forest, he turns to find the barrel of Elly's gun . . . And so, they meet for the first time. But, these two reincarnated over and over were promised to meet again. When Elly is attacked by a monster, unconsciously Fei calls out, "Elly" and it must have been a memory from a past meeting that floated to the surface.

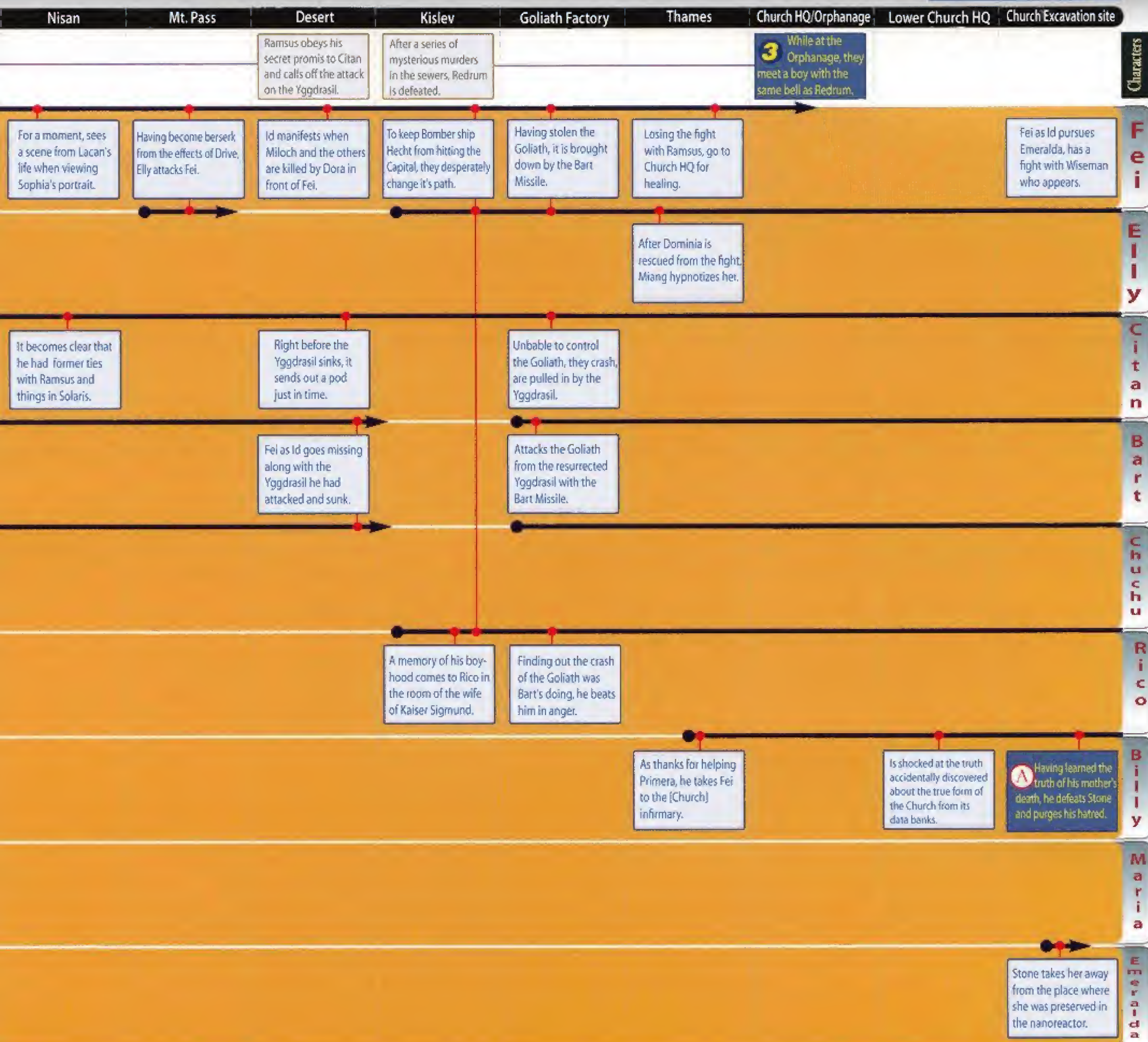
## 2 Citan's mysterious action

After Margie's rescue, Citan sends Ramsus a secret message. Afterwards, when Ramsus says, "A promise to an old friend=must take it easy," that was its content. This is a scene that gives a glimpse into Citan's mystery side. The old friend from the days in Solaris was not Sigurd, and that can be seen from the flashback scene in which Ramsus calls out to Sigurd, "You traitor!!!"

## 3 The bell's sound is father's signpost

The monster Redrum in the sewers was an enemy defeated by the sound of a bell. Later they meet a boy at the Orphanage who speaks of his father and a bell, Redrum was his father . . . they were shocked he had been human. The sound of the bell serves as a guidepost sent by his father, and he makes the determination to become strong.

序盤～中盤



### Those who were torn apart by the [Church].

[Billy / Jessie / Primera]

When Billy's house was attacked by Wels, Racquel sacrificed her own life to protect Billy and Primera. The shock caused Primera to become mute, and Billy accepted Stone's nomination and entered the [Church]. However, when the truth about the Church and Stone's actions leading to his mother's death became known, he was aghast. Stone's envy of Jessie became hatred, and extended even to using the [Church] to reach Billy. This hatred became a barrier that Billy and the others had to fight to overcome, and they broke it down with Jessie's sacrifice in the Buntline in an attack. Primera's speech returned to her, and the death of Stone in battle allowed for a second chance for parent and child.

### Study Jessie's brand of fatherhood

When Jessie learned about the "M Plan" he took his family and escaped Solaris. In order to leave without a trace, he vanished to contact Shevat, and received through plastic surgery the face and fingerprints of Joshua Black whom he's met on the surface. After that, unable to defend Racquel and having lost track of Billy and Primera, it could be said that he was a failure as a husband and father. However, having stretched out his body to bring down Stone, showing Billy the path he must follow, he took on a role of a parent different from that of Racquel. More than a revered father and husband, he is one who looks within for the strength to stand on his own power, and that is his bravery.



## 4 Chu chu's maiden heart

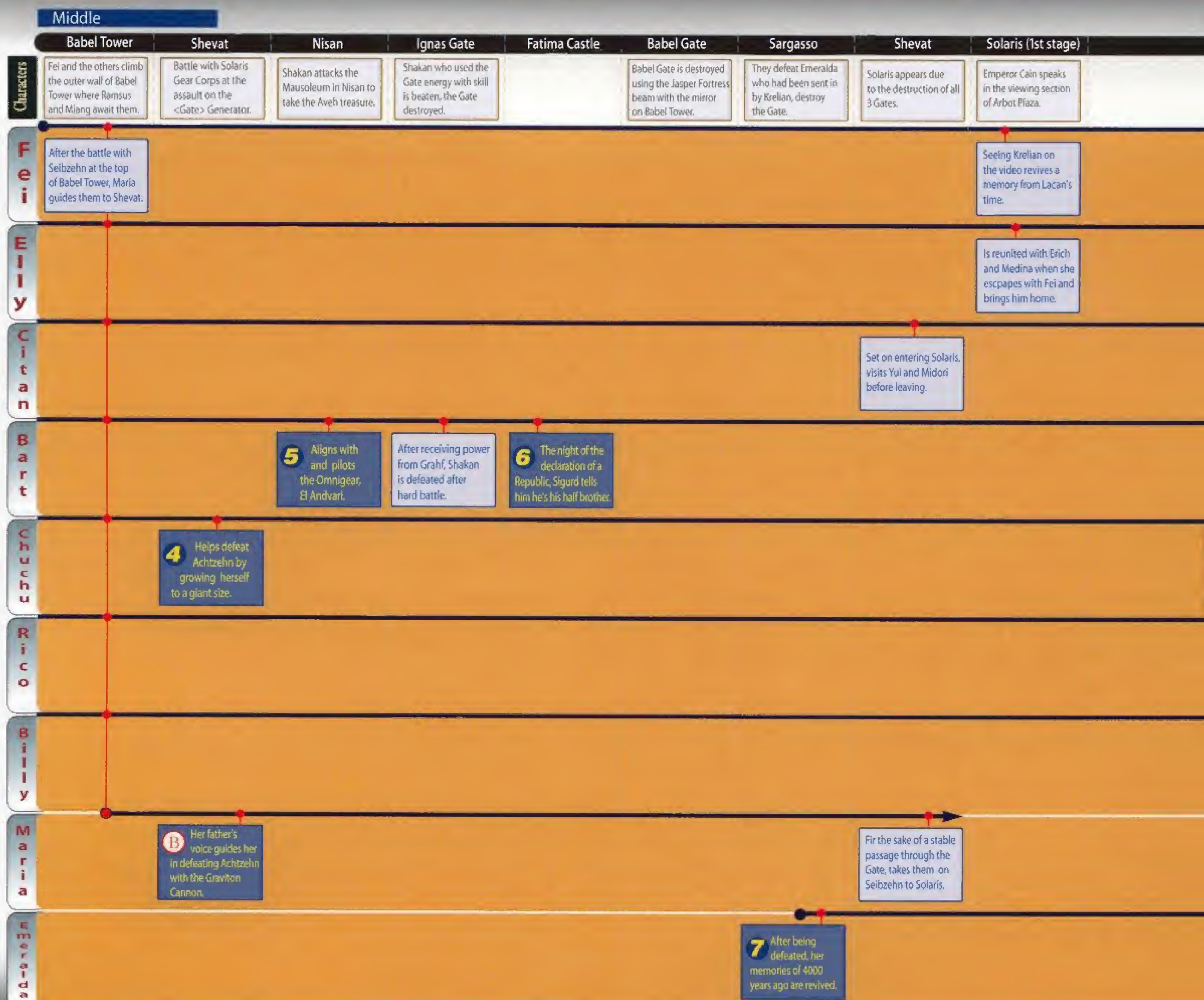
When Achtzehn attacks Shevat, and lets loose the "Psycho-jammer", the Gear's movements are frozen. Seeing this, Chu chu decides to fight, and her battle in giant form starts off well, but she can't hold up for long and is defeated. The desire to become more powerful for her beloved Fei and the others that is proof of her brave "maiden's heart."

## 5 Movement of the Legendary Omnigear

After restoring the generator in the Mausoleum, Bart and the others head back towards the Omnigear and are blocked by Shakan's army. Margie activates it just a second before battle, but as expected can't move it on her own power and must borrow Bart's. It was not seen, but her wish to "lend my strength to the young master" from her heart, made its way to Bart.

## 6 Aveh Royal Family's true treasure

The Fatima Jasper is the retinal pattern inherited by the Royal Family's descendants. Bart is thrown into confusion when Sigurd is able to unlock the treasure, and remembering his father's last wish and some things Maison had said, at last is certain that Sigurd is his half brother. It is the heart of Sigurd who resisted brain washing to protect Bart and Margie, that can be said to be the real treasure's truest form.



## B The path of the father's love for his daughter

[Maria / Nikolai]

Maria's father Nikolai attacked Shevat inside Achtzehn. Achtzehn was a Gear fusing both the neural structure of humans and the nervous system of Gears, and was the final product of her father's research. And so, Nikolai became fused with Achtzehn. After he had defeated Chu Chu while the other Gears were immobile, the time to battle had come for Maria, but she was filled with doubt, and her hesitation [I loved my father when he was still human . . .] held her back. But something from that time when he was human was sent to Maria . . . and that was his own data hidden in the heart of Achtzehn transmitted to Seibzehn. It is that legacy her father left behind that binds them together for eternity, as a shining light.

### Study The tragedy of the Expert

The tragedy of Maria and her parent has a great connection with Solaris' "M Plan". Because of Nikolai's renown as a genius neurological research, he was taken and used. The research and developments of human and Gear fusion was so outside the pale, that Nikolai refused to work on it, at which point Maria was taken hostage, and though unable to quell the anguish in his heart, he continued the research. Remembering the separation from her father, Maria harbors an intense hatred for Solaris. Experts and their great discoveries fill her only with dread because they seem inevitably to lead to destruction.



## 7 Reunion 4000 years later

Fei and the others head towards Sargasso to search in the sea caverns in order to destroy the final Gate. After Crescens is defeated they gain control of the Gate emitter. And the girl rescued was that one created by Fei as Kim in a previous life, entrusting the future to her.

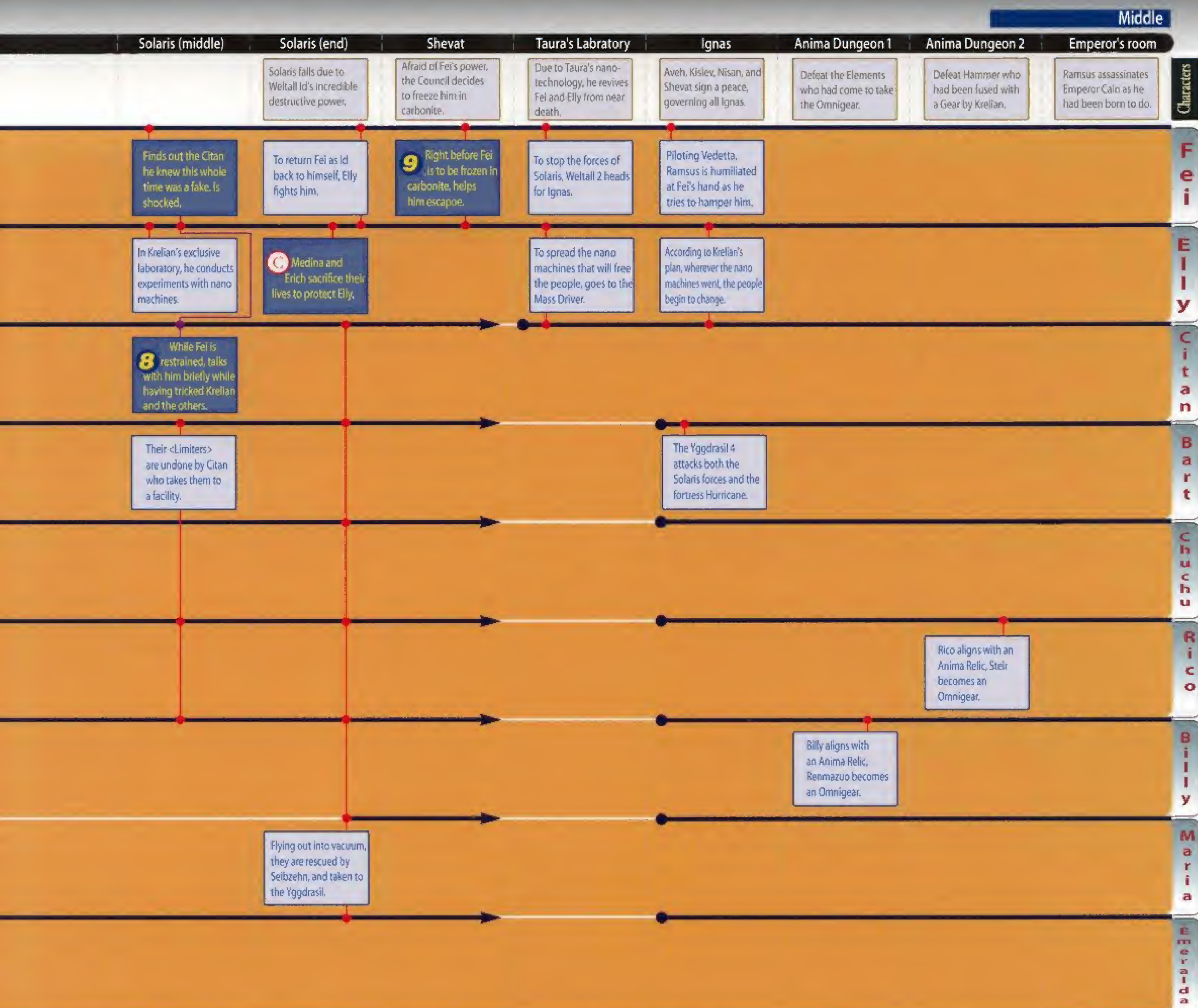
However, he didn't know this or know the reason why in their reunion after 4000 years.

## 8 He tricked the enemy, he's our ally

Fei was suddenly captured in the Solaris facility by Citan, and upon knowing his true goal (as Fei's supervisor) he was shocked. However, this was only to fool Krelian and the Ministry, while freeing Bart and the others from the sealed area, and to have a short interview with Id. While they say with trust, [If he tricked our enemies, he must be our ally], Citan still feels a sense of guilt.

## 9 Ramsus becomes a demon

When Fei was recognized as the second advent of Grahf in Shevat, the news filled them with dread and they decided to freeze him in carbonite. Only Elly believed in Fei, and freed him from prison, both escaping from Shevat. However, Krelian's next move was to bring in the demonized Ramsus who attacks Fei and Elly. And so, the two of them riding in Weltall crash.



C

### The truth becomes eternal...

[Elly / Erich / Medina]

Elly always had nagging doubts about her birth. Even though both her father Erich and mother Medina were pure blooded Solarians, her own skin and hair color are different. Her appearance is different as a reincarnated being, although Elly is unaware of this, and believes the surface dweller who wet nursed her to be her real mother.

However, both Erich and Medina continue to maintain unceasingly that Elly is both their child. And so, when Elly is in danger during the escape from Solaris, they both sacrifice their lives for their child... Even unto death, this act carries with it one truth into eternity, and that is the ultimate love Erich and Medina had for their child.

Study

Continuing on as "normal"

During the scene in which Erich and Medina protect Elly's life to the utmost, it becomes apparent that the power in blood is quite strong, and she feels it for the first time. Medina had said as much, [When my child is in danger... I'm just a "normal" mother]. Reading into these words, it says the instinct to protect one's child makes action possible. In its ultimate form, the instinct to sacrifice oneself is manifested. As Medina had said to Erich, in order to protect those you love, the "normal" is a continuous thing.



## 10 Sworn on the Pendant to come back

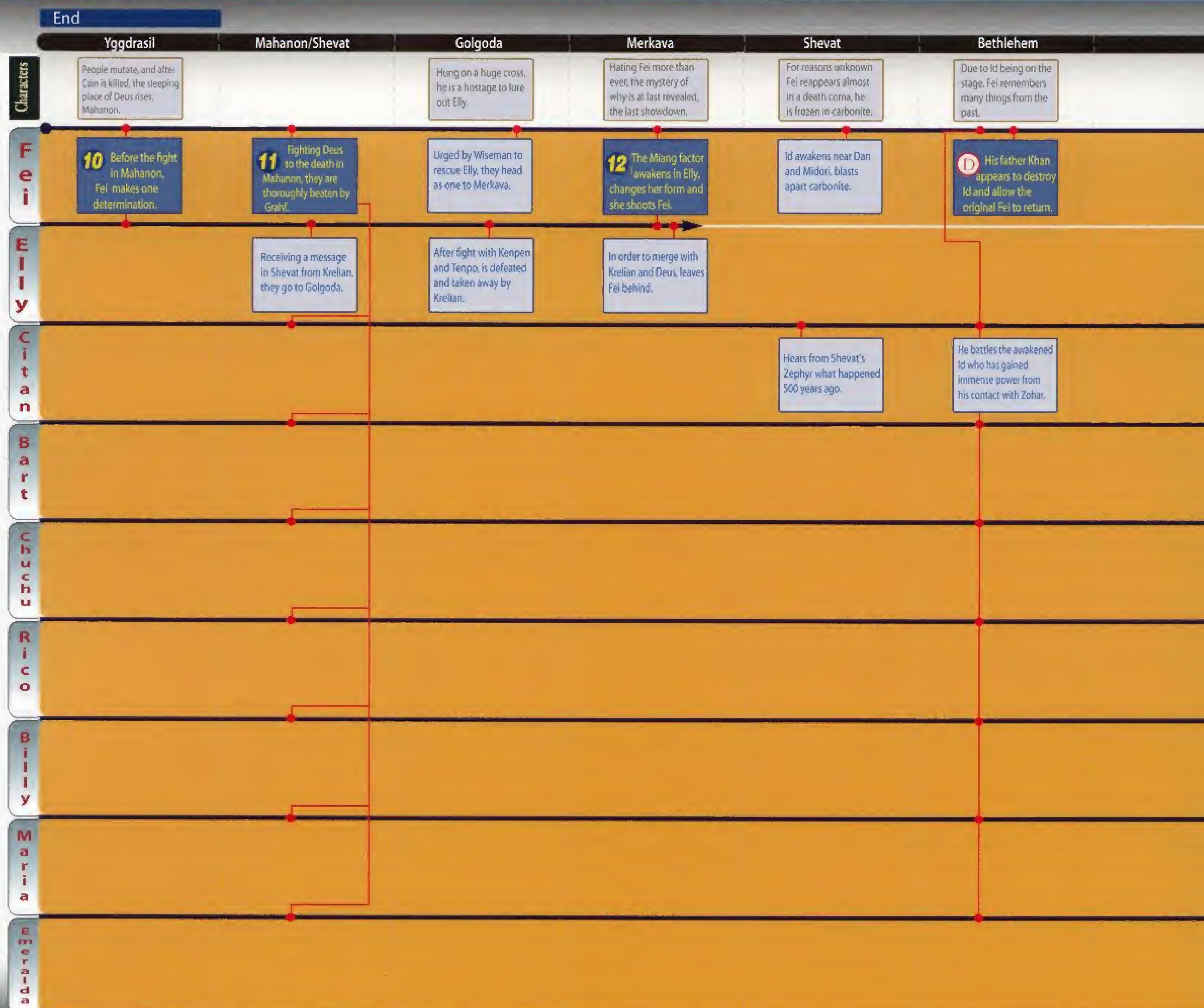
The night before they set out for Mahanon, Fei told Elly not to come. That was because he didn't want to lose Elly whom he loved. Fei promises to come back alive, and in the course of speaking their mutual thoughts, the two become one . . . The next morning, Elly entrusts her pendant to Fei, with all her hopes and the promise contained.

## 11 Plan to invade Mahanon

When Fei and the others had invaded Mahanon, they discovered the gigantic living body of Deus. It had the power to invoke terror into the hearts of people, and they fought Deus to the death. And before long, they made their way to the [Tree of Razi], where Grafh was waiting to intercept them. It became clear that they would be used as bait to lure Elly to come after them.

## 12 Awakening of the Miang Factor

Following after Elly, Fei and the others go to Merkava. When they caught up with Elly, the Miang factor awakened within her, and she shot Fei. More than the wound itself, what tore Fei's heart apart was the immeasurable pain of the memory of his vow to come back and his realization that he loved Elly.



## Those lost memories now become one

[ Fei/Khan /Karen]

Fei had no memories from his childhood, just fragments glimpsed in dreams and visions. However, in understanding the world of Id, and due to the appearance of his father, Fei comes to know the truth. Fei had a loving home with Khan and Karen, but one day Karen awakened as Miang, and performed many experiments on him. This caused the splitting of Id from the Coward, destroying Fei's personality. Once Fei knew the truth about his mother's death, the Coward Fei was able at last to reach an understanding with Id, and the original Fei was restored. Id passed back the many memories from his past lives, making all the memories come together as one.

### Study The desired bonds

The fragmentation of Fei, creating multiple personalities was caused by his terror of his mother and despair towards his father. During Fei's formative years, he needed love and security, and all that was lost. However, the ties of blood were strong . . . Karen should have remained as Miang, but at the last, sacrificed herself to shield Fei. Khan who had followed Fei everywhere as Wiseman, at the last merged with Zohar, and this was the instinct manifesting on both their parts to "protect our child" of their shared blood, proving that Fei's ties to his parents were the real thing.



## 13 Revived, the memory of far off days

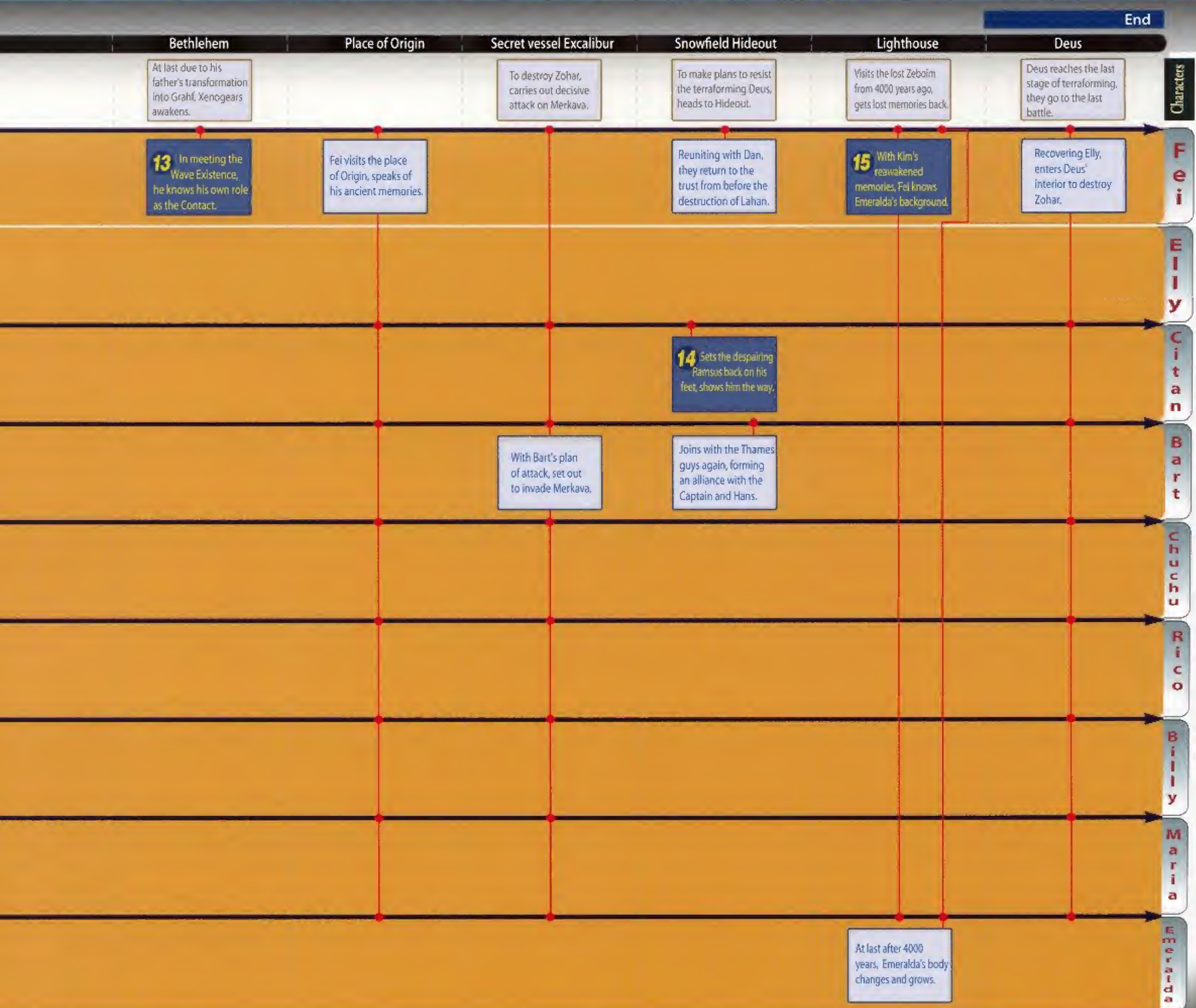
In Id's spiritual world, Fei makes contact with Zohar again. And so his memories of his previous life as Abel from 10,000 years before, on the space vessel when the Wave Existence had advented into Zohar and he first made contact are revived. In order to return the Wave Existence to its own dimension, and to get Elly back, Fei determines anew to destroy Zohar.

## 14 The path to regaining his will

Having been defeated by Fei over and over, Ramsus loses his will to live, and that 'star of hope' from former times, "Kahr" disappears. The sharp lecture by Citan and the hard slap that ignored the feelings of the pitying Elements gathered around him was proof. But Ramsus was awakened by Citan's effort and slowly began to regain his will.

## 15 The Angel entrusted to the future

When Fei visits with Emeraldal the ruins of the capital Zeboim that had been destroyed 4000 years ago, distant memories are revived. Fei's in his previous life, Kim and Elly entrusted their hope to the future. Emeraldal was loved by both of them, and in response to that hope, she determines to live and grow even stronger.



## Scenario Digest

### The alarm rung into the present day

While the scenario in Xenogears raises many questions along the way, there are many instances where it asks, "What would you do in this case?" This is what fiction does, and it sounds an early warning even into the present. The depiction of Fei and his parents, and the dangers encountered by families tied together by blood in the face of adversity, the situation of Elly and her parents truly demonstrates that "blood is thicker than water." The tragedy of Maria and her father, is the wrong path taken by science, which leads to further considerations of gene manipulation and clones. Also, the sins of children, economic

collapse, frontier wars and such occur throughout raising questions that give much food for thought. Now, as the end of the worlds approaches, what might this wandering earth <want>? Glory? Destruction...? The Xenogears story touches on all these things, giving the best answer in the form of asking what the observer thinks. And so, Sophia's calling out "Live!" isn't just a trite cliché, but is a message saying to take from that time all the things treasured and to remember them.



## Requiem for a past

# DARK SUMMER

The inadequate genius Commander, a short story of Ramsus' start in life

WRITTEN BY

Clio Saga

Her real name is Kaoru Tanaka. She had a hand in the character design of [Xenogears].

The boy had the dream over and over.

The perfect sky seemed incapable of harboring a nightmare with its warmth, the horizon retreating into a far off horizon that was barely visible. The temperature was like his heart, and even though only 24 degrees, both palms had already begun to sweat as he clasped them together.

They slept in a room cleverly sectioned off from the skillful placement of levels, and his sleep was the most deep of all, and even those friends he would suffer to come close to him would not have noticed that in the depths of the dream, he trembled slightly. Here were the candidates of the on the path to glory in the Holy Solaris . . . the imperially selected candidates' pure bed, there was a soft sound as he shifted.

The dream is coming.

Like soundless wings, black shapes swirling in the darkness, he was terrified. It never varied, he stood waiting unmoving for the attack that crept ever closer. And in the valley of sleep he could not move and above his sleeping head, the playful fan blades that swirled the air around slowly, looking down on his sleeping form.

Huh-

He shouldn't have heard anything, the sound of the fan whispered in his ears. The dream is coming.

He braced himself. If he couldn't escape, the what? If he couldn't close his eyes, then what? The nightmare had become countless black birds, and already he could feel their approach. Falling into a wide landscape, and he was unable to scream, and he was caught in a soft caress of summer air that should be in that room.

That voice is coming.

This time he has tried to hold off the nightmare, his terror mounting, and then he heard the voice had come.

(Kahran, Kahran, Kahran, Kahran, )

He blocked his ears. Perhaps in the sheer silence of vacuum, he could hold off the sound of his name. However, he didn't stop that voice. It was the same dream,

here again. There was no way out.

In the dream, he turned.

It was the same path, soft summer breezes and a soft reddish sunlight played on the outer access rail surrounding Etrenank. The buildings were dyed red in the dying sunlight, his own shadow growing longer.

He walked along the path where he had sought his and his friends lost game ball. And one by one, the figures of those around him disappeared. At last he reached a viewing plaza in which no one was left, and he looked for his ball like a boy brave in spite of his trembling.

The sun sank into the deep azure edge of the world, and in that brief darkness that had settled before the pin pricks of street lamps flared one by one, he felt it come back again once more, he heard the voice. Surprised, he turned to find the owner of that voice. And in the darkness, under a circle of light he saw a woman. His fear mounted and became more acute as harsh laughter sounded.

[There you are!]

Kahran whirled around in the direction she pointed. Bowing his head in the direction of the woman, he ran towards his ball that had been lost. If only he had come back before entering that darkness.

When he came to his senses, he didn't recognize having come there before.

He felt sheepish for having come this far from home and felt alarmed. There was an immense wall. And around that, piles of trash. The towering mounds, and the smallest drip of water from far away, led him to where he saw his ball just a short distance away. If he didn't go back soon, they'd be real mad.

In that instant before he turned around stumbling on the piled trash, he was frozen. There was something at his feet, and what his small boy's eyes beheld, riveted him there caught. And there was a foul stench of rot and decay. In terror, Kahran held his breath until he might die. He shouldn't have come here. That regret rose up overwhelmingly. However, just that instant, he had the impression that someone had been waiting for him there. He could hear "Its" pulse somewhere near his feet. "It" was something unknown, and from that nightmare into the one he was having now, was "It" another person? Or was "It" himself right now? This was past his understanding.

Like all prey whose heart is understood by the hunter, Kahran was allowed to escape. And at the time when his terror peaked and his senses were overwhelmed, "It" caught the boy.

Trash.

While his bones were chewed to pieces, Kahran saw the heart of his captor. No, it's not that he saw him. "It" had already begun to synchronize with him. Eating his substance, in order to merge itself with him. A thing of hideousness, the Founder Cain's recreated body, copy, repeat, incomplete artificial life form, trash, trash, trash.

The artificial life form that tried so hard to continue living its existence inside the Life Assembler Reactor, needed a new <weapon>. A living receptacle, new flesh, bone, skin, food.



Abandoned by its creator, the artificial lifeform designation code 0808191, had waited all this time. Nest, trap, fresh kill. Unlucky food, the boy Kahran Bekker before long belonged to a new master that had completely taken over. While delving into the boy's young limbs, the eyes, their pupils mere pinpricks stared off into space. With the dominance by 0808191 and the succumbing of the boy Kahran's will, the hideous deed was completed and he was lost.

Kahran climbed unsteadily to his feet. He had bitten his lip when he fell into the trash pile, and one shining drop fell, but the boy had no expression. Only for an instant was a red flare visible in his eyes, and stretching out his new fingers, he slowly picked up the ball that had fallen to the ground, returning without error to the path leading home.

Kahran Ramsus shook in the throes of the nightmre. A mere 5 meters away slept the 16 year old Hyuga Riedeau and Sigurd Harcourt, all unknowing in their slumber. He lay enfolded in the wings of nightmare, unable to shake himself awake.

Chewing his prey, it was the image of the soft naked skin that recurred to him over and over. Taking his kill, tying it up and drawing it in like a spider. Hunter and prey, victim and killer. Which one am I? he couldn't make sense of it. Was he the discarded 0808191? Or the pitiful Kahran Bekker? Whoever he was, no one could tell him, and in the absence of the voice his body trembled, while countless tears fell.

Kahran, Kahran Kahran. No matter how many times, he couldn't keep it back. A darkness welled up inside his mouth, and no matter how many fragrances, he couldn't keep out the taste. He tasted it now. Not human. However, in his depths there stirred a natural <something> that even now was moving. He couldn't help himself, he swirled into the depths once more.

The memories after the trash area seemed to be filled with tens and twenty times the amount of bones that fell there amid heavy wings of darkness. His brand new ball was scarred and soiled, and the boy returned home. It was a home that was semi colonial in the middle class level on a beautifully laid out street. One of those many homey houses that he entered. One long ago there had been flowers around the porch and still some boltnia bloomed sending out a sweet fragrance in the stillness. And above them fluttered a lone cobalt blue butterfly, and there being no wind, it settled in them like something artificially made. That instant he wondered did he remember this beauty?

Kahran Bekker entered the kitchen, and headed to the refrigerator, pulling out a vanilla shake, which he gulped down. His father, believing him to have weird tastes, nevertheless indulged him by buying creates of the stuff, so the boy wouldn't be disappointed. He headed to the sink and rinsed it, then threw the cup in the disposer, flicking the switch. A small rumbling noise and it disappeared in a creamy swirl. The boy stared at the small whirlpool with hardly any movement.

Trash, trash, trash. As the last drop completely disappeared, he turned to the room where his parents were. He had never seen their faces before. He didn't say "Mama" as he always did. It was just the burning of the memory like flame

that was now burned beyond past recognition in his mind. And from then on, his parents both said that he'd come back different, and Kahran Bekker had become a lifelong recluse by the time he left home at 15 years old.

He followed rules and desired to be placed in the prestigious school at Jugend. Selection was based on genius and ability. Truly desiring to get into a fresh life at Jugend, when his parents both died, he changed his name in the register, and with bold strokes rewrote it thus [Kahran Ramsus].

With the passage of the nightmare, the ivory sheets outlined his still trembling body, soaked with sweat. His skin was blue white with the cold, the temperature rendering his skin nearly translucent, but he awakened as a prisoner who catches the first glimpse of the summer sun. That day, when seeing his former house, he had cried inwardly without making a sound. While he was himself, something else stirred. It fluttered about in an image of his own hand setting the flames that burned his house. There was no sound, at last he had exorcized his parents feeling he had done it with his own hands, a distant memory. Stop it-stop-it stop-it, that was my, my, my . . .

Wordless cries, whose voice was that? That couldn't be the original me that was destroyed in the trash heap? If so, who the world am I? The eater, the eaten, how can I survive and still be both?

For days he had vague impressions of memories, but even with doubts, they stopped. The certain thing was only what he felt right here and now.

And that word. Trash, trash, trash.

Feverish in the night, the rank stench of his own nightmare were over time finally laid at rest. His own corpse, if he would stop that, then his own inner evil thoughts. And he pushed aside all terror and feelings of hatred, those had been spattered with the tears that had dropped.

[Kahr . . . Kahr!]

Somewhere outside the nightmare, a warm capable arm, someone calling. The power of that warmth allowed him to rise up out of the darkness, reaching reality through the depths of the curse, and he returned. Kahran Ramsus could feel the life returning to his body, and looking up he saw his friend's face with it dusky skin, and was cradled against his shoulder, a strong supporting arm. His voice sounded husky when he turned his exhausted face up to him, appearing ill and said,  
[ . . .crossed over.]

With that one word, his friend half asleep, returned to his bed. Ramsus felt a wave of gratitude wash over him for his friend who had called him out of the nightmare to the safe confines of the real world. He himself had suffered the aftereffects of Drive which could cause nightmares, and one look at Ramsus had told him by his color that it was one of those kind, and he was able to offer help then.

For Ramsus not to go back into the dark winged embrace of the nightmare, he squared his shoulders, and closed his eyes. If not calm, he could at least be girded against the next intrusion of the enemy from his fortress.

However, the enemy wasn't outside. And the inescapable truth was that the nightmare might change, but it would likely attack again. As long as he lived, that curse would not leave him. Trash, trash, trash.

And afraid of those memories in that lazy summer, his voice might be silent but he would weep forevermore.



# Character Gallery

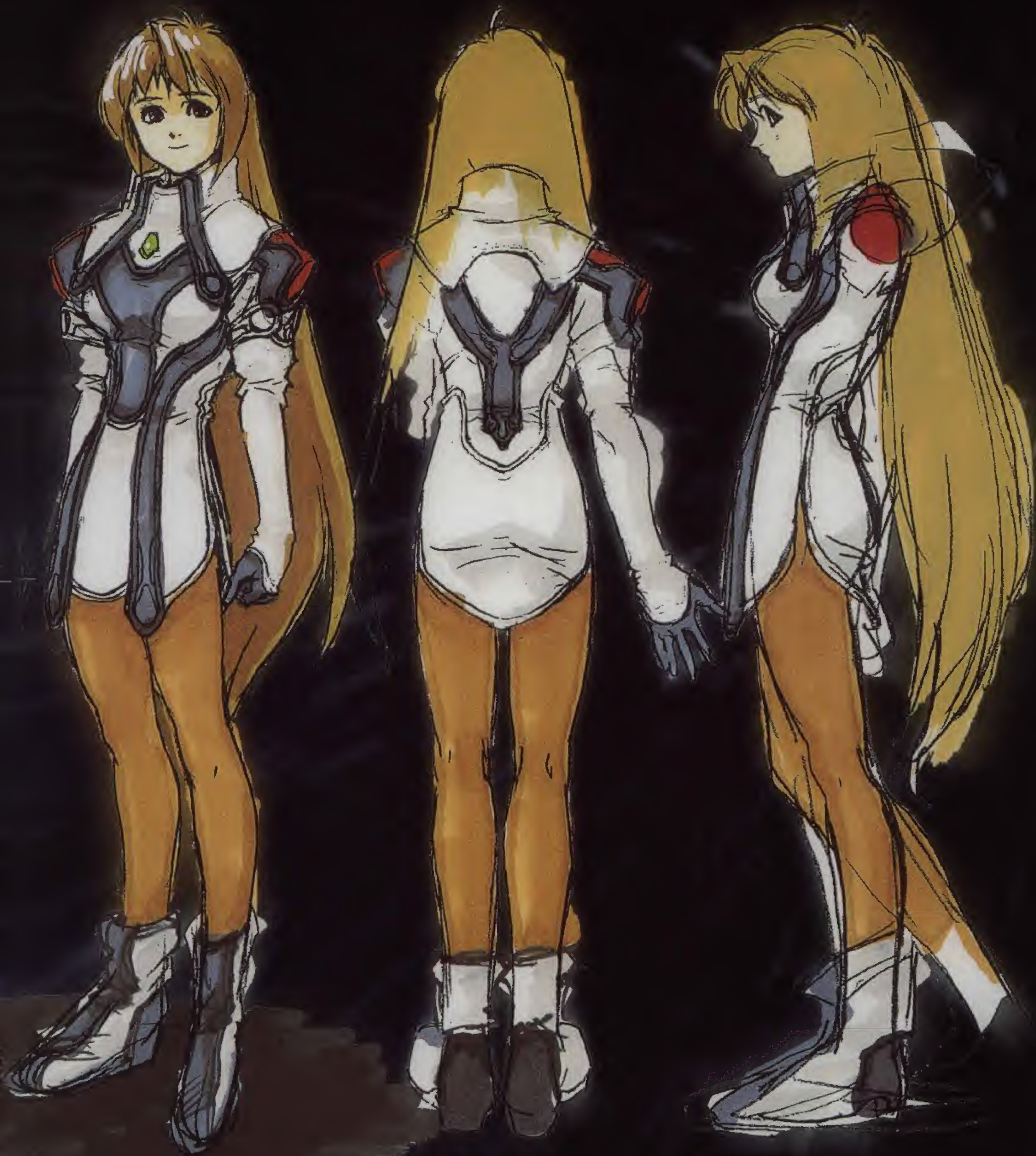
---

Having given a great deal of thought to the different elements that went into [Xenogears], Kunihiro Tanaka's character designs are very fascinating, and there are probably many fans. In this gallery are full color pictures by Tanaka-san, as well as a collection the official illustrations showing how he developed them. One part was drawn by the inside designers at Square, and it is hoped the reader will refer to these materials.

And so, the color pages with their [fragrance image] were put together inside Square before when they were designing, and the character's fragrance was added alongside. With this, is written a simple introduction to go with each. We hope it helps the reader get a better image. The names, fragrance, what they're wearing, even to the brand name.

Also, in this official artwork gallery, are the notes when each design was ordered, and the director Takahashi-san's comments are given.





### Elly's 3 sides

Not all characters had this level of careful design in using detailed images. Because there are so many, not all of the illustrations are shown here, just the side, back and some of the color patterns, its definite that all the illustrators gave this matter some thought.





# Wong Fei Fong

Fei Fong Wong

Personal Data	
Height	177cm
Weight	67kg
Age	18歲
Chest	97.5cm
Waist	72.5cm
Shoe size	27cm
Ring size	15
Western Size	M

Fragrance image	
Eternity for Men (Calvin Klein)	
Eternity, Men in other words, the [Eternal Man]. The scent's base is a soft floral type, with a cool a refreshing feeling, having a manly fragrance. However, this image give the impression of one who does not seem a refuge for children, but instead is representative of [an eternal boy].	





As Abel, as Kim, as Lacan, the Fei who is Id. Here are the faces of those who make up the [Fei] of the present day, and the rejection of Id who had manifested and wanted his place among these names, is reflected in his maniacal face. Those 2 in suits are all the images of the scientist Kim that were drawn.





# Elehaym Van Houten

Elehaym Van Houten

*Personal Data*

Height	164cm
Weight	46kg
Age	18
Chest	86cm
Waist	57cm
Hips	84cm
Shoe size	23.5cm
Ring size	9
Western Size	M

Fragrance image

Rose Camellia (Chanel)

As a main note, she is reminiscent of bundles of flowers with many blooms. But this is not her appeal as a woman, but is her fragrance associated with her soft girlish image.









Even though she briefly awakened as Miang, and is she is formidable in this aspect, she never loses her appearance as Elly. Several design patterns were involved, but she couldn't be altered to totally lose the impression of her original personality. Now, the image below is was a special gift image that was planned but never used.









# Shitan Uzuki

Citan Uzuki

## Personal Data

Height	182cm
Weight	68kg
Age	29歳
Chest	95cm
Waist	75cm
Shoe size	27cm
Ring size	17
Western Size	L

### Fragrance image

Green Tea (Bulgari)

As the name indicates, the flavor base is green tea, a calming adult fragrance. It goes without saying that it's only for those calm and cool individuals, those [adults] that are Citan's image. In more detail, the cologne was distilled from oriental spices long ago, and only recently has gained notoriety as something different. Citan even resembles those [weird people] to some extent.





# Barthlomei Fatima

Bartholomew Fatima

## PERSONAL DATA

Height	183cm
Weight	72kg
Age	18
Chest	102.5cm
Waist	77.5cm
Shoe size	27.5cm
Ring size	19
Western Size	L

## Fragrance image

Hugo (Hugo Bozs)

The heady scent of ripened apples. A fresh and charming scent, it gives him a certain panache, the sense of a good hearted guy. In the shape of something gorgeous and glittering, it leaves one feeling refreshed and not drunk with scent, suited to the direct nature of Bart's character.





A detailed illustration of the character Billy Lee Black. He is a young man with short, light-colored hair, wearing a dark green coat with large white bows on the cuffs and a large white bow at the waist. He is holding a silver revolver in his right hand and another in his left. He is wearing brown boots with yellow and white patterns. In the background, there is a large, faded, purple-tinted image of his face.

# Billy Lee Black

Billy Lee Black

## Physical Data

Height	168cm
Weight	59kg
Age	16
Chest	85cm
Waist	65cm
Shoe size	26cm
Ring size	13
Western Size	S

## Fragrance image

c K b e (Calvin Klein)

A scent of purity with a dash of citrus, the monotone bottle has a chic design. It is the lively fragrance of the right path taken, the adult whose somber face hides the hint of the laughing child beneath . . . This is the image evoked.



# Chuchu

Chu chu

## Pyramail / Dior

Height	88cm
Weight	35kg
Age	1 year 3 mos.
Chest	不明
Waist	不明
Hips	不明
Shoe size	不明
Ring size	不明
Western Size	不明

## Fragrance image

Fahrenheit (Christian Dior)

In accordance with the name Fahrenheit (flowery), temperature, and [warmth] are the meaning of this fragrance. Normally, any scent will change with the rise in temperature of the body, soemtimes with extreme alterations. Because of this, it is said by some to be an aggressive scent at certain times. For the maiden who hangs on to her love (?), this image is exactly Chu chu.







# Richardo Banderas

Ricardo Banderas

## Personal Data

Height	211cm
Weight	160kg
Age	30
Chest	121cm
Waist	95.5cm
Shoe size	32cm
Ring size	28
Western Size	X X X L

## Fragrance image

Samurai (Aron Drone)

Even though he can't do a [Strauss] like stance, without saying anything, one knows this is a powerful scent. The male pheromones can be felt, and gives an overall cool impression . . . that is the kind of fragrance this is. Even though nobly born, he has thrown all that out, and his only pride is in his beloved Steir since he escaped the Capital . . . And in the case of that name, doesn't the image say enough?





# Maria Balthasar

Maria Balthasar

## Personal Data

Height	137cm
Weight	38kg
Age	13
Chest	68cm
Waist	54cm
Hips	70cm
Shoe size	20.5cm
Ring size	7
Western Size	X S

## Fragrance image

Spring Fever (Origins)

A fragrance in which herb and fruits have been ground together to make a refreshing scent, and this suits perky Maria very well. The name [spring fever] can be changed to [spring worries] which makes it very interesting. Her background - [her father's punishment] follows her and shapes her life with pain.





# Emeralda

Emeralda

## Physical Data

Height	125cm/161cm
Weight	96kg
Age	Looks 8~9 /16 spiritually more like 4
Chest	65cm/84cm
Waist	50/55cm
Hips	65/82cm
Shoe size	20cm/23cm
Ring size	6/8
Western Size	M

## Fragrance image

In Love Again (Ives St. Laurent)

While floral, there is something different to this scent, a touch of ricolis flower indicating sensitivity. In any event, the [created human] Emeralda is certainly a different kind of life, she has a purity that is not found in human beings. This is the image evoked here.

In Love Again = (falling in love again) is the name of the fragrance. Emeralda's desire for a father's love (=imitation love) is at last settled, and the new woman will definitely be capable of real love.







Fei and Kim are two different people - as are any individuals - when she awakened, Emeraldal should have been as well, and she changed into her own [self] when she grew into a woman. Emeraldal's sparkling hair is like the image that moves in her pupils.





# Sigurd Harcourt

Sigurd Harcourt

## Physical Data

Height	191cm
Weight	83kg
Age	29
Chest	105cm
Waist	80cm
Shoe size	29cm
Ring size	19
Western Size	X L

## Fragrance image

Tuscany Forte (Aramis)

As a brand with many flavors, it could be said to be [restrained], but the overall impression is abundant. Not only [young], it is a cologne that give the modern day impression of clean hygiene.

The name [Forte] is a word in music to show a [strong] movement. In addition to the previously mentioned clean and restrained tone, it gives the image of a man who is not shaken, but remains [strong] . . . And to reinforce this image are his own actions in the story.

# Sir Lawrence Mason

Sir Lawrence Maison

## Physical Data

Height	178cm
Weight	69kg
Age	68
Chest	82cm
Waist	70cm
Shoe size	26.5cm
Ring size	15
Western Size	M

## Fragrance image

Classic (Banana Republic)

Has a fruit and a floral base for a calming effect of high quality scent, but this is not sold in Japan, so it's not widely known. Even though he doesn't live ostentatiously, he has latent real power as a man - that's the kind of character that Maison has been depicted as.







# Marglete Fatima

Marguerite Fatima

## Personal Data

Height	158cm
Weight	46kg
Age	16
Chest	78cm
Waist	55cm
Hips	81cm
Shoe size	22.5cm
Ring size	8
Western Size	S

## Fragrance image

Touch (Tokka)

A fragrance that carries within it a note of flowers. A scent similar to Maria's Spring Fever, but its residual scent has a more fresh and invigorating feel, but a much softer scent than that. Also, its packaging style is like the stained glass windows of the Churches in Rome. Suitable for a girl with religious values. Along with its revitalizing and fresh image, the fragrance is very suited to her personality.



# Karellen

Krelian

## Physical Data

Height	185cm
Weight	74kg
Age	Unknown. (Supposed 500 years.)
Chest	90cm
Waist	72cm
Shoe size	27cm
Ring size	17
Western Size	L

## Fragrance image

Dune Pulome (Christian Dior)

Dune, (in the English sense of a desert) and like its name, is a fragrance calling to mind dry and heat. Not terribly hot, but like a mid- grade fever, and a very high class feeling is associated with it. Even with the inner fire, nothing is harmful - and this is the image of a hot spring, for Krelian 500 years ago, and even up to present day Krelian.

500 years before now, about the time of the war of resistance against Solaris. Krelian went with both Sophia and Lacan to Shevat, still continuing their life and death struggle against Solaris. A huge gulf extends from the Krelian of then and now, but just from surface appearances, only his hair and skin color appear to be different.



# Carlin Ramsus

Ramsus



## Personal Data

Height	189cm
Weight	78kg
Age	Body age 29. Actual age unknown.
Chest	102.5cm
Waist	80cm
Shoe size	28cm
Ring size	17
Western Size	X L

## Fragrance image

Antious (Chanel)

Antious is the name of a legend in Greek mythology and the fragrance is spicy and very masculine, giving an impression of strength. Because it is a unique fragrance, it is not so much [fresh] but seeing Ramsus in the story, one immediately understands.

Antious was the son of Great Mother Earth Gaia, a legend having unnumbered talents. However, he fought Hercules, and for the first time knew defeat. During the heat of battle, when Antious had been brought low countless times, he resisted Hercules unceasingly to his death. And in this episode, Ramsus has this image as well.





# Myyah Hawwa

Miang Hawwa

## Personal Data

Height	172cm
Weight	52kg
Age	26
Chest	86cm
Waist	57cm
Hips	86cm
Shoe size	24cm
Ring size	10
Western Size	M L

## Fragrance image

Contradiction (Calvin Klein)

While having a lively a modern day flavor, there is something of the classical in the fragrance. It reminds one of something, but not anything you can think of . . . so it's said. Having near eternal life, it seems Miang yearns alone for something. This image is suited to Miang. The derivative words in English of her name means [contradiction], and there is a deep meaning behind this.





# Emperor Cain

Emperor Cain



# Dominia Yizkor

Dominia Izkor

ELEM

Throne

Tolone



# Cherubina

Kelvina

ENTS

# Seraphita

Seraphita







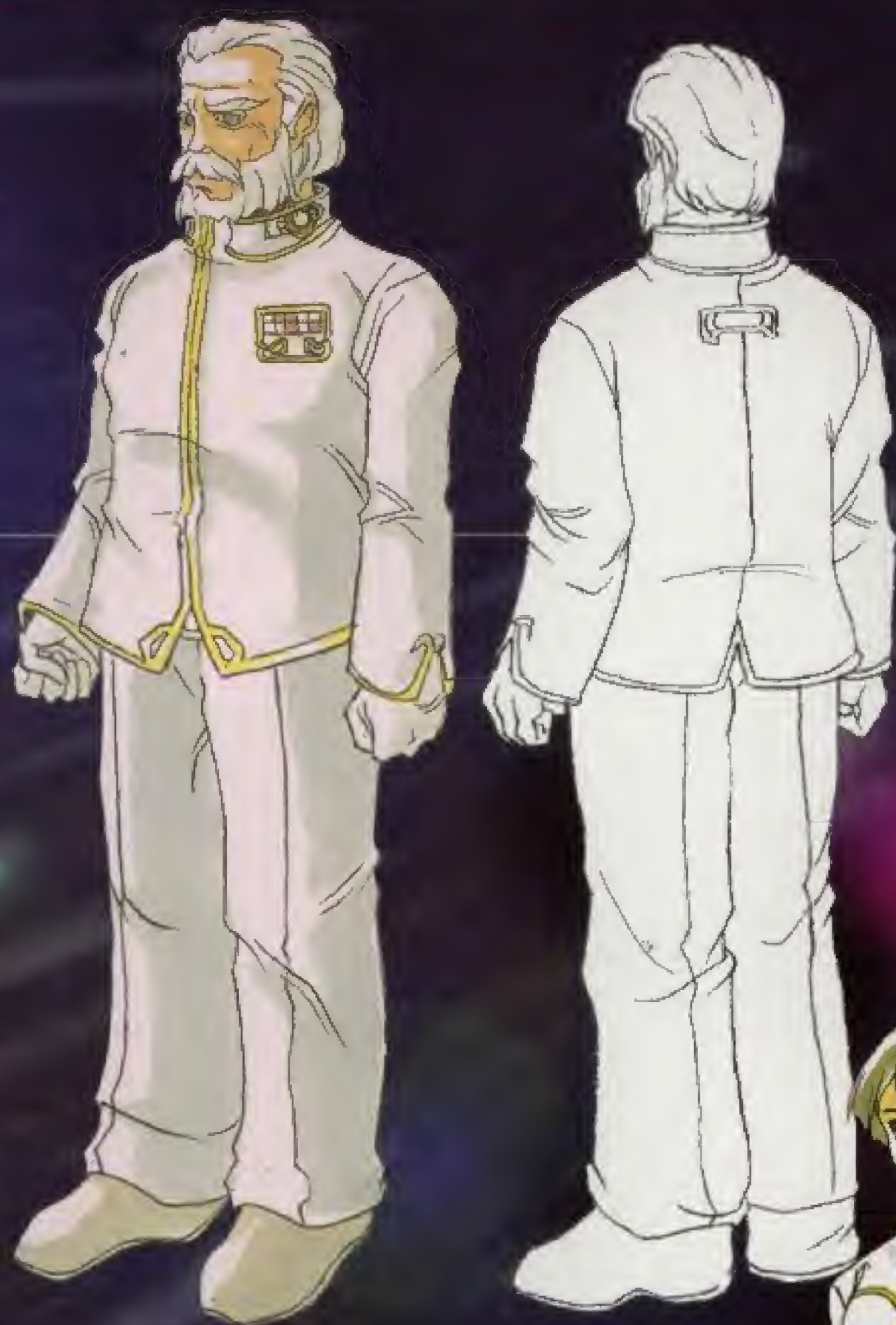
**Graf**

Grahf



## CHARACTERS FROM OPENING MOVIE

The Captain



Operator





# Deformation Gallery











# Imagephotograph - if -

A collection  
of drawings

*If this world were . . .*

## The secrets spoken of by maidens

In the desert submarine the Yggdrasil, there is a bar set up in front of Sir Maison. Always visited by those "desert men" as a place for them to gather, these days the soft laughter of maidens sounds in the air. It's Margie and Elly.

At the height of the heavy fighting, there was never a scene in which the two could just talk. However, if they had been granted peace long enough, inevitably their talk would have made its way to love . . . Mostly that between Elly and Fei as it grew deeper, and after awhile most definitely the topic of Bart would have blossomed . . .

These are often the words said in admiration of an RPG with a "grand story". Of course, if there is a game meriting such a word, the game might feel it was just a little too much.

In the case of [Xenogears], as another has said of this world, "grand doesn't even begin to tell all of it, for huge numbers of events are stored on 2 disks.

However, even though these are all the great events that are seen, the players haven't stopped wanting more stories (episodes).

This is due to the cast of interesting characters, and even when players fall asleep, they dance before their eyes.

If that character and that had been friends . . .

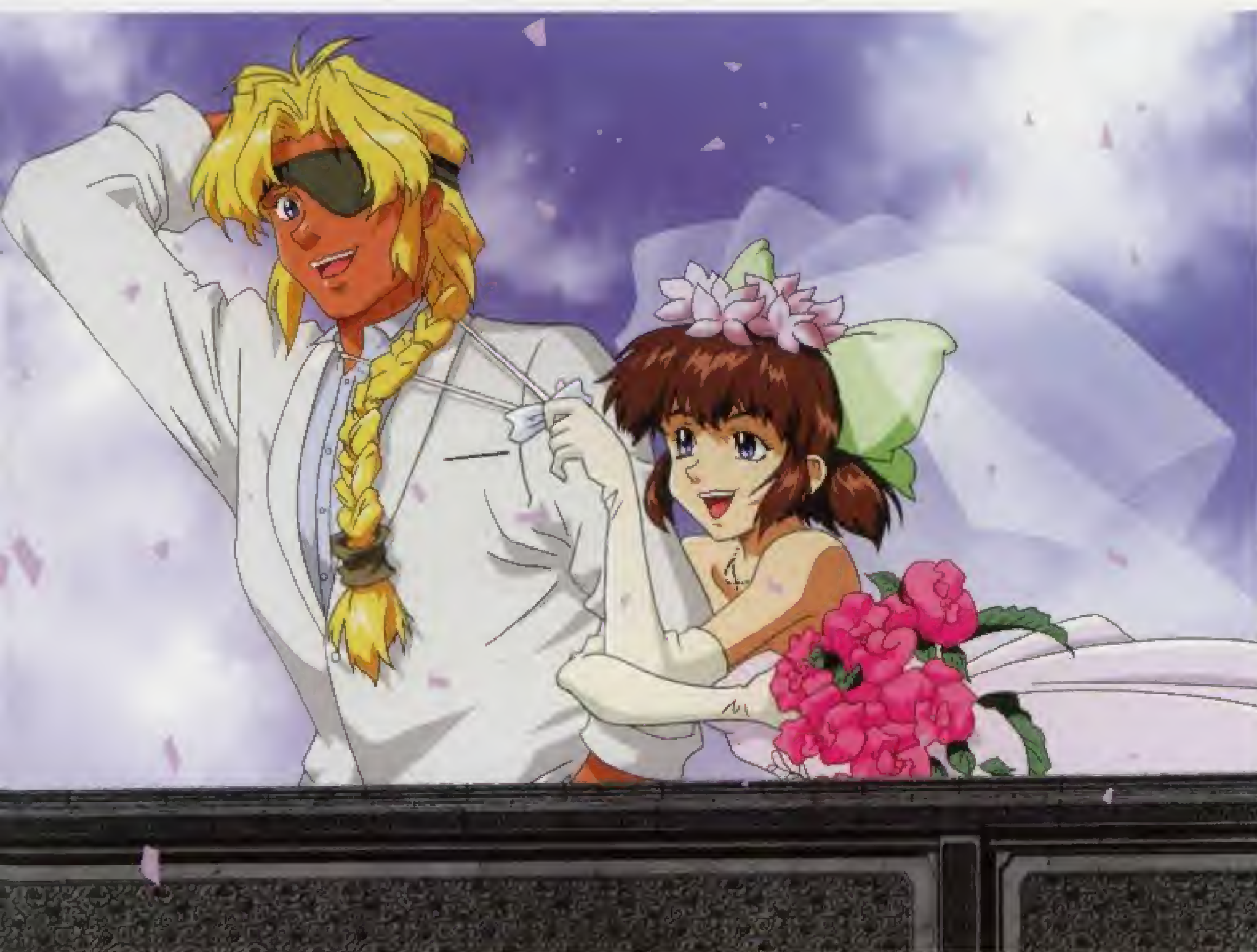
If only they would make the last episode . . .

And if this world had been at peace . . .

These are the thoughts of the players, and they create a new [Xenogears].







### Marriage of best friends

Aveh and Nisan have been allies since long ago. From the time Bart's grandfather and Margie's grandmother were married, both countries were tied closer yet. Ever since someone among the people started saying [both countries' Prince and the Great Mother get married] Bart and Margie grew so embarrassed they don't speak of it. In particular Bart, who sees Margie like a little sister. However, Margie's thoughts about Bart say that at last, she definitely wants the promised wedding to come about.

### Smiling faces of children . . .

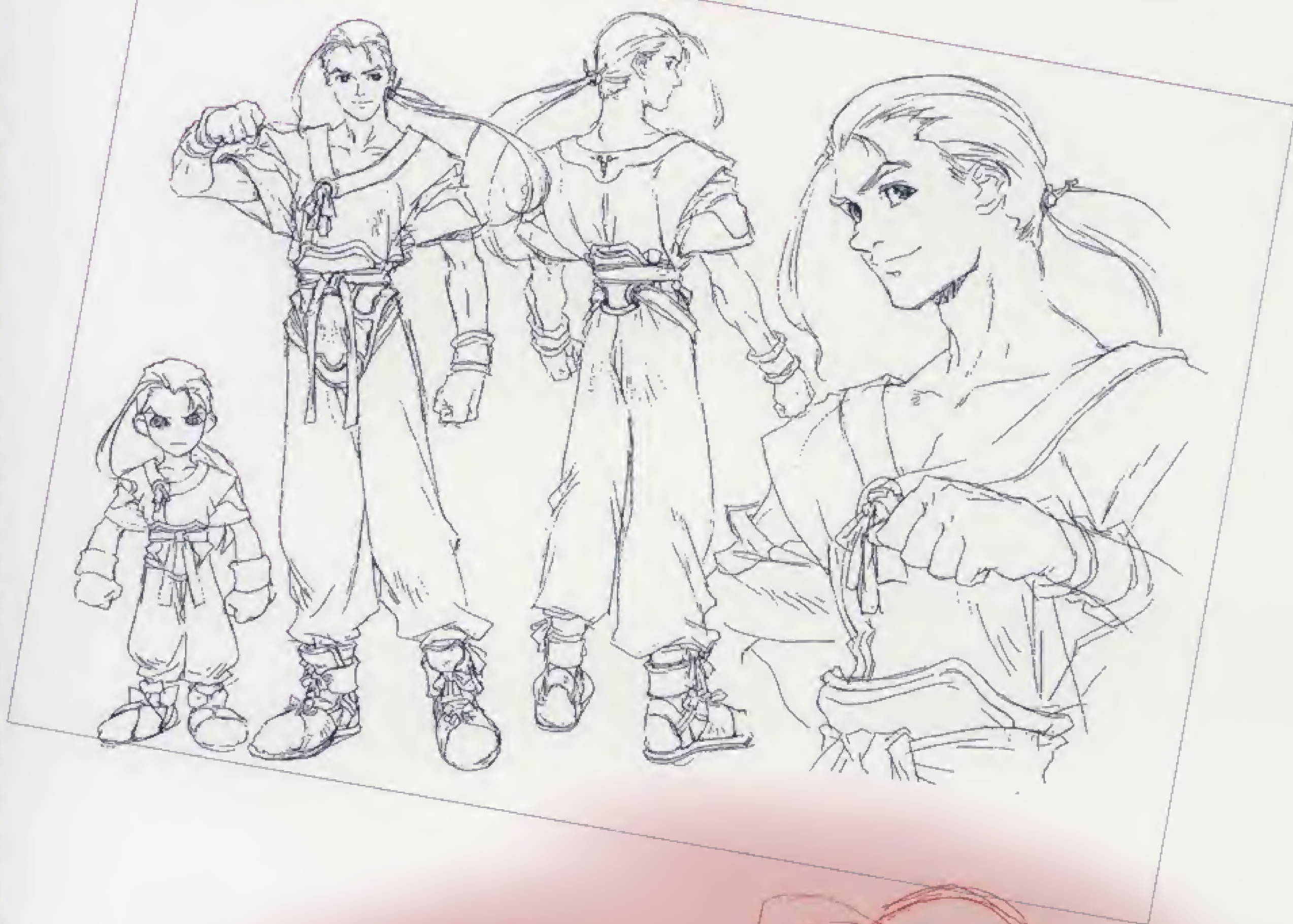
The children appearing in the game never have a scene in which they behave just like children. Normally, there would have been a scene of playfulness, everywhere there are children who are truthful and have kindness in their hearts. However, because of painful events far beyond their years, these girls know only defensive measures. If there was ever a time when the shield was dropped, their faces would shine like those of angels.



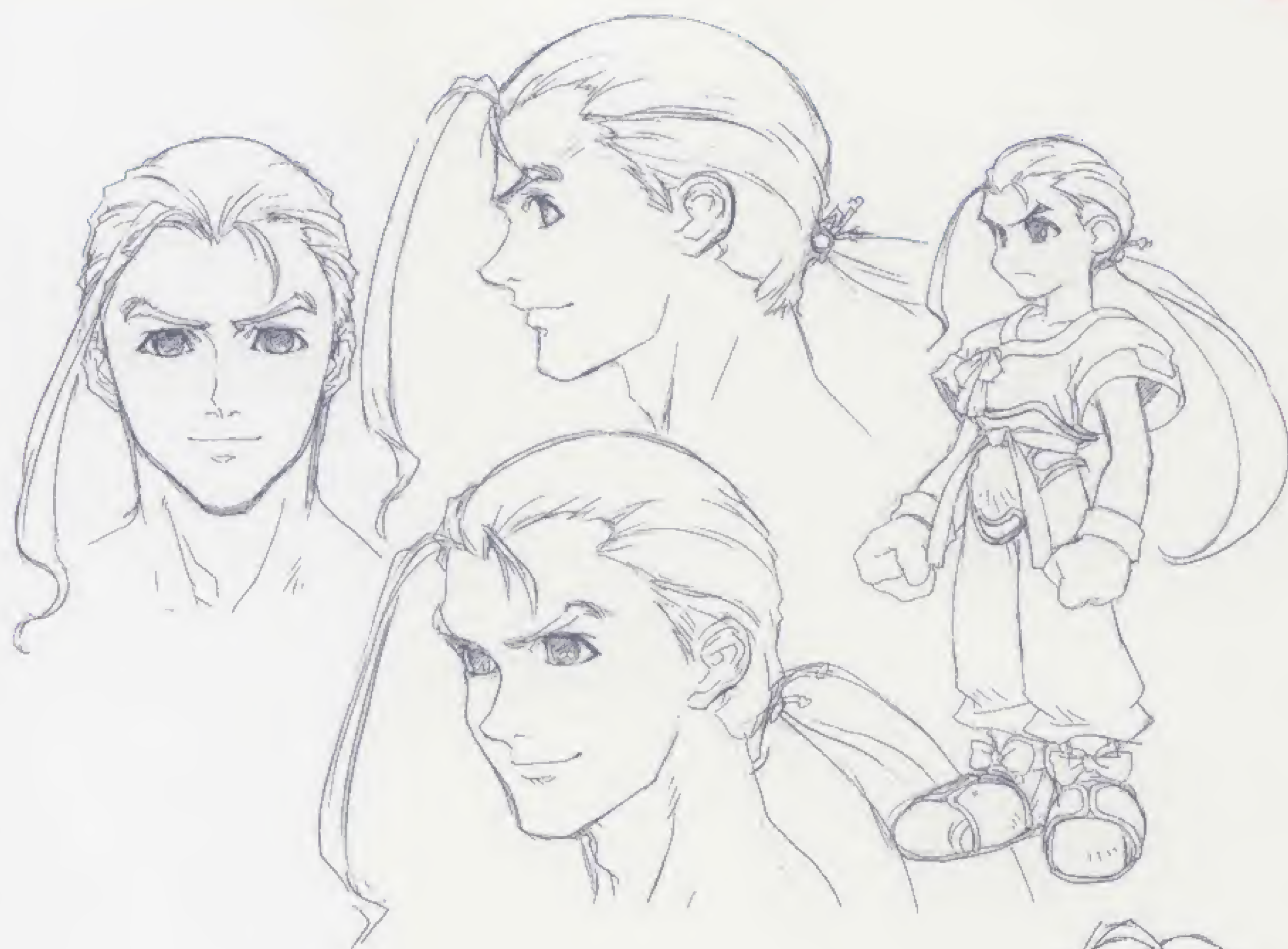


# Gallery

— Illustration Collection







Fei

# *FROM DIRECTOR*

From the beginning of Xenogears everything was still potential and it was written with a pastoral feel to it. Also, Fei - and where he lived at the village - were designed along martial arts lines. As the script was being written, I wanted to resist the pastoral feel, but to no avail, and it was revised along those lines (I couldn't see this as a pastoral world, I'm more of a doom and gloom kind of guy). So the succeeding versions of Fei (especially the latter half) became more out of place. But, there wasn't time to do it over, and this is what we came up with. This is a character, this Fei, that I would have liked to refine a little more. Sorry Tanaka-kun.

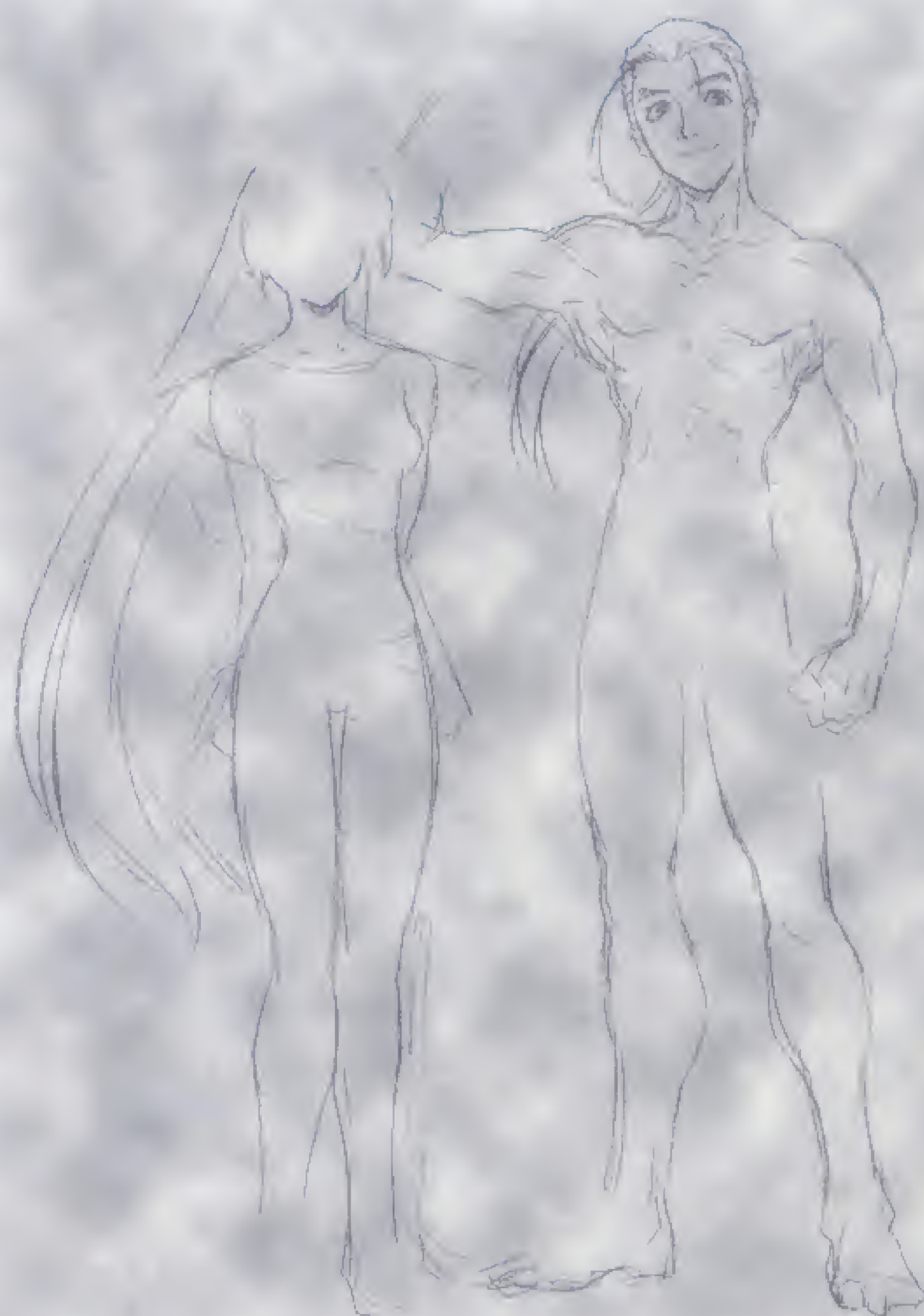




# Fei

## FROM DIRECTOR

In relation to the past Fei, because of time considerations for the main illustrator Tanaka-kun, the designs were made in-house. At first, Fei had Japanese style clothing, intending to show that Zeboim was very close to the present day world. The Fei in Zeboim as a doctor had a white lab coat. Originally Lacan was to have had a separate design, but during the game there wasn't a lot of time to draw new characters, so it couldn't be helped, he had the same clothes as Fei, and with Fei having the memories, his point of view as the main observer kind of had it make sense - at least that's how it comes out.



past Fei 2 (researcher)

Fei (suit)



Suit pants





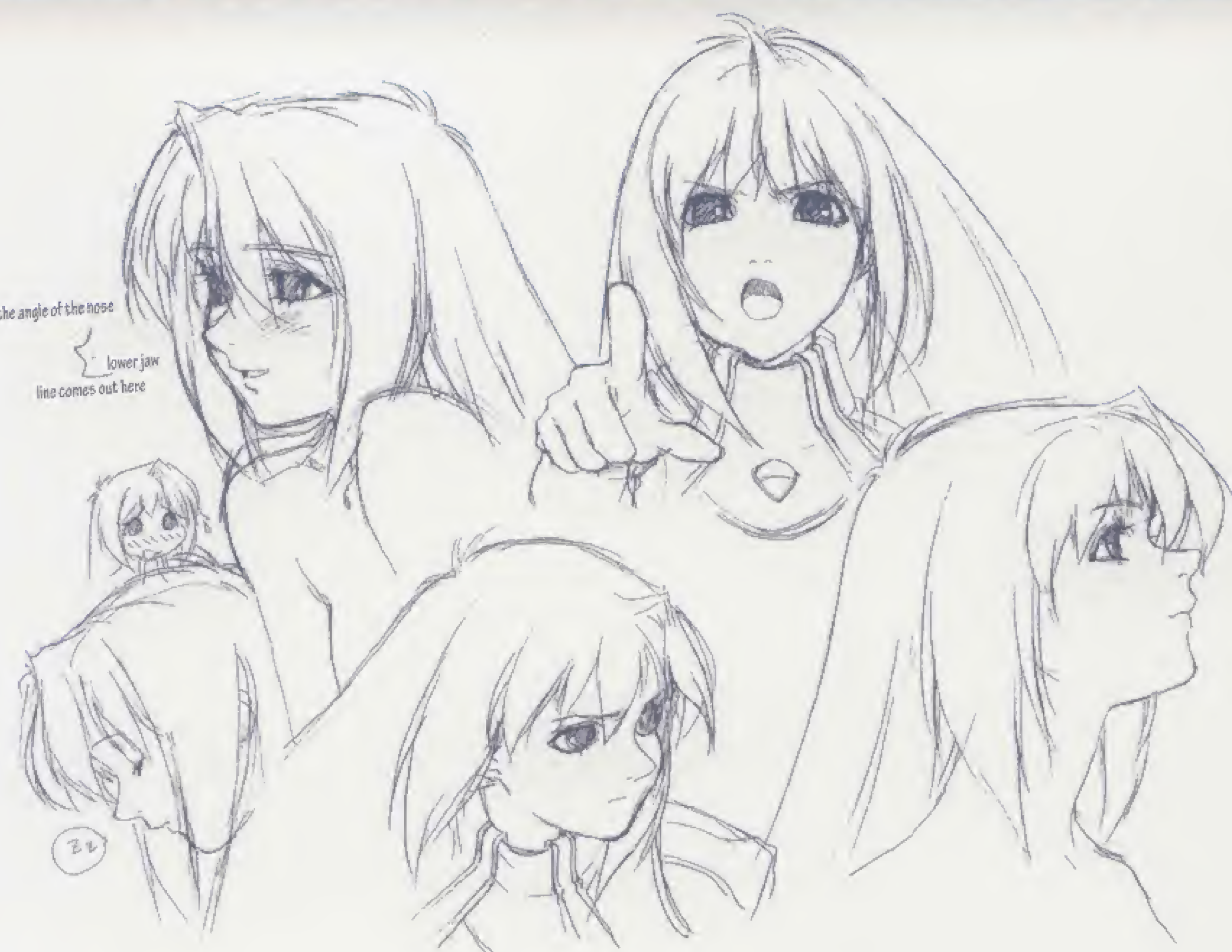
Rough draft





the angle of the nose

lower jaw  
line comes out here

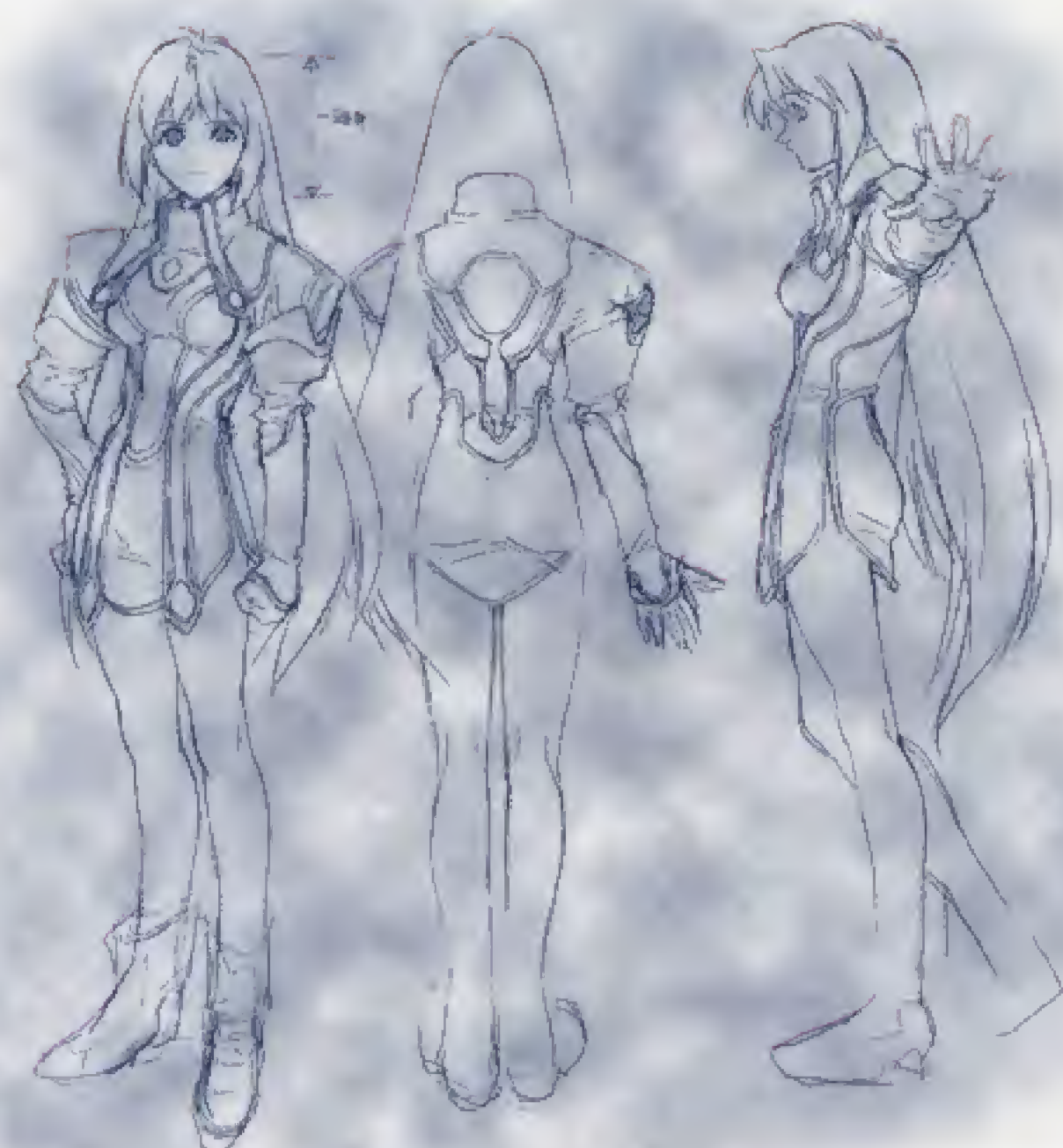


Elley

#### FROM DIRECTOR

The first notes on Elly said that she had to have long hair. Anything else was all right, and almost all drawings got the O.K. The concept of her clothes was something sleek, (like a race queen). The slit in the hip area wasn't there at first, but we wanted it (heh, heh). And the shoulders were on a draft that we liked - for a total costume that we liked the most. On the other hand, too complicated and the cosplay guys would have real problems! (Hah, ha!). And the stockings couldn't get too colorful, (hah, hah). They were more of a undercoat (leotard type thing) and it came together. However, compared to most stockings, these might be really expensive (luxury item). And normally would have been like the clothes, white also.

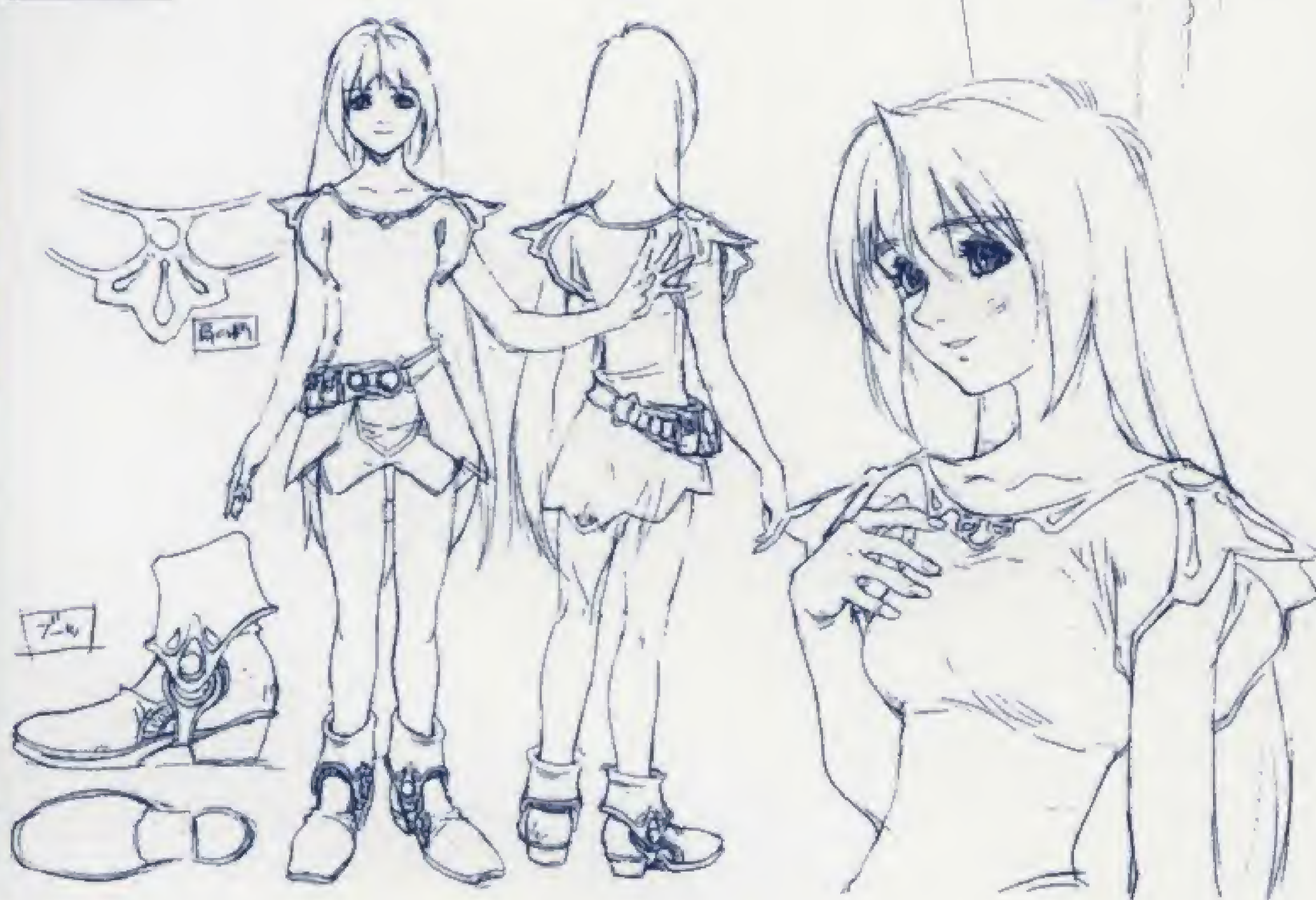








Elly casual dress

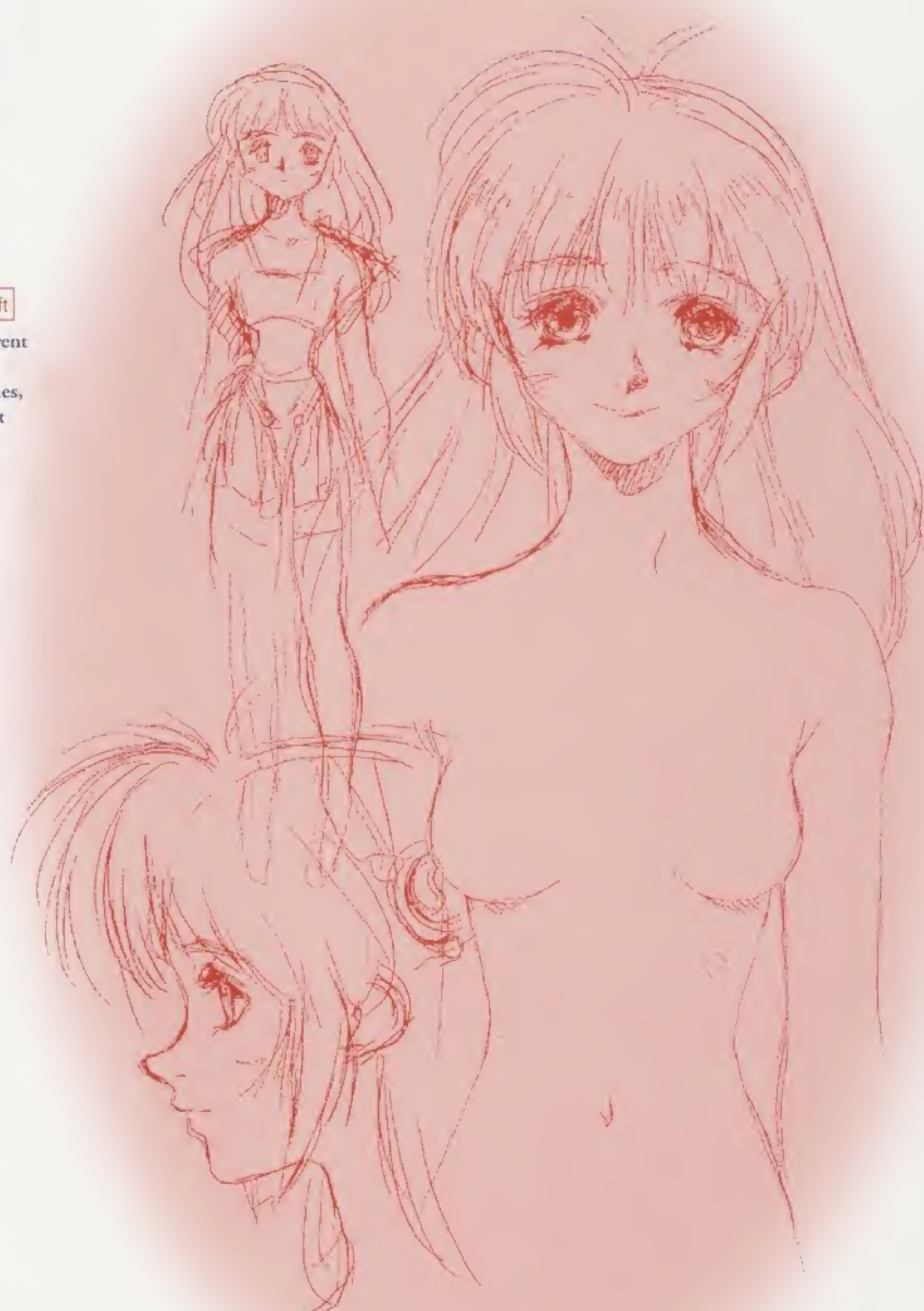




# Elley

Rough draft

The Elly in this sketch has a different touch, but was Tanaka-kun's first attempt. It was revised several times, and in that process many different touches were tried. Finally, the design settled on was called by Tanaka-kun "new frontier".

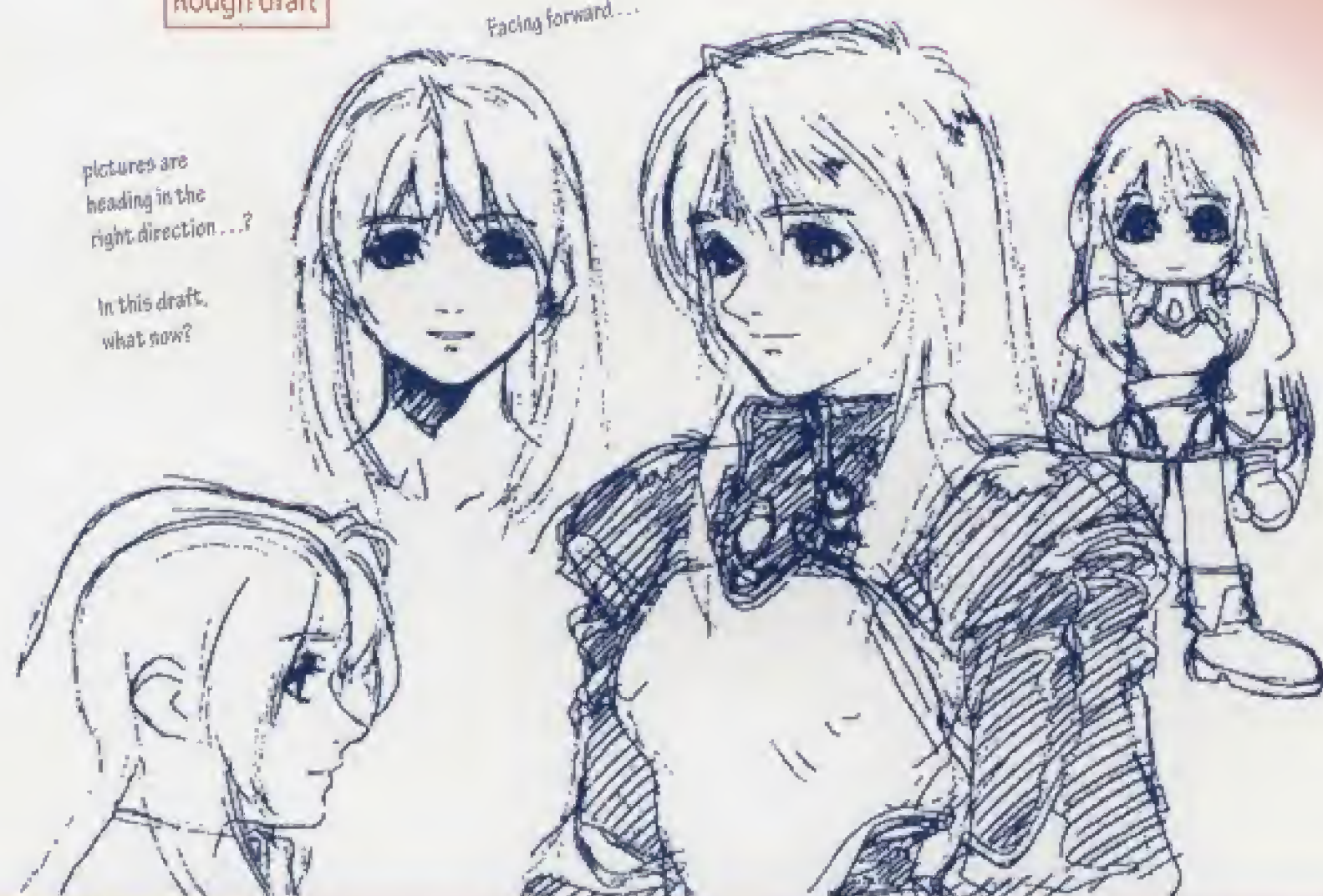


Rough draft

Facing forward...

pictures are heading in the right direction...?

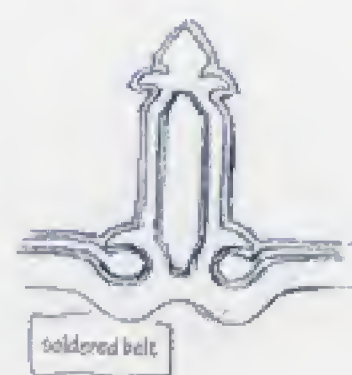
In this draft, what now?



## FROM DIRECTOR

Elly was originally envisioned with a lighter version of her clothing. It had a strong pastoral feel. Elly is different from Fei, and more direct by comparison, which I wanted Tanaka-kun to reflect in his drawings. The past Elly, Sophia, was drawn like Fei for the same reasons inside the company. The same for each time period's concept. There wasn't really a design for Sophia's clothes, and finally getting down to it, the staff helped to make an outfit that suited her perfectly. Tanaka-kun wanted to draw the Zeboim Elly (nurse) himself. (heh, heh).

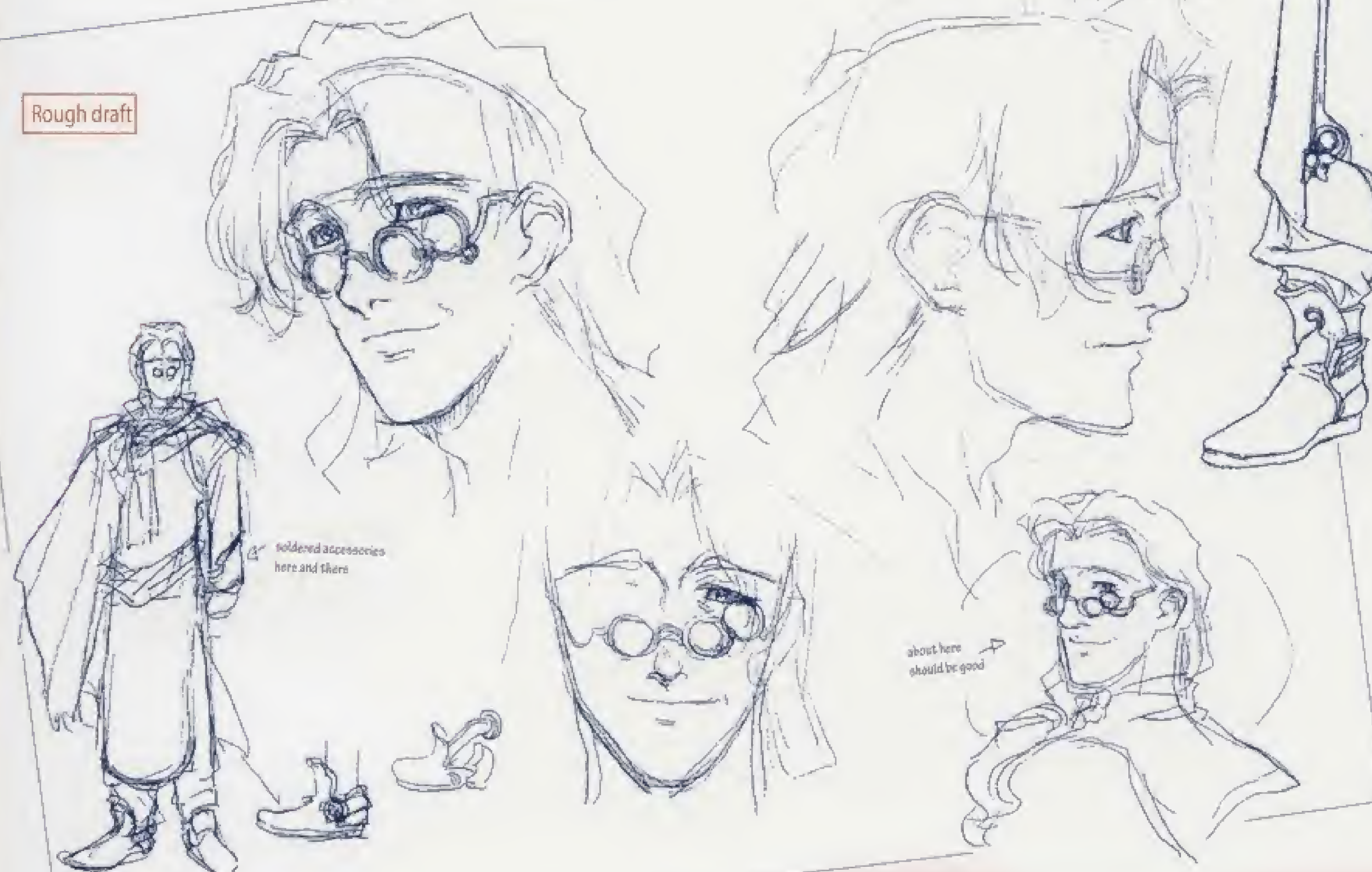




# Shitan



Rough draft



## FROM DIRECTOR

Citan's clothing also ended up pastoral. It didn't bug me as much as Fei's, so we went with this. There weren't any revisions in the design process, and the original got an O.K. On the surface, he's a traveling doctor. A protecting presence in the party. He gives the impression of great knowledge- kind of old fogeyish - as ordered. I increasingly felt that this was perfectly suited to this character.

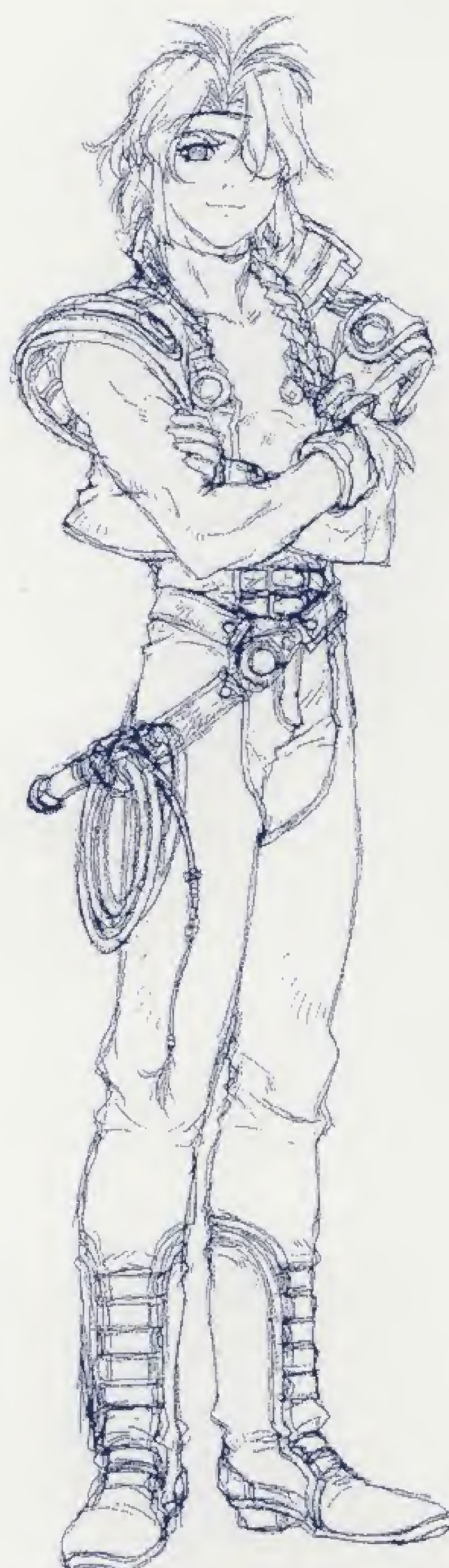
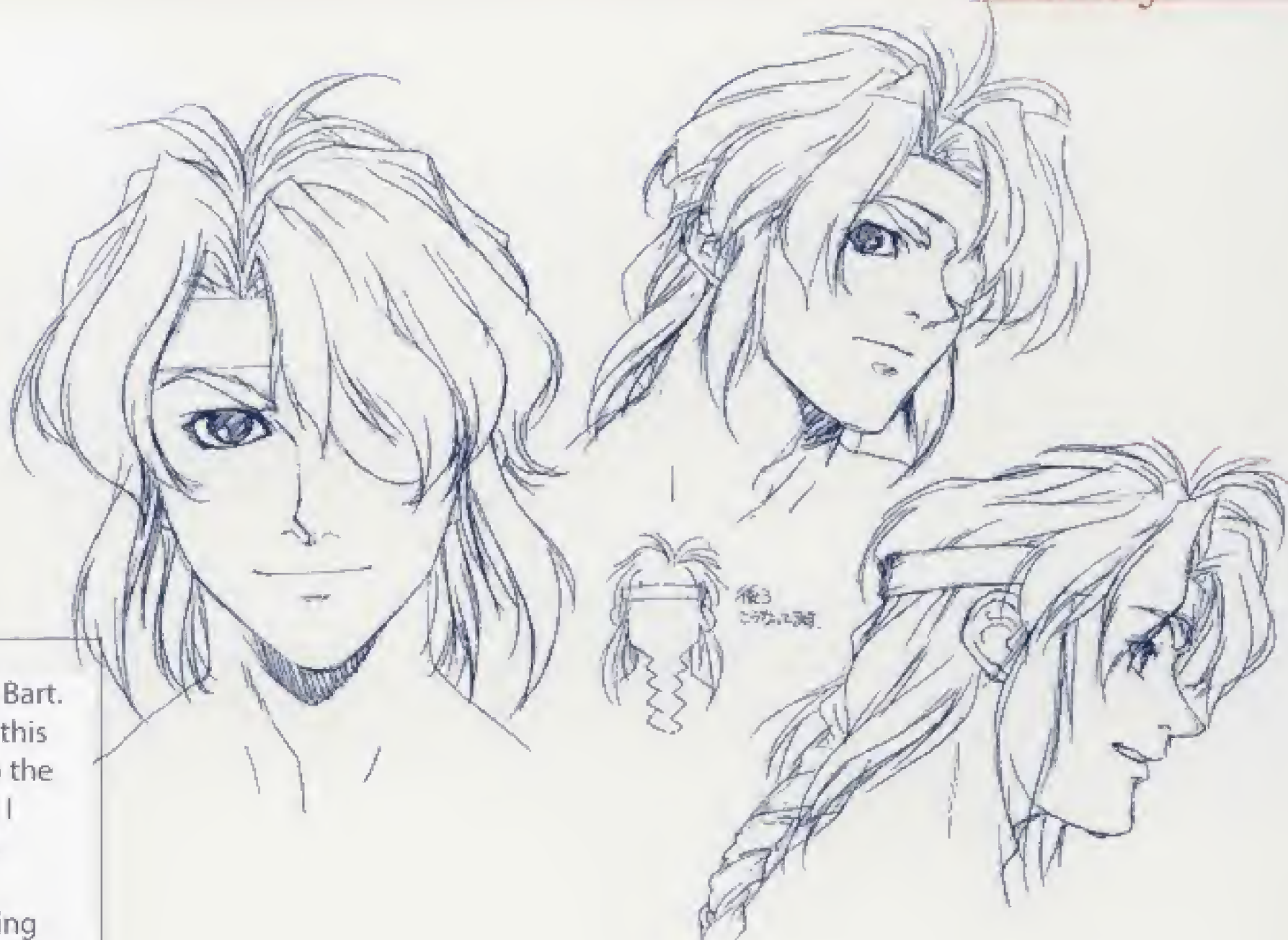






# *FROM DIRECTOR*

This is the rough drawn by the staff in developing Bart. Around this time, was the designing of Fei, and in this case we didn't want a hint of anything pastoral, so the clothing is really SF style with strong colors just as I remember ordering. As a result, both Bart and Elly are decked out rather [expensively] (Heh, heh). Out of all the main male characters, I like his clothing the best. And that's just the clothes. The eyepatch should be on the left eye (see all illustrations). So when it sometimes shows up as the right eye, that mistake was on Sqaure's side. My aplogies to all the gamers.





# Rico

## FROM DIRECTOR

Among all the playable characters, this one had less exposure, so that other than dialogue in Battling, he doesn't say much. This was the fastest one we designed. Sorry. If he looks familiar from other games, that's just in your mind (the first I've heard of it). Anyway, we'll let that one go. (Hah, ha).





# FROM DIRECTOR

This reluctant design is just like Tanaka-kun who loves little animals. A koala type animal had been ordered, and what you see is what we got. For many, it was a tough one to draw. White and pink colored, until it was finished it caused unrest, a real pinch. More than a "yellow bird" I really want a Chu chu stuffed animal. (Hah, ha.)



Rough draft

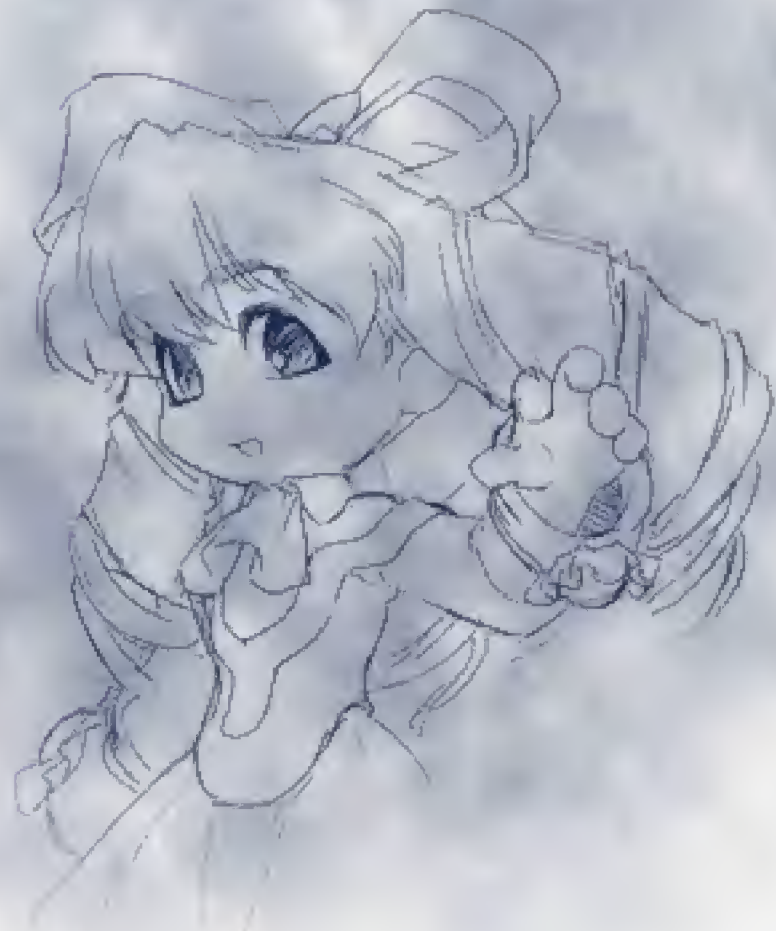


Chuchu





Maria



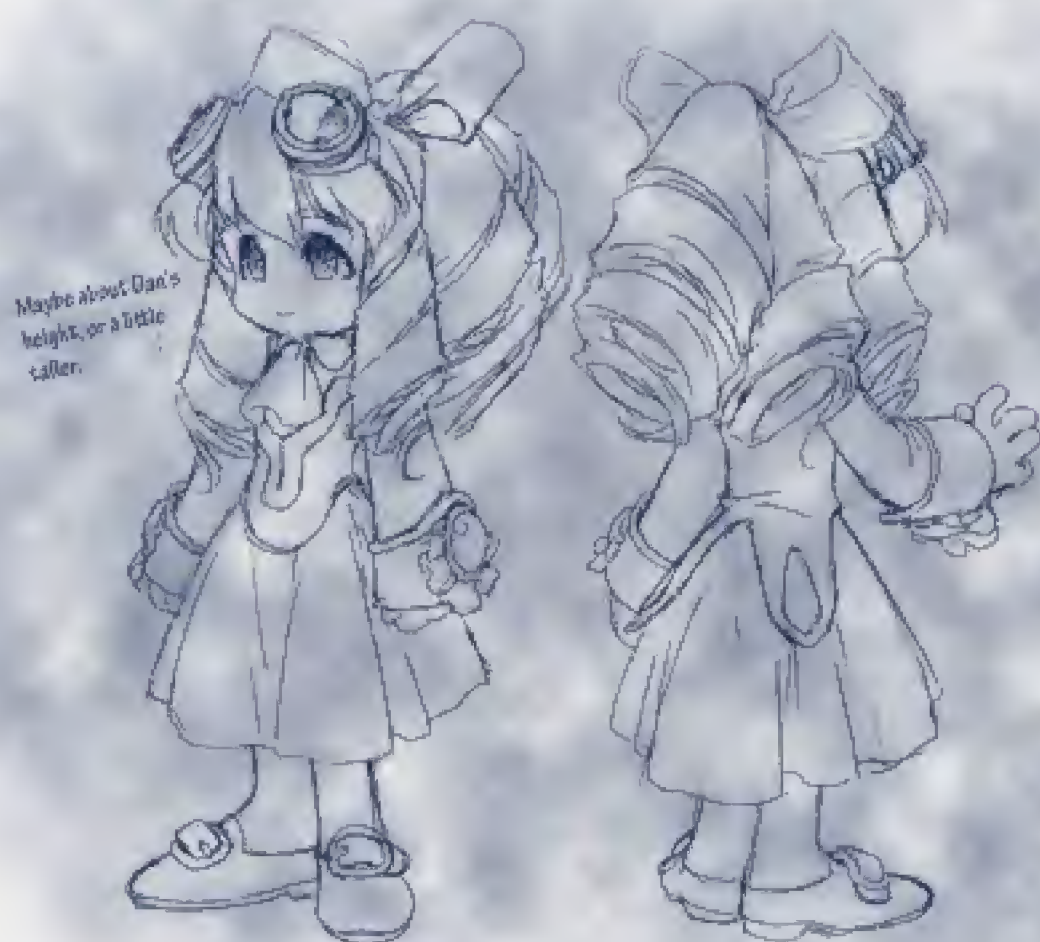


FROM DIRECTOR

[How about if the fastest to be made is a girl?] was sent out and everyone got the drift (Heh, heh). That was the only directive in this case (with the added goggles). So over time we got the design with Tanaka-kun's style of dress. The cute shoes have magnetic lifts in them.



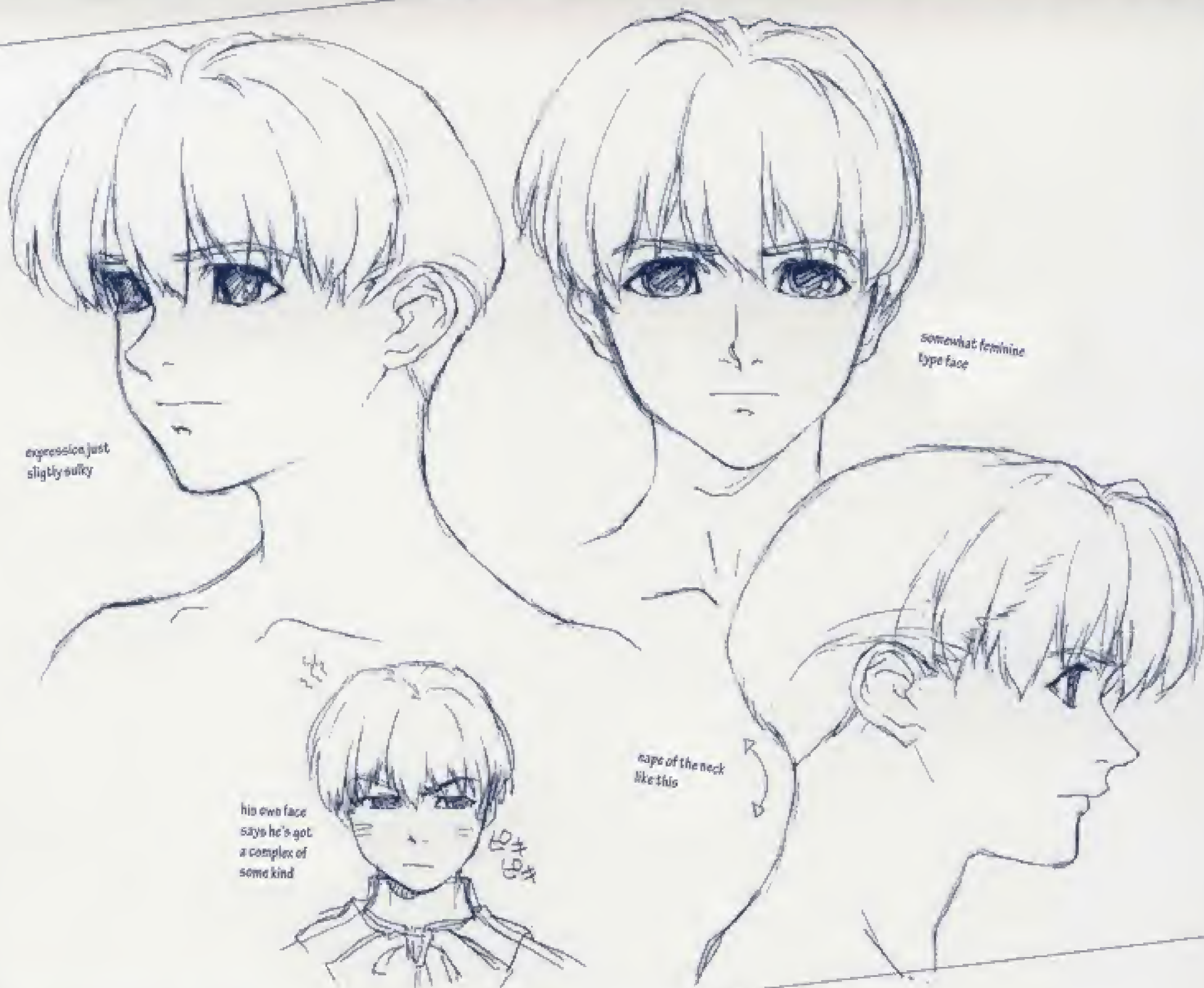
Rough draft



Maybe about Dan's height, or a little taller.



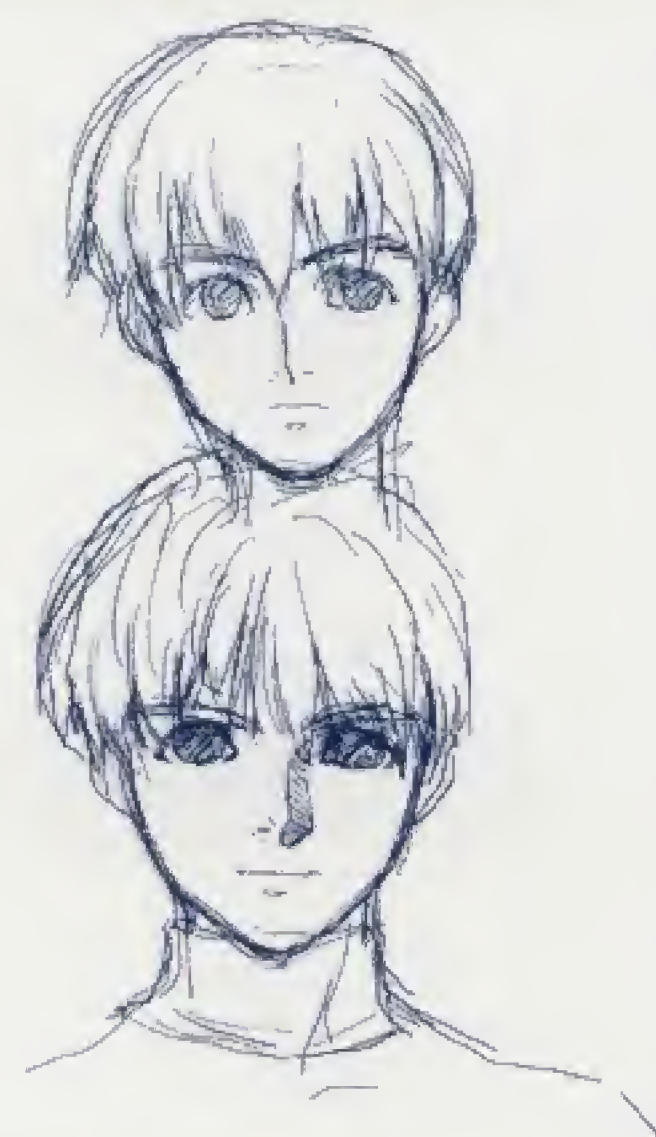




### FROM DIRECTOR

He appears around midway, and is a main character. Billy is like Bart, the interior staff designed him. Billy's appearance is a remnant of the lost civilization in the Aquvy area (partly excavated in the present). Originally, he was to have had long hair, but we wanted him to come off as a little more cool than that when compared to Bart. So can a bishounen with a pretty boy face be a 'cool and dry' kind of character? That's the concept of Billy. Why a holy man bearing guns? That's what we were asked all the time, and for the gun bearing holy man (shepherd) this is a popular image in some cultures (assuming Billy is a son of god).

Rough draft





# Emerada

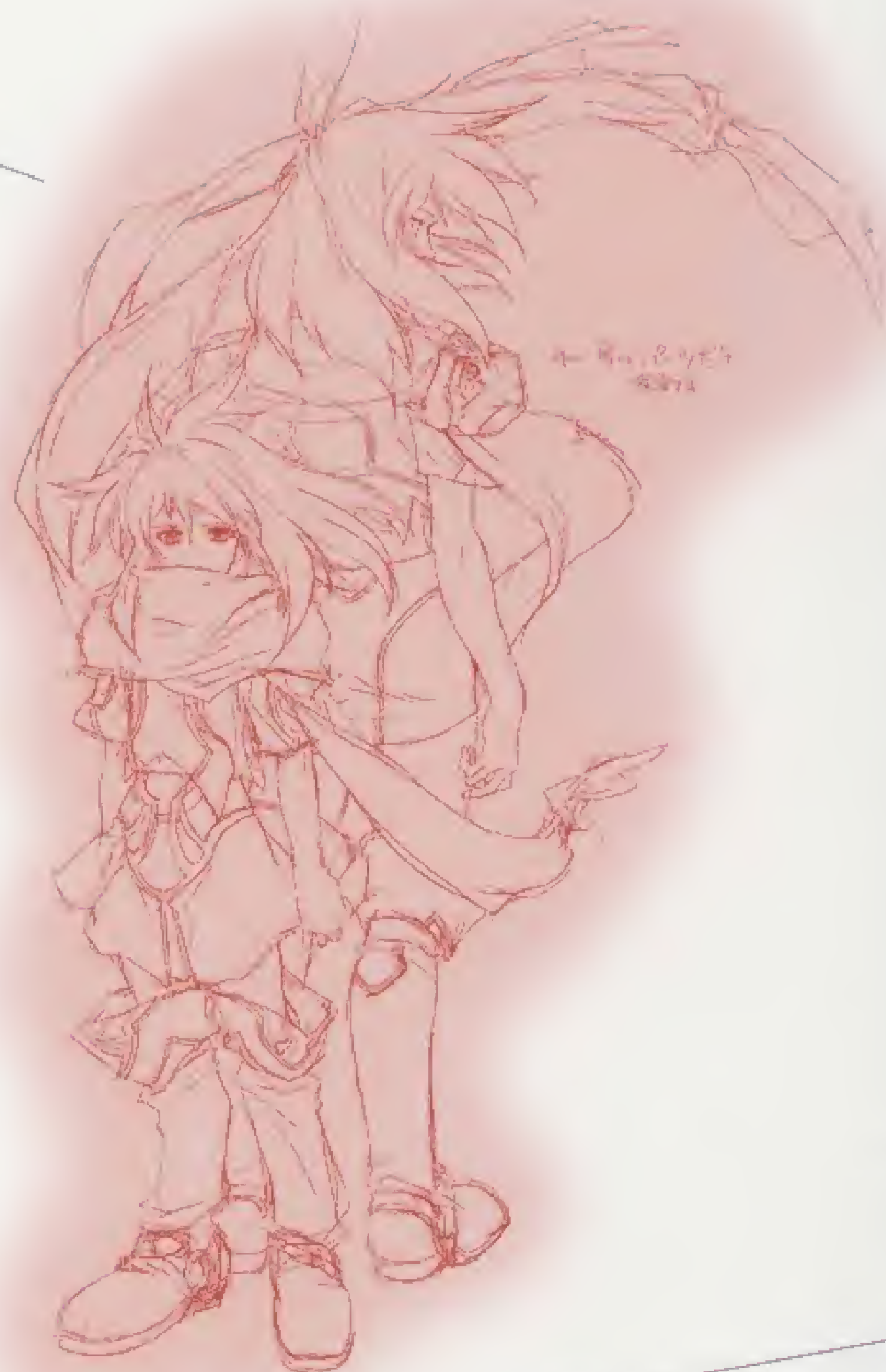
FROM DIRECTOR

From the first, she was Tanaka-kun's design along the lines of an Anime [Key] character, and was created as an artificial life that has no heart. Her clothing was destroyed when she didn't like what was supplied to her in Solaris, at least that's what Tanaka-kun says, and she asked for this line. Originally, because she was

able to transform her body, her face was the result of the personal data collected from Fei and Elly, the desired child they had always wanted (expected looks of their child) - and this might be why she is very precious to them.



- around 10~12 years old

[illegible]



# Sigrd

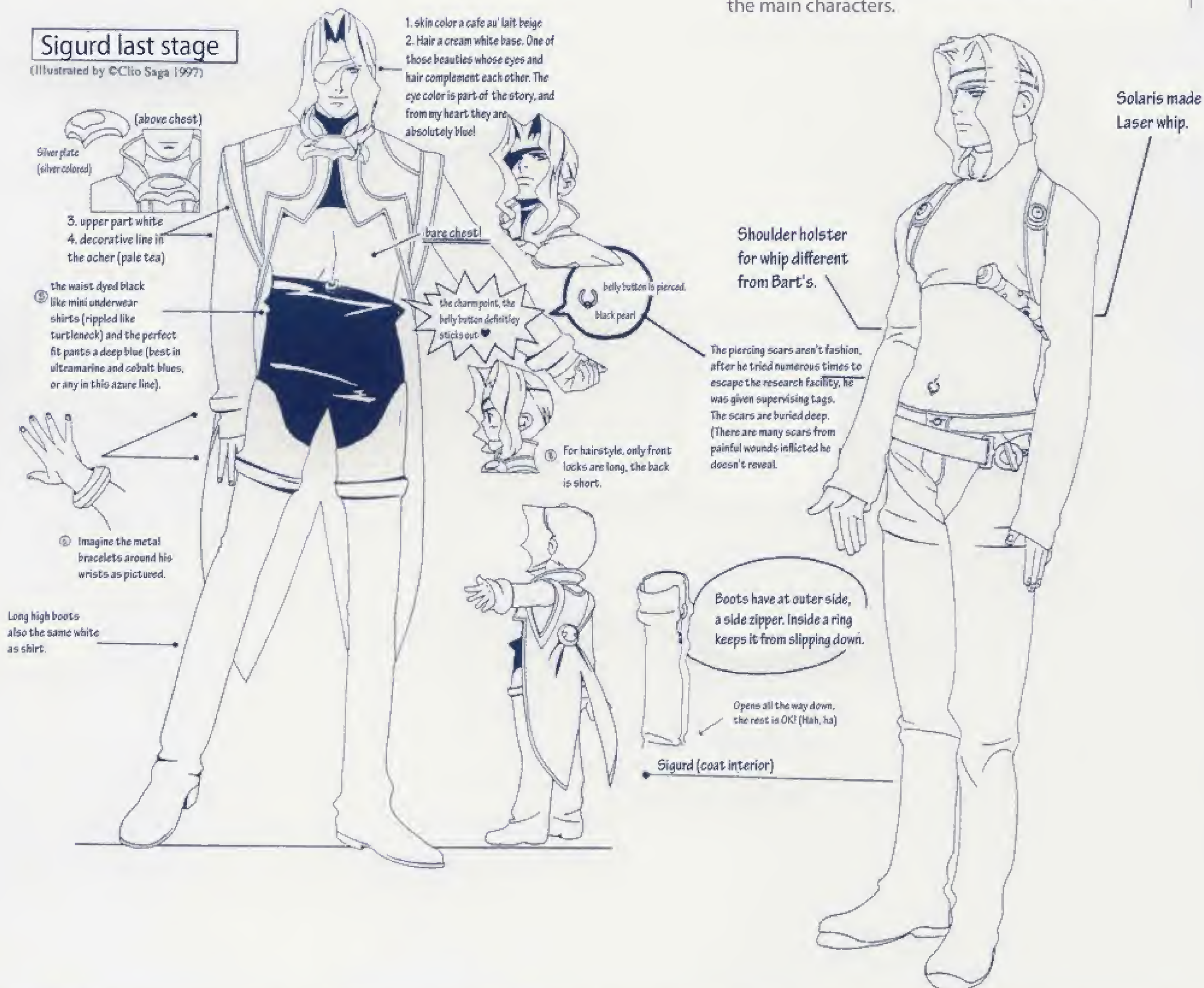


## FROM DIRECTOR

Sigrd's clothing was designed by the staff at Square. Because of schedule conflict, Tananka-kun was only able to draw the official face portrait. Out of all the sub characters, Sigrd is the most popular. I wish there had been a group of sketches like those for the main characters.

## Sigrd last stage

(Illustrated by ©Cllo Saga 1997)

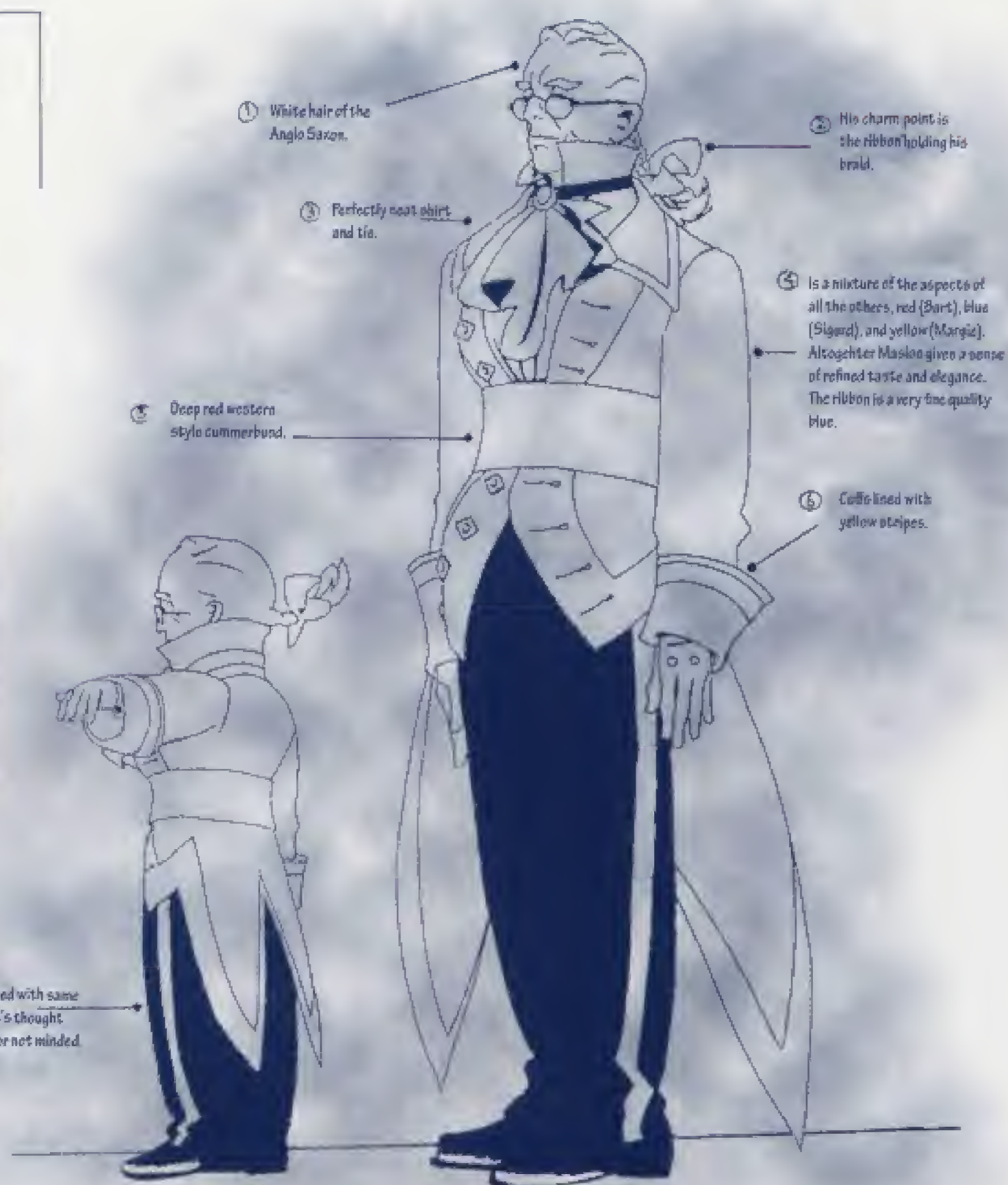




# FROM DIRECTOR

As ordered, like Batman's Alfred, or the actor Max Von Sidou, this is the impression. Ultimately he's closer to Alfred. Maison's hobby is polishing silver weaponry.

Mason



Banth

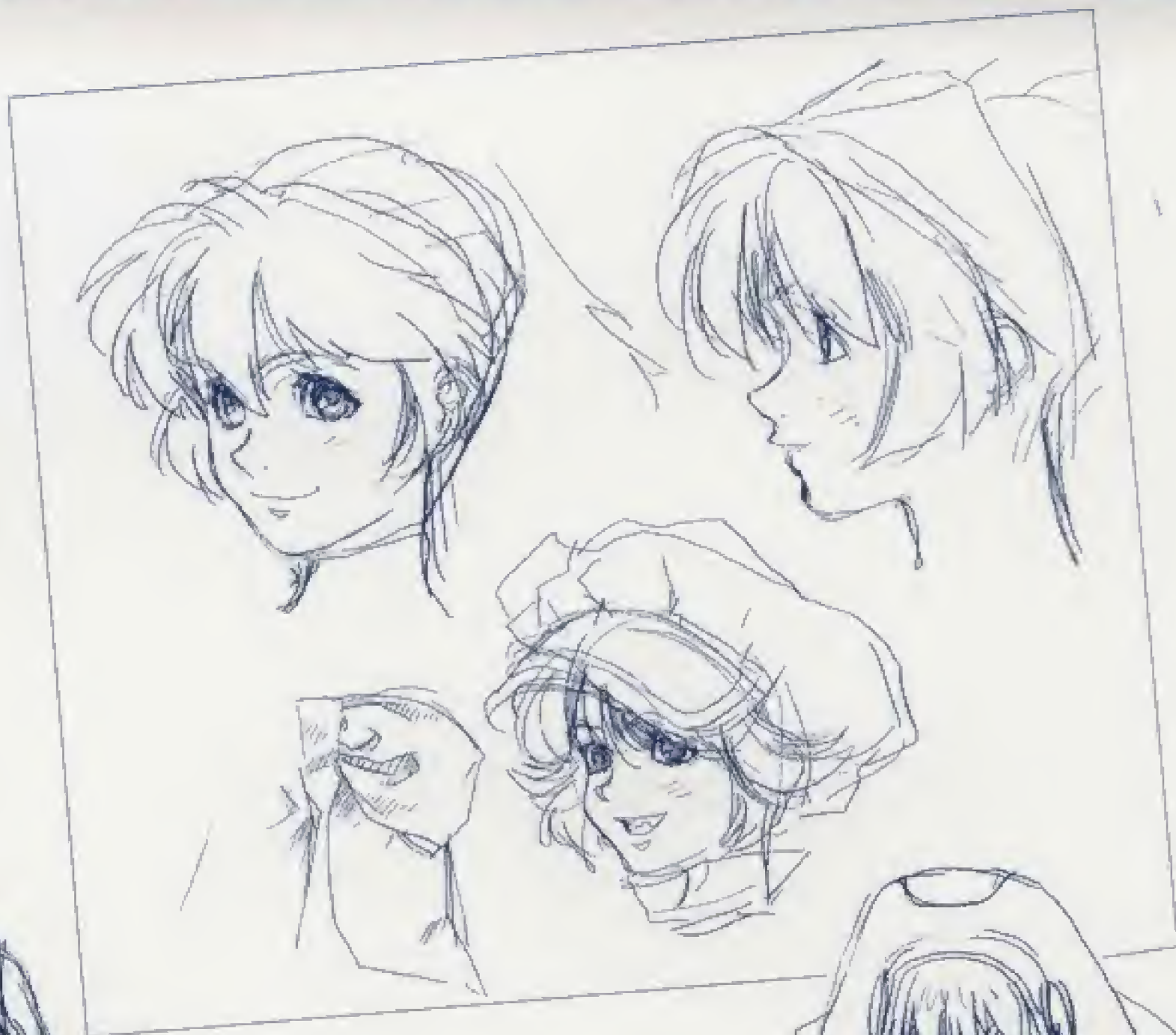
# FROM DIRECTOR

He's not a penguin. (Heh, heh).



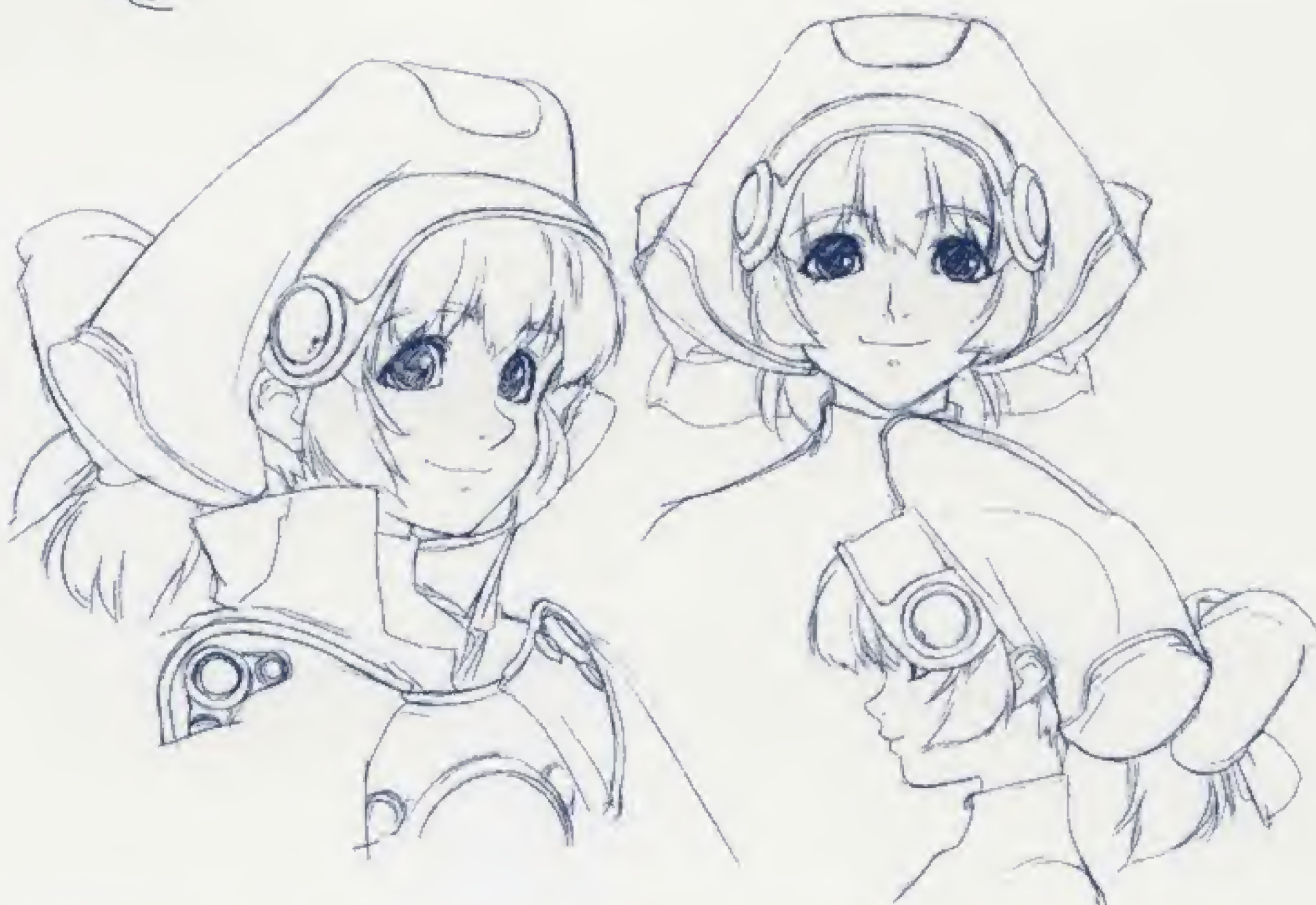


# Maroeur

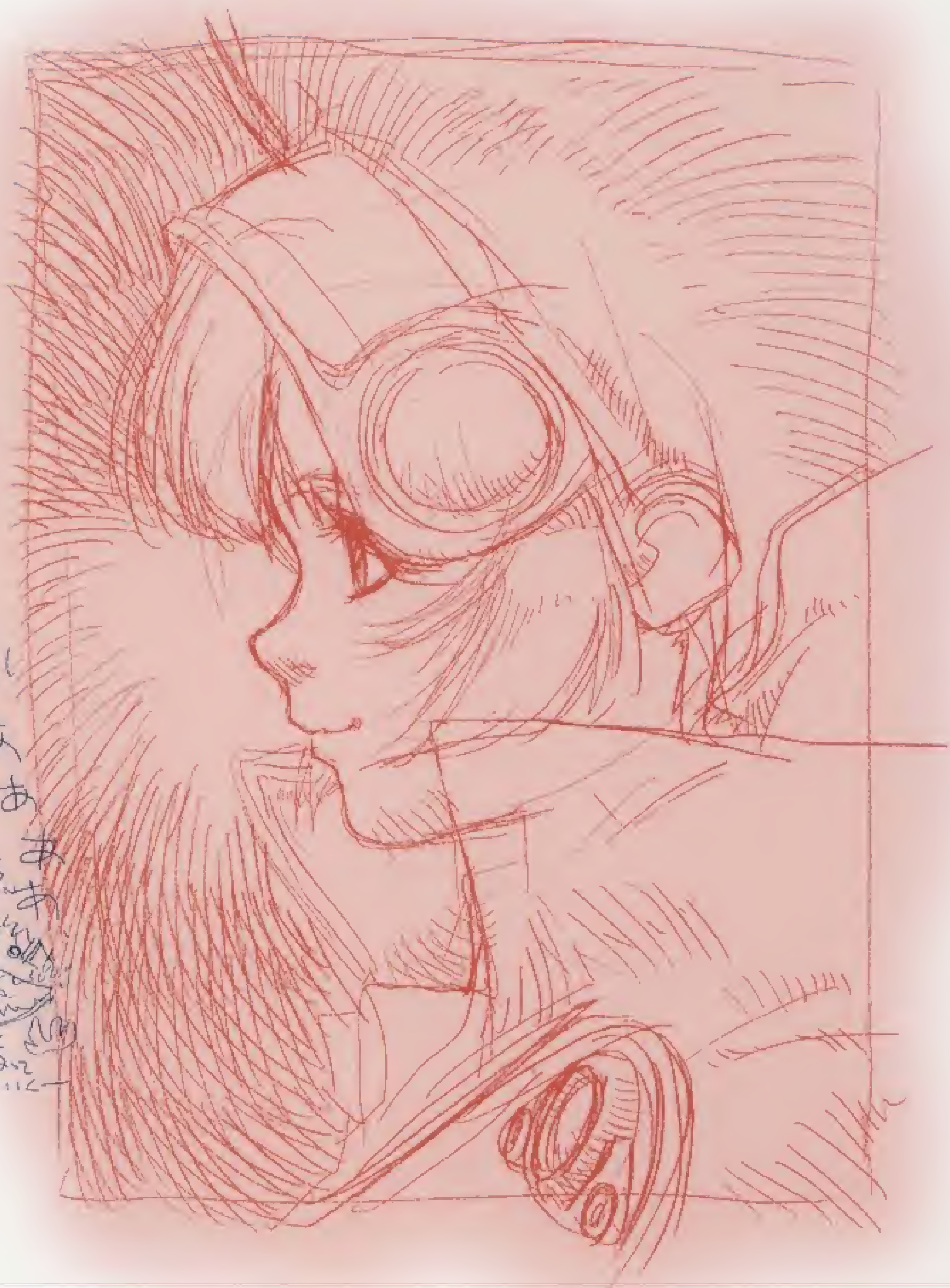
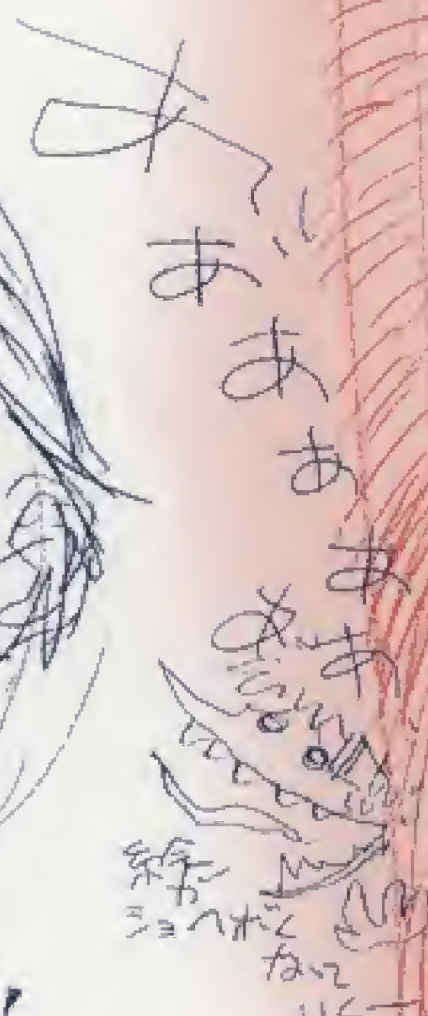
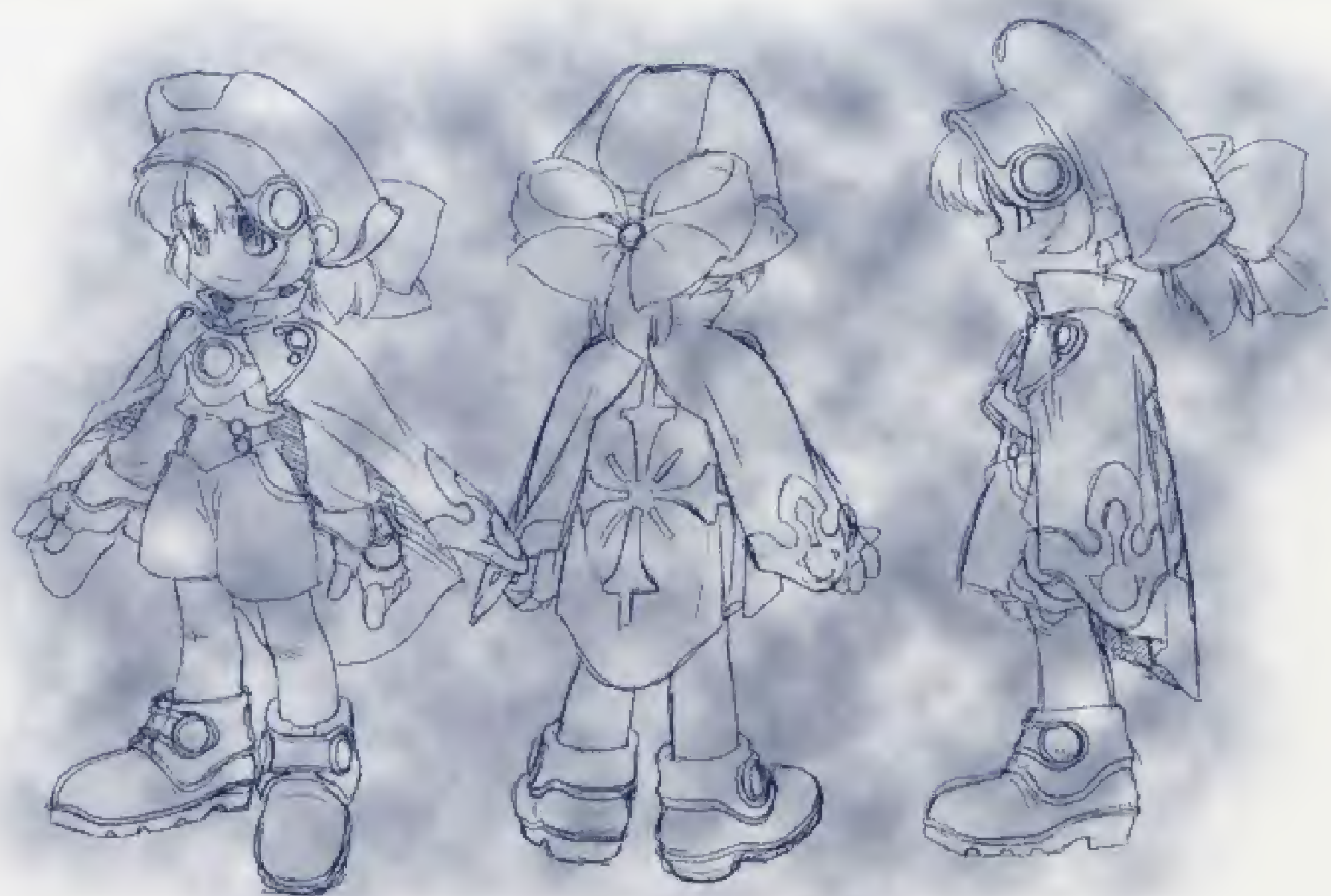


## FROM DIRECTOR

The appearance and clothing are from the staff at Square. For the role of Great Mother, the rough was dressed a little too much, so the revision is mine. However, the somber clothing she wears before the assembled people is very different. As is the Church itself. The bazooka and hammer in the rough are left over from when she was still a playable character (Tanaka plan).



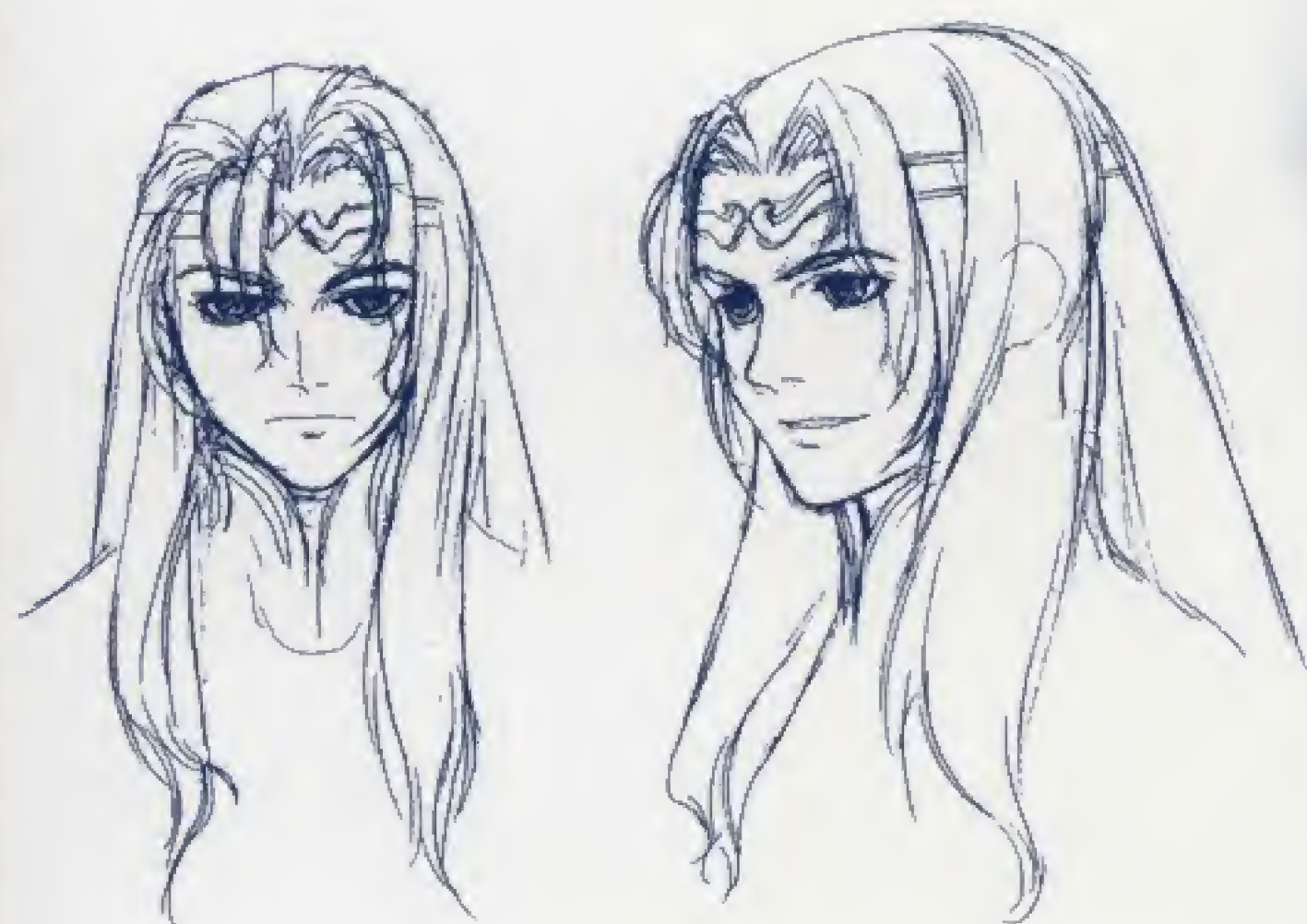






### FROM DIRECTOR

Tanaka-kun struggled very hard to design this prominent good looking character. That's because the design was particularly hard. The head band became a motif of Krelan (especially during his rampaging days before meeting Sophia) and is a symbol in the western culture of holiness. The design as Nisan Monastery Corps soldier is from the interior staff.



Karelle

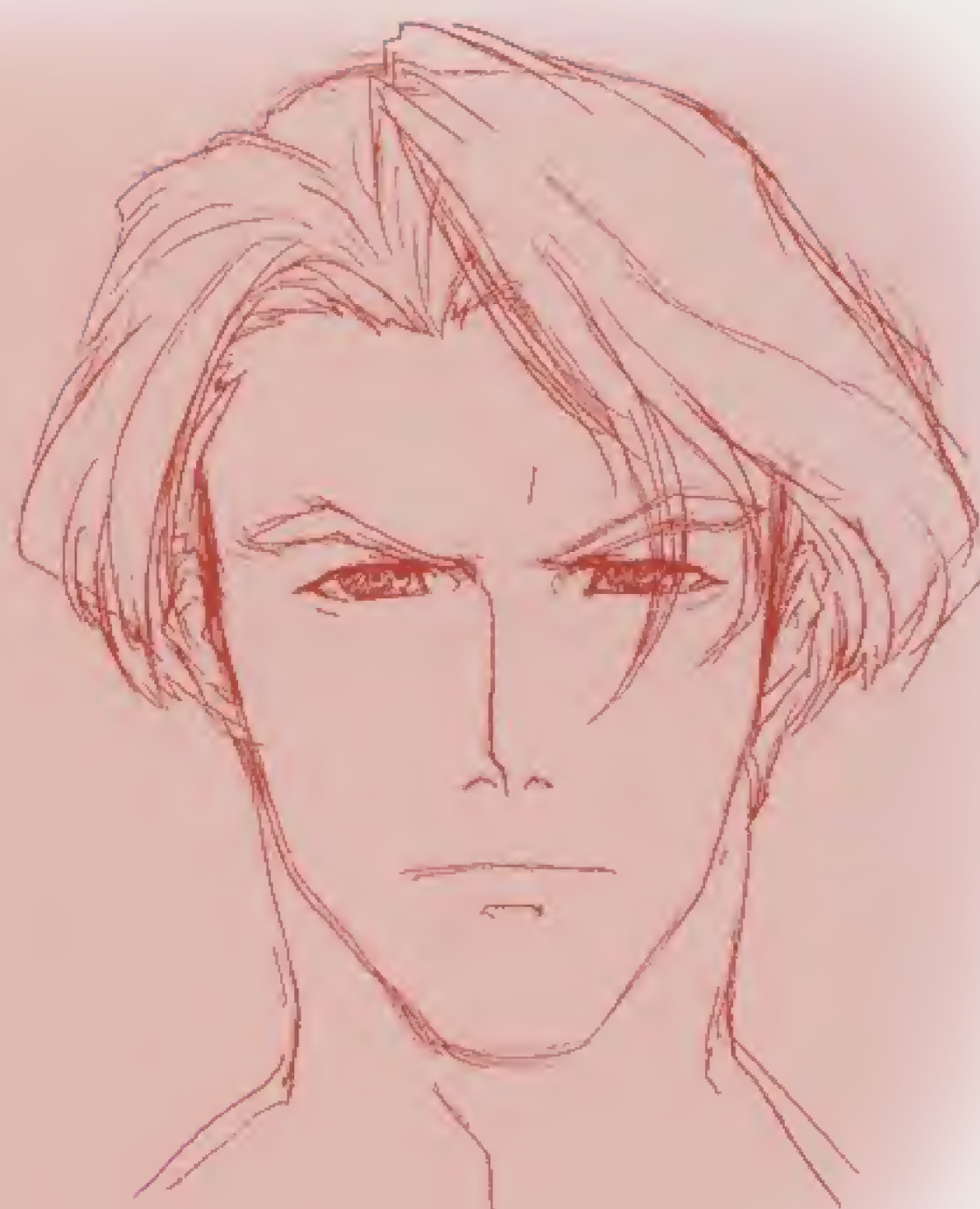


# Ramsus



## FROM DIRECTOR

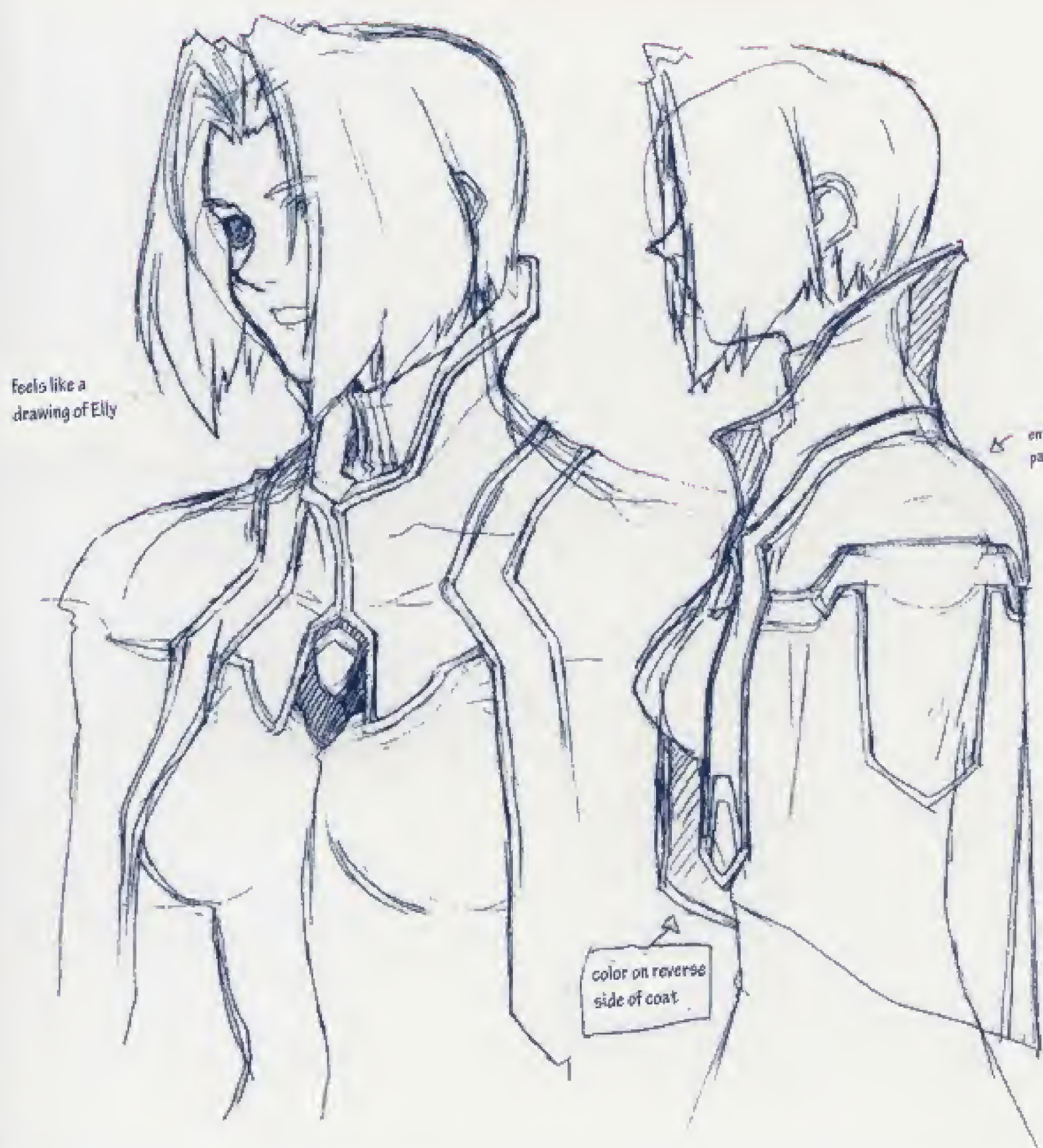
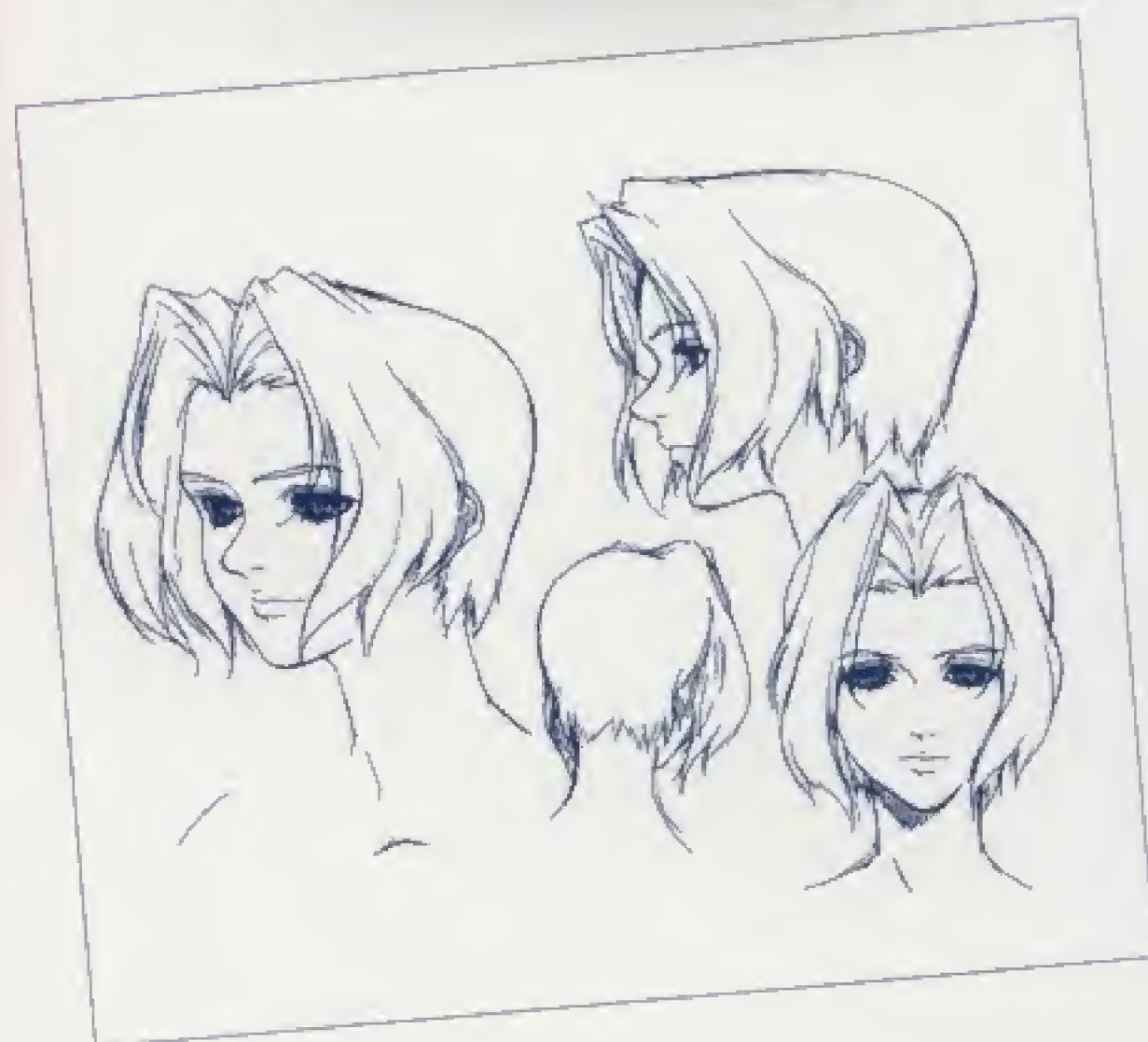
Radical and genius are words fitting this good looking character, but in truth he loses often. Even in spite of his appealing clothing, in the story there is very little good in him - and that's how Ramsus was designed (hah, ha). His clothes are typical of all in Solaris. For a long time, the lower half of his body was a mystery that is shown here. Finally, those aren't black pants (heh, heh).







# Myyah



Feels like a drawing of Elly

color on reverse side of coat



belt button around the size of a ten yen piece

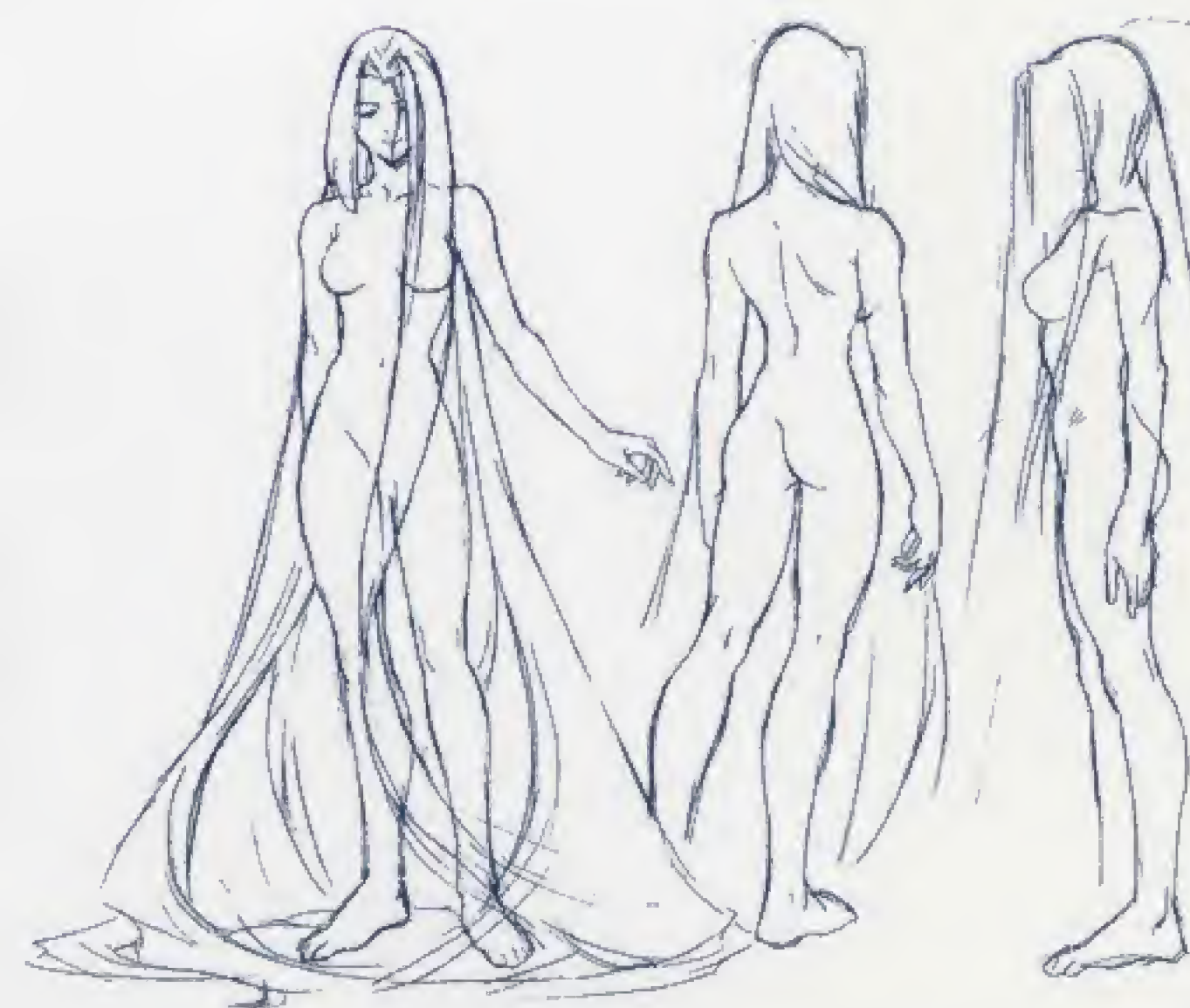
Coat hangs this far over the shoulder

enters mid shoulder part, surface is silk



# FROM DIRECTOR

I asked for Miang to have short hair in contrast to Elly's long hair. There is absolutely no genetic tie between her and Elly and as one of "those awakening 'as Miang", Tanaka-kun requested a woman reminiscent of Elly around 26 years old or so. He directed her clothing be a grade up from Elly's. The tight skirt gave a more adult look. At the ending Elly wears the same clothes (her green becoming blue). I like the exposed shoulders design.



Hair is not drawn straight, where do the locks go?

How does the back of the hair look?





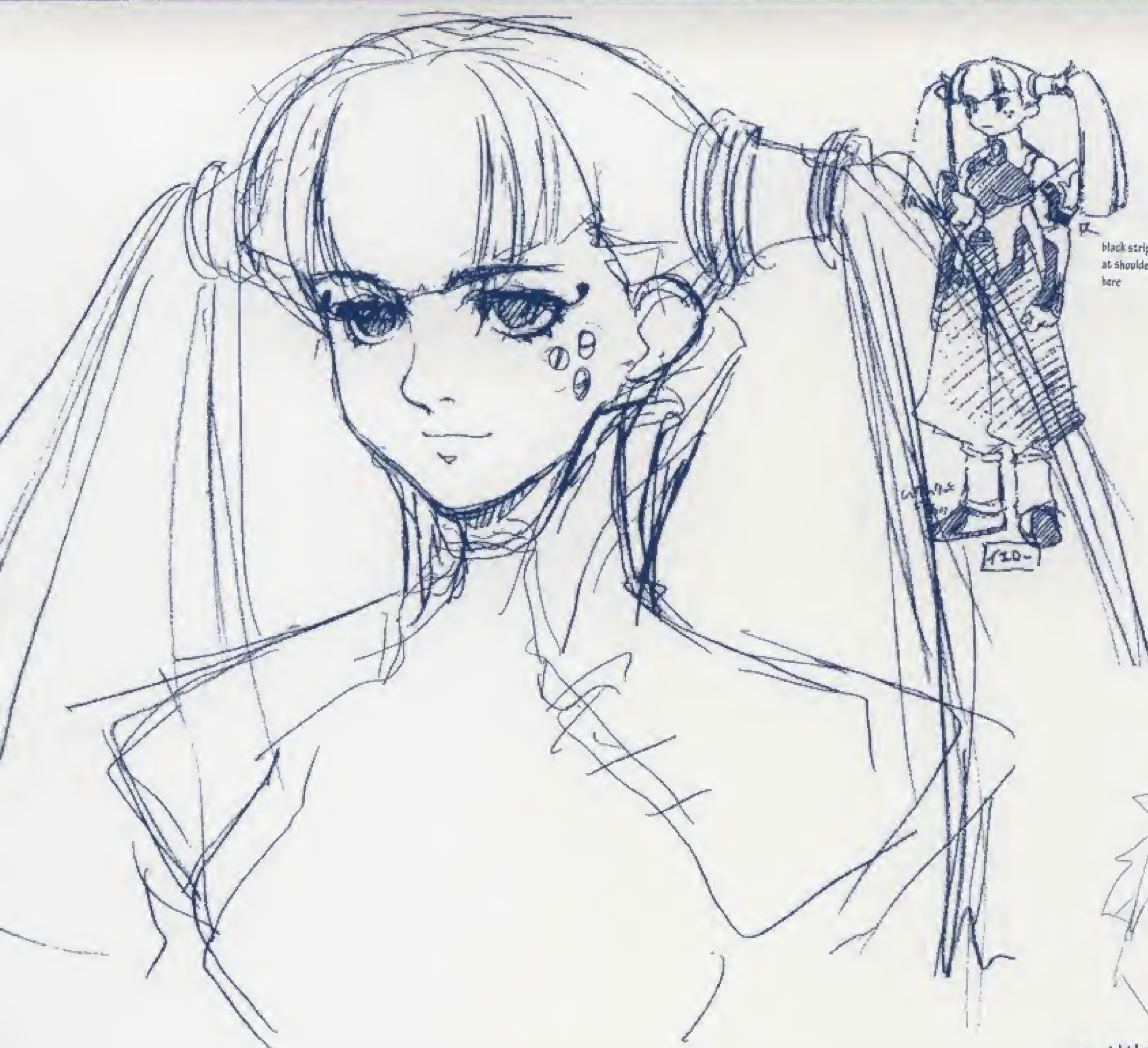
ELEM

Dominia  
/Cherubina

*FROM DIRECTOR*

The roughs for these girls was done by Takayama, and were not totally solidified. In particular their lower halves' clothing. The parts of both upper bodies (outside of Dominia's shoulder parts) and under parts (Dominia's long pants, Kelvena's skirt, Tolone's trousers, Seraphita's shorts.) and with variations of all these, different combinations emerge. Dominia was drawn as a forceful character. Kelvena regardless was a character as service to the boys.



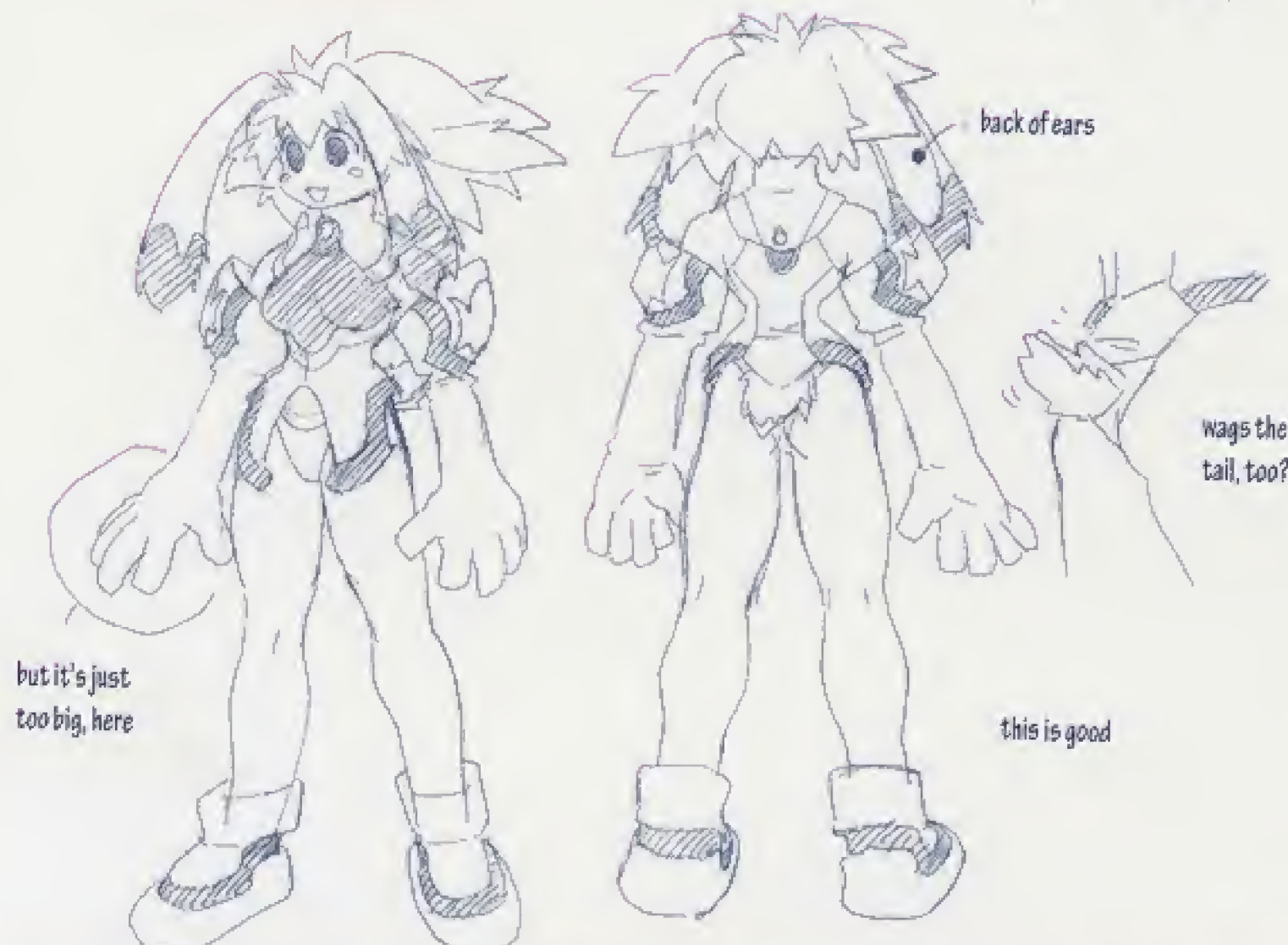
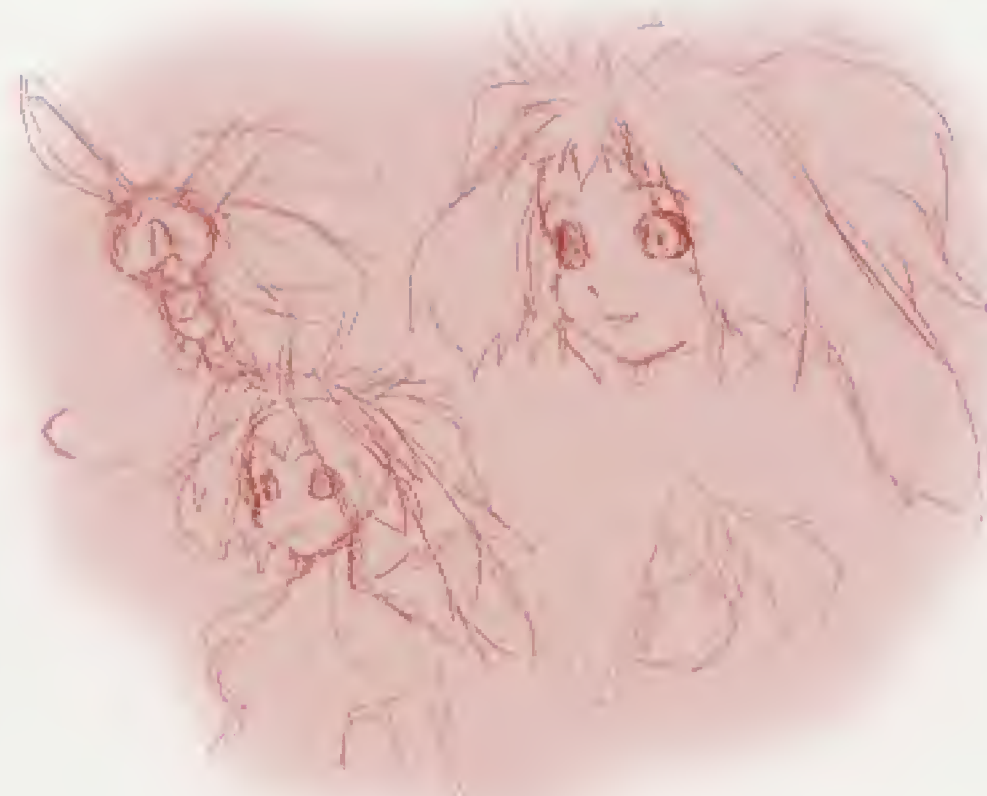


ENTS

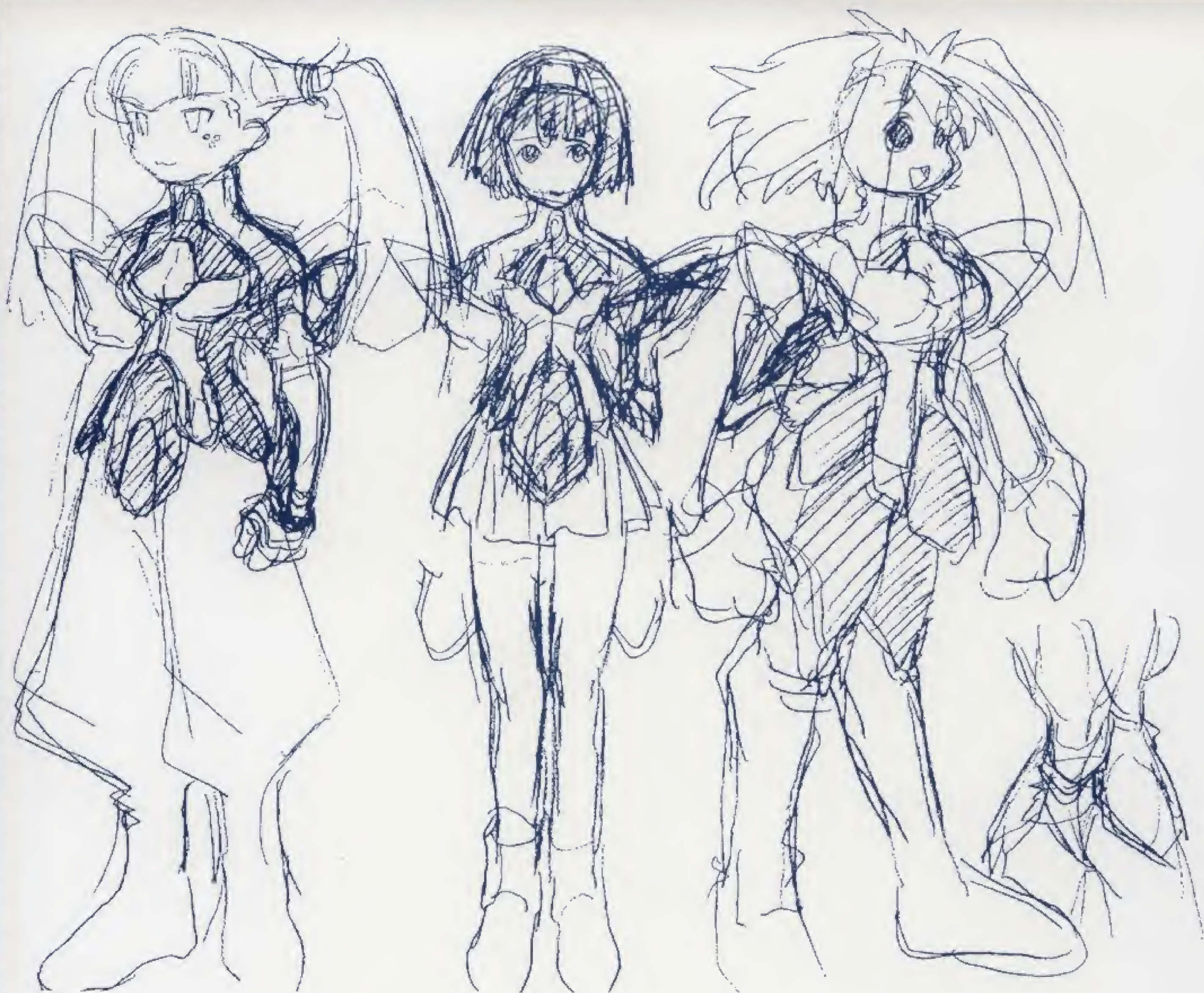
# Throne /Seraphita

## FROM DIRECTOR

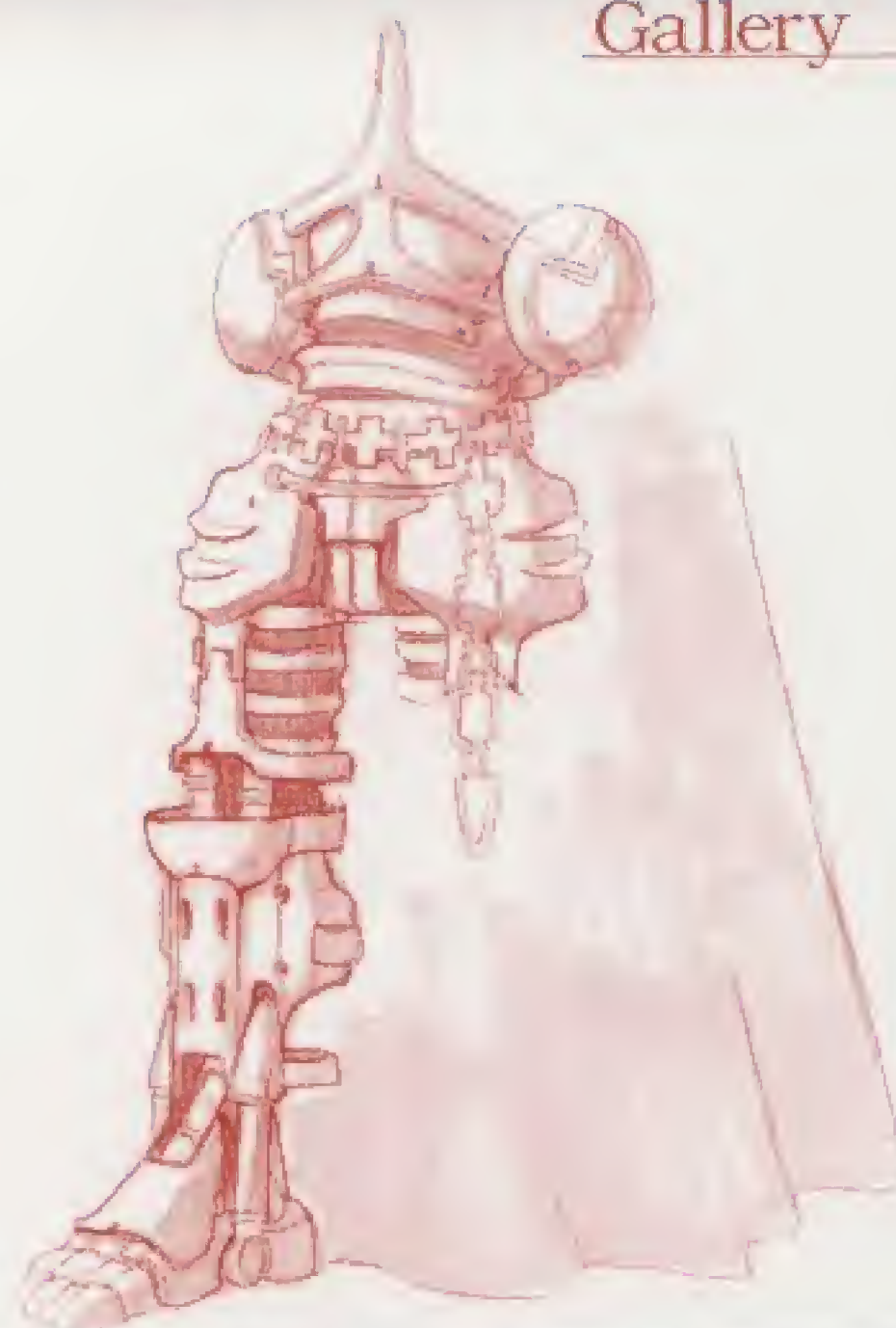
Not much was expected of Tolone other than she's a cyborg, and she came together quickly. The bangs are just right (and the spots are screws. I liked how Robocop's screws could go "gyu-gyu-"). Seraphita was ordered as a [a demi-human] and Tanaka-kun who loves bunnies, drew the character and just stretched(a bad stretch?)







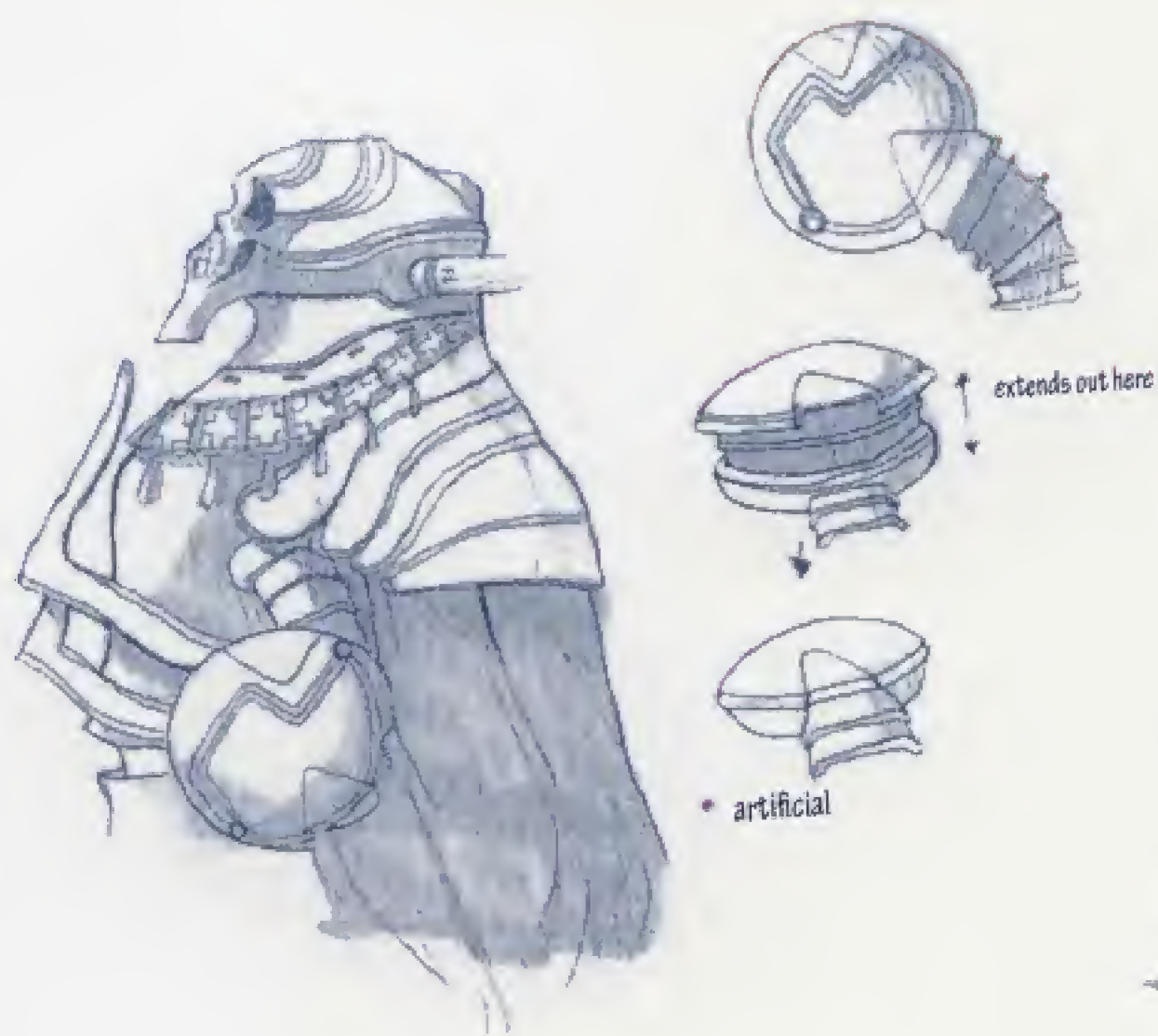




## Emperor Cain

### FROM DIRECTOR

Asking for a silver skeleton we came to feel that the gold part would work just as well (hah, hah). The face behind the mask would probably have Ramsus' style of beauty (Ramsus himself was fused with Solarian Kahran, so even though he is a copy of Cain, he doesn't have his exact appearance.)



## Captain of Tams

### FROM DIRECTOR

A walrus.







Jesse

*FROM DIRECTOR*

Jessie is about 100% inside design, refined by Tanaka-kun. For the same reason as Billy, he is dressed in the same style.



Prim

*FROM DIRECTOR*

Her clothing was inside design, with Tanaka-kun drawing her face.





Graf's back



Rough draft



### FROM DIRECTOR

He looks like Darth Vader - as ordered. In terms of the masked design, we had a hard time with this one. The mask, because it was worn, had fairly complicated lines, and it is hard to find another example of such careful balance. However, behind Id and Graf, there are many tears in the drawing process (Ha, ha).



# Id



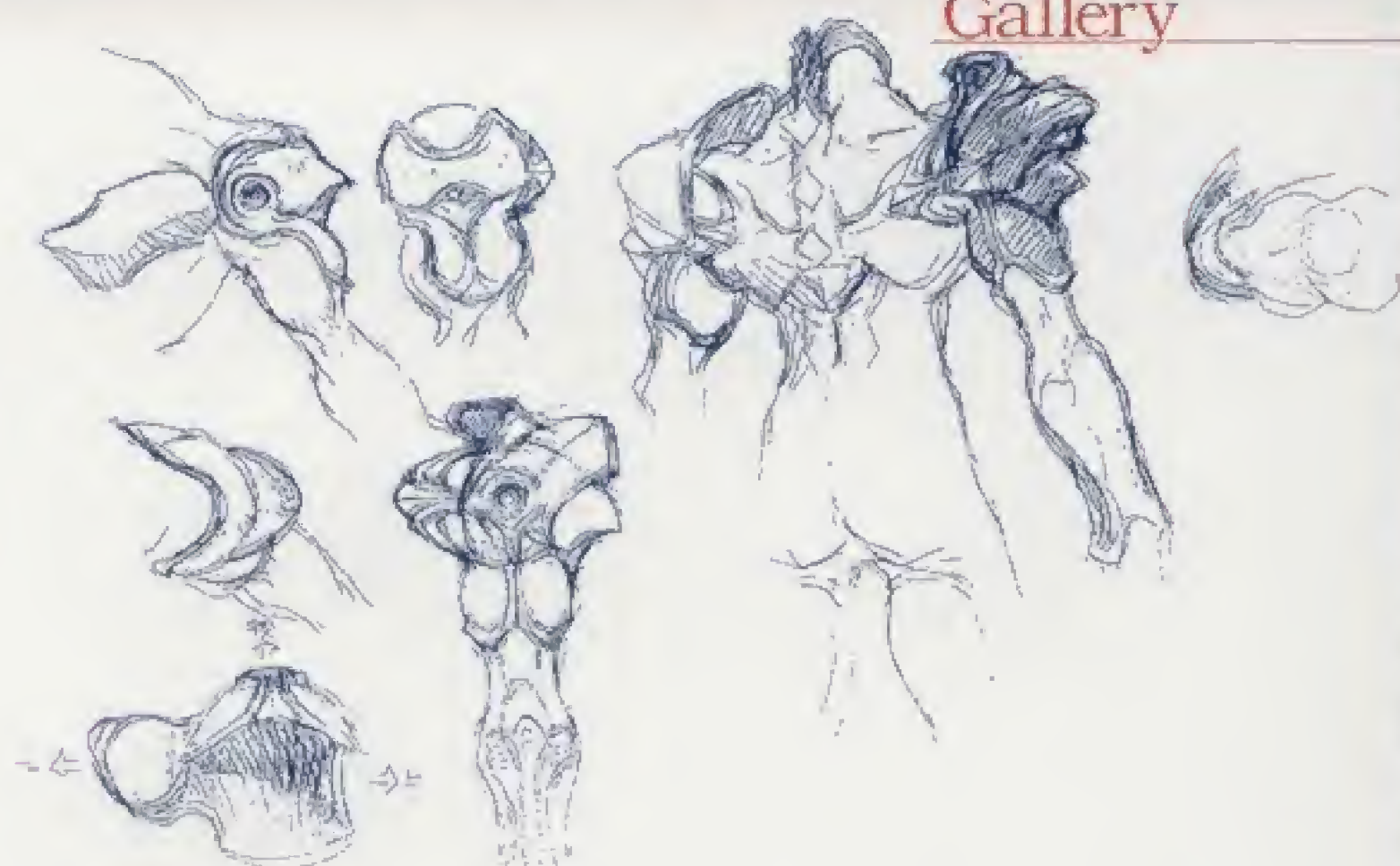
## FROM DIRECTOR

Unlike Fei, this guy is really out there, and this is part of the process of their difference. The first drafts were really hard, and after much thought, Tanaka-kun made him much better looking. For the clothing, at that time, Tanaka-kun adopted something along anime lines. When Fei changes to Id, how the clothes change too is still a mystery to me.





Rough draft



金髪赤眼  
ウズイ(金髪赤眼)

金髪赤眼  
ウズイ(金髪赤眼)

オオ三白眼  
赤眼赤眼

※基本はアイズ

決定稿



腕の構造  
など



# FROM DIRECTOR

This wasn't specially ordered, but due to Tanaka-kun's love of martial arts movies, the father came together pretty fast. He looks strong and his resemblance to Ishi - San is in the imagination.

# Karn

Fei

muscular neck

299.122

bad looking shoes here

X

O

ヤーンの髪止り  
(ツルハシ状)

髪止りの  
お中の部分で  
の髪は止る







## Wiseman

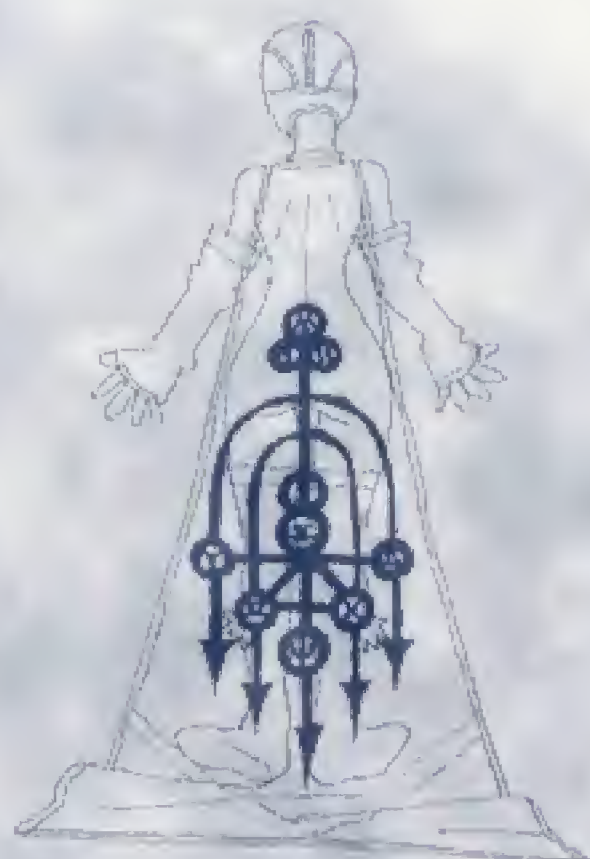
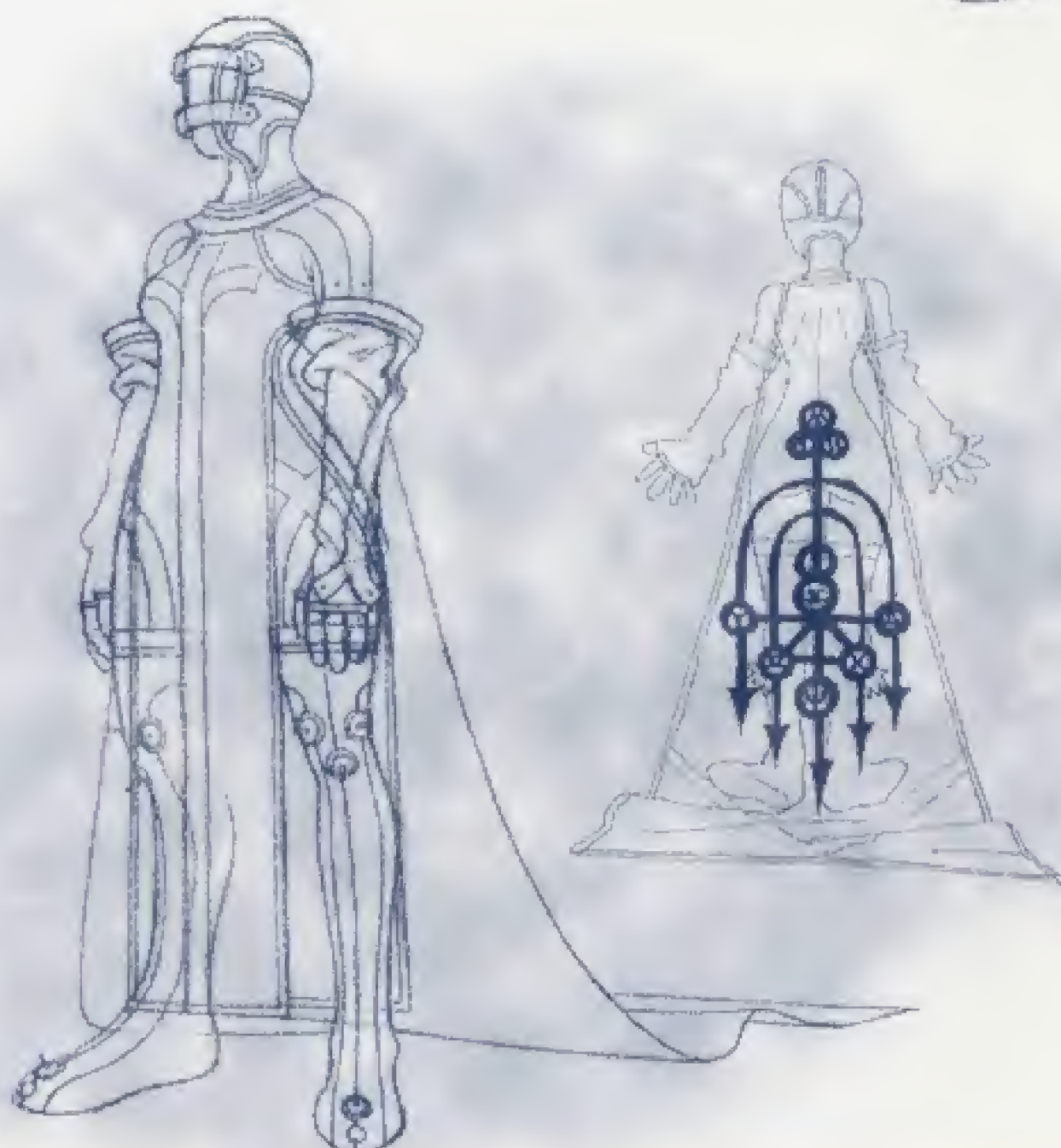
### FROM DIRECTOR

Out of all of them, this is a cute character. He was called 'dolphin' during production. The design base was inside work, but the rest was Tanaka-kun's.

## Kalen

### FROM DIRECTOR

Other than as Fei's mother, not much more was ordered. Her kind face and scary face are interchangeable (ha, ha). I love her expression in the movie.



## Executioner

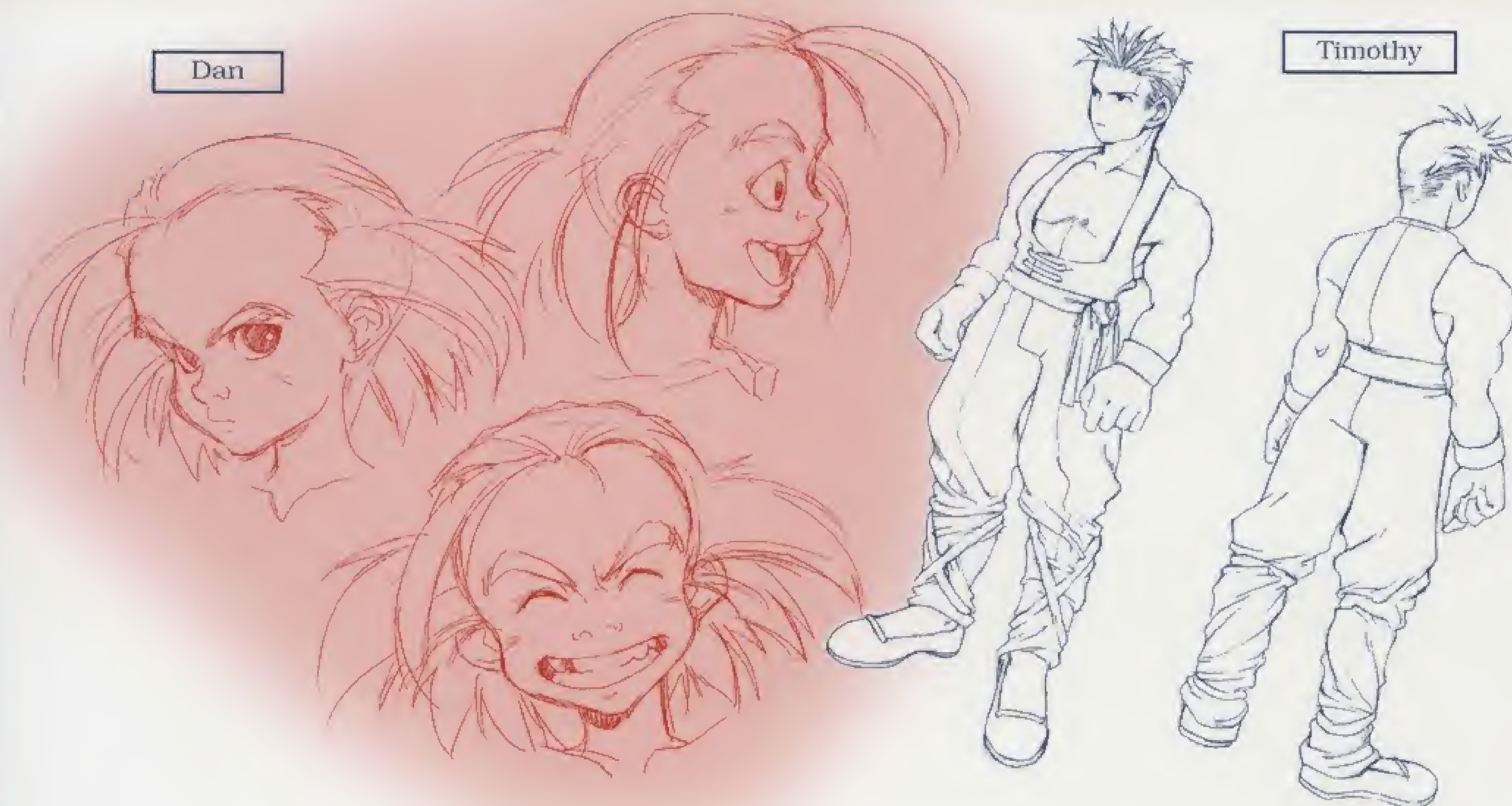
### FROM DIRECTOR

Miang's form as Guardian Angel. This is the interior design staff's. The face portrait is Tanaka-kun's.



Dan

Timothy



Midori



Yui

Aruru

## Peoples

### FROM DIRECTOR

Other than Dan, the quick death of all the Lahan Villagers who appear was not ordered specifically by me. And Dan is just a little out there, I think. The episode of Alice is one part. Alice is the first main event's character as ordered, and after the destruction of Lahan, while Timothy's death as her fiance sounded good, we thought about leaving her alive to follow Fei around. A woman like that couldn't come between their (Fei and Elly's) path to love, so she died off right away with the other villagers. Let us pray.





Hamaeda-San

## Hammer

### FROM DIRECTOR

Inside staff design. Finishing by Shi (additional note: One of the animators was a sub character designer) as directed. Hammer's appearance was one of the models of square designer in the Front Mission team Hamaeda-kun. Hammer and Rico's relationship was aided by asking the input of FF designer Yashiro-Kun. Hamaeda-kun says "crap!" often!

## Big Joe

### FROM DIRECTOR

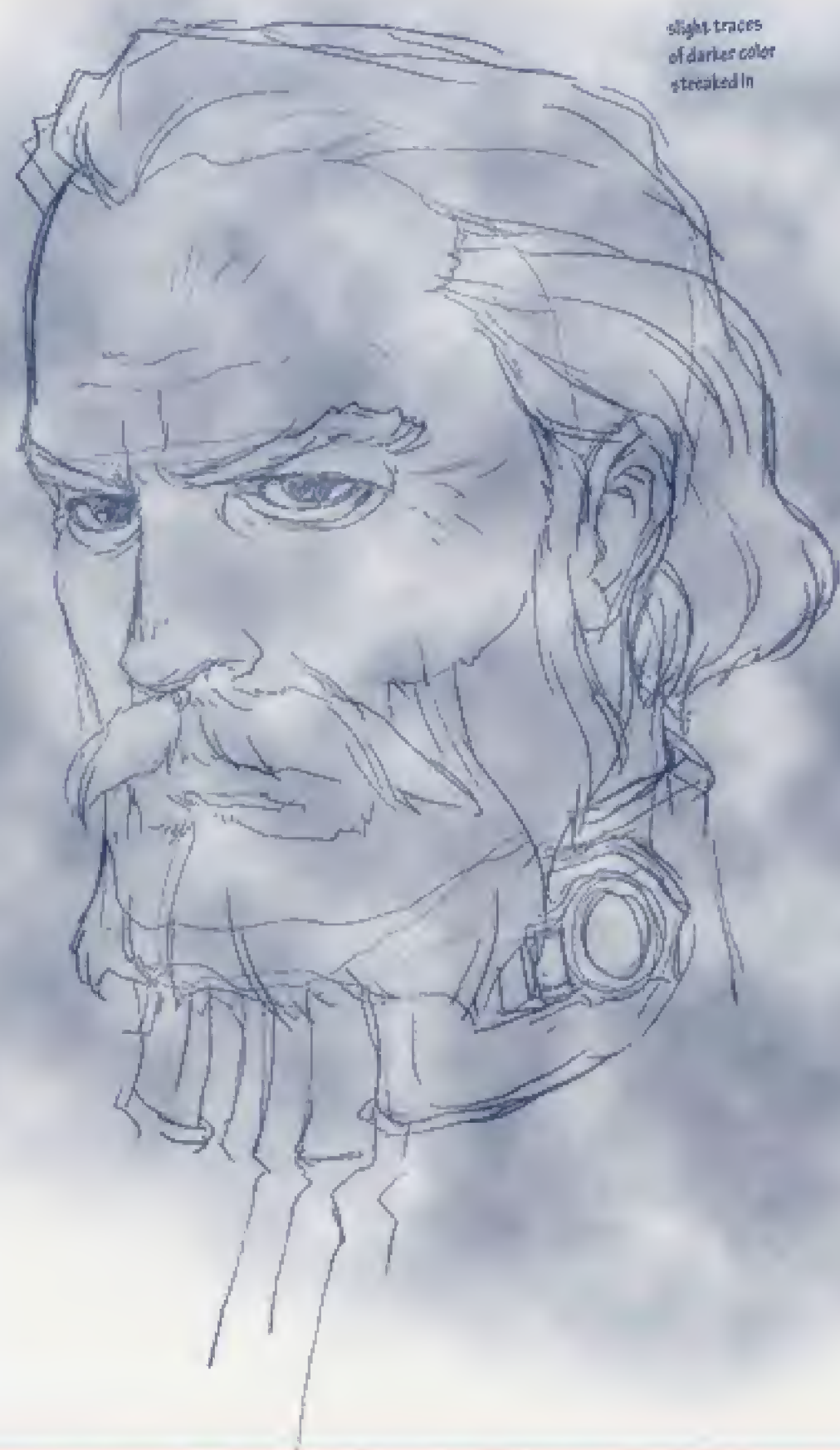
A gag character. Tanaka-kun asked in the course of writing for the addition of an awesome NPC. For this reason, his profile is also absurd. Please don't believe anything (Hah, ha!).



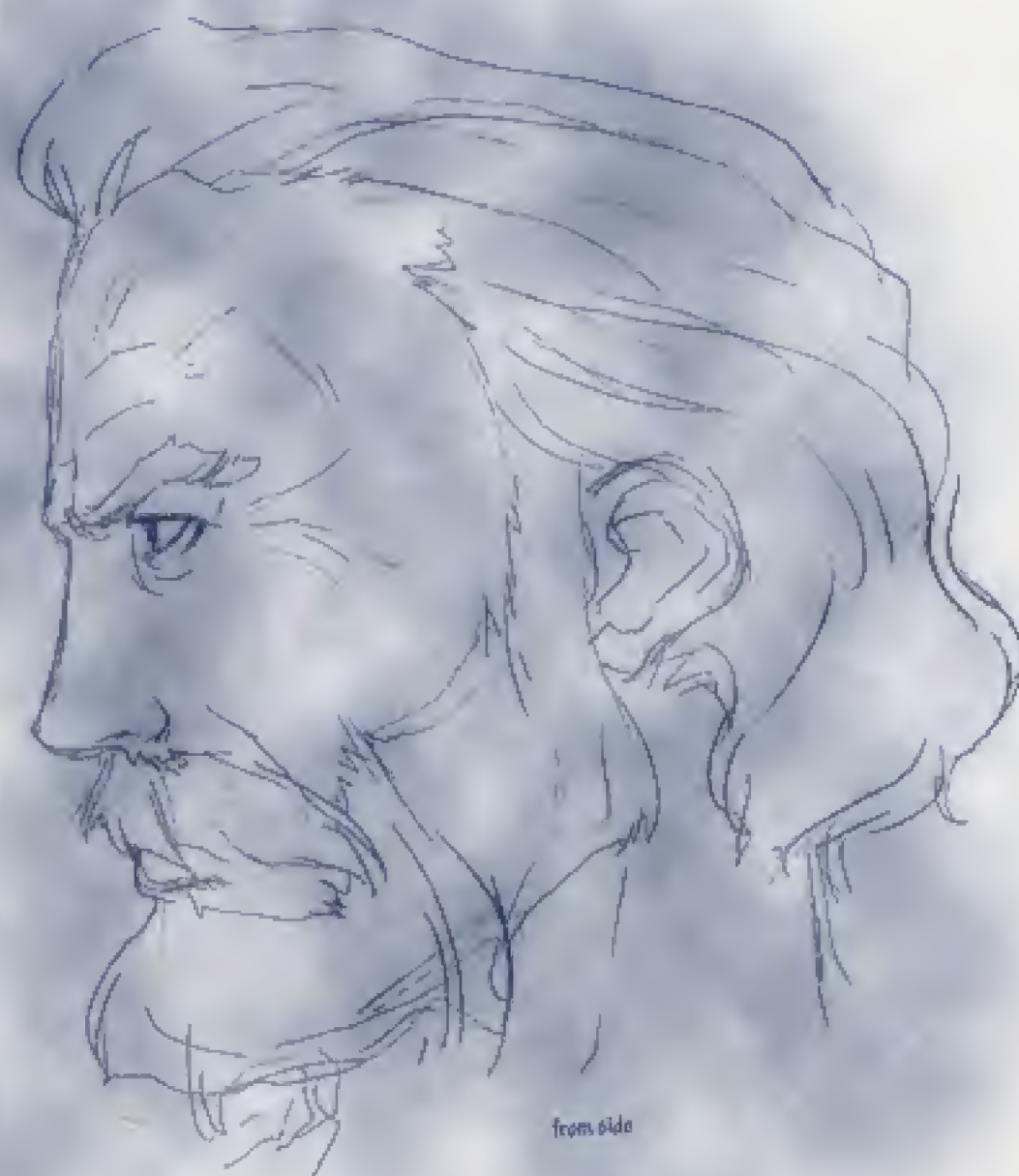




Meg  
SCARED



slight traces  
of darker color  
streaked in



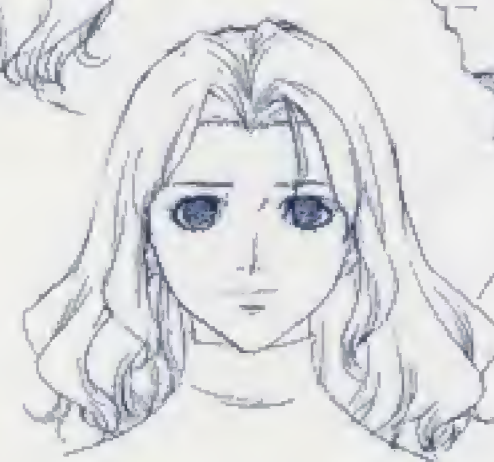
from side

The Captain

## CHARACTERS FROM



←  
maybe a  
little thinner  
to here



Operator Women



the Captain's wife

Wife of the Captain

make the look in the eyes younger?



○ Captain's daughter



Daughter of the Captain

## OPENING MOVIE

Other parents seen  
Mother



Kid (boy)



doesn't matter how drawn, the back is this

pocket on back

general people

Woman A

on the hair



Man A



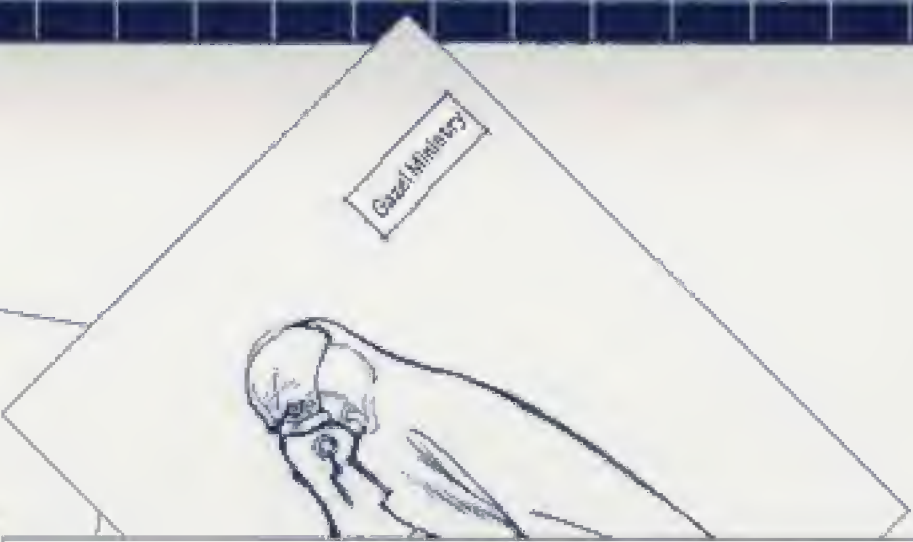
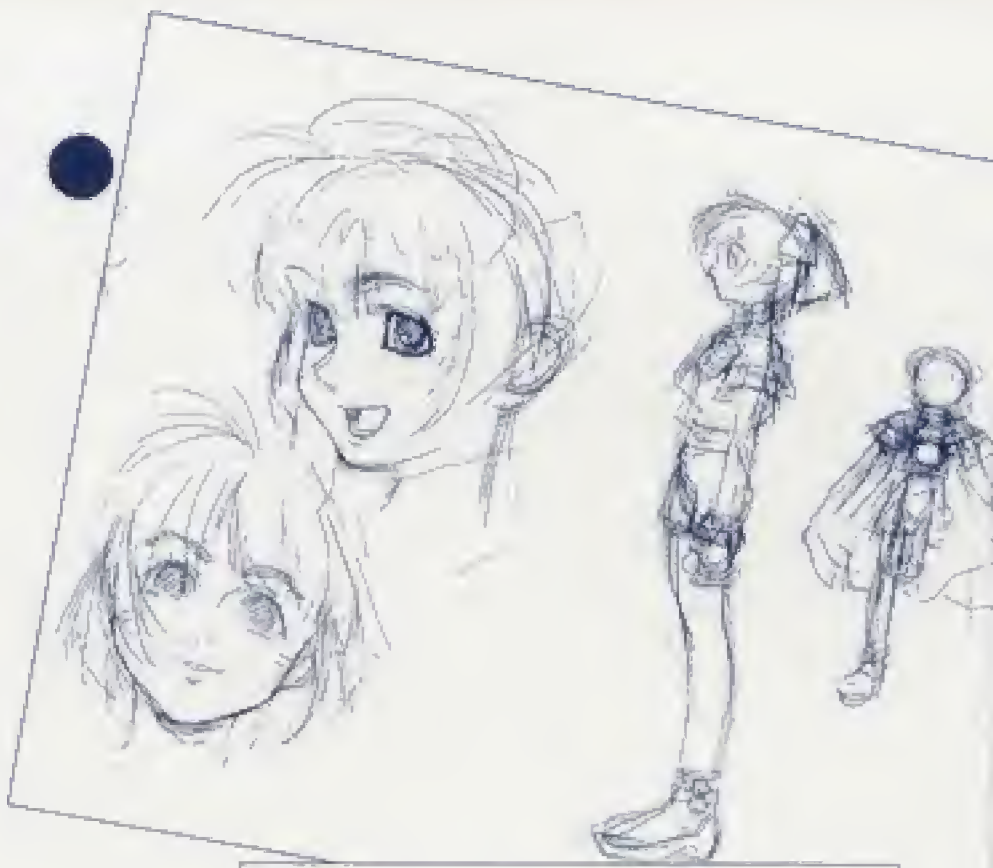
Others

### FROM DIRECTOR

While their names are never known in the story, the Captain's name is [Special Colonel Shigeyoshi Inoue]. By the way, who's Meg ...?



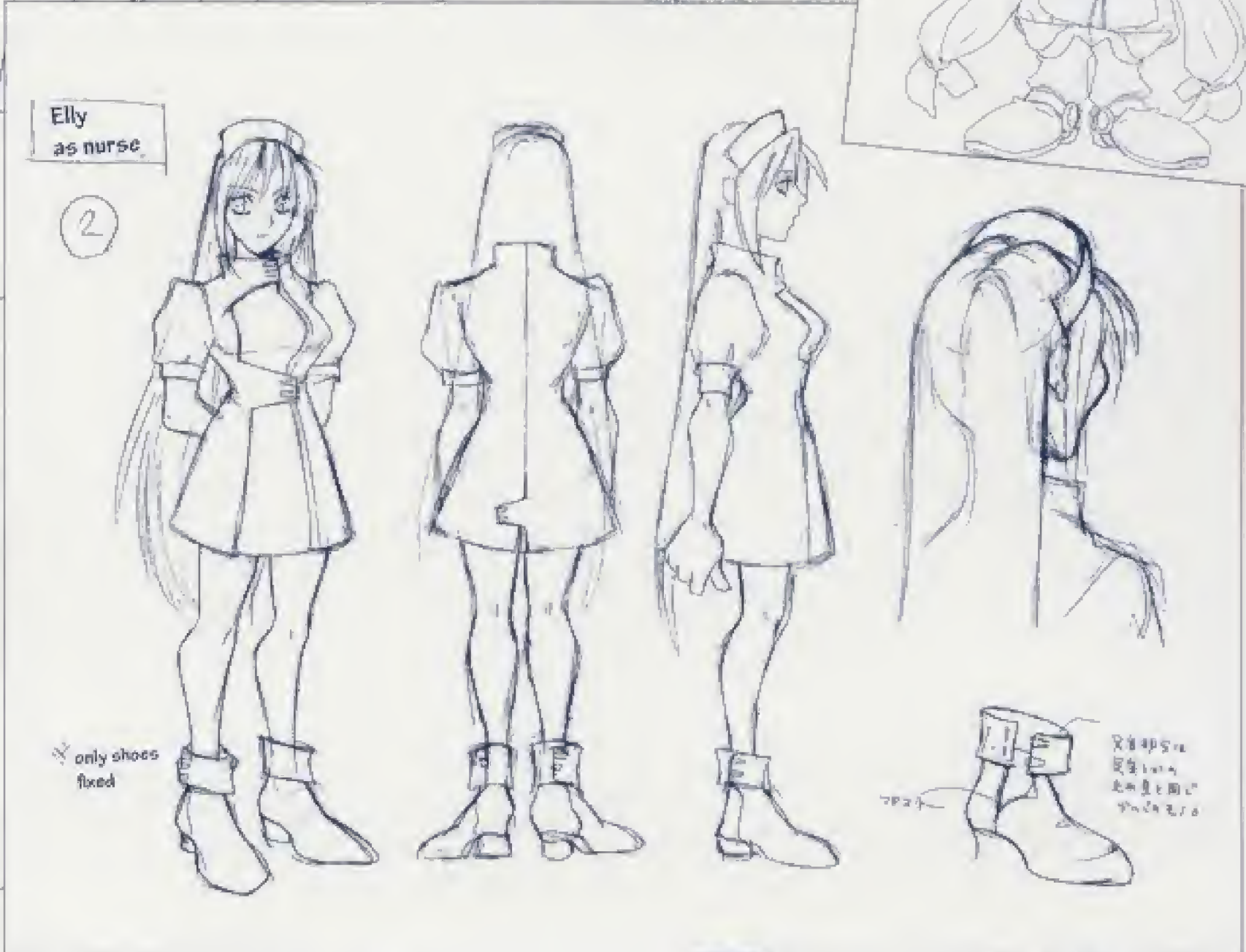
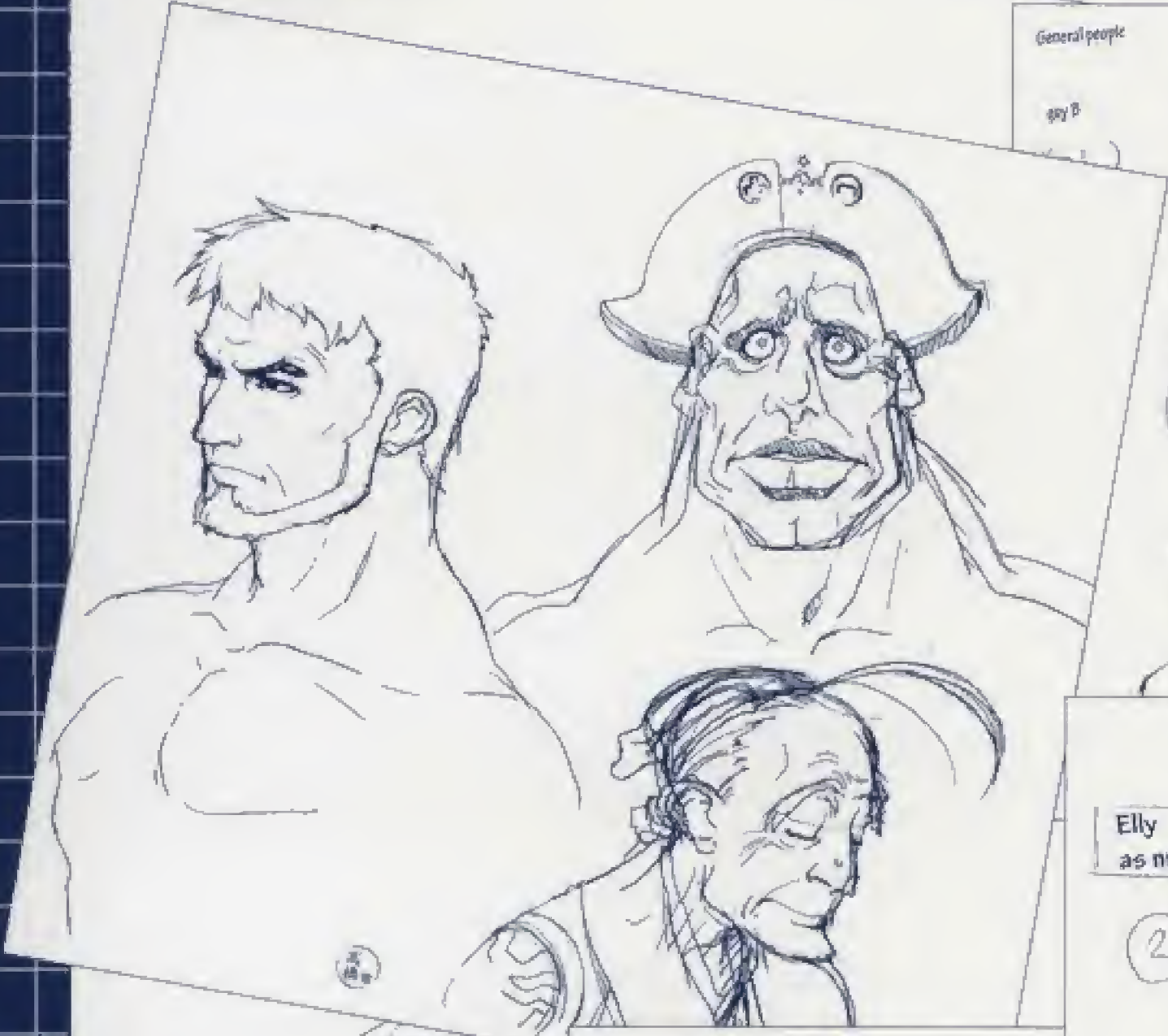
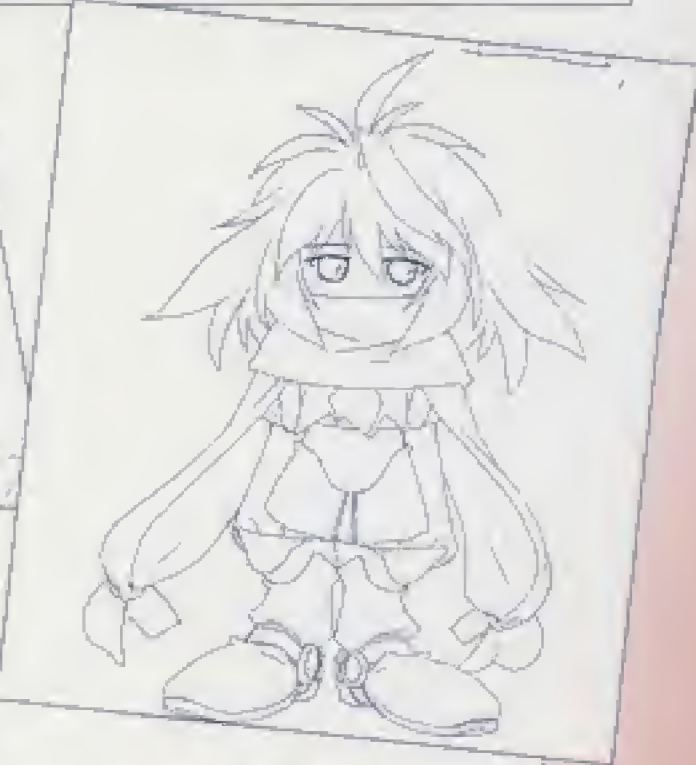
# ex.



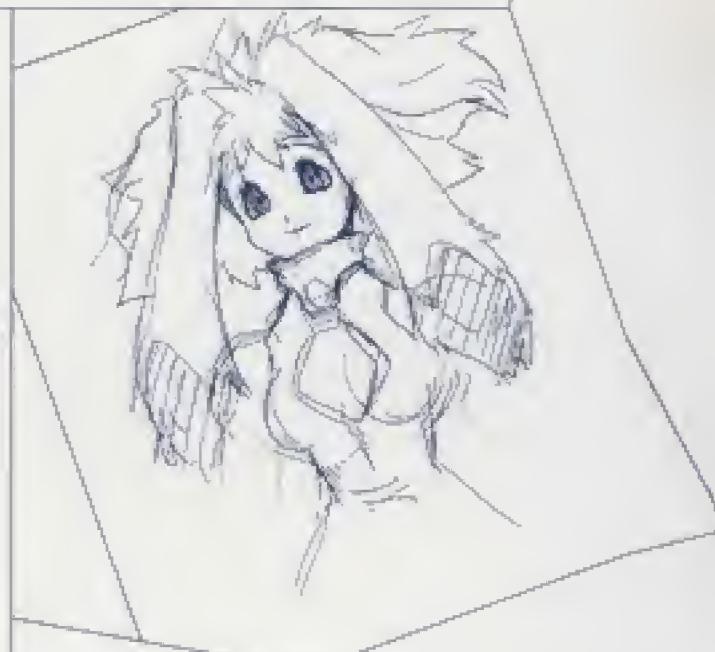
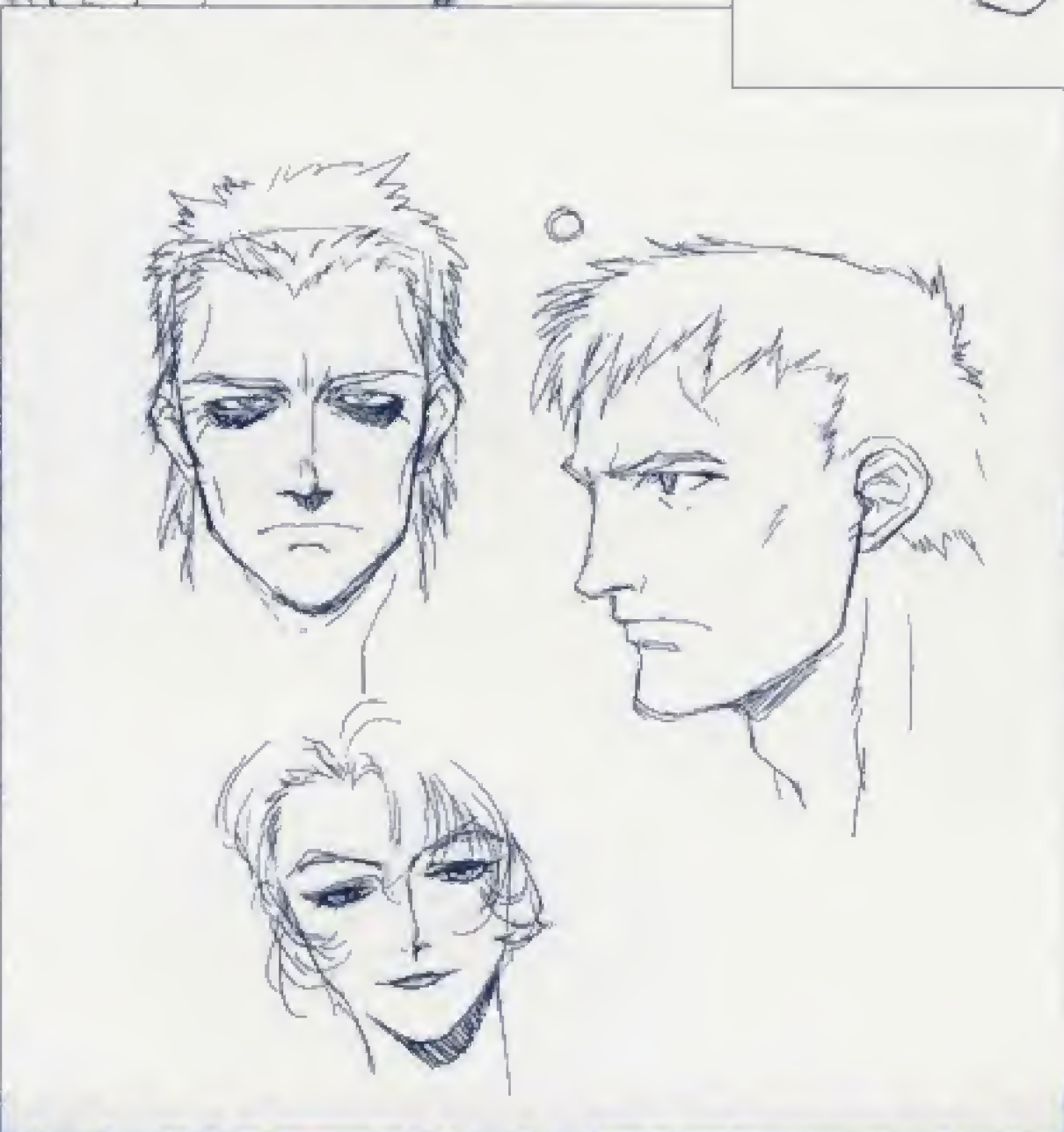
Coast Ministry



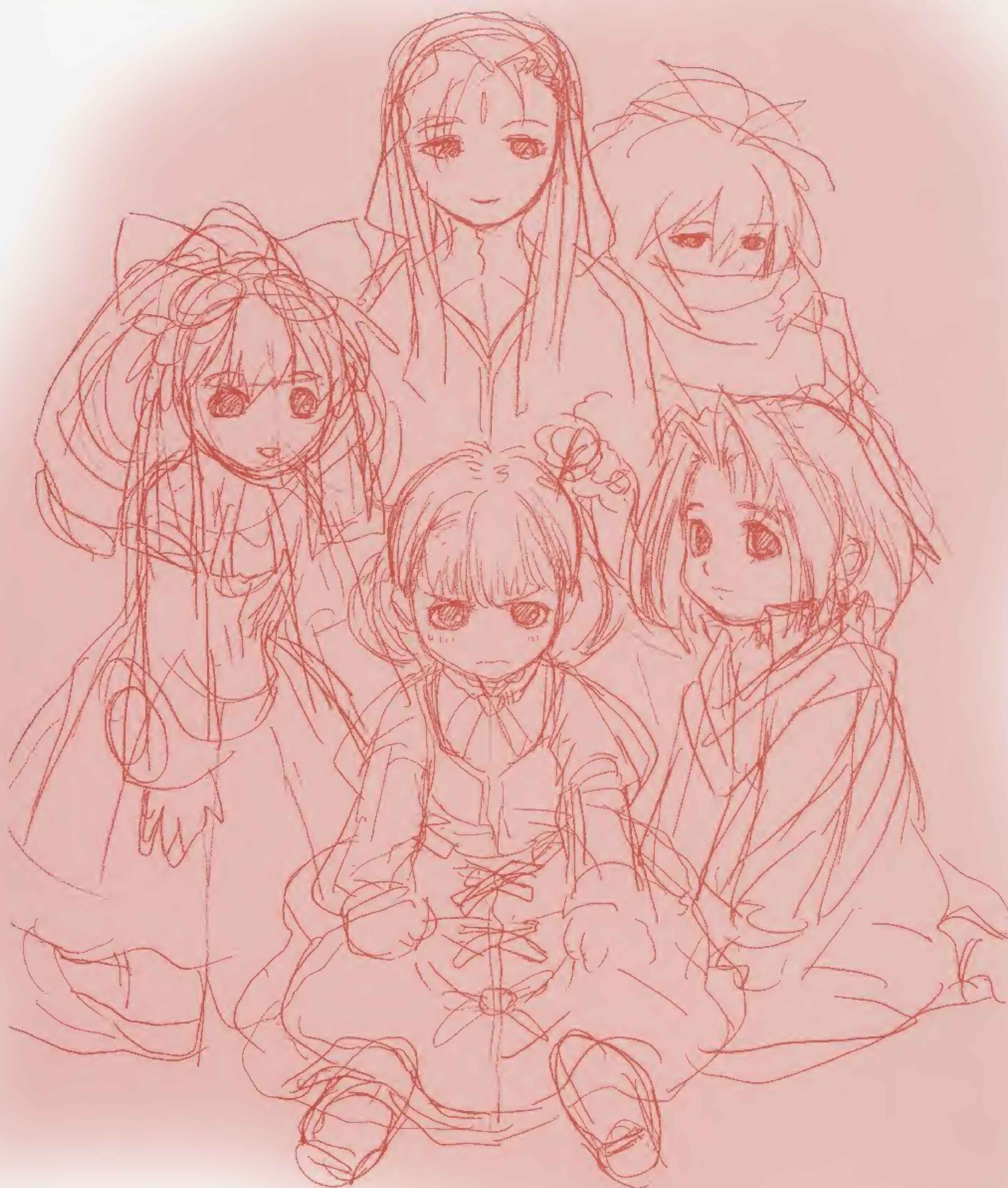
like this underneath



又高脚靴  
足首に  
足首と脚に  
かかると  
かかると







### FROM DIRECTOR

The main character designer, Tanaka-kun who ordered the characters has said [I want the following image destroyed]. This is easy to understand [it's lacking in reality (feeling real)]. And with this in mind, Tanaka-kun is acting as a light fantasy illustrator. More than 'real' he aims for things that seem 'cute' and has moved in that direction. This order clearly reflects his handiwork up to now in this production on a separate vector. Among the developers, they all care greatly for their own work, and now it has piled up in so many layers, as even Tanaka-kun might readily agree. These are spiritually filled drawings as directed. As a result, I think we've all grown.



# From Kunihiro Tanaka

From here on, are illustrations from character designer Tanaka-San. Various weird things that fit in the corners of the official pictures that were sent over the fax machine, these are a gathering of rare illustrations that normally would never have been seen

This is a parody of Fei and Elly's meeting in the Blackmoon Forest (?). This is one of the more exciting developments in the story. As the whimsical title suggests, the following words make the meaning sure.

Meeting with the green forest girl.



◀ The two to the left, are the images of their awakening... The effects of Drive haven't been fully explored. The look in Elly's eye is real scary. Citan also seems sort of irritable, so it seems the originals were never awake...





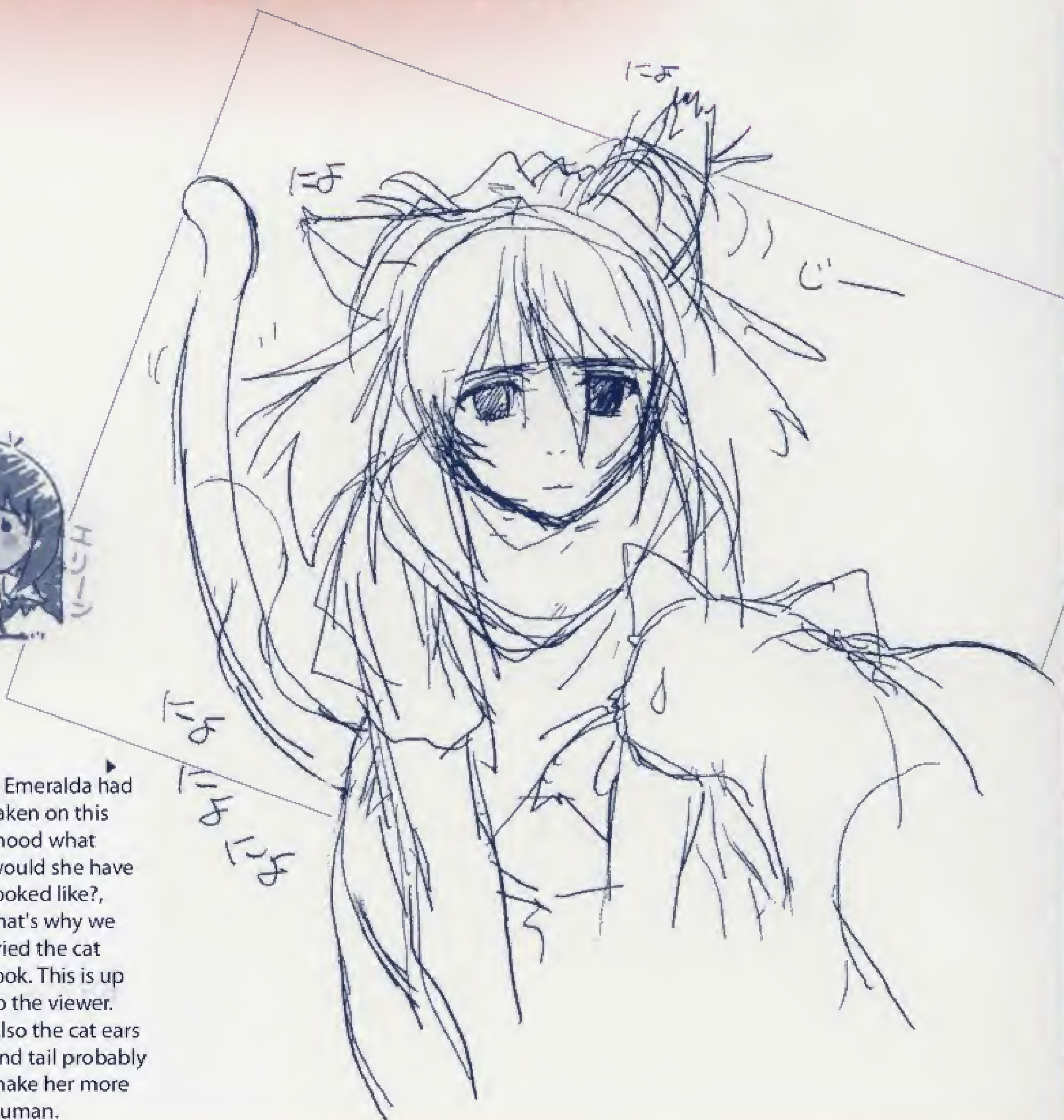
When Margie was once a playable character, she had several firearms like a bazooka hidden away as a soulful kind of girl. The image is from around then ... absolutely not. Tanaka liked Margie, and drew many images of her.



▲▲▲  
With Margie's illustration on the right of this page, many other show up. It gives one a good feeling and maybe Tanaka feels just a little too good? Take 1 not happening.



►  
If Emerald had taken on this mood what would she have looked like?, that's why we tried the cat look. This is up to the viewer. Also the cat ears and tail probably make her more human.





# FAX sendings

During the design phase, Tanaka-San sent serial ideas to Square. So many went to Square, that it became typical to just send it over the fax. Some of these were used in faxes at that time.

Yamada 20:00  
Arrived safely

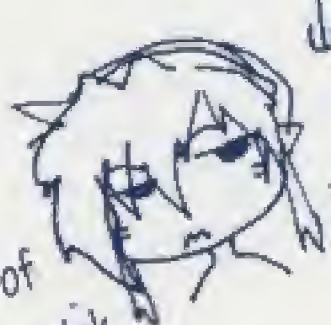


To the Square Development team,  
the Xenogears operator  
sends you a transmission  
Thanks.



Been sleeping since 5:00 in  
the morning... Sorry...  
It will be there by Thursday.  
From 6 p.m. to 7 p.m. Square  
thought of do this. Maybe by Friday?  
I think it might be the end of Dominia,  
Miang and Ramsus.

Ah, tons of  
copies I'm sick  
of it!!



I'm still sleepy...

Right now, it's 9:00 am...  
wanted to get this to you sooner -

The next order is Citan Ramsus Miang  
if you could and that's all

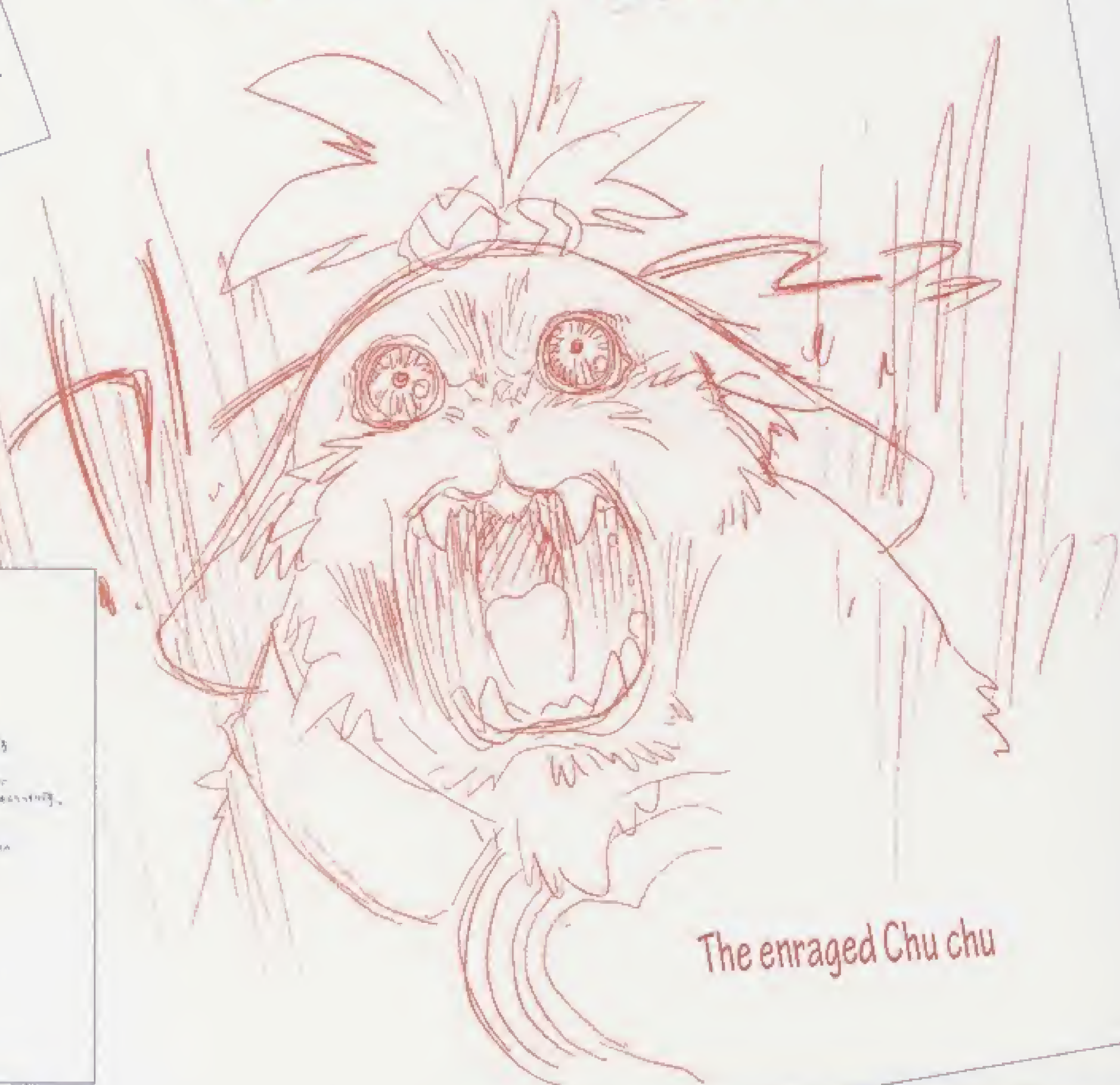
Square For Wadaeda

Among the 3 operators, please  
send 2. Follow up will ben sent.  
That's all and thanks.



WADAEDA  
SQUARE  
THANKS

WADAEDA



The enraged Chu chu



All at once yesterday it happened  
someone said, "wouldn't a bigger  
one be better?"  
Yet anotehr parody for you.



なんや  
これ

ちねんに 田中  
A 8:00にサニタリ(?)  
S  
P 1:40  
まだいまだ。  
スヤスヤ〜

Somehow the atmosphere of  
exhaustion comes through. Couldn't  
go to the dentist, he'd see the  
tragedy done by the well illustrator, huh?  
I'm sure the guys at Square who got this  
Faxes, thought the resemblance  
was just by chance. At least some  
one who wrote the first draft would.

Sorry.  
Is my head on straight?  
Why is THAT sleeping?



注: ぐうぐう

実はたなかサギシリーズ③

Around this time  
my arms got new  
strength?



Somehow it's an 'on no!  
feeling. Or it might be  
be rude.



実はたなかサギシリーズ④

## Rabbit

As others have mentioned  
Tanaka-San is a huge rabbit  
freak. Usually his faxes had  
bunnies in them. In the case  
of the illustration on the  
middle left, is this for 'role  
playing'? Because rabbits  
are an animal under much  
stress, we think that's why  
Tanaka-San's so worried.





Scene explanations so easy you could just die!

# Military Words appearing

## On the Exam

With the Yggdrasil's crew and Ramsus as ship's operator, we'll expose all those maniac military words, hm? These are words that NEVER got explained in the story, and along with each scene's message, the 2 Elements will have heated talk.

### SCENE 1 On board the desert submarine! ~The Yggdrasil's first appearance~

**Operator** A Gunner <Anton> and B Gunner <Berta> can initiate their **ectropometers** twenty seconds after opening their hatches.

**Bart** Frans!

**Frans** I didn't hear anything other than the flowing sound of the sand... No suspicious radar activity detected!

**Bart** Marseilles

**Marseilles** Miloch's units are on standby at the catapults. They'll all be able to launch one minute after we surface!

**Bart** Good, let's do it! **BattCon** level 1!

---- Surface combat, **ready!**

---- Torpedo room, **ready!**

---- Anti-Gear guns, **ready!**

---- Navigation and engineering are also **ready!**

**Maison** Y, young master, what's happening? What was the alarm all about?

**Sigurd** Not again...? Young master, hold on a second!

**Bart** Battle stations, everyone! Surface navigators, begin operating the sand pump. Prepare to fire starboard cannons upon surfacing!

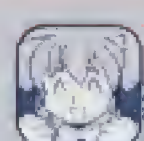
**Sigurd** Young master!!

**Maison** Y, young master!!

**Bart** Trim to the right! The wind is strong up there and we may be blown off balance!... Jerico! Hand the helm over to me!

Alternate firing between A Anton and B Berta! Calculating **adjustments!**

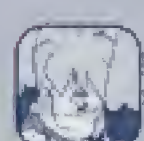
Awww, yeah! Switch modes over to salvos after the initial shots! Let's slow 'em down. Give them a spankin' they won't forget.



Hi everyone~~! Hope you feel great! I'm S-ra-PHEE!



Er, anyway, this is the first scene of the Yggdrasil. All the naval words are on parade here.



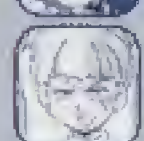
...was gonna say that. Now Seraphy's sad...



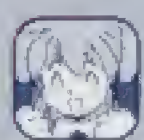
You weren't paged. That's 'cause the only wish I have is you won't bother me. ... Sorry, Seraphy can help.



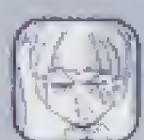
Great. Well then!! On to **ectropometers!**



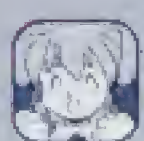
...Tch. Now you're sane... My 'Fina of long ago, the **ectropometers** measure distance [distance determination], and when they analyze the data, pick one of the 3 [salvos] in the best position to shoot.



Even when it's ['Hoy, there!] there's nothing 'hoy about it! This is the best seat!



The best seat... C'mon these are the basics of shooting, and there's lots more about shooting sensors from the story.



Whatever, this hits my butt well~ Please staff people, I love places where no one's ever been!



Ahem! Moving on! Next is **BattCon**. This is a made up word. Means Battle Condition.



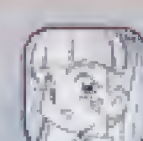
You mean like, [Defense Condition] with friends and stuff like that?



That- That's the same, when level 4 is called, they are immediately in battle!



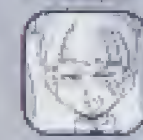
So like, [BattCon Level 1] must be really something~~~.



Next is **ready**. When written in kanji it's [bright] and [good]. It means [Roger].



<<\*>>? +++\*?



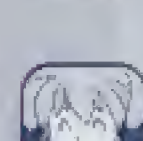
You, when you want to get goofy, don't talk. But t'was always thus...



Roger, Tolo-chan.



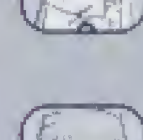
How do you read **adjustments?**



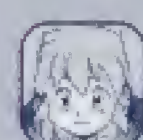
You mean [instigation]? Ah, this is one of those maniac expert words. You don't wanna know.



Aw, tell me~~~! I'll hurt you, I'll really hurt you!



The cannon goes from [trial shot (shooting)] to [appearance (shot results)] that is the order that's followed.



Hmm hm.



When shooting, you don't want to waste bullets so all have an attacking order (shooting together) otherwise it would all go wacky.



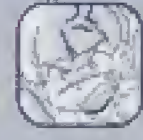
...hmm...zzz...



-and it would cause a (pinch) if there was friendly fire. That's what a--ll that data collection is for! And so, the next calculations for shooting can be switched out, and the huge cannon can be used instead to riddle them with firepower!!



...snkk...hny...ZZZZ~~~~



You're not sleeping! You should have said it was hard to undersand!



### detecting sounds

refers to weighing anchor and the sound it makes. This is how the Yggdrasil knew they had departed from Aveh.

### We'll start

In the military, all operations are subject to a certain order. Apparently one of the things taught at Jugend. This states that procedures have been followed, all is ready.

### shuttle boats

small ships containing thier own engines. Can be handled manually.

## SCENE 2 Plan to take back Aveh ~Yggdrasil attacks~



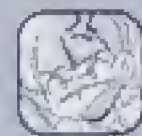
シャコ、シャコ、シャコ、シャコ…  
ガラガラガラ。



さて、ユグドラ関係からもう少し…  
って、本番中に歯あみがくな〜!!



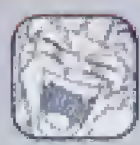
トロネちゃん、ねおきのはみがきは  
キホン! 歯は漱石だよ! だぁー  
いじにしまきゃ!



宝石だ! 宝石! それ以前に寝る  
のは夜だけにしとけよ! …いや、  
先進めよう。先に。



ツギにわかんないのはねえ…**抜びよ  
う音!** どんなオト?? …ばつびよ  
う…×病…ヴァンダーカム? ヴァ  
ンダーカムの顔面パッテン病のシャ  
ッキイイイイイン! ってオトかな?



びょーきの音ってなんだ〜〜〜!!  
「**抜錨**」って書くんだ! 錨の音だ  
よ! い・か・り! 錨を上げる時  
の音! これに機開始動音が加わっ  
て、艦隊の出港がわかったわけだ。  
ハイ、次! さくさく行くぞ! 次  
は**状況を開始する**って言い回しだな。



へんだよねへんだよね、そのいいま  
わし。セラフィー、ユーゲントで国  
語とくだったんだから、みのがさ  
ないぞぉ〜!

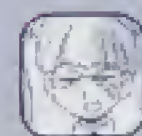


軍隊では、作戦でも訓練でも何でも、  
とにかく計画された行動は全部「状  
況」ってゆーんだよ。だから「開始」  
とか「終了」できるもんなんだよな。  
「状況」って言葉は「CONDITION」

の直訳が元だから、こんな言い回し  
になったんじゃないかなあ。…時に、  
おまえ、ホントに国語得意だったの  
か?



うん! でも、いつもはめんどくさ  
いから国語脳、つかわないのさっ。  
にんげん、ドウグをもってるか?  
と、それをつかうか? は別モンダ  
イなんだよ!!



ああ、そーかい。それじゃ、最後は  
**内火艇**を解説しておこーかな。こい  
つはエンジン(内燃機関)を持つ小  
型船のことだ。手こぎのボートに対  
して使う言葉だな。もっとも、ユグ  
ドラシルの中に手こぎのボートがあ  
ったかどうか知らんけど。

### Operator

Young master! I'm detecting an increase in the  
use of F Band! That's the Royal Capital's defense  
force's frequency!

### Frans

"There... on the surface layer! I'm **detecting sounds**  
of anchors being weighed in and engines being  
activated! The Royal Capital's defense fleet must be  
departing...!"

### Operator

We also intercepted a transmission from the patrol at  
the border with Kislev! They're requesting immediate  
backup from the Royal Capital! Looks like we've really  
raised some hell at the border!

### Bart

"... Alright! **We'll start!** Ready the **shuttle boats!**"



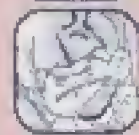
## BREAK TIME



お疲れさまですわ、トロネさん、  
セラフィータさん。



あ、ケルビーちゃん、ドミニャち  
ゃん! どう、この解説ぶり!



お前なんにも説明してねーじゃね  
ーかよ!



セラフィーもがんばってるもん。  
でもトロネちゃん、やっぱりスゴ  
い! ポリクロロトルエン子牛脳  
トーサイさいほおくだもんねっ!



ポジトロン光子脳だっ! …って、  
ナノリアクター室でも言ったら!



あらあら。セラフィータさんは、  
相変わらず記憶の保持能力がイン  
タラプトされているようね。…で  
トロネさん、どこが笑うところ?



…笑いドコを説明させんなよ…ポ  
ジトロン光子脳ってのは…ベリー  
ローダンの3巻あたりを読んでく  
れ! …で、ポリクロロうんぬん  
ってのはポリが重合、クロロが塩  
素化合物、トルエンが炭化水素の  
一種だよ。



でもその3つって、分子式が成立  
しないんじゃない?



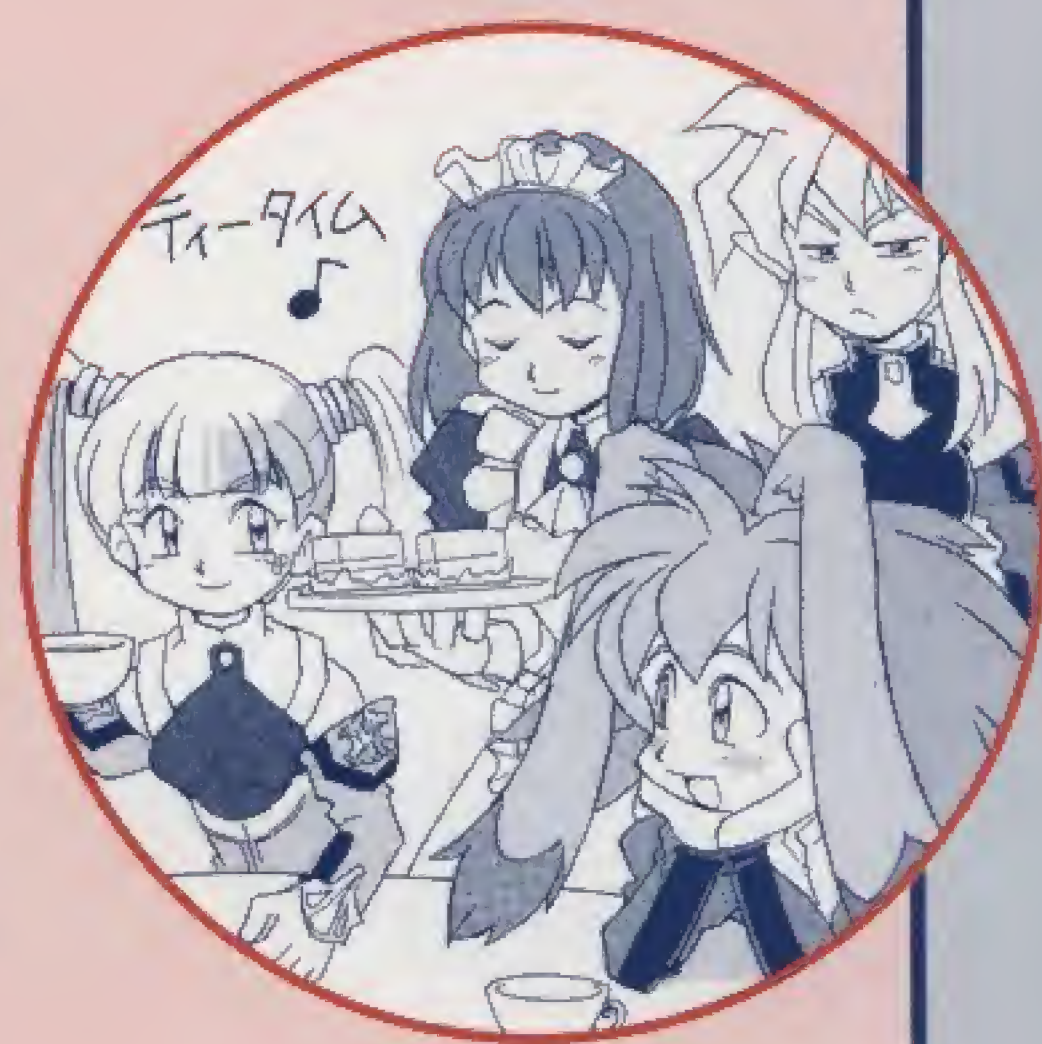
はう…だから、そこが笑うトコロ  
なんだよ…。



子牛脳って、狂○病でウワサにな  
ったアレだよね? 時事ネタは風  
化するのが早いんだぞぉ〜!



瞬間瞬間だけで生きてるスタッフ  
が書いたところだからなあ…。





**vector 3-3-6**  
determined by sound waves.  
The designation 3-3-6 on a radius  
of 360 degrees means just about  
straight ahead.

**Bogeys**  
American slang term for enemy  
attacking vessels. In the story,  
refers to the threat of unidentified  
Gears

**You are free to  
fire at will! Let's dance!**  
With all weapons ready to fire, with  
all of them pointed upward during  
battle against flying vessels, the look  
from outside is a sort of 'dance'.

**air patrol**  
CAP [combat air piquet]. Used during  
flight operations in battle. Another  
American slang.

**Gunnery chief**  
Japanese name for naval officer. His  
is the gunner and planner.

**type 3 shells**  
shells that scatter when shot. For air  
use. Miniature bombs that must  
be timed and angled just right.

**pea shooters**  
auto targeting mounted mechanical guns.

## SCENE 3 Assault of the Kefeinzel

~Vanderkaum vs. Yggdrasil~

Operator 1  
Bogeys incoming vector 3-3-6! 2 groups,  
about 7-8 machines, distance 2000!

Officer  
Relay to all ships! Fire at will, begin evasive  
action! But, don't let fire support positions  
collapse!

Operator 1  
Roger. Flagship to all ships... **You are free to  
fire at will! Let's dance!**

Operator 2  
All Rapid Fire Control Systems... commence  
operation!

Operator 3  
Lay aerial mines. Projection pattern, mark 3!

Operator 1  
How many machines are on **air patrol**!?

Vanderkaum  
Aviation Officer, wait!  
Comm officer! Change of orders.  
Contact Von Hipper... Have the second  
destroyer squadron approach the enemy  
flank. Open the fleet's side and bait them  
into entering the Kefeinzel's main gun's  
firing arc."

Officer  
Huh? It's stupid!  
There's no way the flagship's gun can hit  
speeding Gears...

Vanderkaum  
Fire control! **Gunnery chief!** Ready the **type  
3 shells**. Pull back the deck gunners and  
prepare to engage the Kefeinzel's main  
cannon...  
I'll annihilate them into pure energy..."

Officer  
Admiral! What are you doing pulling the  
anti-gear gunners back!?

Vanderkaum  
"Quiet down, Aviation Officer!  
Thanks for your valuable opinion but I am in  
charge, not you! What use are **pea shooters** and  
40 sem guns? Discussion over. Captain! Not  
too fast! We don't want to leave the enemy  
behind."

Officer  
(Your plan will never work...!)

このシーンは、タイカンキョボウ好  
きのヴァンちゃんのキヨミズのプタ  
イは、物体Xだね。

もはや元ネタがなんなんだかも怪し  
くなってきたな〜。…でもなんか、  
慣れてきたぞ。田主丸の巨峰がブル  
ブルしてるのを肌で感じるのが好  
き？ 大艦巨砲主義ならぬ、体感巨  
峰好き、なんちて。

…トロネちゃん…。うん、頭の不自  
由なときは無理しないでゆっくり休  
んでていいよ。セラフィーがひとり  
ですすめておくよ！ まずは**ベクタ  
3-3-6**からね。

なんだ！ その哀れみの表情は！  
腹立つなあ…。「ベクタ」ってのは  
「ベクトル」の発音の方が一般的だ  
な。この場合は方位を指すのに使っ  
てる。方位は0〜360で表されるか  
ら、「3-3-6」ってのは、ほぼ真北  
の方向だな。んで、次の**ヴァンバイ  
ヤー**ってのは、昔の米海軍のスラン  
グで、敵攻撃機を指した言葉だ。劇  
中だと「脅威度の大きい未確認ギア」  
って程度の意味だよ。

なるなる〜。じゃ、ツギの**オールウ  
ェポンズ・フリー、レッツ・ダン  
ス!**ってのは、怖い敵が出てきてど  
うしようもないから、とりあえずお  
どっちゃえっ！ってコトだねっ！

ちゃう、ちゃう。「オールウェポン  
ズ・フリー」ってのは後から出てく  
る「統制射撃」と対になる言葉で、  
「各部署、各個に撃て」って意味だ  
な。で、空からの攻撃を逃げ回る艦  
つつーのは、上から見ると踊ってる  
よーに見えるらしくて、「各艦、各  
個に回避」って命令を「レッツ・ダ  
ンス!」と言い回したらしい。日本  
でも回避運動のコトを「盆踊り」と  
か言ってたらしーぞ。まあ、これは

直前の「兵装使用自由、回避運動開  
始!」って台詞と同じ意味だ。

ついでにボケられる前に説明して  
おくとな、**CAP**は「combat air  
piquet」の略で、直訳すると戦闘空  
中哨戒。よーするに直衛、または直  
衛機って意味の米軍用語だよ。

お〜〜！ イッキにいったでしゅね  
〜。トロネちゃんすごいでしゅ  
う！ ツギの**コクサ**とか**ホチ**も略語  
でしゅかあ？

…なんか、キャラ変わってないか？  
こっちは日本海軍の略語だな。それ  
ぞれ「航空参謀」、「砲術長」のこ  
とだ。こりゃ、まんまだな。

…ってコトはあ…、「水雷長」は…  
スッチー？

……。

はずしちゃった？ てへ♥ ツギは  
**三式弾**だよ。

サクサク進めよーな。**三式弾**は榴散  
弾の一種で、対空用だ。撃つとタイ  
マー仕掛けで一定距離飛んで、でっ  
かい花火みたいに内蔵した焼夷弾子  
を広範囲にばらまくんだな。旧海軍  
の秘密兵器だったんだぞ。劇中では  
もっと広義に、「キファインゼルの  
主砲用の対ギア特殊砲弾」、ってな  
感じで使われてる。

それでそれで、なんで甲板機銃員を  
逃がしたの？ なんてそれが失敗な  
の？

はいはい、順番順番。大口径砲って  
のは、発射の際にものすごい衝撃波  
と爆風を発するんだ。戦艦くらいに  
なると、甲板にボルト締めしてた機  
銃が引きちぎられたり、積んでた内  
火艇が吹っ飛んだ事もあったらし  
い。これだけの衝撃だと、近くに人  
がいたらひとたまりもないだろ？

で、甲板機銃員を退避させるのを  
コクサが止めたのは、役に立たない  
主砲を撃つために、対ギア戦で主役  
になる機銃員を下げてどーする、っ  
てコトだ。 実は旧海軍でも、こー  
ゆー事が結構あったらしい。三式弾  
を撃つために機銃員を下がらせて、  
そのタイムロスで十分な機銃弾幕が  
張れなかった…って感じて。

ふ〜〜ん。…でもさ、でもさ、結  
局主砲を使わなくてもキファインゼ  
ルは沈んでたよね！

身も蓋もねーなー、それ言うと。  
あ、ちなみに**メルル**と**ボルフォース**  
は実在の銃器メーカー「オートー・  
メララ」と「ボフォース」のもじり  
だな。





**confirmed**

Using Morse Code. Can confirm based on codes the needed action.

**baffles**

A submarine's own sonar can muddy it's readings in sand or water.

**active homing**

When a torpedo released by the enemy is right on a ship's tail, tracking it. Passive homing is feeling out with sonar.

**maskers**

masker spreads a field of shielding sonar to hide in.

**noisemaker**

Gives out soundwaves imitating a similar image of the ship as decoy to lure enemies away.

**rapid blowing noise**

The blowing made by the main tank as it expels air to rise to the surface. The out flow of air acts as a kind of engine, forcing the ship upwards through the sand.

## SCENE 4 Attacking Ramsus' vessel! ~Yggdrasil vs. Ramsus vessel~

Bart

Margie and them are still there. We'll go back! We have to! That reminds me... What about Fei and his guys? If they're alright, we could...

Franz

We've had no contact since we **confirmed** their order to charge...

Bart

Dammit! This can't be happening!

Maison

Young master...

Bart

Behind...

Something's coming from behind!

Jerico! Give me the helm... No, you keep it!

Just hurry up and pull either way!!

Sigurd

Young master...?

Franz

Aft of our stern! 300! I'm picking up the sound of torpedoes being readied. A sand cruiser!? It's big! Speed 60! Relative route 0-0-0! They were hiding behind some **baffles**!"

Sigurd

Kahr!

Franz

I'm picking up some high speed propulsion, breaking away from the enemy's ship! Torpedoes!? Two of them! Speed 87! Torpedoes confirmed with the sonar. They've shifted over to **active homing**!

Bart

Battle stations! Deploy the **maskers**! Ready the **noisemaker**!"

Battle stations, everyone!

Gunner

Open jammer! Noisemaker, 2nd, 4th tube... Standby!

Bart

Emit noisemaker! Prepare to stop the engine!"

Helm... NOW! Steer to the opposite direction as far as you can! Stop the engine! Crash alarm!!

Stop the engine! Crash alarm!!

Franz

Torpedo... 1, still pursuing! Dammit! Impact in 3!!



**ト運送**ってさ、「と、ととと、と」と突入！」っていうドモリ?



突入ってトコだけ正解。**ト運送**ってのは「突入」を意味するモールス信号の「ト」を連打することなんだ。ちなみに有名な「トラトラトラ」は「トラ運送」って言う。どっちも旧海軍の使ってた符丁だな。



モールスシンゴウとか使ってるんだあ。けっこうレトロなんだね。



バルトの趣味だろ、ありゃ。



ツギは**バッフルズ**だね。なんで、かくれるの?



通常、潜水艦は、どんなに高性能なソナーでも自分のスクリュウでかき回した水域の状況が正確にはわからないんだよ。そういう潜水艦に絶対できる死角のコトを「baffles」、つまり不可解なモノ、っていうの。ユグドラも潜水艦と似たようなもんだから、自分の真後ろは砂がかき回されて、やっぱり**バッフルズ**になるんだな。



**アクティブホーミング**ってのは?



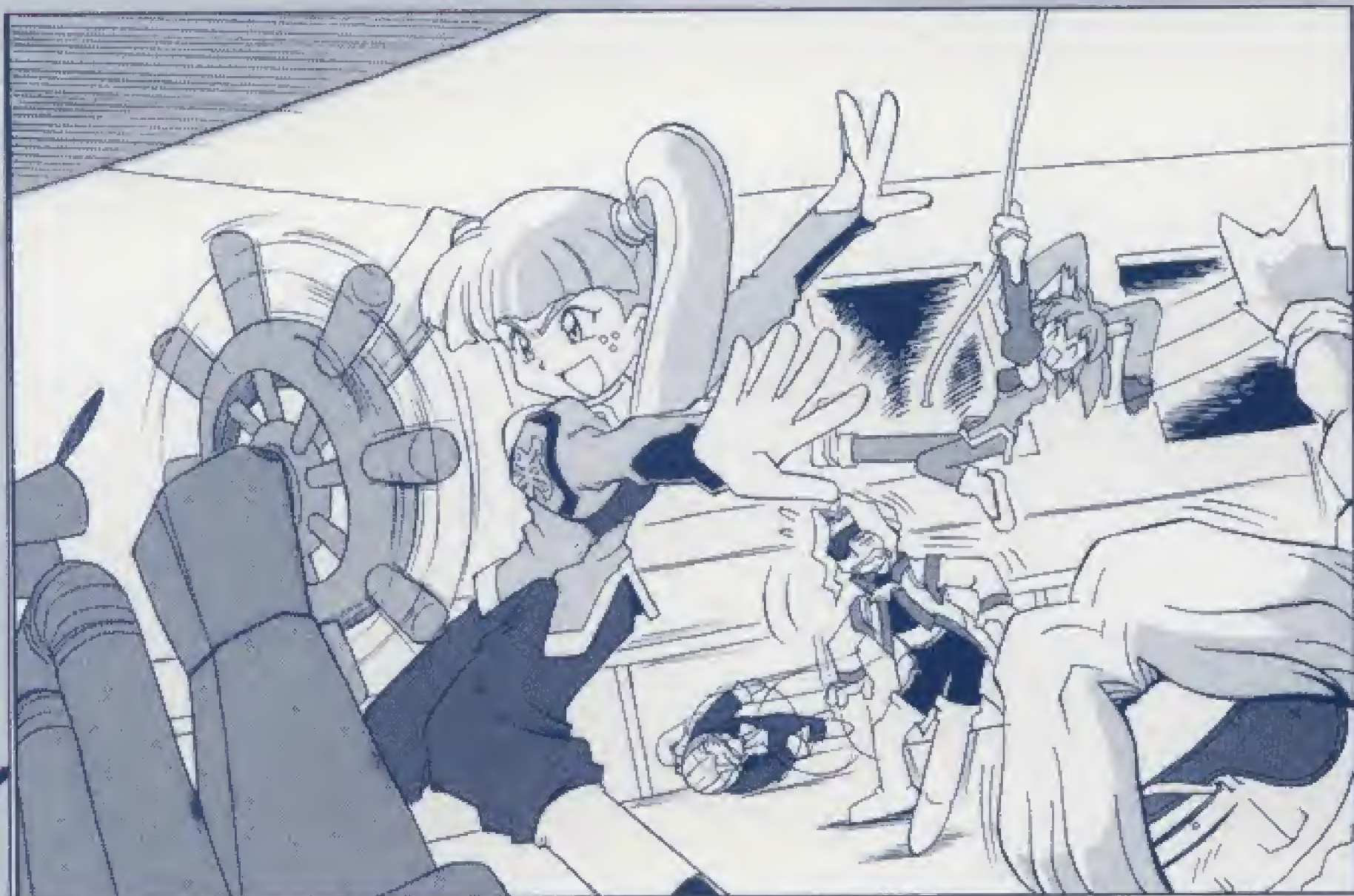
敵を追尾する時に、自ら電波や音なんかを発して、その反射波から追尾データをアクティブ（積極的）に取るホーミングだよ。追尾性能は高いけど、自分の位置もバレバレになるんで探知・迎撃もされやすい。パッシヴ（消極的）ホーミングっていうのもあって、これは相手の出す音や電波だけを頼りに追尾データを得る。見つかりにくい代わりに、データの信頼性は低くなる、と。



おツギ、**マスカー**と**ノイズメーカ**。



**マスカー**は目くらましだよ。相手のソナーを錯乱させるために、細かい泡で音波を乱したり吸収させる装置のことだ。**ノイズメーカ**も似たようなモンで、こっちは艦と同じ音を出す装置を魚雷とかに積んで発射、オトリにするわけだ。エンジン止めれば、相手はオトリの方に反応しちゃう、と。「デコイ」ともいうな。



### (Ramsus' side)

Operator 1

Confirmed, vessel destruction noise.

... followed by a **rapid blowing noise**. Enemy vessel is probably floating rapidly to the surface.

Operator 2

Fluid static around enemy vessel is decreasing.

Sand maneuverability of enemy vessel down 60%.

... Looks like the main engine and effect-fins have been disabled.

Ramsus

Once their effect-fins are destroyed they will remain buried and unable to move. Surfacing was a smart move. Sand-Torpedo Chief! Well done on lowering their fighting power. Brilliant!"



このユグドラ対ラムサス艦の戦い、お互い軍事用語の連発なんだよな。うんうん。いかにも「スキな人が作ってます！」ってかんじだね。



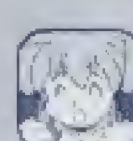
カントクが「レッド・オクトーバーを追え！」や「クリムゾン・タイド」みたいなのをやりたかったらしーぞ。このイベントの担当スタッフもそのへんが大好きな人だから、好きな人には垂涎の展開ってヤツだ。



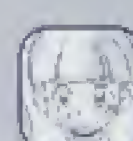
でも、なにいつてるか、ぜ～んぜんわかんないって人もいるわけだよな。だからこのコーナーでばっちり説明しちゃうなきゃっ！



そゆこと。でも、ここではそんなに説明する単語はないんだよな。しいて言うなら**急速ブロー**か。



女の子って髪を乾かすのに時間かかるのよね。 んで「待ち合わせにおくれちゃう～。急速でブローしなくちゃ」ってやつ?



そんなやつドコにいるんじゃ…。でも空気を吹き付けるのは同じだな。要するにこの場合、潜水艦がメインタンクに文字通り空気を吹き付けて（ブローして）、排水する事だな。メインタンクが空気で満たされれば浮力が付いて浮かび上がるわけだ。



the effect wings emit energy to part sand to either side, but here they were damaged and not conducting electricity.

For safety, many circuits aboard the Yggdrasil must be able to be rerouted. This was in reference to controlling the mobility of the Yggdrasil.

## SCENE 4 Cont.

### (Yggdrasil's side)

"Bart

Surrounded, huh? How are the repairs?

Engineer

The main engine and effect-fins' **oscillators** are mostly unharmed...  
... but the electrical connections between them are wasted. We are **bypassing** the main connection and trying to scrape together all the energy we can. But it will only give us 70% of our usual maximum power at best. The propulsion-drills are not damaged, but if the sand can't be granulated they might as well be. We'll make battle speed 3... only barely."



んじゃ、このシーンは**オシレータ**あたりから解説いこうかね。これまた英語のoscillatorで、直訳して発振器。劇中のメッセージにあてはめると、動翼を動かす発振器自体は無事でも、肝心の電気が来てないってことみたいだな。んで…

ちょっとちょっと、トロネちゃんトロネちゃーんっ！ ひっどーい！セラフィーがトイレいってるスキに一人ですすめちゃってえっっ!!

お前いなくても、あんま変わんねーもん。いや、むしろ早い。

ぐう~~~~、げ~~~~もん。あんまりカッテしてるとラムサス様に言いつけちゃうもんね~~~~。

言えバ?

うみゅ? なぁんで~~? なぁんで、そんなへーぜんとしてるのおお~~? ヒツヨー以上のへいじょーしんっ!!

ラムサス様がそんな事本気にするわけなかるーもん。 ふ! 愛とは信じることさ!!

トロネちゃんのメモリーって、70年代…。

ほっとけ! いーの、アタシは古風なオンナなんだから。…なんだ! その白けたよーな、哀れむよーな目つきは!!!!

…あ、そうだっ! …もしもーし、ラムサス様ですかあ? セラフィーですっ♥

う、平常心平常心…。

ぶう~、つまんないいい~~~~。

もう振り回されないぞ~。アタシに後ろ暗い所はないんだから。

でもさでもさ、トロネちゃん、ちょっとドキドキしてたよね!

もういいから、先進むぞ! スペースなくなっちゃうだろーが。えーと、次の用語は、えーと…

劇中の**バイパス**は、いっちゃえば「予備」の電線の事だね! ユグドラの機動力をたもつための大事なオシレータだから、予備や、普段は別のことに使ってるある回路をあると集めれば主回路の代わりになるような設計になってるんだね!

お~~い!

## BREAK TIME

相変わらずのギャグ百連発、しかも、吉本系のベタな展開だな。なかなか微笑ましいぞ。

思いっきり、人ごとみたいに言ってるなあ。大変なんだぞ、セラフィータの相手すんのは!

おほほ。思いっきり、人ごとですもの。

…ハッキリ言われるとムカつくなあ…あ、そういえばケルビナの方が適任なんじゃないか? 一回試しに代わってみよう。

絶対イヤ。

ユーゲント時代からそーゆートコあるよな、ケルビナ…。

ね~~ね~~ケルビーちゃん、前から聞きたかったんだけど、どうしておめめつむってるの? セラフィー、ケルビーちゃんがおめめあけてるトコ、みた~~~~い!

あ、馬鹿!

お、それ、オレも知りたいぞ! 本当は見えるんだよな?

まあ、どうしましょう? 本当に見たい? …うふふ、では、しょうがありませんわね。

げ、カップが割れた! おわ、壁にヒビが…天井が落ちてくるっ!

ふえ~ん、もういいよケルビーちゃんわあ~ん! こわいよおー!!





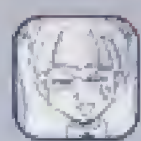
**anti-radar**

Anti radar and beam radar are connected words. Anti radar is a method of scattering the enemies' radar readings by using explosive devices that disrupt it.

**defensive fire**

Under one directive, many different firing guns are used in complex patterns difficult to avoid.

## SCENE 5 Nightmare of Elru again ~Ramsus' vessel vs. Weltall Id~



う~~~~、エらい目にあった。



エらいメっていったら、ラムサス様ってさ、ムカシ、エルルでエラ~いメにあったみたいだね。



あ? ああ、そうらしいな。だからヴェルトール・イドが出た時、あんなに興奮しておられたんだろう。



ふ~ん…ラムサス様、かわいそう…。ところでシルエットにてるけど、このギア、ヴェルトールとおなじキタイなの?

Operator 1

Confirmed, one enemy Gear engaged. Direct course. Enemy vessel engine noise increasing... Speed increase, steering noise confirmed, course change... Taking evasive action.

Miang

Commander? ... Ha, Ha, Ha.

Ramsus

... Can't help it, eh?

All divisions, holding pattern cancelled! ... Resume attack!

Operator 2

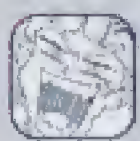
Bow torpedo tubes 1-3, Namthal missile. Set 1 and 2 for homing, 3 for **anti-radar**. Tubes 4-6, Makara Mk5 sand torpedoes. After acquiring target set all to passive homing. All units, begin **defensive fire**. Aim for the main ship.



そーゆーコトだ。ま、乗ってるヤツは違うけどな。…いや、広義じゃ同じとも言えるけど。詳しいいきさつは176ページ参照な。さて、それじゃこのシーンの用語解説はどっから行こーか?



んとね、**ハンズフリー・クルーズ**う! …ハンズが凍っちゃうの?? コマるな~~~~シブヤのヌノ工房はコスプレに…あ、オカダヤがあるかあ~~~~!!



地方在住者が困るようなボケ飛ばすなあ! 大体、東急ハンズが「フリーズ」って、「クルー」の部分はどこ行った~~~~!!



コマかいコト気にしてると、しわ増えるよ。



く! …平常心、へーじょーしん…**ハンズフリー・クルーズ**、これも劇中用の造語だな。母機や母艦のイルミネータ(誘導電波照射機)等を使わないで、ミサイル単独の能力でホーミングする「ハンズフリー」に、巡航を意味する「クルーズ」を引っ付けて、くどく表現したかったらしい。ま、いわゆる「撃ちっ放し」状態の事だな。



ツギの**アンチレーダー・ビームライダー**…ってというのは?



これも「アンチレーダー」と「ビームライダー」を引っ付けた造語だな。「アンチレーダー」ってのは、敵の出したレーダー波を迎ってレーダーそのものを破壊する、パッシブホーミングの一種だ。

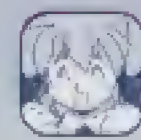
「ビームライダー」はビーム、この場合は指向性の高い電波に、文字通り乗っかっていく誘導方式のことだな。普通は母艦や母機からの誘導電波に乗っていくコトを指すけど、なんか、無理にでも使いたい年頃だったらしい。



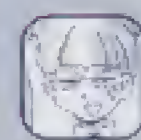
サイゴは、ちょっとマエにもでてきた**統制射撃**!



前に言った、「オールウェポンズ・フリー」と逆だな。一本化された射撃指揮の下で、複数の兵器や艦が射撃を行う事。命中率が上がるし、火力を一点に絞って敵の防御能力を上回らせる「サチュレーション・アタック(飽和攻撃)」もやりやすい。



劇中で、ミサイルや砂魚雷を、色々な誘導方式でたくさんユグドラシルに発射しようとしてたのも、サチュレーション・アタックの一種なんだよね!



げ、セラフィータが、初めてまともに切り返してきた…。





## genome

A genome is one of the building blocks that directs the shaping of life. Alpha 1 has genetic material. The change from Alpha 1 to something else was occurring. (Alpha 1=Elehaym, Omega 1=Deus Mode)

## Contamination

In regards to a computer's OS, the computer in this case was being hacked into.

## self destruct ports

A small explosive that would be used to cut off any access to the computers from hackers.

## Ergo-area

refers to the black hole the ship used for navigating. In order to prevent the total stopping of time at the black hole's event horizon, a tunnel would form around it creating a separate plane the ship could enter.

## internal plane

Inside the tunnel around the event horizon, used for warp travel through the black hole that allowed the ship to exist in its own dimensional plane, so it could function normally as it made the transition.

# SCENE 6 The ship among the sea of stars ~opening movie~

-----  
This is an emergency. Level one alert.

Operator 1

Omega 1 restarting. Alpha 1 **genome**... restructuring.

Operator 1

Confirming exon replacement. Base code 85 million, 100 million! It's speed is overwhelming!"

Operator 2

Alpha 1 to Raziel Central. Access confirmed. Initializing fake net. Disconnected. Activating emergency shelter...denied.

Operator 1

**Contamination** is spreading widely. Captain!?

Capatin

Cut off the cables manually.

Operator 1

Roger. Activating **self destruct ports**. Confirming? No good, nothing happened!"

Operator 2

"Omega 1, they are attacking! We can't stop them. 98 percent of our weapons have been taken over!"

Operator 1

The auto pilot system, Faust, has been accessed and its phase space logic is being rewritten. **Ergo-area** is increasing. An **internal plane** is forming. Switching to space displacement mode.

Operator 3

Alpha 1, confirming transfer coordinate codes. Coordinates input, coordinate NX128EZ061. The main planet!!!"

Captain

Damn. So they're planning on attacking.

Capatin

Engine room. Activate the emergency sealing system.  
Engine room? Engine...!

CAPTAIN

See that all civilians and passengers are safely transported to the escape shuttles. I will send a dispatch after evacuation is complete. I am evacuating the ship. All of you. Evacuate...now.

-----  
Evacuate. Evacuate. Evacuate the ship immediately... All passengers please board the shuttles in a calm and orderly fashion."



ねえねえ、くんじョウゴじゃないけどさ、オープニングもむづかしいコトバがいっぱいでるよね。



そーだな。聞き取りにくいセリフもあるし、全文掲載してみよーか。



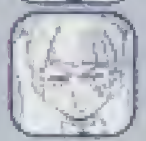
えー、セラフィー、しらないコトバばかりだよ？



おいおい、ちゃんと歴史とか科学のページ読んだか？ 大半の用語は説明してあったろーが。



セラフィーがわかるとおもうのか！アマイぞぉ！大アマだぞ！えへ。



…まあいいや。ここでは純粋に、よそのコーナーで触れてない専門用語を解説していくからな。



それじゃ、サイショは**ゲノム**からいってみよー！！



いや、行くのはオレだけだな…**ゲノム**ってのは、生物の生存に最小限必要な染色体の一組を表す単位のこと。アルバ1ってゆーのは、つまるところ生体素子だからな。アルバの染色体構成が変わっていくっていうのは、オメガ1が再起動したコトで、アルバ1(=エレハイム)がオメガ1(=デウス統御モード)に変わっていく、ってコトだよ。



**パラダイム汚染**ってゆーのは？



「パラダイム」は、コンピュータに当てはめるとOS(基礎ソフト)の事。つまり、**パラダイム汚染**ってのは、OS自体がハッキングされ変質しつつある絶望的状况のことだな。



うう、なんかワカってくると、すごくコワイの…。**爆発ボルト**とか、**ページ**とかもコワイの？



怖いっつーか、結構末期的な話だ。**爆発ボルト**ってのは、尖葉を使った

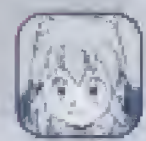
緊急用の強制分離装置の事だ。**ページ**は爆発ボルトなんかを使って、とある部分や部品を外す事。つまりここではハッキングを物理的に防ぐため、回線の一部を破壊する最終手段に出たわけだな。結局、浸食スピードに追いつけずに失敗に終わったみたいだけど…。



はう…なんか終末的…。じゃ**エルゴ領域**や**内部地平面**もコワイんだ…。



いや…これは別に…これはカー・ブラックホール(回転するブラックホールのモデル)の概念を利用した劇中の空間跳躍航法の用語なんだ。



くーがんなんとかって、いわゆる「わ〜ぶ」のこと？



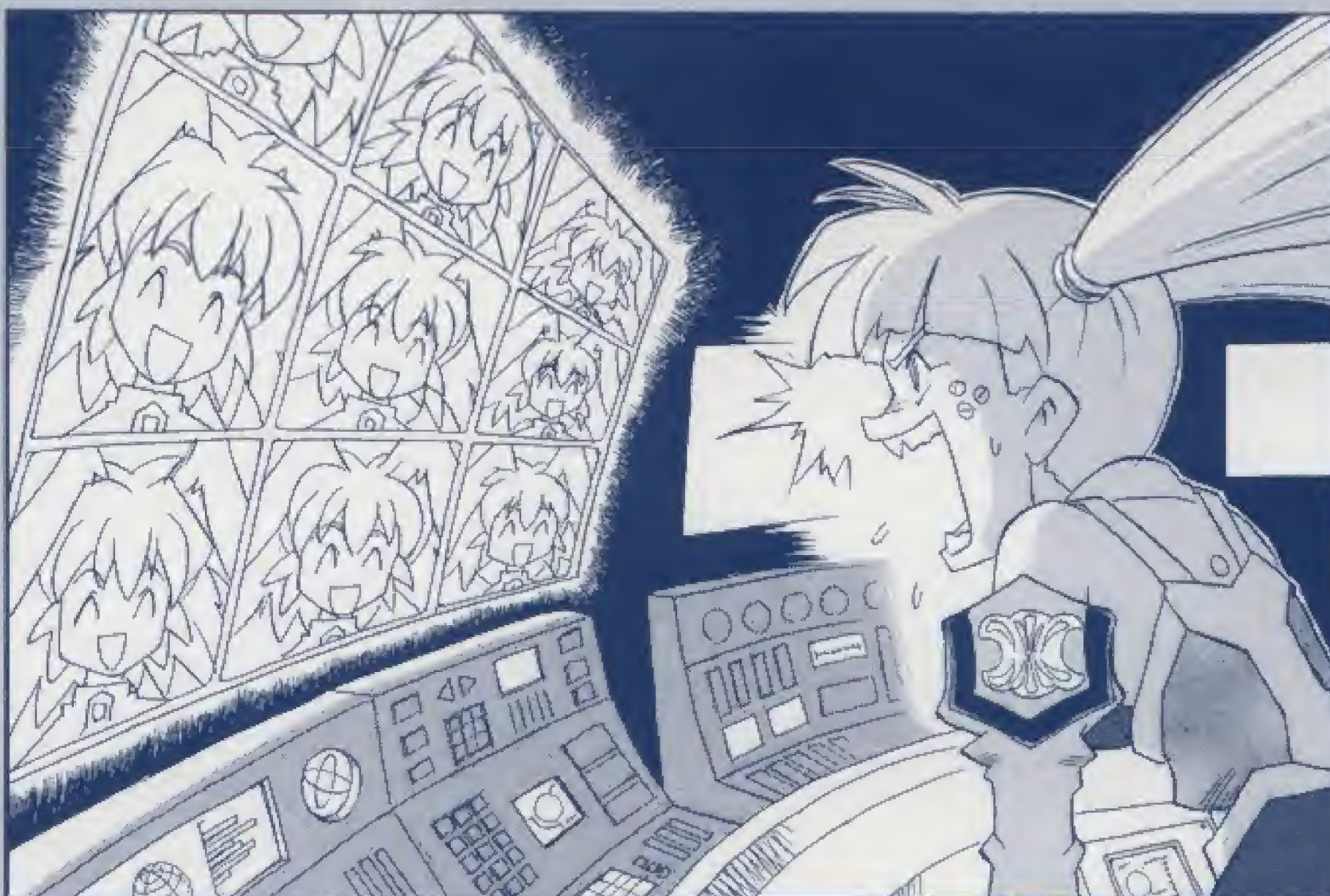
まあ、その一種だと思ってくれ。で**エルゴ領域**ってのは、ブラックホールの回転の影響から粒子が静止出来なくなる領域で、これは「事象の地平面」の外に形成されるんだ。「事象の地平面」ってのは、ブラックホールの超重力で光すら脱出できない領域。で、**内部地平面**ってのはブラックホールの「事象の地平面内」にできる一種の通路みたいなもの。



すび〜〜もう、食べらんないよお…むにゅ、むにゅ…。



速攻で寝やがったな…つまり、オペレーターの言っている「エルゴ領域拡大」ってのは、入口が出来て、広がったって事で、「内部地平面形成」ってのは通過するトンネルが出来たって事。ま、勝手にワープの下準備がされちゃったよ〜って事だ。ちなみに劇中では、ブラックホールを作るわけじゃなくて、似たよーな効果をもたらす跳躍装置の結果を、同じように言い回してるらしいぞ。

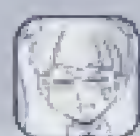
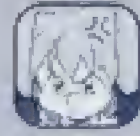




## SCENE ETC More learning!



The girls say will discuss various other terms in the story.



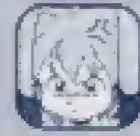
**Q1**

Solaris -Elly's house

What's the 'old bathtub'?



Citan created a bathtub out of some old Gear frames, and attached a slave generator to it. The girls joke about how many eternal bubbles it could make.



**Q2**

Soylent System facility

To end their lives?



After Fei and Elly are allowed to eat the canned goods by Citan, later he says,

**"To end a person's life, and then consume their flesh. Is that, permissible...?"**



They say that the words are typical for a Japanese, but the wording is not used as often in modern times. It expresses the intent to stop the sacrifice.



The girls relate a story in Japanese mythology about a wolf god lending power. It relates to the Soylent System's manager Krelan who is the 'wolf god' lending power to Fei 'the dog'.



continuing, they say that this is part of a larger complex plot by Krelan, and the proof is hideous deeds by him, pointing out as one example his treatment of Kenren and Tenpo, his subordinates.



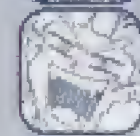
Apparently, the actions by Krelan would have placed him 'beyond the pale' by the standards of Japanese drama.



Seraphita actually asks if any of this will be clearer on the 2nd disk. Tolone hems and haws, changing the subject and at the end of the dialogue when Seraphita asks again, Tolone says basically, "Let's not go there!"

!

(I guess Square knew they had problems.)



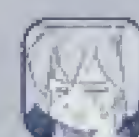
**Q3**

Nisan tactical meeting

What is meant by "Speed is everything"?



The girls say this was said by Citan at the meeting concerning the taking back of Aveh in Nisan, pointing out he talks a great deal.



Proceeds to show the difference between the terms here, and those used in Chinese characters. Says that the overall impression in the language merges the concept of 'used soldiers' for speed.

The words seem to contain a pun in Japanese about 'piercing' and soldiers moving with all speed.

Also, they indicate that Citan was somewhat fearful on the outcome based on the kind of words used. They say his explanation simplified the overtones quite a bit.



They go on to say that Citan was planning with such a small number of troops, that the tactic had to employ genius and risk taking to have the remotest chance of working. Apparently they refer here to a well known Japanese source for the quote, maybe a movie or a book.





# Main Staff of Xenogears

For all those who loved Xenogears, from the designers

## Takahashi Tetsuya

Director, script, production

Tetsuya Takahashi



The director of almost everything starting with the building of that world. Ordering character designs from Tanaka-San, and the Gear designs by Ishigaki-San. From this background, go to the pages starting on 236 for the comments [From the Director].

The development of Xenogears took a little more than 2 years (any ideas about it taking 3 years or more is just rumor). Looking back on this, it was a day by day, person by person struggle that was all-engrossing, and when returning to the everyday world, it felt like only one part in 3 was actually there. When I think about the work that lies in the years ahead, I get dizzy thinking about that now. (hah, hah.)

It's now 6 months since Xenogears was released. Looking back on it, there are things that appear rushed that I must admit sheepishly, make me a little embarrassed.

For that reason, this book is to try and correct some of that. Of course, [What's that, isn't it different from the game?] will probably be heard in anger at some point, but hey cut me some slack. (hah, ha).

The book contains many terms and ideas that were not fully explained in the game. To elaborate, those things that hardly appeared that underlie the events and were the background of much of the story, we wanted to have in print, even to some of the "absurd" official illustrations. We discussed all the particulars at length.

Also, this is meant to provide a service to those users who loved Xenogears and begged for more details (in the book we took great pains), so that just a little of the episodes and their time periods not shown in the story could be expanded upon. We even went so far as 'what were those things?' and 'what would the readers think?' (Hah, ha). So, the earlier things not spoken of would now be exposed, and this time, please read the book for a greater understanding of Xenogears' world.

And as the months line up one after another, please keep looking over it forever.

-----1998 8/12 My house, listening to Snake manshou.

## Name

work portion

NAME

① Memories of the time when creating.



② Words to the users.

## Tanegashima Takashi

Event planner, world building

Takashi Tanegashima

① And so, there's the hard surface (technology stuff), the soft surface (concepts), the people (!) [At first] there were so many I was jus confused and lost.



② Um, let's see what to say, really everybody-study this real hard... You will be happy, and probably sad too.

I know what I was originally gonna say, but it's a SECRET.

## CHARACTER DESIGN



## Tanaka Kunihiko

Kunihiko Tanaka

① To give you an idea of what goes into character design, I'll see if I can describe it.

Let's start with Fei. As he's the hero he has to have a distinctive hair style. When people see him, they have to say, [Ah, he's different]. And for this reason, Fei was given a very "different" hair style. There are a lot of results from this. The concept of the heroine, Elly has her with long hair, I wanted to see it go straight down to her knees. And Bart's outfit I thought, [what kind of jumper to put him in?]. Maria's goggles are swiss goggles. Seraphita is of the house of rabbits.

## Profile

A freelance illustrator. He is the main character designer for the characters of Xenogears. Up to now, has been a OVA [KEY] character designer. Movie's published C magazine's serialized [Fam & Iri] (comic) and collaborated on other OVA's as character designer. The cover illustration for this book is courtesy of him.

Emeralda as an adult? Margie as stubborn. Big Jo's chin. Rico's chin, too. Zephyr as a calm and serene beauty. Citan's glasses like 'Snoop Dog's' and Ramsus having the belly from Gundam F91. Really... I mean it!

② And last. Only for you readers, I want to thank you for all the fond memories from the bottom of my heart. So, after Emeralda becomes a friend, before you can go to Solaris there is time to roam the surface freely. At that time, if you take Emeralda to Aveh's west side to the restaurant, see what happens when you order something. Did you...? (then if you did and it made you happy, the red signal is for emergencies. Yikes!)



## Honne Yasuyugi

### Finishing director

Yasuyuki Honne



① God that was hell. The current map this time has small subtle traces where light might peek out at the cracks, or be buried deep, and all of these textures were added in. All this had to be considered for the overall effect. Out of all the staff working on this, how many hundreds do you think worked on the map? Things like light and shading and the mixture of both. Ultimately, the image boards for the map, topography, placement of towns, all had to somehow come together. The hardest thing of all was this great endeavor. I can tell you, I'm not going to go through it again. Do you understand how unbelievably huge this world is? How we ever finished it is still a mystery to me.

② Ah please, no more maps--.

## Uchiyama Hiroshi

### Battle, Gear modeling

Hiroshi Uchiyama



① Hello there, I worked as the primary Battle Gear modeler in Xenogears. Battle Gear modeling is figuring out how the sliding polygons come together in a system.

20 years ago, my heart was touched watching the technique of modeling various devised prototype robots. And there were many TV programs showing robots. It was my dream when I grew up to create the Super robot.

So here I am today, my job is making robots. For me, Xenogears is an unforgettable experience.

② As crazy as it sounds, I urge you to replay it. You never know what interesting things you might uncover.

## Arai Kou

### Design finishing - Map design

Kou Arai



① Come on in. This is one of those nights when I'm not asleep under my desk. Even though I didn't know if it would ever end, my work was drawing various things and maps, figuring out modeling textures, tying together characters and events, and slowly but surely the game began to come together... It was tough and only a total nut would have gone through it. Something new sprang up from nothing... So this is how it's born, hm? It was really rough on the girls. I am a man you know.

② Nothing special really. Not many come over to play, but if I thought they'd be interesting I'd be happy.

## Terada Tsutomu

### NPC Character and monster design

Tsutomu Terada



① When you get involved in the process of monster design, it's trial and error, back and forth repeatedly.

So when something you've worked on over and over finally does not work out, it's time to go and work on the NPC characters and townspeople. In thinking about it now, Takahashi-San gave me his drawings of the 3 Sages. The first were Melchior and Gaspar. I didn't know anything about them, so when later I heard that Gaspar was Yui's father, I went right back to the drawing board to re work him over again to make him a little less weird.

② Please pay careful attention to the world of Xenogears, there's a lot you haven't uncovered.

## Ogura Yoshinori

### Mecha design

Yoshinori Ogura



① If you speak of the difficult labor of mecha design, how about design on transforming mechs? [Here it must pull inward and revolve out... ] [screw in tighter until flush with mount... make it bigger here... ] are the kinds of instructions, it's gotta stretch here, make it go all the way over there, it gives you the feeling of making a puzzle after a bunch of mistakes one after another. However the result in terms of the transforming mechs came out pretty good, I think.

② This book is the result of hard work by the staff and should make the world of Xenogears even more enjoyable.

## Usada Tadahiro

### NPC Character and monster design

Tadahiro Usada



① Because of scheduling problems, some events were cut. And some of them were where an NPC would appear once. And some of those were my designs... Ah well, just bad luck I guess. It's isn't the first time (Hah, hah.) [What, another one of my characters-...] is what I said, and I was pretty blue that day. The ones I liked the best out of all, were the Aveh soldiers.

② This book shows a lot of the background of the work [Xenogears]. But since it's from the creator and those of the staff, it ought to be very interesting and they worked very hard on it.

## GEAR DESIGN



## Ishigaki Junya

Junya Ishigaki

① It would start with an unclear image, and with very hard work on my part finally come together. Looking back on it now, I thought the design-up took a long time, and I got a lot of calls from Square to try and pick me up once more many times. I am truly grateful to Square.

Upon thinking a little further, I've always loved robots design and doing my own CG. This time, I've had a truly wonderful experience. I definitely would love to make another game with this team.

② To go from my own Gear design, turning them into polygons and then seeing them upgraded to high end modeling I think was truly

## Profile

A freelance illustrator and animator. He was the designer for the Gears of all the main characters. Has worked at Sunrise animation mostly, and done many related works there. He made the comments in this book's Gear gallery. Also, he worked over the pin up at the beginning.

one of the high points in this labor. Every time I see it makes me happy.

Out of all my designs, please tell me which one you liked best. I look forward to hearing from you.



**Translator's Note:**

## What did the user want from this work?

## The [Xenogears] experience

Text by Sawaduki You

## Confusion in [Xenogears]

People expect a great deal from a game that boasts a huge story, and as *Xenogears* is story oriented, the chance for the player to be involved is huge.

And what about the story? So much is in the mind while playing and after. My personal take on this is unique and not like anyone's else's. I read into the characters and actions differently from another player.

the value in the game is not in whether it's 'boring' or 'fun' but in what you take away with you.

Saying it's just interesting may not be believed.

Players can now broaden the scope of their discussions by using the Internet and their 'persocons'. This story is on a much larger scale than most robot and mech animes.

And the idea of the hero as tortured and the self sacrificing heroine . . . The individual meaning is according to each gamer's impressions. Probably my ideas are off base, but the player and the game are intertwined in a complex dance.

→ The playery makes the story

でもそんなことが書けるが、もう少し詳しく話そう。

To go into further detail, my version of the game was what my impressions unfolded to me. This is different from anyone else's impressions and feelings during the game, and so in this sense it is my own creation.

って記述したもの」のことを、行状としての物語、とも書える。だから一般的な意味での物語と区別して、〈物語〉と表記することにしよう。

さまざまな経験を通して、個人が＜物語＞を内面で構築していく。一般的な意味での物語は、作り手の＜物語＞と行為の産物と考えるだろう。たと

えは小説家は、頭の中で「できごと」の中から、テーマにかなうものを（たとえば、主人公の体験など）だけを取り出し、それを文で表現する。All the components come together, music, visuals, heroes, villains, and while nothing that happens is unheard of, the whole comes together for me in a unique way, so that I always remember, when hearing part of the music, what my feelings were right then.

った表現手段を用いて表現するかどうか、あるいは何と手に表現できるかどうかは別の問題である。なめしに過去の自分の記憶を思い出してみるといい。その時あなたがしている行為は、記憶の中でできことを配列し、今の自分と矛盾しないような文脈に乗せて、自分自身の＜物語＞を構築していくという行為だ。

繰り返して強調しておこう。＜物語＞行為は、隠されたクリエイター達だけが独占しているものではない。

とはいえ、それらの<物語>を、人々がすべてから興味するとは限らない。それは、誰もがやるにはなかなか困難な作業なのだ。そこで、物語の「心」を捉え、それを自分の言葉で表現する。For this reason, there is no one version of the story, no 'right' way of looking at it. Taking up the running theme like it's pulse, I take my own impressions and tie it all together as my own thing. I have the feeling that this is mine, it belongs to me.

な気分になることができるわけだ。映画を見るとか小説を読むとか、そういった既に誰かが作った物語にも、人は自分なりの文脈に位置づけながら読む。

る。いや、文藝も用置られているから。  
So that in times of sadness, I cry,  
happiness brims me over with joy ...  
ah, that is what it is meant to be!  
On the other hand, if this wasn't  
the case the game would be just  
for general entertainment, and one  
wouldn't have much more than the  
feeling of watching a drama while  
disconnected. So instead, we have  
our own story to tell.

「物語」は、俳優の創作に現われる  
かっこよさという文藝に基づいたもの  
となり、とりあける「でもごと」も、  
その俳優が中心となるだろう。そのた  
め、映画に用置されていたストーリー  
は背後にかすむ。それをもた、映画と  
いう「物語をつためのキット」から  
生れた、ひとつの「物語」なのだ。

## The player's Story

Note 1  
(goes into how other people may not like Gears and cel animation, but he's an exception, of course.)



A single playing only gives the sense of an overwhelming amount of information. It is a large scale 3rd person experience according to my opinion as a gamer.

A game with [Story]ゲーム

The game runs the gamut of [things to do], [context] and [order of events].

(he proceeds to relate how easy the game controls were, how fast the reaction time had been programmed, interactivity, etc.)

My own subjective experience created the [context] and out of all the levels, characters and items in the game, I am most struck by the [story].

Of course, all players don't see the same thing when they have this experience. The rules of HP loss, level raising and selling items hasn't changed, but the story included is so large that some players may feel a bit overwhelmed.

Xenogears is a story, before it's a game and it is the player that brings meaning to it.

## Enjoyable efforts

Now to return to the beginning. If it's 'boring' or 'fun' it is up to the player to put in his own impressions and make of it what he will.

Likes and dislikes are subjective, but all upon reflection must admit it is very interesting. Only players looking for an easy game will find this boring, but why not take your time?

The player must use his own will power to help create the story and its significance. And for those the game will be most interesting.

さらにまた、エンディングまでたと  
り着くことができればすべてに  
応答することがある。ひとつという  
ことはありではない。つまり、エン  
ディングまでたどり着くことがあ  
る。つまり、エンディングまでた  
どり着くことがあ

And for those who can grasp the whole by the time they reach the ending . . . It's no longer just a game.

The full scale of the story is at last apparent.

To enjoy the game fully requires effort, so see how much fun it is if you put your all into it.

To make it more fun, see what part you don't understand. Go back and investigate, there's lots of cultural references and hidden gems that aid in the enjoyment of the game.

Usually it is not a light experience for those who have liked it.

For those who are not satisfied, what the problem is, I don't know. It's not something you can analyze and logically explain. Am I the only one who played it to death and enjoyed it all the more? Isn't it better to have had some fun?

Here is where the player and the story come together and make a whole new thing, just like in paradise. Now that's kind of scary, when I think about it. What kind of game pulls out such feeling? And the next game I play, I will be looking for something like this.

A relationship can grow between game and player, that's what makes it new and interesting. And ultimately one that the gamer will never tire of and they can go on to create more stories, and the game's future becomes more clear.

These are the sort of questions [Xenogears] bring out.

Note 2  
(goes into how subjective differences make the game a different thing for different people. The gamer brings his own culture and experiences into the mix and make his own [Story] and must be willing to allow that others create their own as well that are equally valid.)







## And so, the meaning of Xenogears

Well then, what about Xenogears? Games are usually considered kids' fare, but this is way beyond in scope and imagination, and it utilized technology in sound and graphics that were not possible in a game years ago. It will probably have quite an impact on the players. Many will ask: Why did Xenogears have to be in a game format?"

What are the players doing with a controller for tens of hours? So some will wonder if it needed to be a game at all. But the question has no meaning. Xenogears could have been a novel, anime or whatever, the story would have been told anyway. But Xenogears is a game, with a story the player can interact with. This is the most important element, I think. And even incomplete, that just leaves room for the players' imaginations.

The story is realized in the gamer's own mind.

Because it is unfinished, many are left with a sense of dissatisfaction with Xenogears. But isn't that dissatisfaction the actual meaning of Xenogears?

Maybe I'm jumping to conclusions.

The player determines the next step in the story, fights battles and assigns his own meaning after all. And so the players (of course, me too) try to beat the game any way they like.

There's no tried and true way. As you play through making your own story, take a long look inside, see what it's trying to tell you. This might be the true meaning of Xenogears, the merging of the gamer and story into one, who both transcend their respective 'media'.

## PROFILE

Sawaduki You You sawaduki

Born the 27th of October. Currently majoring in Business at Osaka University, if I don't graduate soon, my head will roll. Home page [Sawaduki Sho (<http://www.mars.dti.ne.jp>)] all the things brought up here about the game can be discussed. I didn't know I don't hate anime and SF until I made a study of Xenogears.

Note 4  
No one's talked about the Chuchu's in Shevat. These are someone's ideas of the reflection in the mirror. But it's all part of the experiences the player will have in the game.



Translator's note: Because the Japanese Alphabet is different from ours, the order here is strange. It's more or less together, but some placements make no sense unless you see how they spell English words in Japanese, like 'Aieenshutaun' for 'Einstein'. Now you have an idea why English words in Japanese can make a translator go prematurely gray.

The Japanese Alphabet is in this order:  
A, I, U, E, O, K, S, T, N, H, M, Y, R, W, N They match up the consonants with the vowels, so it's Sa, Ta, Na, Ha, Ma . . . .on through.

# Word Index

search

Fei Fong Wong human

history17  
info.158  
illust.158,208  
drama198,201,202  
official art236

Bubby (human) info.191  
Fei Fong Wong  
Farrant (human) info.183

shows word's genre.

For reference, full name is followed by type for easy use. For Fei, his full index name is "Wong, Fei Fong".

words separated by category. Page and location can be seen. For those who want to see color pictures, or history they can go directly.

A	Annonelbe (legend)	info.	175
	Angels (weapon)	info.	68,104
		info/pictures	104
	Isaac Balthasar (human)	info.	50,192
		illust.	50,192
	I'm In Love (creature)	habitat	56
	I'm In Love (strong) (creature)	habitat	56
	Einstein (scientist)	glossary	73
	Aveh (country)	history	16
		info.	32,45
		location	41
		official art	45
	Aveh Stalagtite Caves (locatin)	official art	51
	Aveh Creswt (crest)	info.	32
		illust.	32,45
	Aveh transport cruiser (vessel)	info.	154
		official art	154
	Aveh Soldier (work)	info.	45
		official art	45
	Aveh Sand Cruiser (vessel)	info.	32
		illust.	32
	Aquvy Area (geography)	location	40
		info.	41
	Active Homing (military)	glossary	283
	Agnes (human)	info.	187
	Ashura Monastery (location)	history	14
	Acid Frog (creature)	habitat	56
	demi-human	info.	188
	Adorielle (person)	history	14
	Anima (science)	info.	11,71,74
	Anima Relic (science)	info.	11,74
		official art	11,75
	Animus (science)	info.	11,71,74
	Anego (human)	info.	195
	Achtzehn (Gear)	info.	96
		official art	96,179
		drama	200
	Abandon (creture)	habitat	57
	Abel (human)	history	9
		info.	10,158
		illust.	158,209
	Aria Kou (designer)	comment	289
	Arbot Plaza (location)	info.	46
		official art	46
	Aramis (other)	image	222
	Aran Drone (other)	image	218
	Alkanshel *Gear	info.	93
		official	93,179
	Alteraei Class= Aveh vessel		
	Alice (human)	info.	181
		illust.	181
	Aunt Alice (person)	info.	181
	Alice's Uncle (person)	info.	181
	Anti-radar - beam rider (military	glossary	285
	Antious (frangrance)	image	225
	A (Anton) (military)	glossary	146
	Anna (Rico's mother) (human)	info.	188
	Anna (Thames') (human)	info.	195
	Amphysvena (Gear)	official art	135
	Eater (creature)	habitat	57
	Oves St. Larent (frangracne)	image	220
	separate child (human)	official art	273
	separate parent (mother)	official art	273
	Ignas Area (georgraphy)	location	41
		info.	41
	Ignas War (event)	history	17
		info.	34,36,37
	Ishigaki (designer)	comment	289
	Doctor (human)	info.	195
	Isolde (human)	info.	186
	Id (human)	info.	162
		illust.	163,209
		official art	266
	Transfer ship culture	info.	52
	In Love Again (fragrance)	image	220
	Vanderkaum (human)	info.	177
		illust.	177
	Vampire (military)	glossary	280
	Vierge (Gear)	info.	83
		illust.	83
		official art	114
	Bind (human)	info.	183
	Oolia (species)	insight	79
	Wels (creature)	habitat	57
	Wels (new)	habitat	57
	Weltall (Gear)	info.	80
		illust.	80
		official art	106
	Weltall Id (Gear)	info.	81
		illust.	81
		official	110
	Weltall 2nd (Gear)	info.	76,82
		illust.	76,82
		official art	112
	Vendetta (Gear)	official	134
	Wong Khan (human)	history	17
		info.	161
		illust.	161
		drama	202
		official art	268
	Wong Fei Fong (human)	history	17
		info.	158
		illust.	158,208
		drama	199,202



	official art	236
Receiving girl (person)	info.	189
Usaro (designer)	comment	289
Uchiyama (designer)	comment	289
space transfer plan	history	7
Urobolus Ring (technology)	glossary	171
Aerod System (weapon)	info.	83
Aerod System (technology)	official art	179
Abram Blanche (human)	history	17
A2 type - Vierge		
Ether (science)	glossary	74
Eidelweiss (creatue)	habitat	56
	official art	61
Erich Van Houten (human)	history	17
	info.	164
	illust.	164
	drama	201
Excalibur (vessel)	info.	8,151
	official art	15,151
Excalibur 2nd ship (vessel)	info.	8,151
	official art	151
Executioner (human)	info.	34,167
	illust.	167
	official art	269
Ezekiel Class Battleship (vessel)	info.	153
	official art	153
Infinity for Men (fragrance)	image	208
Etone (organization)	info.	190
Edbart IV (human)	hsitory	17
	info.	32,187
NGC 6744 (astronomy)	history	8
Energy breadth (science)	glossary	72
Energy shift position (science)	glossary	72
Energy potential shift *science)	glossary	72
Episode I (scenario)	info.	2
Episode II (scenario)	info.	2
Episode III (scenario)	info.	3
Episode IV (scenario)	info.	3
Episode V (scenario)	info.	3
Episode VI (scenario)	info.	3
Effect Fin - sand granulators		
M A M → Zohar		
M plan-- (Malakh) Plan		
M 24 Conctellation (astronomy)	history	7
Emeralda (person)	info.	13,77,194
	official art	13,77,194,251
	drama	201,203
	illust.	194,220
Elly -- Elehaym Van Houten		
Elazara (human)	history	14
El Andvari (Gear)	info.	24
	official art	24,126
Elvira Fatima (human)	history	17
	info.	187
Ergo area (science)	gloassary	286
El Stier (Gear)	official art	127
Eldridge (vessel)	glossary	8,71
	official art	9
El Fenrir (Gear)	official art	124
Elru (nation)	location	41
	altitude	42
Elru quelling (event)	history	17
Demon of Elru (event)	info.	163
El Renmazuo (Gear)	official art	128
Elaine (human)	info.	181
E l e h a y m (science)	history	9
Elehaym Van Houten (human)	info.	164
	illust.	164,210
	drama	201,202
	official art	2,240
Elements (organization)	history	17
	info.	177
	official art	260
Elements (Gear)	official art	179
Entropy (science)	info.	72
life extension (science)	info.	172

OR Weltall --OR(Original) Weltall		
ORW -- Original Weltall		
Orphan (creature)	habitat	57
All weapons blue/let's dance	glossary	282
The Coward (human)	info.	162
Ogura (designer)	comment	289
Oscillator (mecha)	glossary	284
Otto Merara (other)	glossary	282
Miss helper (human)	info.	181
Man A (human)	official art	273
he who takes life (other)	glossary	287
Grandma (person)	info.	187
Grandpa (person)	info.	183
Opiomorph (Gear)	official art	136
Operator 1 (person)	illust.	231
	official art	272
Operator 2 (human)	official art	272
Operator 3 (human)	official art	272
Omega 1 (science)	info.	70
Dad (human)	info.	183
Maid (human)	info.	183
OR (Original ) Weltall (Gear)	info.	23,91
	illust.	23,91
	official art	132
Original Elehaym, (human)	history	9
	info.	11,168
Origens (creature)	image	219
Carbonite freezing (technology)	history	15
Kahran Bekker (human)	history	17
	info.	176
	short story	204
Kahran Ramsus (person)	history	17
	info.	176
	illust.	176,225
	drama	201,203
	short story	204
	official art	257
Kahr -- Kahran Ramsus		
Kaan (species)	chart	78
Khan -- Wong, Khan		
c (Kaiser) --Yggdrasil		
stromtatolithollite (naural science)	official art	52
Exterior Ministry (organization)	info.	26
dissolving characteristic (medicine)	info.	162
Khan (human)	history	9
	info.	21,23,26,174
	illust.	174,227
Gaspar (human)	history	17
	info.	193
	illust.	193
Gazel (human)	history	9
Gazel Ministry (organization)	info.	21,26,175
	illustr.	175
Gash -- Bladegashe		
Capknight (Gear)	info.	99
	official art	99
Kadomony (science)	info.	68,71,74
	official art	69,71
phase shift (science)	glossary	72
actualization, phase shift		
enemy solider (other)	glossary	287
Calamity (Gear)	info.	92
	official art	92
Calvin Klein (other)	image	208,216,226
Krelian (human)	info.	14,172
	illust.	172,224
	official art	256
Karen (human)	hustory	17
	info.	167
	illust.	167
	drama	202
	official art	269
Watchtower guy (human)	info.	189
Fore block Babel (structure)	info.	8
fore ram -- ram		
Captain (Eldridge )human)	history	9



	illust.	231
	official art	272
Captain (Thames) (human)	info.	195
	illust.	195
	official art	263
Captain's wife (human)	official art	273
Catpain's daughter (human)	official art	273
Kanna (person)	info.	195
Gear -- Regular Gear		
Regular Gear (weapon)	info.	74,84
	illust.	75
Omnigear (weapon)	info.	75
	official art	75
	drama	200
Gigantor -- Goliath		
fake Zohar (science)	info.	75
Kislev (nation)	history	16
	info.	34,36,44
	location	41
	official art	44
Kislev Military (weapon)	info.	37
	official art	37
Kislev 11th Military Base (building)	info.	80
Kislev-use Gear (Gear)	info.	35
	illust.	35
Kislev 3rd ring buggy	official art	44
Kislev citizen (society)	official art	44
Kislev Imperial A Block (location)	info.	44
	official art	44
Kislev Imperial domain	info.	44
	official art	44
Kislev Imperial D Block	info.	44
	official art	44
Kislev Committee (organization)	info.	35
Kislev Crest	info.	34
	illust.	34,44
Terminal interfaces -- Angels		
Kefeinzel Class (vessel)	info.	154
	official art	154
Gimmick (creature)	habitat	57
	official art	63
Gimmick Plus (creature)	habitat	57
Kim (human)	history	12
	info.	159
	illust.	159,209
	drama	203
	official art	238
K. Erich Drexler (scientist)	glossary	76
C A P (military)	glossary	282
Gorilla (creature)	habitat	57
	official art	62
Carrier species (creature)	habitat	57
spped accelerator (technology)	glossary	283
Church (organization)	history	16
	info.	26,28,29,35,189
Church Diocese	info.	29
Church Western HQ	info.	29
Church Oceanic Bureau	info.	29
Church Planning Bureau	info.	29
Church Chapter 1 (organization)	info.	29
Church Chapter 2 (organization)	info.	29
Church Interior Affairs	info.	29
Church Defense Bureau	info.	29
Church Crest	info.	29
	illust.	29
Church HQ	location	40
	altitude	42
Bishop (human)	info.	191
pinch (military)	glossary	280
Caravan - Roni and Rene's caravan		
Internal Affairs	info.	26
Giant Beast (creature)	habitat	56
Giant Wels (creature)	habitat	57
Guild Information (human)	info.	189
Guild Operator (human)	info.	189
Golgoda	history	7

space warp defensive wall -- Gate		
Guzrun (human)	info.	187
Emperor Kusel - Kusel Laodicea		
Kusel Laodicea (human)	history	14
	info.	31
Craken (creature)	habitat	57
Craken (strong) (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	58
Grahf (person)	info.	25,91,161
	illust.	25,161,230
	official art	265
Claudia (human)	history	17
	info.	192
Classic (fragrance)	image	222
Grandgrowl (Gear)	info.	101
	official art	101
Green Tea (fragrance)	image	214
Christian Dior (other)	image	217,224
Gryphon (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	58
Gryphon (strong) (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	58
Crescens (Gear)	info.	89
	illust.	89
	official art	122
Crescens Omnigear (Gear)	official art	131
Gungnohl Missile -- Bart Missile		
Military Affairs	info.	26
Gaetia Key (science)	glossary	16
Gate (science)	info.	73
Gate Keeper (science)	info.	73
Lower Order (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	61
Lower Order (strong)	habitat	56
Genome (science)	glossary	286
Gebler (organization)	info.	26,28
Gebler Military Affairs Bureau	info.	28
Gelber Quaternary Bureau	info.	28
Gebler Special Corps	info.	177
Gebler 3rd Invasion Chapter	info.	28
Gebler Interior (organization)	info.	28
Gebler Crest	info.	28
	illust.	28
Gebler Planning Division	info.	28
Animal skull (natural science)	official art	51
Kelvina (human)	info.	177
	illust.	177,229
	official art	260
	military term	281
Place of Origin	official art	197
First Human (human)	info.	169
Kenren (human)	info.	97,177,287
Kenren (Gear)	info.	97
	official art	97
Snail Shell (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	62
Red Snail (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	62
Purple Snail (creature)	habitat	56
Aerial plans -- Aerial Navigaotr		
Concurrent attack (military)	glossary	280
Space Invasion weapon -- Deus		
Joined attack (military)	glossary	280
Golem (creature)	habitat	57
	official art	61
Blackmoon Forest	location	41
	altitude	42
	info.	45
	official art	45
Kokusa (human)	info.	177
Kokusa (navigator)	glossary	282
Kobold (creature)	habitat	57
	official art	61
Orphanage (building)	location	40
	altitude	42
	info.	190



- Archaeological religion(group) — history.....8  
Defense (organization) — info.....26  
Goliath (vessel) — info.....155  
Goliath Factory (building) — location.....41  
altitude.....43  
Gonzales (human) — info.....187  
Contradiction (fragrance) — image.....226  
Sai (creaue) — habitat.....56  
official art.....60  
Finance Bureau (organization) — info.....26  
Equilibrium (system) — short story.....204  
Saturation Attack (military) — glossary.....285  
Samson (human) — info.....177  
Samurai (fragrance) — image.....218  
Salvo — shot  
Sargasso (location) — drama.....201  
Salvage (technology) — glossary.....35  
Sawaduki (riend) — discussion.....290  
Zahnktenzel (vessel) — info.....154  
triple shot (military) — glossary.....282  
Sandman's (organization) — info.....195  
Sandmans' Isle ( location) — location.....41  
altitude.....42  
Brith Bureau (organization) — info.....26  
C1 type Vierge (Gear) — info.....94  
official art.....94  
G Elements (Ger) — info.....102  
official art.....102  
Sigmund (human) — history.....17  
info.....189  
illust.....189  
Jacqueline (human) — history.....15  
info.....31,186  
c K b e (frangrance) — image.....216  
Grandpa (human) — info.....187  
Shieldknight (Gear) — info.....99  
official art.....99  
Jesiah Blanche -- Jessie B. Black  
Jessie B. Black (human) — info.....191  
illust.....191  
drama.....199  
official art.....264  
Shevat (mnation) — info.....20,22,33,36,48  
geography.....42  
altitude.....42  
official art.....48  
drama.....201  
Shevat-use Gear — info.....33  
illust.....33  
3 Sages of Shevat (persons) — info.....23  
Shevat Deep Sea Brothers (buiding) — info.....48  
official art.....48  
Shevat town (location) — info.....48  
official art.....48  
Shevat house (building) — info.....48  
official art.....48  
Shevat Crest — info.....33,48  
illust.....33,48  
Sieraa (creature) — habitat.....57  
official art.....62  
Sierra kind (creature) — habitat.....57  
Jerico (human) — info.....183  
magnetic abnormal matter -- Zohar  
Sigrid (human) — info.....187  
Sigrid -- Yggdrasil  
Sigurd Harcourt (human) — history.....17  
info.....184  
illust.....184,222  
drama.....200  
short story.....204  
official art.....252  
Shigeyoshi Inoue -- Captain (Eldridge)  
Gramps (human) — info.....189  
shot (military) — glossary.....280  
phenomenon horizon (science) — glossary.....286  
phase shift (science) — glossary.....72  
phenomenon transfer engine Zohar  
System Id (technology) — info.....82  
(science) — history.....9  
info.....71  
Natural (creature) — info.....57  
Citan Uzuki (human) — history.....17  
info.....178  
illust.....178,214  
drama.....199,201  
short story.....204  
official art.....244  
Citan's huse (building) — altitude.....42  
official art.....50  
Four Pillars (weapons) — info.....105  
official art.....105  
Shakan (human) — info.....32,187  
illust.....187  
Shakan's Gear — info.....93  
official art.....93  
Sharl (measurment) — measure.....79  
shooting platform (military) — glossary.....280  
Shady (creature) — habitat.....56  
official art.....59  
Chanel (other) — image.....210,225  
Shalimar Harcourt (human) — history.....17  
info.....184,187  
Stier (Gear) — info.....86  
illust.....86  
official art.....119  
Guardian Angels (organization) — info.....26  
Protocol Persona  
Main Protocol Personal - Persona  
Pilgrim Fleet (vessels) — history.....8  
horn -- ram  
Under the circumstances (military) — glossary.....281  
girl A (human) — official art.....273  
Boy Squad (human) — info.....187  
works organization — info.....26  
Punisher -- Executioner  
Joshua Black (human) — info.....193  
illust.....193  
Josephine (animal) — info.....189  
Human fusion (technology) — info.....88  
propulsion rings — glossary.....147  
waterworks Chief (human) — info.....187  
Directorate (organization) — history.....7  
info.....9  
Vatican (organization) — info.....30,31  
Soole (speciaes) — measure.....79  
Skygashe (Gear) — info.....101  
Skyghene (Ger) — info.....101  
official art.....101  
Scard (human) — info.....187  
Suzarn (human) — info.....189  
Bishop Stone (human) — info.....191  
illust.....191  
drama.....199  
Stratski (human) — info.....177  
illust.....177  
Sunahami (creature) — habitat.....56  
official art.....59  
Sunahami (strong) — habitat.....56  
9science) — glossary.....9  
Sufal Man (creature) — habitat.....57  
official art.....61  
Spring Fever (fragrance) — image.....219  
Slimeslug (creature) — habitat.....56  
Slave generator (science) — info.....74,76  
Stellar War (event) — history.....9  
Gunner (military) — glossary.....280  
living element Personal -- Persona  
living element -- Persona  
living element labyrinth (science) — info.....88  
biological brain -- Kadomony  
Stellar Federatoin (organization) — history.....7



	info.....	7
Interstellar Federation	history.....	7
	info.....	7
Snowfield Hideout (building)	location.....	40
	altitude.....	42
The Contact (human)	info.....	158
Absolute Space (science)	info.....	72,73
Ministry Bureau	info.....	26
Xenogears (Gear)	official art.....	144
Zephyr (human)	history.....	14
	info.....	23
Queen Zephyr (human)	info.....	193
	illust.....	193
Path of Sephirot (other)	glossary.....	77
Seibzehn (Gear)	info.....	88
	illust.....	88
	official art.....	121
	drama.....	200
Seibzehn Omnigera	official art.....	130
Zeboim ruin	altitude.....	42
Zeboim civilization	history.....	12
	official art.....	13
Sem (measure)	measure.....	79
Seraphita (human)	info.....	177
	illust.....	177,229
	official art.....	261
	military word.....	280
0808191 Rameses -- Kahran Ramsus		
Desert Pirates (organization)	info.....	32,36
Full Map	location.....	40,41
Soylent System (science)	info.....	27,77
Manipulator (creature)	info.....	57
Established calendar year	year number.....	9
Theroy of Apposites	glossary.....	72,73
Diet Bureau (organization)	info.....	26
Swordknight (Gear)	illust.....	28
	info.....	98
	official art.....	98
measurement (military)	glossary.....	280
Zohar (science)	history.....	7,8
	info.....	8,10,67,68,70,72,74
	official art.....	11,66,69,74
Sophia (human)	info.....	14,165
	illust.....	165,213
Sophia's Omnigear	official art.....	129
Solaris (nation)	info.....	20,22,26,28,36,46
	location.....	40
	altitude.....	42
	official art.....	46
Solaris aerial battleship	info.....	152
	official art.....	152
Solaris military fortress	info.....	37
Solaris-use Gear	info.....	26
	illust.....	26
Solaris citizen (society)	info.....	27
Solaris Shaft (building)	info.....	46
	official art.....	46
Solaris War (event)	history.....	15
	info.....	15,20,22,24
Soloaris fighting pod (weapon)	info.....	27
	illust.....	27
Solaris Crest	info.....	26
	illust.....	26,46
Solaris Frigate (vessel)	info.....	153
	official art.....	153
Solaris soldier	info.....	46
	official art.....	46
1st invasion of Shevat (event)	history.....	16
2nd invasion of Shevat (event)	history.....	16
3rd invasion of Shevat (event)	history.....	17
	info.....	33,180
5th stage Malahk Plan	history.....	17
5th Emperor of Nimrod -- Kusel Laodicea		
Large Angel statue	info.....	17,18
	official art.....	17,18
Takahashi (designer)	comment.....	3,288

Fish bowl thing -- Ezekeil Battleship		
Dazil (location)	location.....	41
	altitude.....	42
Dazil Waterworks	official art.....	45
Tuscany Forte (fragrance)	image.....	222
Touch (fragrance)	image.....	223
Tanaka Kunihiro (designer)		278
	comment.....	288
Tanegashima (designer)	comment.....	288
Thames (nation)	info.....	35,49
	location.....	40
	altitude.....	42
	official art.....	49
Thames' Captain		
Thames people	info.....	49
	official art.....	49
Thames survey area	info.....	49
	official art.....	49
Thames' Beer Hall	info.....	49
	official art.....	49
differentiation	history.....	9
	info.....	11,12
Dan (human)	info.....	181
	illust.....	181
	official art.....	270
Cliff (location)	official art.....	50
Crust movement	info.....	50
Globe	official art.....	50
central brain -- Raziel		
central block Mahanon	info.....	8
main protocol Persona		
Main Protocol -- Persona		
mid-size continent	location.....	41
	info.....	41
Chuchu (person)	info.....	185
	drama.....	200
	illust.....	185,217
	official art.....	247
Super Space Cruiser Eldridge		
Super Battle Fortress -- Merkava		
Diet (organization)	info.....	26
Earth dragon Rankar	habitat.....	56
	official art.....	60
Tsitol (measure)	measure.....	79
Antitype (term)	info.....	165
tsuchinoko (creature)	official art.....	55
	habitat.....	56
Tsuchinolo (purple)	habitat.....	56
trim -- trimming tank		
Diahz (creature)	habitat.....	57
	official art.....	63
Diahz plus (creature)	habitat.....	57
Diana (human)	info.....	189
Diabolos (weapon)	history.....	16
	info.....	16
Diabolos Corps (weapon)	info.....	160
D K 1200 (science)	info.....	177
T. G. (era)	year number.....	9
Imperial Gvt. Bureau -- Gebler		
Imperial Internal Affairs -- Church		
Timothy (human)	info.....	181
	illust.....	181
	official art.....	270
Timothy's father (human)	info.....	181
Deus (weapon)	info.....	8,10,68,70
location		
	altitude.....	42
	official art.....	69,138
Deus System --Deus		
Dues/Zohar fusion experiments	info.....	10
Deus' self revival program	info.....	10
Decoy (military)	glossary.....	283
Dessize (ocean)	habitat.....	57
	official art.....	58
Dessize (underwater) (creature)	habitat.....	57
	official art.....	58



Debbie (human)	info.	191
Dune Purim (fragrance)	image	224
Terada (designer)	comment	289
Terraform (science)	official art	70
Terrane Area (location)	location	40
	info.	41
Angel image -- Angel Statue		
Emperor Cain -- Cain		
Tenpo (human)	info.	97,287
Tenpo (Gear)	info.	97
	official art	97
Imperial Bureau (organization)	info.	26
Tool guy (humna)	info.	189
systematic strike (military)	glossary	285
Lighthouse (bulding)	locatin	40
	altitude	42
Dora (Ger)	info.	92
	official art	92
D (Dora) (military)	glossary	146
Taura Melchior (person)	info.	193
	illust	193
Tokka (other)	image	223
Dominia Izkor (human)	info	177
	illust	177,228
	official art	260
	military word	284
Dragon (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	59
Dragon (creature)	habitat	56
TranscendChrist (era)	year number	8
Drexler --K. (Kim) Erich Drexler		
T comm (military)	glossary	281
Dorothy (creature)	habitat	57
Tolone (person)	info.	177
	illust	177,228
	official art	261
	military word	280
Dwarf (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	61
Nash (human)	info.	183
Firing ship (vessel)	glossary	281
Firing range (weapon)	info.	90
internal horizon (science)	glossary	286
Nanoassembler (science)	info.	76,77
Nanotechnology --Nanotechnology		
Nano disassembler (science)	info.	76,77
Nanotechnology (science)	history	12
	info.	76,89,172
Nanomachine (science)	info.	76,77
Nanomachine colony (science)	info.	194
Nanoreactor (science)	info.	77
	official art	77
Nikolai Balthasar (human)	history	17
	info.	192
	illust.	192
	drama	200
Nisan (nation)	info.	22,30,31,36
	location	41
	altitude	42
Nisan Monastery Corps	info.	23
Nisan Sect (religion)	history	14
	info.	30
Nisan Church reform	glossary	31
Nisan Mother	info.	30
Nisandiocese	info.	30
Nisan people (church)	info.	47
	official art	47
Nisan follower	info.	47
	official art	47
Nisan Orthodox	history	14
	info.	30,186
Nisan Cathedral (building)	info.	19,31,47
	official art	19,30,47
Nisan Crater (location)	info.	47
	official art	47
Nisan Town (location)	info.	47

## H

Nisan Crest	official art	47
	info.	30
	illust	30,47
Nimord (nation)	history	14
	info.	30
Neo Jerusalem	history	7
	info	7
Nortune Capital (location)	location	41
	altitude	42
Noisemaker (military)	glossary	283
Noln (locatin)	location	41
	altitude	42
Patch (technology)	glossary	286
Haishao (vessel)	info.	95
	official art	95
Bypass (technology)	glossary	284
Heinrich (human)	info.	189
Bomber ship Hecht	info	95
	official art	95
Bomber vessel Hecht	info.	95
	official art	95
destruct bolt (technology)	glossary	286
Hacking (technology)	glossary	69
Pass forming (military)	glossary	283
Hardrat (cretrue)	habitat	56
	official art	62
pulled sound (military)	glossary	281
Hubble star number	glossary	9
Baffles (military)	glossary	281
Wave Existence (other)	info.	10,173
	drama	203
BattCon (military)	glossary	280
Battling (culture)	info.	35,188
Battling King (post)	info.	188
Battling use machine (Gear)	info.	86
Banana (human)	info.	183
Banana ripabrik (other)	iamge	222
Babel Tower (location)	info.	33,48
	location	40
	altitude	43
	official art	48
Babel Tower (location)	history	14
Hammer (person)	info.	188
	illust	188
	official art	271
Hammer (Gear)	info.	97
	official art	97
Paradigm infiltration (science)	glossary	286
Valgas (human)	info.	189
Bart -- Bartholomew Fatima		
Bart's Hideout (location)	altitude	42
Bart Missile (weapon)	info.	149
	official art	149
Bartholomew Fatima (human)	history	17
	info.	32,182
	illust	182,215
	drama	200
	official art	245
Hans (person)	info.	195
	illust	195
Franz (person)	info.	183
	illust	183
	official art	253
Hands free cruise (military)	glossary	285
Panspermia (science)	glossary	7
Anti-Solaris Alliance	info.	22
Buntline (Gear)	info.	94
	official art	94,179
Hammerhead (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	63
Found of Hammerhead (creature)	haibtat	56
Piknik (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	60
Test subject (science)	info.	184
Big Joe (humna)	info.	187
	illust	187



	official art	271
Big Bang (science)	glossary	72,73
Human -- specialization		
human's founder	info	52
human skeleton (science)	official art	52
Hyuga Ricdeau -- Citan Uzuki		
Hugo (fragrance)	image	215
Hugo Boss (other)	image	215
Billy Lee Black (human)	history	17
	info	190
	illut	190,216
	drama	199
	official art	250
Bingo (human)	info	183
Fahrenheit (fragrance)	image	217
Fatima Dynasty (nation)	info	186
Fatima Castle (building)	info	45
	official art	45
Fatima Jasper (legend)	glossary	32
	study	53
	info	186
	drama	200
Falke (human)	info	183
Fiery (creature)	habitat	57
	official art	62
Philadelphia Class -- Eldridge		
Bubby (human)	info	191
Fei -- Wong, Fei Fong		
Faurent (human)	info	183
Fallbedown (creature)	habitat	57
	official art	63
Fallbedown (strong)	habitat	57
Forest Elf (creature)	habitat	57
	official art	60
Forest Elf (strong)	habitat	57
Von Hipper (human)	info	177
Miss weaons store (human)	info	189
Puchariman (creature)	habitat	57
Flourine element (science)	info	71
Bloody )creature)	habitat	57
Bloody Boss (creature)	habitat	57
Baron Francis --Francis Ravane Baron		
Francis Ravane Baron (human)	history	17
	info	186
Francois (animal)	info	183
Planter (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	59
Franz (human)	info	177
	illust	177
Brigandier (Gear)	info	85
	illust	85
	official art	118
Pris (location)	location	41
	altitude	42
Prim -- Primera Black		
Primera Black (human)	history	17
	info	190
	illust	190
	official art	264
Breuke (vessel)	info	154
Bluegari (other)	image	214
Prayerstar class reconnaissance vessel -- Excalibur vessels 1 & 2		
Bledavik(location)	location	41
	altitude	42
Bladegash (Gear)	info	100
	official art	100
Fred Hoyle (scientist)	info	7
Broyer (human)	info	177
	illust	177
Project Zohar (plan)	history	8
move army quickly (other)	glossary	287
call army quickly (other)	glossary	287
Heimdahl (Gear)	info	84
	illust	84
	official art	116
Jasper Fortress (location)	location	41

	altitude	42
Vector 3 3 6 (military)	glossary	282
Bethlehem (location)	history	16
Bishop Penuel	history	14
Penuel Monastery	info	14
Attack at Penuel Monastery	info	31
Cardinal Penuel	history	14
	info	31
Persoha (science)	info	71,75
(Berta) (military)	glossary	146
Belnuray (human)	info	191
Helmholz (human)	info	177
	illust	177
Pendant (other)	drama	202
Placement (military)	glossary	280
Kid in weapons shop	info	187
Monastery Defense Corps	info	23
Day of Collapse	glossary	24
Gunner -- Hochi		
winding down -- simulated attack		
Positron brain (science)	glossary	281
Subject (science)	info	166
Hochi (military)	glossary	282
Hochi (human)	info	177
Hover (creature)	habitat	56
	official art	60
Polychromatic brain (science)	glossary	279
Bolforce (other)	glossary	282
Hageyushi (other)	comment	289
big bath tub	glossary	287
Markings (science)	glossary	74
Martle (animal)	info	183
Masker (military)	glossary	283
Master (human)	info	181
Mass Driver (science)	info	13
	official art	13
Mahanon (science)	drama	202
M (Malakh) Plan	info	20,27,37,173
Mariah Blanche (human)	history	17
Maria Balthasar (human)	history	17
	info	192
	illust	192,219
	drama	200
	official art	249
Mariel (human)	history	17
	info	187
Marinebasher (Gear)	info	100
	official art	100
Margie -- Marguerite Fatima		
Marguerite Fatima (human)	history	17
	info	185
	illust	185,223
	official art	254
Marseilles (human)	info	183
Miang (0000) (human)	history	9
	info	11,166
Miang (0611) (human)	history	12
Miang (0612) (human)	history	12
	info	167
Miang (0970) (human)	history	15,16
	info	21,167
Miang (0996) (human)	info	167
Miang (0997) (human)	history	17
	info	167
	illust	167
Miang (0998) (human)	history	17
	info	166
	illust	166,226
	official art	258
Miang (0999) (human)	info	171
Miang Facotr (science)	drama	202
Miang's Gear -- C1 Vierge		
Miang Hawwa (human)	history	9
	info	10
	official	259
Midori-- Midori Uzuki		






Midori Uzuki (human)	info.....180
	illust .....180
	official art.....270
Mimi (creature)	official art.....55
	habitat.....56
Mimiruh (human)	info .....187
Miloch (human)	info .....183
Unlimited virtual engine -- Zohar	
Maison -- Lawrence Maison	
Median Van Houten (human)	history.....17
	onfp .....164
	illust .....164
	drama.....201
Merkavah (vessel)	info .....15,68,70
	official art .....15,69
Melru (other)	glossary .....282
Melru Geot private room (buiding)	info .....149
Moss compass (technology)	info .....53
module )technology)	glossary .....148
Yamadori (creature)	habitat .....56
Yui -- Yui Uzuki	
Yui Uzuki (human)	history .....17
	info .....180
	illust .....180
	official art .....270
Jugend (building)	history .....17
Yggdrasil (vessel)	info .....146,148,183
	official art .....146,148
Yggdrasil (Organization)	info .....183
Yggdrasil 3 (vessel)	info .....149
	official art.....149
Yggdrasil 4 (vessel)	info .....34,150
	official art.....34,150
All ahead (military)	glosary .....280
Jordegarde (human)	info .....187
Raigyo (creature)	habitat .....56
Lightforge Class (vessel)	info .....152
	official art .....152
Ravine (Organization)	info .....12
Laodicea Kingdom (nation)	history.....14
	info .....30,31
Lacan (human)	history.....14
	info .....159
Raganbart (human)	info .....187
Racquel Black (human)	drama.....199
Racquel Blanche (human)	info .....190
Raziel (science)	glossary .....68
Tree of Raziel -- Raziel	
Latina (human)	info .....189
Latorine (human)	info .....183
Lahan Mt. Pass (location)	location .....39
	official art .....39
Lahan Village	location .....41
	altitude .....42
Ram (technology)	glossary .....151
	official art.....151
Ramsus' ship -- Lightforge Class	
Rameses -- Kahran Ramsus	
Rankar meteorite (natural science)	official art .....52
Renk (human)	info .....177
	illust .....177
Lance (human)	info .....195
LAnceknight (Gear)	info .....98
Chief Lee (human)	info .....181
	illust .....181
Reaver (creature)	habitat .....56
	official art .....59
Ricardo Banderas (human)	history .....17
	info .....188
	illust .....188,218
	official art.....246
Ricdeau Shouki (human)	history .....17
Ricdeau Hyuga -- Citan Uzuki	
Ricdeau Luli (human)	history .....17
Rico -- Ricardo Banderas	
Reno (creature)	habitat .....56

	official art .....61
Limiter (science)	history .....16
	glossary .....26
	info. ....77
good path (technology)	drama.....200
Rue Coon (human)	info.....189
Rule girl (human)	info.....189
Lucca (human)	info. ....181
Rain Frog (crature)	habitat .....56
Leonardo (human)	info. ....189
Redrum (creature)	habitat .....57
	official art.....63
	drama .....199
Rene Fatima (human)	history.....14
	info. ....186
	illust .....186
repsol (measure)	measure .....79
Renmazuo (Gear)	info. ....87
	illust .....87
	official art .....120
Rose Camellia (scent)	image .....210
Lawrence Maison (human)	info. ....183
	illust .....183,222
	official art .....253
Lost Jerusalem	history .....7
	info. ....7,9
Rotten (creature)	habitat .....57
	official art .....62
Roni Fatima (human)	history .....14
	info. ....186
	illust .....186
Roni, Rene's caravan (organizatin)	info. ....23
logic calculations (science)	glossary .....69,71
Wiseman (human)	info. ....161
	illust .....161
	official art .....269
Wyvern (Gear)	info. ....90
	illust .....90
	official art .....179
Wandknight (Gear)	info. ....98
	official art .....98





## After Word

### [The Time of the Gospel]

You most likely remember these words spoken by Cain, right?

This in the story was the eternal fate of those humans meant to resurrect Deus -- at least, that's the explanation.

There are other factors here, especially in regards to the true meaning of the words "time of the Gospel", and it's three attendant riddles -- [Why must Deus take the long time of 10,000 years to revive itself?], [Why was there a time limit on this?], Why did the result destroy human beings? -- and in regards to these even to the very end the "actual aim was not shown". In addition, the various persons associated with this phenomenon had great differences based on their perspectives.

And so, let's take a look at the viewpoint of the Gazel Ministry's version of the 'Time of the Gospel'.

Their main interpretation is "If god is kept from being resurrected, human beings will also be destroyed --]. And this is the meaning of the existence of the Gazel Ministry who were born to be parts of the weapon Deus.

Deus -- "god"s parts that would live forever.

So in other words, for them to "live", they must merge with god, and if the resurrection system failed to function, they would also die.

The Ministry having brought together the system, only desired the resurrection of "god". They only wanted to resurrect "god" to lead to the path for Deus' revival. Ultimately, their destruction by Krelian's erasure of them, their lives as Animus,



inheritor's by genetics, bringing about the resurrection of "god", in truth would merge many humans as parts with "god" on its path to returning -- thus "recieving life". So, they would avoid their interpreted "Day of Destruction" with this approach.

However, from a different viewpoint, the resurrection of "god" will only bring down humanity to destruction.

And that appears to be the next Miang's (Elly's) viewpoint.

The words spoken by Elly as Miang are as follows.  
[When those who have created "god" become hindrances--]

These words mean that Deus' revival program has reached its last stage, so in terms of a hindrance, what kind of hindrance?

If the words are taken at their face value, it could mean the people of the civilization that created Deus. Deus being created as a weapon, the creators might see it as a threat to civilization and destroy it. Those creators could even take it to a safe place where it could be confined - putting forth the consideration that it might enact a self-resurrection program, this was Citan's determination in the story as well.

However, think about it a moment. Those people of that civilization at the time when Deus was born, would have been in agreement as well. Because of this, they separated Deus into parts and sealed them, and should have had it on its way to be transferred.

Was it really only a system that went out of control?

Who were the creators aiming it at?

Were the ones they wanted to extinguish really Fei and the others?

So here we have, [If god is not resurrected human beings are destroyed] and [If

god is resurrected, humans are destroyed.] that is the "Time of the Gospel, and these two opposite viewpoints will be explained further.

Why the opposing viewpoint? Let's see if we can look at it from their side. Are "humans" likely the only parts to be used as parts for Deus? Due to this merging of the humans who become parts, they gain "life" and those who do not wish this union, those who have been elected to defend god hand out his punishment in the form of "destruction". There is no contradiction thus far with what the Gazel Ministry thought about this and what Miang (Elly) said.

However, Cain was different.

Cain was in "contradiction" to this.

Because he believed the fate as parts for Deus "shackled" humanity, he was against the Ministry's wish to resurrect "god" and desired instead to free "humans" from the binding of "god".

So Cain went through trial and error.

If there was meaning in trying to avoid the path to destruction in "god", the reverse might be "life" apart from god.

And for Cain, Citan and the others represented that possible "new kind" of humans that he had hoped for. And once the resurrection of "Deus" was imminent, Cain knew the odds were high that they wouldn't mutate. Because of this, Cain appeared to let them do as they wished. Destroying the "curse of the System", and judging they might be annihilated by the "killing acts of the weapon Deus", to make "humans" into "human beings" he thought "god" should be bound, and from the very first years he desired this in secret.

At this time, Cain was freed from the cursed bonds of the System.

Cain was the one who cut the bonds of "god", and became a new central figure for the new "kind", that which is called "Annonelbe". He believed "Annonelbe" would rescue human beings.

And so Cain's interpreted Annonelbe -- Fei and the others destroyed "god." Not only destroying the flesh of god, but the ability to cause spiritual union and the fate of humanity was freed in the fight against Deus when it was destroyed and "humanity" was reborn now free from those bonds.

However, supposing it might not be avoidable, in that case he was against the meaning in the "Time of the Gospel". And at the core of this "god must not be allowed to destroy".

Also, was the will of "god" entirely that of Deus?

In the case that it was Deus' will, [Why destroy all of humanity?] is the question, and maybe someday that will come to light. Those other questions of why it must take the long span of 10,000 years to resurrect Deus, and why there is a time limit, are all unanswered questions.

In any case, it appears as if the true meaning of the word "Annonelbe" the coming man of god, -is the same as the root cause of the destruction of humanity.

The cause of Deus going out of control in the opening is still unknown.

The meaning of "Time of the Gospel". So many mysteries are wrapped up into the world of Xenogears and are still not understood.



# STAFF

**Editor**  
垣貴真和

**Editorial Staff**

青木基至  
佐藤治男  
松本智春  
木村勝好  
小林 卓  
増井 荒  
山田博美  
桜井亜己  
内海一秀  
荒井美帆

**Product Manager**  
中村寛文

**Writing**  
Yugai Kaisha Estif

相原孝昭

**Design&Layout**  
Company Estol

**Pinup "Weltall"**  
Ishigaki Junya

**Cell Work**  
武遊

**Finishing**  
ENTANIYA

**Pinup "Elley"**  
Kunihiko Tanaka

**Image Photograph**  
Edaya Chonan

**Finishing**  
Company Dgimation

**Illustration&cartoon**  
MASKI

**Short Story**  
Cljo Saga

**Criticism**  
Sawaduki You

**Character Illustration**  
Kunihiko Tanaka

**Superviser**  
Company Square  
Takahashi Tetsuya  
Tanegashima Takashi

Published: 8-10-1998

15th Printing 6-26-2001

発行人：柴野正道  
編集人：宮崎秀規

発行所：株式会社デジキューブ  
東京都渋谷区広尾 1-13-7 恵比寿イーストビル  
TEL 03-3444-5765 FAX 03-3444-5940  
印刷：共立印刷株式会社

落丁・乱丁本はお取り替えます。  
本書の全部、あるいは一部を小社からの承認を得ずに無断で複製することは  
いかなる方法においても禁じられています。  
ゲーム内容に関するご質問に一切お答えできませんのでご了承ください。  
定価はカバーに表示してあります。

ISBN4-925075-32-2

©1998 Square Character Design/Kunihiko Tanaka, Mecha design Junya Ishigaki







WEHTALL

